Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

CONTRACT NO. JW13897

NORTHERN WASTEWATER TREATMENT WORKS

EXPANSION OF CAPACITY UNIT 5 – INSTALLATION OF MECHANICAL AND ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

VOLUME 2B

SCOPE OF WORK

C3 SCOPE OF WORK

GENERAL

This section specifies and describes the supplies, services and engineering and construction works which are to be provided and any other requirements and constraints relating to the manner in which the contract work is to be performed.

SCOPE

The Scope of the Work is set out in five portions:

Portion 1: PROJECT SPECIFICATION covers a general description of the project, the facilities available and the requirements to be met and are included in volume 2A of the Tender Document

Portion 2: PARTICULARS OF REQUIRED MECHANICAL WORK are included in volume 2A of the Tender Document

Portion 3: PARTICULARS OF REQUIRED ELECTRICAL WORK are included in volume 2A of the Tender Document

Portion 4: PARTICULARS OF REQUIRED CONTROL AND INSTRUMENTATION WORK

Portion 5: DETAILS STANDARDISED GENERIC SPECIFICATIONS are included in volume 2B of the Tender Document.

Should any requirement of the Project Specification conflict with any requirement of the standard or particular specifications, the requirements of the Project Specifications shall prevail.

CONTENTS

PORTION 5: DETAILS STANDARDISED GENERIC SPECIFICATIONS

5.1 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR GENERAL WORKS

G01: Colour Coding of Pipework on Johannesburg Water's Wastewater Treatment Works

G02: Corrosion Protection

5.2 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

E01: Electrical Motors

E02: Cable Racks

E03: Isolator Station

E04: Electrical Low Voltage Distribution Boards and Motor Control Centres

E05: Electrical Low Voltage Powerand Control Cables

E06: Electrical Medium and Low Voltage Cable Installation

E07: Electrical Industrial Welding Plugs, Couplers and Socket Outlets

E08: Electrical Wiring

E09: Electrical Building Installation

E10: Electrical Busbar Trunking

E11: Electrical Earthing and Lightning Protection

E12: Electrical Medium Voltage Cables

E13: Electrical Medium Voltage Switchgear

E14: Electrical Supply and Standby Generator

E15: Electrical Transformers

E17: Electrical Variable Speed Drive (VSD) Units

5.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

M01: Mechanical Screening Equipment

M03: Mechanical Equipment for Primary Sedimentation Tanks (PST)

M04: Balancing Tanks

M05: Anaerobic and Anoxic Mixing Equipment

M06: Surface Aeration Equipment

M07: Axial Flow Pumping Equipment

M08: Gear Boxes

M09: Archimedian Screw Pumps

M10: Secondary Clarifier Tanks

M11: Fermentation Tanks

M13: Sludge Thickener Tanks

M17: Actuator Equipment

M18: Centrifugal Pumps

M20: Valves

M21: Pressure Pipework

M26: Dosing Pumps

M27: Disinfection Systems

M32: Ferric Dosing Equipment

M33: Elutriation Pumps

M34: Mechanical Sluice/Channel Gates, Adjustable Weirs, Hand Stops and Stop Logs

5.4 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR CONTROL AND INSTRUMENTATION

W0634A.5. 120308.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Field Junction Box

W0634A.5. 120308.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Flow Meters

W0634A.5. 120308.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Pressure Meters

W0634A.5. 120308.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Pressure Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Ammonia Analysers

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Cabling

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Chlorine Analysers

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Clean Power-SPD

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, COD Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Conductivity Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Density Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, DO Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Labelling

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Level Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, MLSS Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Networking

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Nitrate Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, pH Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Phosphate Analysers

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, PLC Panels

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Temperature Meters

W0634A.190826.BWW523C-JW C&I Standards, Turbidity-Suspended Solids Meters

5.1 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR GENERAL WORKS

Table 1 : Colour Coding of Pipework on Johannesburg Water's Wastewater Treatment Works

Contents of Pipeline	Basic Colour	Colour Coding Indicator	
		Single Band	Second Band
Water, non-drinkable			
Cooling water	Brilliant Green		
Final treated effluent		White	
Recycled effluent		Black	Dark Violet
Air saturated effluent		Black	Dar Violet
Filtrate		Black	Aquamarine
Wash Water		Black	
Scum water		Black	Dark violet
Dewatering Liquors		Black	Dark Violet
Overflow from P.S.T's		Black	Crimson
Overflow from Clarifier		Black	Dark Violet
D.A.F Underflow		Black	Crimson
Supernatant Liquor		Black	Avocado
Overflow Gravity Thickener		Black	Crimson
Fire Fighting			
Boiler feed		Cornflower	
Hydraulic power		Salmon Pink	-
Poly-electrolyte		Light Grey	-
Raw sewage		Middle Brown	-
Settled sewage		Mid-grey	-
Thickener overflow from:			
Primary sludge		Crimson	-
Activated sludge		Canary Yellow	-
Digested sludge		Maroon	-
DAF liquors		Canary Yellow	Turquoise Blue
Filtrate		Ultramarine	-
Washwater		Black	-
Scum water		Dark Violet	Crimson
Treated effluent		Dark Violet	-
Dewatering liquors		Black	Ultramarine
Acids	Jacaranda		
Ferric chloride		Crimson	
Ferric sulphuric		Artic Blue	
Alkalis			
Lime Slurry	Dove Grey		
Gases			
Sludge gas	Light Stone	Jacaranda	
Steam	Pastel grey	Aluminium	Clad/lagging
Nitrogen	Light Stone	Black	Light Grey
Hydrogen	Light Stone	Black	Signal Red
Methane (digested)	Light Stone	Turquoise Blue	
Carbon dioxide	Light Stone	Light Grey	
Chlorine/Hypochloride	Canary Yellow		
Oxygen	White		
Compressed Air	Artic Blue		
Ventilated Air	Artic Blue		
Vacuum Air	Artic Blue		
Instrument Air	Artic Blue		
Sludges			
Anaerobically digested	Middle Brown	Maroon	
Anaerobically digested: thickened		Maroon	Light Grey
Raw Sludge	Dark Violet		
Lime treated	Dark Brown	Dove grey	

Contents of Pipeline	Basic Colour	Colour Coding Indicator	
		Single Band	Second Band
Primary	Dark Brown	Crimson	
Primary thickened	Dark Brown	Crimson	
Digester supernatant liquor	Middle Brown	Salmon Pink	
Activated : mixed liquor	Royal Blue	Canary Yellow	
Activated : gravity thickened	Royal Blue	Canary Yellow	Dark Violet
Activated : return sludge	Royal Blue	Canary Yellow	Middle Brown
Activated : DAF overflow/float	Royal Blue	Canary Yellow	Turquoise Blue
Activated : primary	Royal Blue	Canary Yellow	Crimson
Activated : digested	Royal Blue	Canary Yellow	Maroon
Activated : waste	Royal Blue	Canary yellow	
Pasteurised	Light Brown		
Oil			
Diesel oil	Black	White	
Hydraulic oil	Golden brown	Salmon Pink	
Lubricating	Golden brown	Brilliant Green	
Transformer	Golden brown	Crimson	
Other Liquids			
Polyelectrolyte	Golden Yellow	Jacaranda	
Cooling liquid	White		

Notes: This table supplements SANS 10140-3: 2003

All codes are in relation to SANS 1091: 1975

Table 2: Colour Coding of Electrical Equipment and Mechanical Plant

Item	Colour	Remarks	Code to SANS 1091
Electrical panels : (external)	Light Orange	NOSA	B.26
Electrical panels : (external) emergency power on	Signal Red		A.11
Electrical panels : (Internal)	White		G.80
Coupling guards and motor guards	Golden Yellow	SANS 10140-2	B.4
Motor cowls	Light Orange	Historical	B.26
Electrical motors, pumps and compressors	Deep Pastel Green		H.28
Gearboxes	Navy Light Grey	NOSA: See also "Small Gearboxes"	G.35
Blower	Deep Pastel Green	NOSA	H.28
Baseplates	Olive Drab		
Cranes	Golden Yellow		B.4
Valve bodies		See SANS 10104-3, Clause 4.2	
Valve hand-wheels			
Small gearboxes	To be same colour as prime mover		

5.2 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR ELECTRICAL EQUIPMENT

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E01 : ELECTRICAL MOTORS

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E01 : Electrical Motors**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E01**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E01: ELECTRICAL MOTORS

CONTENTS

E01.1 SCOPE 4

E01.2 INTERPRETATIONS 4
E01.2.1 Abbreviations 4
E01.2.2 Standards 4

E01.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 4

E01.4 WORKING VOLTAGE AND SUPPLY SYSTEMS 5

E01.5 TEMPERATURE RISE 5

E01.6 EFFICIENCY AND POWER FACTOR 5

E01.7 VIBRATION 5

E01.8 NOISE LEVEL 5

E01.9 ENCLOSURE AND FRAME 5

E01.10 MOTOR TYPE 6

E01.11 RATING AND STARTING REQUIREMENTS 6

E01.12 BEARINGS 6

E01.13 EARTHING 7

E01.14 HEATERS AND DRAINAGE 7

E01.15 TERMINAL ARRANGEMENTS 7

E01.16 MOTOR/LOAD COUPLING 8

E01.17 INFORMATION PLATES FOR MOTORS 8

E01.18 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS FOR TWO-SPEED MOTORS 8

E01.19 SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS 8

E01.20 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS 9

E01.21 TECHNICAL DATA SHEETS 9

E01.22 TESTING 9
E01.22.1 Performance Tests 9
E01.22.2 Routine Tests 10
E01.22.3 Test Certificates 10
E01.22.4 Witnessing of Tests 10
E01.22.5 Testing of Terminal Box Assembly 10

E01.23 DRAWINGS FOR APPROVAL 10

E01.24 STORAGE 10

E01.25 ERECTION AND INSTALLATION 11
E01.25.1 Erection 11
E01.25.2 Bearing Inspection 11
E01.25.3 Alignment 12
E01.25.4 Drying Out 12

E01.25.5 Double Shaft Extensions 12

E01.26 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING 12

E01.27 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 12

E01.1 SCOPE

This specification shall cover all electric motors to be designed, supplied installed and tested that shall drive any of the items of equipment to be supplied under the contract. This specification shall be read together with those specifying the mechanical driven equipment.

E01.2 INTERPRETATIONS

E01.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification, the following abbreviations will apply:

ANSI : American National Standards Institute
ASTM : American Society for Testing and Materials
BS : British Standards Institution
SANS : South African National Standards

E01.2.2 Standards

The latest edition, including all amendments to until the date of tender, of the following particular national and international specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

(a) SANS 1804-2 : Low-voltage three-phase standard motors

(b) SANS 60529 : Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)

(c) SANS 60034 : Rotating electrical machines

(d) BS 1486-2 : Heavy duty lubricating nipples

(e) SANS 60034-1 : Rotating electrical machines Part 1: Rating and performance

(f) ISO 281 : Rolling bearings - dynamic load ratings and rating life

E01.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) Electric motors shall be manufactured in South Africa and shall comply with the requirements of SANS 1804-2.

(b) Imported motors shall be accepted only if they form an integral part of the equipment offered. Where imported motors are offered they shall be submitted to the South African Bureau of Standards to be tested in accordance with the requirements of SANS 1804-2.

(c) The Engineer shall be provided with the appropriate certificates obtained from the South African National Standards stating that such motors do comply, prior with the installation of the motors. However, where tests reveal that motors do not comply, it shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to supply alternative motors that comply with the requirements of SANS 1804-2.

(d) Where imported motors are not normally kept in stock in South Africa, written proof shall be provided of the availability of replacement parts as well as the delivery period of the parts after placing the orders.

(e) All motors shall be standard catalogue models and shall be readily available.

(f) All motors shall where possible, be from the same manufacturer and shall have the same interchangeable frames. Variations in type and size shall, where possible, be limited to prevent stocking a variety of special spares.

(g) All motors shall be wound for direct-on-line (DOL) type of starting.

E01.4 WORKING VOLTAGE AND SUPPLY SYSTEMS

(a) The motors shall be capable of operating within ± 10% of the nominal supply voltage without risk of damage. All motors shall be suitable for operating continuously at the specified 3-phase voltage system under actual service conditions, including the ± 10% voltage tolerance, without exceeding the specified temperature rise determined by the resistance on a basic full load heat run.

(b) All motors shall be capable of operating continuously under actual service conditions at any supply frequency between 48 and 51 Hz together with any voltage between ± 5% of the nominal supply voltage.

(c) The slip-in speed of any motor at 80 percent of the nominal voltage at 50Hz shall not exceed a percentage agreed on by the engineer, and the motors shall be capable of operating at this voltage for a period of five minutes without deleterious heating.

E01.5 TEMPERATURE RISE

The temperature rise, as determined by resistance, of all motors, shall not exceed the following derated values:

Insulation class	E	B	F	H
Temperature rise (K)	50	60	80	100

E01.6 EFFICIENCY AND POWER FACTOR

(a) All motors supplied will be energy-efficient as described in SANS 60034-31: Selection of energy-efficient motors

(b) The efficiency of all motors shall be guaranteed by the contractor. Deviations from the guaranteed efficiency shall be within the limits specified in SANS 1804-2.

(c) The guaranteed efficiency of each motor size and rating shall be as determined in accordance with SANS 60034. A basic test certificate of efficiency will be accepted for a motor of identical size and rating or a basic test of efficiency shall be conducted if no certificate is available.

(d) The power factor of motors with a capacity of 20 kW or more shall not be less than 0,85 under all operating conditions.

E01.7 VIBRATION

(a) Motors shall be statically and dynamically balanced.

(b) All motors shall be checked for inadvertent vibration without load, and at full rated voltage at the manufacturer's works, and the vibration amplitude as measured shall be in accordance with SANS 60034-1.

(c) The ratio of axial to radial vibration shall not exceed 0,5.

E01.8 NOISE LEVEL

Unless specified differently all motors shall be of 'normal sound power', in compliance with SANS 60034.

E01.9 ENCLOSURE AND FRAME

(a) Each motor shall be ingress protected to the degree required by its application, and its enclosure shall be designed for the system of cooling associated therewith.

(b) Notwithstanding the requirements above, the minimum degree of protection shall be IP 55 to SANS 60529, or alternatively specified. Motors shall preferably be of the totally enclosed fan-cooled (TEFC) type.

(c) The motor cooling system must be of an aerodynamic design with minimal noise levels and superb airflow distribution over the frame with superior mechanical strength. All motor

cooling fan covers will be constructed in metal.

(d) All motors of the vertical-spindle type and exposed to the weather, shall be provided with a robust canopy of approved design by the Engineer.

E01.10 MOTOR TYPE

Motors shall be of the squirrel-cage induction type. Slip-ring induction motors or other approved types will be considered if the contractor is of the opinion that better results could be obtained by using such motors. Full electrical and mechanical details of each alternative shall be submitted with the tender documents. Alternative motors must be accepted by the Engineer in writing.

When motors are connected to VFD's with variable torque loads operated under usual service conditions, inverter-ready general-purpose motors must be supplied (IEC 60034-1)

When motors are connected to VFD's operating at extremely low speeds and/or with a constant torque load, or when operating over base speed, definite-purpose, inverter-duty motors must be supplied (IEC 60034-1).

Larger inverter-duty motors must be equipped with a constant speed auxiliary blower to provide adequate cooling at low motor operating speeds. The contractor must submit a statement from the motor supplier on the need for an auxiliary blower when omitted.

Inverter-duty motors above the 500 frame size should have both bearings insulated, and be equipped with a shaft grounding brush with a ground strap from the motor to the drive case. For frame sizes below 500, the contractor must check with the motor manufacturer regarding requirements for motor bearing insulation.

E01.11 RATING AND STARTING REQUIREMENTS

(a) Motors shall be adequately rated for the service for which they are intended, and due allowance shall be made for the temperature, altitude, climatic conditions and variations in the supply voltage. Motors shall not exceed 120% of the required capacity without prior approval from the Engineer.

(b) Not only shall motors be based on the full load requirements, but also the motor capacity and starting characteristics shall be compatible with the requirements of the driven equipment.

(c) Where motors are required to drive high inertia loads, the starting torque of the motor and the torque curve of the driven load shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval prior to manufacture. Such motors shall be capable of at least three starts per hour, with two consecutive starts from normal operating temperature, or more frequently if required by the Engineer.

(d) Motors shall be of the continuously running duty class S1 unless otherwise specified in the detailed specification or if a more onerous duty is dictated by the drive requirement.

(e) All squirrel-cage induction motors shall be suitable for direct on line starting at full voltage. Single-speed motors shall conform to SANS 60034-12, Design B characteristics unless approved by or dictated by the drive requirements.

(f) Unless otherwise approved, the 15% tolerance on locked-rotor torque permitted by SANS 60034-1 will not be accepted and shall be limited to 10%.

(g) Documentation shall include performance curves to suit the designed working conditions.

(h) When making a selection of the motor size for driven equipment, motor power shall be over-rated by a factor of thirty percent (30%) more than the demand of the driven equipment.

E01.12 BEARINGS

(a) All motors shall, wherever possible, be provided with pre-lubricated sealed bearings.

(b) Re-greasable bearings shall require only one lubrication per year. Grease lubrication of ball or roller bearings, where approved, shall be by means of hexagonal button-type grease

nipples to BS 1486- 2, Nos. 21A or 21B (industrial type).

(c) Grease-lubricated bearings shall have relief holes to ensure that the bearings have been correctly packed, which holes shall be positioned so that the excess grease can be easily removed. Cups shall be fitted to contain excess grease.

(d) Bearings shall be protected against eddy currents and shall be capable of withstanding vibrations caused by unbalanced loads.

(e) All bearings shall be designed for a minimum L_{10h}, basic life rating of 50 000 hours at the rated load and speed for the application in accordance with ISO 281.

E01.13 EARTHING

All motors shall be provided with a machined or spot-faced boss earth point, tapped to receive a bolt of not less than 10 mm in diameter for earthing purposes. This earth point must be located on one side of the motor, between the mounting feet.

A protective earth cable must be installed between the MCC earth bar and the motor earth point, sized in accordance with SANS1042-1.

Earth bonding must be installed between the motor frame and the motor support structure as well as the cable support structure.

E01.14 HEATERS AND DRAINAGE

Non-submersible motors that will be located outdoors or in a damp location such as in a drainage sump shall be provided with suitable means of drainage to prevent the accumulation of water due to condensation. They shall also be fitted with anti-condensation heaters suitable for a 220V AC supply if considered advisable by the manufacturer.

All motors shall be supplied with anti-condensation heaters (220V AC supply) to keep the motor temperature at 23°C when the motor is not operational to prevent moisture from condensing in the motor unless specified otherwise.

Heater terminal boxes shall be fitted on the motor frame and shall be of robust design, liberally sized and complete with suitable terminal block and mechanical cable gland or conduit entry.

E01.15 TERMINAL ARRANGEMENTS

(a) All motor terminal boxes must be oversized to fit a cable one size bigger than the standard cable as a minimum

(b) The terminal box must be installed with an OME supplied seal between the terminal box and the motor chassis

(c) Motor cable termination blocks must confirm to the IEC 60034-1 standard

(d) The line connections of each motor shall be brought out to a terminal box located in an approved position. In the case of two-speed motors, separate terminal boxes shall be provided for each speed.

(e) Terminal boxes shall be of the totally enclosed type designed to exclude the ingress of dust and moisture and sealed from the internal circuit of the motor, and shall be manufactured from sand-cast metal. The wall thickness of the terminal boxes and the dimension of the cable inlet shall be as specified in SANS 1804-2. The terminal box shall be so designed that the cable entry may be made in any one of four positions placed at right angles to one another.

(f) Winding termination in the motor terminal boxes shall be properly secured or fastened to avoid hot connections during operation.

(g) Terminal boxes shall be of ample size to allow the cable to be terminated in the box. Under no circumstances shall the cable be allowed to be in contact with the inside of the box or lid.

(h) Terminals shall be of a substantial design and shall be suited to receive cable lugs. Pinch-screw connections will not be accepted.

(i) The terminal arrangement shall permit the motor to be disconnected from its supply cable without damaging the cable tails and shall allow the supply cable and motor windings to be tested separately.

(j) The electrical clearance and creepage distances, with the correct cable terminations in position, shall comply with the requirements of SANS 60034.

(k) Terminal markings shall be clear and permanent. Irrespective of the direction of rotation required on the site, the connections shall be such that, when the supply leads L1 - L2 - L3 are connected to the motor terminals U - V - W respectively, the motor shall rotate in a clockwise direction when viewed from the driving end.

(l) Motors suited for only one-directional rotation, shall be clearly marked as such by an arrow fixed to the motor frame at the driving end.

(m) Before the contractor orders terminal boxes for electrical equipment, he shall supply details of the proposed boxes to the engineer for approval. These precautions are necessary to ensure that the size of the connecting blocks installed is sufficient to accommodate the cables supplied and connected by another contractor, and that sufficient space exists within the box to route cables conveniently.

E01.16 MOTOR/LOAD COUPLING

(a) Motors shall be coupled direct to the equipment to be driven by means of approved couplings and/or gearboxes unless specified differently. Refer to the relevant sections for specific specifications on transmission couplings and gearboxes. Vee-belt and chain drives will be considered only if direct coupling of the motor to the equipment is impossible or impractical.

Motors driving vee-belt or chain drives shall be fitted with heavy-duty bearings suited to the full side thrust at 120% of full load torque and short-term overloads of up to 250% of the full load torques during starting. The stiffness of the rotor shaft shall be checked to ensure that resonance and fatigue do not occur.

(b) Where applicable, the flanges of the motors and equipment shall be identical.

(c) The precision tolerance class shall apply to all flange-mounted motors with regard to concentricity, perpendicularity and shaft run-out.

E01.17 INFORMATION PLATES FOR MOTORS

In addition to the information required by SABS 948-1the following shall also be marked on the nameplates:

(a) Year of manufacture,

(b) The order number,

(c) Total mass of motor in kilogram,

(d) Diagram indicating the number, type and positions of heaters and temperature detectors if applicable,

(e) Bearing types and sizes, and

(f) Bearing grease interval or bearing replacement interval where pre-packed bearings are used.

E01.18 ADDITIONAL SPECIFICATIONS FOR TWO-SPEED MOTORS

The following additional specifications apply to all two-speed motors:

(a) Terminal markings shall be as per SANS 1804-2.

(b) The starting current shall not exceed six times the full load current of the high-speed rating.

E01.19 SUBMERSIBLE MOTORS

The following additional requirements apply specifically to all submersible motors:

All submersible motors shall be suited for submersion up to a depth of 1,5 times the depth of submersion shown on the drawings for each application, or as specified in the detail specifications.

All submersible motors shall have dynamically balanced rotors supported by maintenance-free, sealed-for-life ball bearings.

All motors shall be suitably coated to ensure the satisfactory operation of the motor under the specified class of service.

All terminal boxes shall be waterproof and suited for submersion up to the depth as specified for the motors.

An adequate length of waterproof cable, purpose-made for submersion, shall be supplied with each submersible motor. The coupling of this cable to the normal power-distribution cable, which usually is of the PVC type with steel-wire armour, shall be placed at least 1 m above the maximum water level by means of a purpose-made, weatherproof, outdoor junction box. The submerged cable shall be supported to minimize any movement of the cable, which results from turbulence caused by the operation of the equipment or the flow of the water.

Thermistor protection temperature switches shall be provided for submersible motors.

Seal monitors shall be provided for submersible motors, together with the required seal monitor relays. The cost for the seal monitor relays shall be deemed included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

E01.20 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) The rotation speed of motors shall not exceed 1 500 rpm unless approved by the Engineer.

(b) Thermistor protection shall be provided for each winding of each motor. Motors rated below 22kW shall have no thermistor and heater protection devices installed on them. Motor rated 22kW and above shall have both thermistor and heater protection devices installed on them.

(c) Motors below 55kW shall be started by the DOL type method of starting. Motors including 55kW and above shall be started by the softer-starter type method of starting.

(d) A separate thermistor and heater terminal box shall be fitted on the motor frame next to the power terminal box and shall be of robust design, liberally sized and complete with suitable terminal block and mechanical cable gland or conduit entry.

(e) The minimum preferred class of insulation is Class F, derated in accordance with the relevant clause above.

E01.21 TECHNICAL DATA SHEETS

Details of all individual electric machines and equipment requiring electrical energy shall be indicated on the technical data sheet provided for in the tender Schedules (included in the technical data sheets.

E01.22 TESTING

Tests on completion (commissioning tests) shall be performed as described below in this specification.

E01.22.1 Performance Tests

(a) One motor of every type shall be tested for temperature rise and excess torque. Type test certificates on identical motors will be acceptable in lieu of these tests. Should type test certificates not be available, the first motor of each size manufactured shall be tested. All tests shall be in accordance with SANS 60034.

(b) The measurement of the temperature rise of the stator windings of motors for use on voltages up to 1 000 volts shall be by the increase in resistance method as is now permitted by SANS 60034.

E01.22.2 Routine Tests

(a) Each motor shall be tested at the manufacturer's works for light-run, locked rotor, insulation resistance, high voltage, air-gap clearances and Tan Delta on each complete stator.

(b) All tests shall be in accordance with SANS 60034.

E01.22.3 Test Certificates

(a) Four copies of all test certificates, showing the results of all tests performed, shall be supplied at a date not later than the delivery date of the motors.

(b) The test certificates shall contain power factor and efficiency figures for 125%, 100%, 75%, 50% and 25% of full load conditions as calculated from the test results.

E01.22.4 Witnessing of Tests

All type and routine tests on motors larger than 45 kW shall be witnessed by the Engineer.

E01.22.5 Testing of Terminal Box Assembly

(a) Proof shall be given to show that a prototype terminal and cable box assembly of the type being supplied on medium voltage motors has been tested under internal short-circuit conditions and that the pressure relief diaphragm ruptured protecting the case of the terminal box from serious damage. In addition, that a through fault current test was made to demonstrate that the complete assembly is capable of handling the short-circuit current without damage. The fault current for these tests shall have been 45 000 ampere for a duration of 0.25 seconds.

(b) These type tests shall have been witnessed by an independent authority.

E01.23 DRAWINGS FOR APPROVAL

The following drawings shall be submitted for approval:

(a) Dimensioned outline and foundation drawings of the motors. (Shaft diameter, shaft height and motor weight to be clearly shown).

(b) Detailed drawings of the bearing arrangement, showing all lubrication pipes, coolers and pumps.

(c) Cross-sectional dimensioned drawings of the cable boxes.

(d) Detailed drawings of the motor base plate showing full constructional details with dimensions.

(e) For motors of 250 kW and larger fully dimensioned drawings of the shaft showing all tolerances.

(f) For motors designed for voltages of 3.3 kV and above, drawings showing the end winding bracing arrangements.

E01.24 STORAGE

The contractor must ensure that the storage requirements as specified by the manufacturer are adhered to strictly so as avoid voiding of the warranty. Every effort must be taken to ensure the motor is protected against ingress of water, vermin or anything that may affect its future operation. The following are only given as guidelines, the contractor is expected to exercise due care in the storage and handling of electric motors.

(a) The motor should be store upright in its normal position, free of dust, dirt, gasses and corrosive atmospheres.

(b) Motors should be stored under roof on a concrete base, normally in a store environment. Do not remove the motor from the wooden pallet.

(c) For bigger units, which cannot be housed in a store or relevant building, shed must be built with a proper concrete floor. Do not remove the motor from the wooden pallet.

(d) Store the bigger units close to the final position within access with overhead crane or mobile crane.

(e) Do not stack any objects on top of or against the motor.

(f) Motors must be stored in places free from vibrations in order to avoid damage to the bearings.

(g) The motors space heaters/ anti condensation heaters and similar accessories must be switched on at all times to avoid condensation and corrosion within the enclosure.

(h) If painting has been damaged during transportation, it must be repainted to avoid rusting.

(i) Ensure all machined surfaces and shaft extensions are covered with grease or a rust inhibiting substance.

(j) For slip-ring motors, the brushes must be lifted to avoid condensation between contact surfaces and slip rings.

(k) Before operation all brushes and contact surfaces have to be inspected and brush seating confirmed.

(l) When any motor is kept for extended period, the shaft must be manually turned on monthly intervals.

(m) For big machines with frames greater than or equal to 400mm, the shaft should be rotated monthly at any number of turns and then put at rest at 180 degrees difference from previous stationary position.

(n) When a motor is not immediately required in operation, it should be protected against moisture, high temperature and impurities in order to avoid damage to the insulation system.

(o) If the ambient contains high humidity, periodical insulation resistance inspection is recommended during storage.

(p) The following guidelines show the approximate insulation resistance values that can be expected from a clean and dry motor at 40° Celsius ambient.

(q) Minimum insulation resistance = rated voltage (kV) + 1 (Mega ohm) using 2 times the rated voltage.

(r) These periodical measurements should be recorded and be available prior to installation.

E01.25 ERECTION AND INSTALLATION

E01.25.1 Erection

(a) When motors are erected, care shall be taken to ensure that adequate tolerance margins are made available to ensure interchangeability with replacement motors.

(b) A minimum of 10 mm of packers shall be provided under the motor frame or motor bedplate to allow for adjustments in height.

(c) Before holding-down bolts are grouted in, the motor shall be lined up and the bolts shall be properly centred in the hole of the bedplate.

(d) The bending radius of the motor supply cable should not be exceeded when installing the cable (SANS10142-1).

(e) Motor supply cables must be supported and should not hang from the terminal box/gland.

E01.25.2 Bearing Inspection

(a) The Engineer shall inspect motors having ball/roller bearings.

(b) The grease shall be examined to ensure that it is not hard.

(c) Providing that no roughness is felt when the shaft is rotated by hand and that the motor runs without undue noise or vibration, the bearings will be considered acceptable.

(d) Should the bearings fail or exhibit the symptoms of brinelling during the guarantee period,

the Contractor, free of charge, without delay, shall change them.

E01.25.3 Alignment

(a) After erection, the alignment of the half-couplings between the motor and the driven machine shall be measured. In the case of a pedestal, bearing motor the air gap clearance between the rotor and the stator shall also be measured. A record shall be kept of these figures and they shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

(b) A horizontal sleeve bearing or limited end-float roller bearing motor shall be run uncoupled from its load to ensure that it rotates at the axial position indicated on the shaft and that the rotor is free to move to either side of this position. Particular attention shall be paid to ensure that the free running position and the rotor end-float are in agreement with the axial movement of the flexible coupling.

E01.25.4 Drying Out

(a) The Contractor shall dry out all motors larger than 100 kW and all smaller motors which have stood in the open during rain or have been flooded or whose cold insulation resistance is below 1.5 MΩ, before they are connected to the supply. If a motor is flooded, the motor bearings shall be replaced as a matter of urgency.

(b) The method of drying the motor shall be by placing the motor in a heating oven.

Sufficient heat shall be applied to produce a temperature of 60ºC but not greater than 80ºC for a Class A or 90º C for Class B insulation systems. Insulation resistance measurements and temperature readings shall be taken regularly every half hour at the start of dry-out until the motor attains an even temperature and thereafter every hour.

The characteristic dry-out curve of insulation resistance versus temperature shall be plotted and dry-out may be considered complete four hours after the resistance readings have started to rise from the steady minimum value, providing that the winding temperatures have remained steady during this period.

(c) The Contractor shall provide all equipment and the personnel required for the drying-out operation.

(d) In the case of motor smaller than 100kW, the onus remains on the Contractor to satisfy himself that a motor is dry before it is connected to the supply.

(e) Any motor, which fails as a result of being commissioned in a damp condition, shall be repaired at the cost of the Contractor.

E01.25.5 Double Shaft Extensions

The unused shaft extensions of a double-ended shaft motor shall be covered with an approved rust preventative after the motor is commissioned.

E01.26 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

The contractor must supply a Manufacturers Test Certificate with each motor supplied.

The contractor must do a visual inspection as well as an insulation test on each motor before installation.

The contractor must do a direction test on each motor before handing the installation over. Where equipment can be damaged when rotated in an incorrect direction, the equipment must be disconnected from the motor before the direction check is done.

All test results must recorded and submitted to the Engineer for approval. The Engineer must be informed timeously off all tests to allow witnessing.

E01.27 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for electric motors for equipment unless otherwise specified in the detail specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with such motors shall be deemed included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for electric motors and specified as such in the detail

specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery electric motors	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of motors supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the design, manufacture, corrosion protection, supply, handling, transport, testing and delivery of each complete motor as specified in the detail specification to ensure satisfactory operation after installation.

Separate items will be scheduled for different sizes/types of motors required.

Item	**Unit**
Installation, test and commission of electric motors	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of motors installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation and coupling of the motor to the required load. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for all required installation material.

Separate items will be scheduled for different sizes/types of motors required.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E02 : ELECTRICAL CABLE RACKS

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (Pty) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E02 : Electrical Cable Racks**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E02**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
5	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
4	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2010-05-03		Review Electrical Standards
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E02: ELECTRICAL CABLE RACKS

CONTENTS

E02.1 SCOPE 3
E02.1.1 Statutory Documents and Standards 3
E02.1.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications 3

E02.2 CABLE LADDER MATERIAL 3

E02.3 CABLE LADDER ACCESSORIES 4
E02.3.1 General 4

E02.4 INSTALLATION 4

E02.5 EARTH BONDING OF CABLE RACKING 5

E02.6 CORROSION PROTECTION 5
E02.6.1 Powder Coating Systems 5

E02.7 INSPECTION 6

E02.8 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 6

E02.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the supply, delivery and installation of cable ladders for industrial installations. Only cable ladders are to be supplied. Cable trays shall not be acceptable. Cable ladders are not recommended for large cables and open ground as they expose the cable to theft.

E02.1.1 Statutory Documents and Standards

Cable ladders shall be manufactured in accordance with the requirements of the latest editions of the following standards:

(a) SANS 10044	:	Welding
(b) SANS 10064	:	Preparation of steel surfaces for coating
(c) SANS 1274	:	Coatings applied by the powder process
(d) SANS 10162-1	:	The structural use of steel Part 1: Limit-states design of hot-rolled steelwork
(e) SANS 10162-2	:	The structural use of steel Part 2: Limit-states design of cold-formed steelwork
(f) SANS 10162-4	:	The structural use of steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural members
(g) SANS 10142-1	:	The wiring of premises Part 1 – Low voltage Installations

E02.1.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

(a) E06	:	ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION

E02.2 CABLE LADDER MATERIAL

All cable ladders shall, unless otherwise specified, be heavy-duty cable ladder standard pattern.

Cable ladders used inside Elutriation Terrace pump stations or in areas within 50m or less of Ferric Chloride, Hypochlorite or Chlorine shall be manufactured from corrosion resistant GRP (Glass Reinforced Polyester) in which vinylester resin is used. All GRP cable ladders shall consist of a 75 mm high side rail. The minimum thickness of the material that the cable rack is to be manufactured from, shall at least be 4mm. Cross rungs shall be spaced at maximum intervals of 300 mm (centre-to-centre). All screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be 316 grade stainless steel for all applications, except for Ferric Chloride areas, where 304 grade stainless steel must be used. Racks for instrumentation and control cabling shall contain pigmentation to produce an electric orange rack. A sample of the rack material must be approved by the engineer before manufacturing commences. Sections of rack, bends, t-pieces etc. shall be joined together with the correct dowels and resins as specified by the supplier. Wherever racking is drilled or cut, the exposed areas of GRP must be sealed with the same resin to ensure that the material does not fray. Channels or other sections used for securing of cable ladders should as far as possible be made from the same GRP material. Where this is not possible, 316 grade stainless steel support systems shall be used for all applications, except for Ferric Chloride areas, where 304 grade stainless steel must be used.

Cable ladders used inside de-watering buildings shall be metal cable ladders, manufactured from corrosion resistant, powder coated, 3CR12 grade stainless steel. All cable ladders shall consist of at least 75 mm high side rail. The minimum sheet thickness of the material that the cable rack

is to be manufactured from shall at least be 2mm. Cross rungs shall be spaced at maximum intervals of 300 mm (centre-to-centre). All screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be 316 grade stainless steel. Metal racks for instrumentation and control cabling shall be powder coated electric orange. If GRP ladder racking (as described in item 6.5.2 above) is cheaper than 3CR12 grade ladder racking, the GRP racking should be used inside de-watering buildings as well.

Cable ladders used for all applications other than those mentioned above shall be heavy-duty metal cable ladders, manufactured from 3CR12 grade, powder coated, stainless steel. All metal cable ladders shall consist of at least 75 mm high side rail. The minimum sheet thickness of the material that the cable rack is to be manufactured from shall at least be 3mm. Cross rungs shall be spaced at maximum intervals of 300 mm (centre-to-centre). All screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be 316 grade stainless steel. Racks for instrumentation and control cabling shall be powder coated electric orange.

E02.3 CABLE LADDER ACCESSORIES

E02.3.1 General

Cable ladder accessories shall be considered to be horizontal bends, vertical bends, internal bends, external bends, Tee-pieces, cross-pieces, reducers (transition pieces), support struts and fasteners. The accessories shall have dimensions that correspond to the dimensions of the linear sections to which they are connected. The radii of all bends shall be 1 m minimum.

The inside dimensions of horizontal angles or connections shall be large enough to ensure that the allowable bending radius of the cables are not exceeded. Sharp angles shall be 45º metered.

E02.4 INSTALLATION

Cable ladders shall be installed within accessible civil constructed cable ducts. These ducts may form part of the scope of works or may be existing.

Cable ladders are required to be installed within the cable ducts in the motor control centre rooms, on site electrical reticulation, and on access platforms to the mechanical equipment.

Cable ladders shall be installed within accessible cable ducts and shall be supported by a strut channel section securely fixed to the wall. The corrosion protection shall be of the same system as that of the cable ladder. Only vertical installation of cable ladder will be allowed in cable ducts. All cable must be installed on cable ladders and no loose cables will be accepted.

Cable ladders shall be supported with the struts, channels, brackets, clamps, cantilever arms and nuts/bolts/washers. Unless otherwise agreed, drilling into or welding onto metal columns, trusses and other metal building structures are not allowed and suitable clamps must be used to fix the cable ladders to the building structure.

The platform mounted cable ladder reticulation shall be installed at minimum of 150 mm from the supporting concrete structure.

Crevice corrosion of the metal elements in contact with concrete surface shall be eliminated by means of a suitable layer of non-shrink grouting.

Unless otherwise agreed, all screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be stainless steel 316.

All cable ladders shall be spliced with splice sets. The corrosion protection of splices shall be of the same system as that of the cable ladder.

All cable racks not installed in closed ducts or inside buildings will be installed with flat (vertical installation) or peaked covers (horizontal installation). The corrosion protection of covers shall be of the same system as that of the cable ladder.

All cable ducting must be covered with anti-theft covers. All exposed cable on cable ladders must

be covered with anti-theft covers.

All overhead cable ladders crossing a walkway must be at least 2000mm above floor level.

Structural designs must be done for any cable bridges. Support material must be corrosion protected to the same standard as the cable ladder. The design must be approved by the Engineer.

E02.5 EARTH BONDING OF CABLE RACKING

All cable rack joints must be equipotential bonded. Both the ends of cable racking must be bonded to an equipotential bonding bar. Where cable racks enter a lighting protected structure, the bonding conductor must be connected to the rack as close as possible to the point of entrance. All bonding conductors must be equal to 6 sq. mm copper PVC insulated wire.

The bonding conductor cable will be a composite stranded cable made up of tinned copper wires and galvanised steel wires that are braided-interwoven to form the cable. The complex braided and interwoven wires of steel and copper make it very difficult to separate and is unattractive and uneconomical to copper thieves and scrap dealers. The conductor must be insulated in clear PVC.

E02.6 CORROSION PROTECTION

All cable ladders and the cable ladder accessories shall be coated as specified below.

The preparation of the metal surfaces of the cable ladders and cable ladder accessories shall be in accordance with the latest edition of SANS 10064, prior to the application of protective coating.

Corrosion protection shall conform to the coating system stated below:

E02.6.1 Powder Coating Systems

All cable ladder shall be coated in the colour B26 – orange

E02.6.1.1 Paint System 1: Powder Coating, seven (7) stage zinc phosphate treatment, pure epoxy primer, polyester finishing coat, thickness 140 µm.

Paint System	Host Material	Preparation	Primer Coat	Finishing Coat	Dry film Thickness
			(70 µm)	(70 µm)	(µm)
No 1	304 L SS	7 stage zinc phosphate pre-treatment	Epoxy	Epoxy	140

E02.6.1.2 Upon the completion of the corrosion protection specified, the Contractor shall be required to perform the following quality control testing procedures:-

- Impact testing in accordance with SABS 6: Part J,
- Cross hatch adhesion test
- Bend test

E02.6.1.3 The corrosion protection shall form part of the quality control system as approved by the Engineer and the Tenderer shall submit a certificate of compliance upon the delivery of all cable rack supplied. The tenderer will supply a sample of all cable rack to Johannesburg Water for testing purposes.

E02.6.1.4 Epoxy Powder Coat Products

Item	Product type	Powder – Lak
1	Epoxy primer	23-007
2	Pure Epoxy / Polyester finishing coat	Series 3000

E02.7 INSPECTION

After installation, a visual inspection should be conducted with the Engineer. The contractor must compile a butt list with all items not to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

E02.8 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Unit
Supply and deliver cable ladder	m

The unit of measurement shall be per linear length in meter of cable ladder supplied and delivered. Separate items shall be scheduled to include for each size of cable ladder required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete cable ladder.

Item	Unit
Install cable ladder	m

The unit of measurement shall be per linear meter of cable ladder installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of cable ladder installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the cable ladders installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver horizontal bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of horizontal bends supplied and delivered. Separate items shall be scheduled to include for each size of horizontal bend required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete horizontal bends.

Item **Unit**

Install horizontal bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of horizontal bends installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size horizontal bend installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the horizontal bends installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver vertical bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of vertical bends supplied and delivered. Separate items shall be scheduled to include for each size of vertical bend required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete vertical bends.

Item **Unit**

Install vertical bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of vertical bends installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of vertical bend installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the vertical bends installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver internal bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of internal bends supplied and delivered. Separate items shall be scheduled to include for each size of internal bend required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete internal bends.

Item **Unit**

Install internal bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of internal bends installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of internal bend installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the internal bends installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver external bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of external bends supplied and delivered. Separate

items shall be scheduled to include for each size of external bend required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete external bends.

Item **Unit**

Install external bends ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of external bends installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of external bend installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the external bends installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver Tee-pieces ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of Tee-pieces supplied and delivered. Separate items shall be scheduled to include for each size of Tee-piece required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete Tee-pieces.

Item **Unit**

Install Tee-pieces ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of Tee-pieces installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of Tee-pieces installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the Tee-pieces installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver cross-pieces ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of cross-pieces supplied and delivered. Separate items shall be scheduled to include for each size of cross-piece required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete cross-pieces.

Item **Unit**

Install deliver cross-pieces ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of cross-pieces installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of cross-pieces installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the cross-pieces installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver reducers (transition-pieces) ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of transition pieces supplied and delivered. Separate items shall be scheduled to include for each size of transition-piece required under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the complete transition-pieces.

Item Unit

Install reducers (transition-pieces) ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of transition-pieces installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of transition-pieces installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, the cutting at points of change in direction, jointing, etc, for the complete installation and inspection of the transition-pieces installed under the Contract.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver cable ladder support struts material **m**

The unit of measurement shall be per linear meter of material supplied and delivered. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each size of cable ladder support struts supplied and delivered under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for the manufacture, supply, delivery, handling and inspection of the cable ladder support struts material.

Item **Unit**

Install cable ladder support struts **m**

The unit of measurement shall be per linear meter of material supplied and installed. Separate items will be scheduled in the Schedule of Quantities differentiating each cable ladder support struts installed under the Contract.

The tendered rates shall include for all labour, handling, cutting, welding, painting, drilling and mounting, etc., for the complete installation and inspection of the cable ladders support struts installed under the Contract.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E03 : ELECTRICAL ISOLATOR

PUSHBUTTON STATION

(LOCAL START/STOP) EQUIPMENT

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (Pty) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E03 : Electrical Isolator Pushbutton Station (Local Start/Stop) Equipment**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E03**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
5	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
4	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2010-05-03		Review Electrical Standards
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E03: ELECTRICAL ISOLATOR PUSHBUTTON STATION (LOCAL START/STOP) EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

E03.1 SCOPE....3

E03.2 STANDARDS....3

E03.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS....3
E03.3.1 Particular specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification....3
E03.3.2 General Requirements....3

E03.4 DIMENSION FOR ISOLATOR STATION....4

E03.5 FASTENERS....4

E03.6 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT....4

E03.1 SCOPE

This section covers the requirements for local isolator/start/stop pushbutton stations. Local isolator/start/stop pushbutton stations shall be supplied, delivered, installed and commissioned for each mechanical equipment driven by a motor.

E03.2 STANDARDS

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following particular national specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

(a) SANS 62262 : Degrees of protection provided by enclosures for electrical equipment against external mechanical impacts (IK code)

(b) SANS 60529 : Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)

(c) SANS 10142-1 : The wiring of premises Part 1 Low-voltage installations

(d) SANS 60439-1 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Assemblies Part 1 Type-tested and partially type-tested assemblies

(e) SANS 60439-2 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Assemblies Part 2 Particular requirements for busbar trunking systems (busways)

(f) SANS 60439-3 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Assemblies Part 3 Particular requirements for low-voltage switchgear and control gear assemblies intended to be installed in places where unskilled persons have access for their use - Distribution boards

(g) SANS 60947-1 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 1 General rules

(h) SANS 60947-2 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 2 Circuit breakers

(i) SANS 60947-3 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 3 Switches, disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and fuse-combination units

(j) BSI-BS 3858 : Specification for Binding and identification sleeves for use on electric cables and wires

(k) SANS 1091 : National colour standard

E03.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

E03.3.1 Particular specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-
E26: ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATION FOR COLOUR CODES
G02: PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION FOR CORROSION PROTECTION
E08: WIRING

E03.3.2 General Requirements

(a) The enclosure will be manufactured from 3CR12 stainless steel.
(b) The enclosure will be rated IP65 to SANS 60529 and shall be fitted with a canopy.
(c) The enclosure shall be painted electric orange (B26).
(d) The Isolator Pushbutton Station will be equipped with

- A green flush START pushbutton with spring return. In case of a bidirectional drive a START FORWARD and START REVERSE pushbutton will be installed;
- A red flush STOP pushbutton with spring return;
- A red mushroom head EMERGENCY STOP button with mechanical latching, turn to release. The emergency stop pushbutton will be lockable (key reset) and not a padlockable unit. This will not be a lockout point, but will be used for Process use only.
- A three-pole non-fusible disconnect switch complete with a shaft extension and a door interlocked red and yellow padlockable rotary handle mounted on the door. The current rating of the disconnect switch must match the motor rating as specified in the motor equipment schedule (rated for on-load conditions).
- All equipment must be installed in one box (power and control).

(e) The Isolator Pushbutton Station will be clearly labelled with an identity label, engraved with 30mm high black on white characters, and shall be mounted on top of the enclosure. The name of the associated drive will be shown.

(e) All pushbuttons shall be labelled with an identity label, engraved with 10mm high black on white characters and shall be mounted above the pushbutton.

(f) The Isolator Pushbutton Station shall be mounted within a radius of 1000mm maximum from o the associated drive. If this is not possible, the Engineer will indicate the position of the Pushbutton Station.

(g) The station shall be pedestal mounted at least 1100mm above floor level. The pedestal design shall be approved by the Engineer.

(h) The pedestal base plate shall be installed on 10mm of epoxy grout to prevent crack corrosion.

(i) The pedestal material shall be Stainless steel (3CR12) and have minimum thickness of 6mm. The pedestal shall be painted electric orange (B26).

(j) The station enclosure shall be designed to provide adequate space for the following:

- The required pushbuttons, the disconnect switch and the respective labels.
- A single multi-core control cable (including glanding) shall be installed from the MCC to the station, from where the required signals shall be individually wired, as per the cable schedule.
- Power cable/s (including glanding) shall be installed from the MCC to the station, providing power to the associated motor, as per the cable schedule.

E03.4 DIMENSION FOR ISOLATOR STATION

The dimensions of the start/stop isolator pushbutton stations shall allow ample space to accommodate all the equipment, taking into account the bending radius of all cables and minimum clearances. The contractor must supply design drawings of the Isolator Pushbutton Station to Johannesburg Water or their representative for approval prior to manufacturing.

E03.5 FASTENERS

All fasteners in concrete shall be 316 stainless steel. Pedestal bases shall be sealed against the ingress of any crevice corrosion by means of a suitable non-shrink cementitious grout and approved by the Engineer.

E03.6 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery of local start/stop isolator pushbutton stations	No

The unit of measure shall be the number of stations supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include all costs related to the manufacture, supply and delivery of the local start/stop isolator pushbutton or control stations (as detailed in the schedule of quantities), including support pedestal in accordance with this specification and the additional requirements detailed in the detail specification complete with all mounting brackets.

Separate items will be scheduled in the schedule of quantities for different types and sizes, defined by the kW rating of the driven equipment, of pushbutton / control stations.

Item **Unit**

Install local start/stop isolator pushbutton stations ..... No

The unit of measure shall be the number of stations installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for installing, testing and commissioning of the local start/stop isolator or control stations as specified. The rate shall further include for pedestal support securing and sealing preventing crevice corrosion.

Separate items will be scheduled in the schedule of quantities for different types of pushbutton / control stations.

Separate items will be scheduled in the schedule of quantities for different types and sizes, defined by the kW rating of the driven equipment, of pushbutton / control stations.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E04 : ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION BOARDS AND MOTOR CONTROL CENTRES

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 6

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E04 : Electrical Low Voltage Distribution Boards and Motor Control Centres**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E04**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
6	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
5	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
4	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2011-08-30		Omit Fifa Logo
2	2010-05-30		Review Electrical Standards
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E04: ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION BOARDS AND MOTOR CONTROL CENTRES

CONTENTS

E04.1 INTRODUCTION....4

E04.2 SCOPE....4
E04.2.1 General....4
E04.2.2 Work to be Included....4

E04.3 STANDARDS....4
E04.3.1 Particular specifications to read in conjunction with this specification....6
E04.3.2 Mandatory Requirements....6

E04.4 SYSTEM DETAIL....6

E04.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS....6
E04.5.1 Manufacturing and Construction Details....6
E04.5.2 Electrical Details....11
E04.5.3 Mounting of Equipment....17

E04.6 MOTOR CONTROL CENTRE....18
E04.6.1 MCC Buckets....19
E04.6.2 Busbars....19
E04.6.3 Earth bar....19
E04.6.4 Power wiring....19
E04.6.5 Circuit Breakers....19
E04.6.6 Instruments and Meters....19

E04.7 MAIN DISTRIBUTION BOARD....20
E04.7.1 Busbars....20
E04.7.2 Earth bar....20
E04.7.3 Power wiring....20
E04.7.4 Circuit Breakers....20
E04.7.5 Instruments and Meters....20

E04.8 AUXILIARY DISTRIBUTION BOARD....20
E04.8.1 Busbars....20
E04.8.2 Earth bar....21
E04.8.3 Power wiring....21
E04.8.4 Circuit Breakers....21
E04.8.5 Instruments and Meters....21

E04.9 FLUSH MOUNTED DISTRIBUTION BOARD....21
E04.9.1 Internal for of Separation....21
E04.9.2 Bonding Tray....21
E04.9.3 Expanded Metal....21
E04.9.4 Knock-Outs....22
E04.9.5 Architrave Frame....22
E04.9.6 Extension Frames....22
E04.9.7 Chassis....22
E04.9.8 Panel (Faceplate)....22
E04.9.9 Fixing of Panels....22
E04.9.10 Panel Handles....23
E04.9.11 Hinged Panels....23

E04.10 SURFACE MOUNTED DISTRIBUTION BOARD....23
E04.10.1 Internal for of Separation....23
E04.10.2 Switchboard Tray....23
E04.10.3 Construction....23

E04.11 LV KIOSKS (SWITCH CUBICLES)....23

E04.11.1 Framework....23
E04.11.2 Ventilation....24
E04.11.3 Doors....24
E04.11.4 Warning Sign....24
E04.11.5 Base....24

E04.12 STANDBY SUPPLIES....24

E04.13 ELECTRICAL SUBSTATION FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM....24
E04.13.1 Fire Detection System....25
E04.13.2 Fire Extinguishing System....25
E04.13.3 Other measures....25
E04.13.4 System Maintenance....26

E04.14 QA REQUIREMENTS....26

E04.15 DRAWINGS AND DATA....27

E04.16 PAINTING AND PROTECTIVE COATING....28
E04.16.1 Powder Coating Systems....28
E04.16.2 Epoxy Powder Coat Products....28
E04.16.3 General....28

E04.17 PERFORMANCE AND GUARANTEE....29

E04.18 INSPECTION AND TESTING....29
E04.18.1 Factory Acceptance Test....29
E04.18.2 Site Acceptance Test and Commissioning....31

E04.19 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT....33

E04.1 INTRODUCTION

This specification is for the supply of low voltage (400V) distribution switchboards.

E04.2 SCOPE

E04.2.1 General

The scope of work includes the furnishing of all labour, material and services for the design, supply, manufacture, testing and inspection at works, delivery to site, off-loading and rectification of defects developing during the warranty period for equipment as specified below.

E04.2.2 Work to be Included

The work includes, but shall not be limited to the items listed below.-

(a) All work in E04.2.1 above.

(b) Documentation, as called for in the vendor QA and document requirement list and drawings and data.

(c) The supply of one complete set of any special tools required per switchboard that will be required for operation or maintenance purposes, including three spare sets of each type of fuse.

(d) Recommended spares for one year's operating period and the prices of it.

(e) Technical assistance if requested during checking for operational readiness.

E04.3 STANDARDS

In general, work and materials shall be in accordance with the latest practice and in particular in accordance with the latest revision of the following specifications, and any amendments thereto, the SANS specification taking precedence:

(a) SANS 10142-1 : The wiring of premises Part 1: Low-voltage installations

(b) SANS 60439-1 : Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies Part 1: Type-tested and partially type-tested assemblies

(c) SANS 60439-2 : Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies Part 2: Particular requirements for busbar trunking systems (busways)

(d) SANS 60439-3 : Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies Part 3: Particular requirements for low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies intended to be installed in places where unskilled persons have access for their use - Distribution boards

(e) SANS 1973-1 : Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear Assemblies Part 1: Type-tested ASSEMBLIES with stated deviations and a rated short-circuit withstand strength above 10 kA

(f) SANS 60947-1 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 1: General rules

(g) SANS 60947-2 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 2: Circuit-breakers

(h) SANS 60947-3 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 3 Switches, disconnectors, switch-disconnectors and fuse-combination units

(i) SANS 60947-4.1 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 4-1: Contactors and motor-starters - Electromechanical contactors and motor-starters

(j) SANS 60947-4.2 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 4-2: Contactors and motor-starters - AC semiconductor motor controllers and starters

(k) SANS 60947-4-3 : Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 4-3: Contactors and motor-starters - AC semiconductor controllers and contactors

			for non-motor loads
(l)	SANS 60947-5-1	:	Low-voltage Switchgear and Control gear Part 5-1: Control circuit devices and switching elements - Electromechanical control circuit devices
(m)	SANS 62262	:	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures for electrical equipment against external mechanical impacts (IK code)
(n)	SANS 60529	:	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP code)
(o)	IEC 60228	:	Conductors of insulated cables
(p)	BSS 3858	:	Binding and identification sleeves for use on electric cables and wires
(q)	SANS 1507-1	:	Electric cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500 V to 1 900/3 300 V) Part 1: General
(r)	SANS 1507-2	:	Electric cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500 V to 1 900/3 300 V) Part 2: Wiring cables
(s)	SANS 1574-1	:	Electric Cables – Flexible Cords and Flexible Cables Part 1: General
(t)	SANS 1574-3	:	Electric Cables – Flexible Cords and Flexible Cables Part 3: PVC-insulated cables for industrial use
(u)	SANS 1619	:	Small power distribution units (ready-boards) for single-phase 230 V service connections
(v)	SANS 61643-11	:	Low-voltage surge protective devices Part 11: Surge protective devices connected to low-voltage power systems - Requirements and test methods
(w)	SANS 61643-12	:	Low-voltage surge protective devices Part 12: Surge protective devices connected to low-voltage power distribution systems - Selection and application principles
(x)	SANS 61238-1	:	Compression and mechanical connectors for power cables for rated voltages up to 30 kV (Um = 36 kV) Part 1: Test methods and requirements
(y)	SANS 60730-2-7	:	Automatic electrical controls for household and similar use Part 2-7: Particular requirements for timers and time switches
(z)	SANS 62053-61	:	Electricity metering equipment (a.c.) - Particular requirements Part 61: Power consumption and voltage requirements)
(aa)	BSS 1322	:	Aminoplastic Moulding Materials
(bb)	SANS 60076-1	:	Power transformers, Part 1: General
(cc)	SANS 1091	:	National colour standard
(dd)	SANS 61869-1	:	Instrument transformers Part 1: General requirements
(ee)	SANS 61869-2	:	Instrument transformers Part 2: Additional requirements for current transformers
(ff)	SANS 61869-3	:	Instrument transformers Part 3: Additional requirements for inductive voltage transformers
(gg)	IEC 60051/BS 89	:	Direct acting indicating analogue electrical measuring instruments and their accessories. Specification for special requirements for ammeters and voltmeters
(hh)	BS EN 60255	:	Measuring relays and protection equipment. Common requirements
(ii)	SANS 156	:	Moulded-case circuit-breakers
(jj)	SANS 1195	:	Busbars
(kk)	BS159	:	High-voltage busbars and busbar connections

E04.3.1 Particular specifications to read in conjunction with this specification

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-
E26: ELECTRICAL COLOUR CODING OF EQUIPMENT
G02: PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION FOR CORROSION PROTECTION
E06: ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION
E08: WIRING

E04.3.2 Mandatory Requirements

All equipment and services shall comply with the mandatory requirements of:

(a) Occupational Health and Safety Act 85 of 1993 (as amended).

E04.4 SYSTEM DETAIL

Busbar voltage	400V ±10% as per system voltage on the site
Frequency	50 Hz
Phase rotation	R-Y-B-R
Phases	3Ph+N, with Protective Earth (PE)
Earthing system	TN-S

E04.5 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

This section will be applicable to the following equipment:

(a) Motor Control Centres (MCC).

(b) Main Distribution Boards (MDB).

(c) Auxiliary Distribution Boards (ADB).

The following is described in separate sections:

(a) Flush Mounted Distribution Boards.

(b) Surface Mounted Distribution Boards

(c) LV Kiosks (Switch Cubicles)

E04.5.1 Manufacturing and Construction Details

E04.5.1.1 General

(a) Electrical panels will be floor standing unless specified differently.

(b) All floor-standing switchboards will be positioned above a cable trench with bottom entry cables.

(c) Electrical switchboards positioned inside Electrical Distribution/MCC rooms shall be manufactured with 2mm thick mild steel.

(d) Electrical switchboards positioned outside Electrical Distribution/MCC rooms shall be manufactured from 2mm thick stainless steel (3CR12) as a minimum. Heaters will be installed in the switchboards to prevent condensation.

(e) In special applications, the Electrical switchboards will be manufactured to the Engineers specification.

(f) All switchboards shall be of ample size to accommodate all the specified switchgear and provide space for future switchgear. For every 4 (or part of 4) circuit breakers of a kind on a switchboard, space for an additional circuit breaker of similar size shall be allowed unless future space requirements are clearly specified.

(g) All specified external dimensions for switchboards shall be strictly adhered to.

(h) The Contractor or Manufacturer shall obtain the opinion of the Engineer before manufacturing any switchboard.

(i) The Contractor shall ascertain the exact position of switchboards and shall arrange timeously for the installation of cable sleeves, openings in the structure, flush draw trays behind switchboards and supports over cable trenches.

(j) In general, flush and surface mounted switchboards shall be mounted 2000mm above finished floor level - measured to the top of the switchboard. The upper ends of switchboards may not be higher than 2100mm above finished floor level.

(k) Unless otherwise agreed or stated in this Specification, all screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO metric commercial standards and shall be rustproof. Loose 'bolts and nuts' shall not be used on steelwork. Blind threaded fastening system bushings or equivalent shall be used for thread sizes M5 and above. Studs projecting from the exterior surfaces of the board shall have chrome or cadmium plated dome nuts. Self-tapping screws shall not be utilised for any purpose on any equipment.

(l) The short-circuit current levels as indicated on drawings shall be deemed the maximum fault current occurring at the panel under symmetrical short circuit conditions on the line side of the final limiting device in a circuit. The duration of the maximum short circuit currents shall be deemed a minimum of one second. Evidence (in the form of certificates from testing authorities recognised by Johannesburg Water) of the ability of the 400V switchboards offered to withstand satisfactorily the prospective fault conditions shall be furnished with the tender.

(m) Switchboards shall be designed to confine internal arcing faults and to direct arcs and gases arising from these away from the operator.

(n) The general structure of the panel shall be designed and fabricated to ensure that no excessive vibration caused by the operation of any component is transmitted to any other components, thereby causing spurious tripping of any device.

(o) Measures shall be taken to prevent electrolytic corrosion where dissimilar metals are in contact with each other.

(p) Bolts shall be of the correct size for the holes provided and shall be fitted with matching sizes of washers and lock washers. Where removable covers are provided with bolt fastening, the nuts shall be either welded in position or securely fixed by means of a mechanical fixing device. Self-tapping screws, captive head nuts or cage nuts are not acceptable.

E04.5.1.2 Panel Subdivision

(a) The Electrical panel will be constructed as one or more fully interchangeable modular, rigid, free standing columns, bolted together to form an extensible, composite, vermin proof unit of uniform appearance.

(b) Panels shall be designed to permit the addition of identical columns.

(c) Columns widths will be 600, 700, 800, 900 or 1000 mm for design flexibility. Columns will be 600 or 800mm deep. Increase in depth of certain sections of panels for high current ratings shall be subject to the Engineer's approval.

(d) The overall height of the column may not be more than 2300mm.

(e) Each column shall be divided horizontally into buckets.

(f) Panels will be split into transportable section with lengths not exceeding 3000mm for ease of transportation.

(g) A channel iron frame (minimum 100mm x 50mm) shall be provided under each panel

section of transportable length, which shall be so constructed that it can be used for lifting the transportable section without distortion taking place.

(h) All panel section of transportable length shall be fitted with lifting lugs and shall have sufficient strength to withstand all stresses occurring during transportation, installation and operation without distortion or damage.

E04.5.1.3 Internal Form of Separation

(a) The minimum internal Forms of Separation for any Electrical switchboards shall be Form 3b, as described below:

i. Separation of busbars from all functional units;

ii. Separation of all functional units from one another;

iii. Separation of terminals for external conductors from the functional units, but not from those of other functional units;

iv. The power cable connections are disposed in the same compartment;

v. Maintenance services require extra care, as placed in the same compartment the connections of other units might be powered;

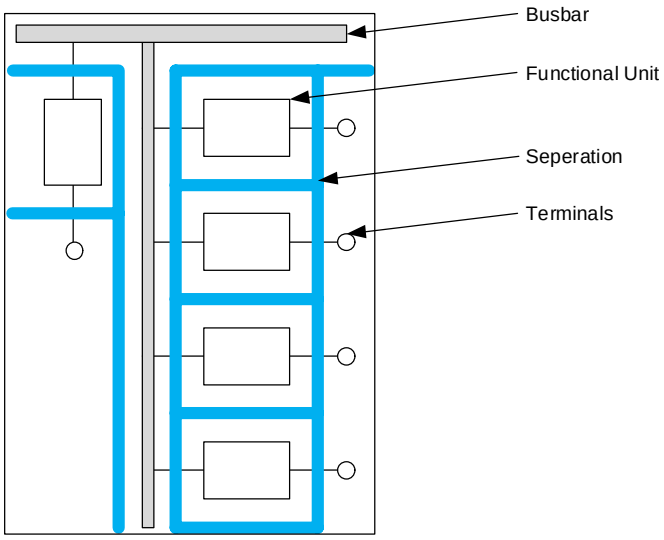


Figure 1: Form 3B

E04.5.1.4 Buckets

(a) Buckets will be equipped and wired as per the drawings issued by the Engineer.

(b) The buckets will be sized to accommodate all components with ease.

(c) Buckets will be fixed pattern with components permanently mounted to the chassis plate of the bucket.

(d) All bucket design and construction shall be based on natural cooling by convection or radiation. Attention shall be given to ventilation to prevent the accumulation of heat in buckets where power electronic drives (soft starters and VSD's) or other heat generating equipment (i.e. control transformers) are contained. Extraction ventilation fans should be installed in these cases to remove heat from the cubicle. The filtered extraction fan should be placed as high as possible in the compartment door with a filtered air inlet opening as low as possible in the compartment door. The fan and opening must be sized to ensure all generated heat is extracted from the bucket. Natural convection cooling will not be accepted.

(e) Spare buckets shall be equipped generally as detailed on the drawings issued by the

Engineer, and shall include all circuit breakers, busbars, wiring, instruments, etc., with the exception that, in the case of withdrawable circuit breakers, only the breaker cradle shall be furnished.

E04.5.1.5 Doors

(a) Buckets shall have doors suitably constructed to ensure rigidity and shall be a neat fit in the framework and around the circuit breaker escutcheon plate.

(b) Doors shall be fitted with robust steel or brass hinges with at least two 6mm square recessed quick close/open latches. Hinges shall be provided at 500mm intervals per door with a minimum of two hinges per door. Each door shall be fitted with an equal number of hinges and latches. At least one of these latches shall be lockable with a padlock.

(c) Doors and covers shall be provided with a high-density neoprene gasket to form a firm seal. The neoprene seal shall be a nominal 5mm thick compressed to 3mm on closing of the door. The entire switchboard shall be effectively dust and splash proof to IP 54.

(d) All hinged doors shall be fitted with a robust mechanism to latch and hold the door in the wide-open position, to minimise inadvertent contact with live parts during maintenance operations.

(e) All hinged doors shall open to a minimum of 135° from the closed position, to facilitate easy access for maintenance.

(f) Doors should be the same width as the MCC column. A single door shall not exceed the width of 800mm. Where the column width exceeds 800mm, two doors must be installed.

(g) The Bucket door shall be interlocked with the circuit breakers to prevent opening of the door when the circuit breaker is in the "ON" position. A non-apparent door interlock defeat shall be provided for the opening of the door with the circuit breaker in the “ON” position for testing and maintenance. In addition, there shall be provision for attaching a padlock to the operating handle in the “OFF” position that prevent the circuit breaker from being operated. Should more than one padlock be fitted, a safety lockout hasp must be used.

(h) All access doors are to be effectively and permanently earthed to the main panel enclosure, by means of a suitable braided copper earth strap, not less than 6mm^2, crimped with properly sized lugs and bolted at each end to the door and enclosure.

(i) All equipment mounted on bucket door will be flush mounted.

E04.5.1.6 Busbar Compartments

(a) The Busbar compartment shall contain the three phases and the neutral busbars, duly marked L1, L2, L3 and N or identifiable by colour coding Red, White, Blue and Black.

(b) The protective earth busbar shall be located in a separate compartment, and shall be duly marked PE.

(c) Provision shall be made for expansion or contraction of the busbars and the housing due to loadings, temperature changes and short circuit conditions. The busbars shall allow for expansion on both the left and right-hand side.

(d) The busbar compartment shall have bolted covers on the front of the panel for access to the busbars, insulators and joints. Removable covers shall be provided with captive screws.

(e) All busbars and droppers shall be securely supported by heavy, high di-electric, non-hygroscopic material with bracing to withstand stresses due to short circuits of one second duration and at least equal to the interrupting rating of the circuit breaker protecting the busbars.

(f) Busbar standoff insulators and support will be injection moulded (Polyamide 66 fibreglass reinforced (30%) (Halogen free)). Threaded inserts will be galvanized steel.

(g) The Busbar shall be supported by insulators made of flameproof and leakage-proof

material. Busbars, insulators and supports shall be braced to withstand the mechanical and thermal effects of fault currents.

(h) Busbar insulators shall be mounted in such a way that they can be easily removed and replaced.

(i) In addition to any support/bracing required by the electrical conditions, the busbars shall also have sufficient support to prevent stresses being transmitted to the circuit breakers or any components by cable terminations. Particular attention must be paid to the termination arrangements of any multiple incoming three-core cables to ensure adequate glanding space.

(j) The following minimum air clearances shall be observed for busbars and other current carrying or live parts:

i. Phase – Earth : 30mm

ii. Phase – Phase : 45mm

Where these clearances cannot be attained, suitable insulating barriers shall be employed In addition, all busbar work (including connections to, from and between equipment) shall have applied solid insulation suitable for the rated voltages. GPO-3 (Glass Polymer laminate) insulation shall be used wherever possible. GPO-3 is constructed with fiberglass-reinforced thermoset polyesters. It must feature a combination of beneficial electrical and mechanical properties. These attributes include Dielectric strength, flame resistance, arc and track resistance, high-flex strength and high-impact strength. They maintain stability, will not melt under heat and have excellent overall electrical properties.

(k) The busbar compartment shall be constructed to ensure that fire or other faults cannot spread between the various sections. All insulation used on electrical conductors/connections and wiring shall be flame retardant types, constructed of low toxicity materials.

(l) The busbar compartment must have suitable sealing arrangement at each end as well as between the busbar compartment and buckets.

E04.5.1.7 Cable termination points

(a) Suitable termination points shall be provided to enable any multiple three-core cables to be terminated without cross-overs of different phases and with minimum lengths of cable "tails".

(b) All cable termination points and associated connections shall be suitably braced to withstand the available fault currents without damage. If necessary cable support clamps shall be provided for the individual cable tails after the cable gland.

E04.5.1.8 Cable Gland Plates

(a) Sectionalised removable gland plates shall be fitted and shall be fixed by means of captive nuts or screws and so located that ample space is available for the satisfactory entry and termination of cables

(b) Cable entry shall be at the bottom of the board.

(c) All gland plates are to be connected to the main panel earth bar via suitably sized copper conductors and unused sections shall be left blank.

(d) Gland plates for three-core cable of cross-sectional area 70mm^2 and above shall be minimum 5mm thickness.

(e) Mild steel gland plates shall be galvanised.

(f) Where single core cables are used, gland plates are to be of non-magnetic material or slit to mitigate effect of eddy currents.

(g) The cable gland compartments shall have removable covers attached with standard 6mm

square recessed quick close/open latches.

E04.5.1.9 Labelling and markings

(a) The panel shall be provided with an identity label, engraved with 30mm high black on white characters and shall be mounted on top of the switchgear.

(b) Each buckets shall be labelled on the left top door corner with the reference letter(s) of that compartment, using durable designation label with 30mm high black letters on a white background. The labels shall have two designation letters, the first referring the column, numbered from A, left to right and the second referring to the bucket, numbered from 1 top to bottom.

(c) All buckets shall be clearly labelled with suitable inscriptions indicating their function. All labels shall have black characters at least 6mm high on white background.

(d) Incomers shall be labelled "Incomer from ……....” as indicated on the drawings issued by the Engineer, using engraved black characters at least 6mm high on white background.

(e) Standby bus coupler (where applicable) shall be labelled "Standby Bus Coupler", using engraved black characters at least 6mm high on white background.

(f) All removable covers protecting live equipment shall be fitted with warning labels as well as ID tags to ensure the covers are replaced in the original position after removal. Warning labels shall be engraved white characters 6mm high on a red background.

(g) All electrical components/equipment shall be labelled (with designations corresponding to those of the Engineer’s schematic diagrams) to facilitate recognition.

(h) The labels for equipment mounted on doors shall be identified with white trifoliate labels having black lettering engraved on them, with a maximum height of 3mm letters.

(i) The equipment labels shall be secured by means of high quality double-sided tape.

(j) The labels for all equipment, installed behind panels, shall be fixed to the chassis close to the equipment.

(k) If this equipment is positioned too close to each other to accommodate descriptive engraved labels, the equipment may be identified by a code or number label, which shall be fixed close to the equipment. The code or number shall be identified on a legend board, which shall be installed on the switchboard behind a protective cover.

(l) The types of labels for equipment behind the doors or covers shall be subject to the Engineer's approval.

(m) Danger labels shall be white lettering 6mm high engraved on a red background.

(n) All labels and label brackets shall be affixed by machine screws. Adhesive labels are not acceptable.

(o) Over and above labelling requirements of this specification, the labelling requirements of SANS 10142-1 must be met.

E04.5.1.10 Insulation Materials

(a) Any insulation, filling putty, etc., used shall be selected such that it can withstand without harmful effect (mechanically or electrically), all temperatures encountered within the MCC.

E04.5.2 Electrical Details

E04.5.2.1 Busbars and Connections

(a) Busbars and connections shall generally comply with SANS 1195 for air clearances. Notwithstanding the contents of the above-mentioned specifications, all solid copper work shall be made of hard drawn high conductivity copper of constant cross-section throughout

their lengths with a maximum design current density of 1,66A/mm².

(b) The Phase and Neutral busbars shall be manufactured with flat copper bars with a standard rectangular conductor profile, of the same cross-section over the whole width of the panel.

(c) Busbar droppers shall be manufactured with flat copper bars with a standard rectangular conductor profile, of the same cross-section over the whole length of the dropper. The use of flexible conductors as droppers from the main busbars to circuit breakers shall not be permitted.

(d) All busbar joints shall be silver plated or tinplated. High pressure bolted lap joints shall be used and all bolts shall be of the high tensile type.

(e) All fixed busbar joints (separation links) between adjacent sections shall be maintenance-free.

E04.5.2.2 Earth Bar

(a) A protective earth bar shall extend the whole length of each Electrical panel and shall be duly marked PE. The earth bar shall at least, be bolted to the switchgear housing at each column.

(b) Stranded clear insulated aluminium earth wire (equal to 70mm^2 copper wire) with crimp type terminals shall be provided at both ends of the protective earth bar for connection to the substation earth bar/earthing system.

E04.5.2.3 Control Wiring

(a) Each Electrical panel shall be equipped and completely wired at the factory and, only after satisfactory testing, be split, if necessary, for transportation.

(b) Control and instrumentation wiring shall be silicone insulated throughout and of flexible, stranded, annealed, untinned copper construction. All wiring shall comply with the table below. Conductors shall comply with SANS 1411, Part 1, Table 4, Class 5.

CT Wiring	-	2.5mm^2 phase coloured, common return black insulated, earth green/yellow
General Control Wiring	-	(AC) 1.0mm^2 grey
	-	(DC) 2.5mm^2 (positive – red, negative – black)
Control Neutral	-	(AC) 1.0mm^2 (same size as phase wiring) – black
LED's and PLC Inputs	-	(AC) 0.75mm^2 grey
	-	(DC) 0.75mm^2 (positive – red, negative – black)

(c) Notwithstanding the above-mentioned requirements, the vendor shall ensure wire size used is amply rated for the applicable current, under ambient conditions.

(d) All control/instrument panel wiring shall terminate by means of suitably sized compression crimp lugs on screw-type terminals. Terminals of the pressure pad type are not accepted. The minimum voltage rating of the control wiring shall be 600/1000V grade to SANS 1507 and SANS 1411 Parts 1 and 3.

(e) Wiring shall be run in plastic trunking. Only where a space problem exists will loomed wiring be acceptable.

Note: Stick-on harness holders are not acceptable.

(f) Conductors passing through holes in compartments shall be protected by means of neoprene grommets. Bevelling of sheet steel will not be accepted as a substitute.

(g) Conductors shall be general-purpose 600/1000V grade PVC-insulated copper wire to SANS 1507 and SANS 1574. Aluminium conductors are not acceptable.

(h) Single or solid conductor wire shall not be used.

(i) Joints or splices in any wiring are not acceptable.

(j) Panel and equipment terminals, labels, etc., shall be accessible after the wiring has been completed.

(k) Connections to equipment on swing doors shall be arranged to give a twisting motion and not a bending motion to the conductor.

(l) Single pole and double pole moulded-case circuit breakers shall be wired in a way that the supply to the switchboard is equally balanced.

(m) Stripping of insulation shall not result in damage to the conductors. The stripping tools used shall be of the type, which permits the length of strip to be pre-set. Control wiring shall be terminated with pre-insulated, crimped or compression type lugs. Crimping tools shall be of the type, which will not release the termination during normal operation until the conductor crimp has been correctly formed. Any damaged wiring will be rejected.

(n) Lugs shall be of the hooked blade type when used in conjunction with screw clamp spring loaded insertion type terminals, ring tongue type when used with stud or direct screw mounted connections and wire pin when used with pinch screw type connections such as indicating lamp fittings.

(o) Not more than two conductors shall be connected to any side of a terminal.

(p) Each terminal strip shall be provided with not less than 10% spare terminals, with a minimum of two, unless otherwise approved.

E04.5.2.4 Power Wiring and Cable Terminations

(a) Power wiring on the "live" side of the circuit breakers (from the busbar dropper to the circuit breaker terminals) shall be as short as possible, sized to carry the maximum current continuously of the frame size of the respective circuit breaker and shall be a flexible copper conductor. The flexible connection shall be provided on all such connections and shall be designed to prevent the transmission of any forces that may arise between the busbar droppers and the circuit breaker. In terms of SANS 60439, this connection is deemed a fault free zone and the design and use of the flexibles shall in no manner compromise this zone.

(b) Power wiring on the "load" side of the circuit breaker terminals to cable termination terminal shall be as short as possible, sized to carry the maximum current continuously of the frame size of the respective breaker and shall be a flexible conductor. The flexible connection shall be provided on all such connections and shall be designed to prevent the transmission of any forces that may arise between the circuit breaker and the cable termination terminal. In terms of SANS 60439, this connection is deemed a fault free zone and the design and use of the flexibles shall in no manner compromise this zone.

(c) Terminals that are on the live side of fuses and isolating switches shall be completely shrouded to prevent accidental contact.

(d) Power circuit wiring and connections in a switchboard shall be rated to the full frame size rating of the associated equipment, i.e. fused switch, contactor, circuit breaker, etc., and not to the circuit or fuse rating.

(e) Power wires shall bear the colour along their entire length of the phase to which they are connected.

(f) Neutral connections shall have the same rating as the phase connections unless otherwise

approved.

(g) Power wiring terminations shall use an appropriate crimped accessory (the pressed tubular type of accessories). Stamped, folded, split-barrel type accessories are not acceptable.

(h) Terminations for power wiring and cabling shall be provided with pressure type clamping connections or bolted connections capable of accepting crimped or compression type lugs on conductors.

(i) In addition, hexagonal die type hydraulic crimping shall be used for all wiring greater than 16mm² in size.

(j) Cables shall be made off directly onto circuit breakers, switches, contractors, thermal-overloads, etc. Terminals or solid copper terminating conductors shall be provided where necessary. Provision shall be made for bracing and fixing of the cable leads to prevent vibration.

(k) A predrilled solid copper bar shall be provided for terminating all external power cables above 70mm, or where three or more cables in parallel are specified. The arrangement shall be suitable for accepting cable lugs of conductors up to 630mm².

E04.5.2.5 Wire Numbering

(a) Each end of every wire shall be marked with a wire number by means of plastic cable ferrules (black lettering on a white or yellow base).

(b) All wires shall be identified on both ends with a wire marker. The wire marker shall consist of a transparent flexible tube that slides over the wire with a wire identification label (black letters on a rigid white PVC tag) which slides into a label pocket on the tube. The tube must be correctly sized for the wire diameter.

(c) Split or open type marking ferrules shall not be used.

(d) Cable/wire marking ferrules shall correlate to the appropriate schematic or wiring diagrams.

(e) For all control wires without lug terminations, the numbered ferrule must not fall off when disconnecting the wire and in this regard, the use of one strand of wire to retain the ferrule is acceptable.

(f) All cables shall be identified on both ends with a cable marker. The cable marker shall consist of printed stainless steel band fixed to the cable with stainless steel strapping.

E04.5.2.6 Terminals and Connections

(a) All terminals will be of the screw-type. Terminals of the pressure pad type are not accepted Minimum rating for terminal blocks shall be 40A. Terminal strips/blocks shall be marked with designations corresponding with the suppliers/buyers drawings. Generally, terminal numbers shall be the same as the relevant wire number. No more than two wires may be connected to any one side of a terminal. Ten percent (10%) additional spare terminals shall be furnished.

(b) Terminals are to be provided for all door-mounted components, diodes, etc.

(c) Power connections on any equipment shall not use "Philips/Star" type screw/socket heads. Hexagon socket head cap screws (Allen type socket heads) are preferred.

(d) Where a large number of control terminals are mounted in close proximity, the terminals shall be in vertical rows with a minimum of 125mm below rows. Spare terminals shall be mounted at the bottom of the row unless the cabling drawing shows otherwise.

(e) Terminals shall be provided for all cores of external control cable as indicated on the drawings whether internally connected or not.

E04.5.2.7 Air Circuit Breakers (ACBs)

(a) ACBs shall be of the withdrawable type with self-aligning disconnecting devices with the disconnecting fingers preferably mounted on the breaker for ease of maintenance. The draw out mechanism shall hold the circuit breaker rigidly in the fully connected, test and fully disconnected positions.

(b) Safety shutters shall be provided to shield the fixed part automatically when the draw out parts removed preventing access to the conductors (main and auxiliary circuits). These shutters shall be clearly labelled indicating busbar and cable sections and in addition "live" section shall be labelled "400V – LIVE". ACBs shall be equipped with inter-phase barriers.

(c) Each Incoming ACB from a transformer and each Bus Section ACB shall be equipped with a protection unit incorporating:

i. Overload protection (IDMT)

ii. Thermal overload protection

iii. Instantaneous short-circuit protection

All protection devices will be delivered with protection settings adjusted to the minimum level. The protection unit shall be fitted with a transparent cover that can be sealed in the closed position to prevent tampering with the settings.

(d) The Contractor shall take particular care to ensure that the ACB protection is correctly co-ordinated with the upstream and downstream protective devices.

(e) Current and time delay set points on ACBs shall be accessible from the front of the ACB without removing the ACB from its cradle and shall only be adjustable when the cubicle door is open.

(f) Interlocks shall be provided to ensure the following:

i. That the main circuit breaker cannot be removed from or to the fully connected position unless the ACB is open;

ii. That the compartment doors cannot be opened should any accessible portion of the ACB frame be energised;

iii. That the ACB cannot be closed unless in the fully connected, test or fully disconnected positions.

(g) Mechanical restrictions shall be provided to inhibit mismatch of ACBs of different ratings.

(h) Provision shall be made for the padlocking of any ACB in any one of the fully connected, test or fully open positions. In addition, all ACBs shall have padlocking facility to prevent the close push button being operated when padlocked.

(i) ACBs employed as incomers and bus-section switches shall incorporate captive key interlocks to prevent paralleling of incoming supplies. Locks with captive keys must be built into the ACB's to prevent both Incomers and the Bus-coupler circuit breakers in the "ON" position at the same time. Padlocks will not be accepted for this application.

(j) The ACBs supplied shall be three pole, magnetic operated. The mechanism shall be of the stored energy type having hand charged spring with mechanical and electrical releases for closing.

E04.5.2.8 Moulded Case Circuit Breakers (MCCBs)

(a) MCCBs shall be of the manually operated type with thermal and instantaneous magnetic protection. Trip functions shall be resettable via the MCCB switching handle.

(b) Each MCCB shall be fitted with a vari-depth operating handle.

(c) Flash barriers shall be furnished to increase creepage distance between phases and shall be furnished on all circuit breaker cradles between the phases on both sides of the MCCB.

(d) The thermal trip elements of each MCCB shall be calibrated for the maximum ambient

temperature at 40°C.

(e) Current ratings of MCCBs shall be detailed in the Single Line Diagram drawings.

(f) MCCBs shall be selected according to rating and the fault level as specified by the Engineer.

(g) The name of the MCCB manufacturer shall be furnished by the tenderer at tender stage.

(h) Each MCCB shall be provided with suitable insulation between the terminals of the MCCB and the back plate/chassis onto which the MCCB is mounted, such that any loose nut, screw, etc., which may fall between the MCCB terminals and back plate cannot cause a short circuit.

(i) Where interlocking is called for between the MCCBs this shall be effected using captive keys in the breaker or a mechanical interlock.

(j) All outgoing circuits shall be equipped with individual core balance earth leakage units arranged to shunt trip each respective outgoing circuit.

(k) Outgoing circuits rated 125A and above shall have IDMT 375 mA earth leakage units EPC type Elsec T. Outgoing circuits rated 100A and below shall have instantaneous 250 mA earth leakage units - EPC type Elsec – X. All earth leakages must be of the manual reset type.

(l) All circuit breakers, except bus couplers, shall be connected with the switched side to the load, i.e. with reference to power flow incoming to "LINE" and outgoing to "LOAD".

(m) The incoming terminals/shutters of all 400V circuit breakers shall be effectively shrouded and marked "400V LIVE" with white characters on a red ground.

E04.5.2.9 Miniature circuit breakers (MCBs)

(a) Miniature circuit breakers (MCBs) shall be confined to auxiliary circuits such as control and indication in which the prospective short-circuit current will not exceed 5kA (3ph at 440Vac), or 7.5kA (1p at 24Vdc). They shall be of the thermal and magnetic trip free type. Where the prospective short-circuit current exceeds the above values, cascaded circuit breakers should be used. All cascaded circuits must be marked with the wording "Warning: This is a cascaded system. Never replace any circuit breaker in the system with another circuit breaker that is not identical in manufacturer, type and rating."

(b) Auxiliary contacts on MCBs

i. Provide the position (open/closed/tripped) remote indication functions of the associated MCB.

ii. Clip on (no tool required) to the left-hand side of the MCB. The type that connects to the MCB operating lever is preferred.

iii. Shall be of good quality and will not interfere with the operation or tripping of the MCB.

E04.5.2.10 Surge Arrestors

(a) All Electrical switchboards shall have a surge arrestor fitted to each phase on the incoming circuit breaker. The surge arrestors shall be fitted to the LIVE side of the circuit breaker.

E04.5.2.11 Instruments and Meters

(a) Incoming CBs shall be equipped with the following as a minimum requirement:

i. A single 96mm x 96mm 5A secondary, combined maximum demand and instantaneous ammeter. The maximum demand portion shall have a thermal movement with 15-minute time lag and drag pointer having a reset facility. It shall have a built-in saturation transformer for increased overload capacity to 90 times

rated current for one second;

ii. A 96mm x 96mm voltmeter connected to measure phase-to-phase voltage and phase to neutral voltage via a multi-position selector switch and a set of fuses suitably rated for voltage and short circuit current;

E04.5.2.12 Current Transformers

(a) All current transformers shall conform to SANS 61869-2. For protection purposes, class 10P CT's are to be used and for indicating purposes class 1 CT's are to be used and for metering purposes class 0.5 CT's are to be used. In general, current transformer mechanical and thermal ratings shall be co-ordinated with the short circuit ratings of the equipment.

E04.5.2.13 Fuses

(a) Fuse protection shall be used in cases were capacitive loads are switched i.e. Power factor correction or static capacitors panels.

(b) Fuses shall not be used for purposes other than voltmeter or kWh meter protection, unless specifically authorised. All short circuit protection shall be provided by means of circuit breakers and fast blow fuses for protecting the incoming side of the devices. In cases where the fault current level is excessively high, HRC fuses in conjunction with CB's should be considered to reduce the fault level and afford better protection for electrical personnel.

E04.5.2.14 Limit Switches

(a) Limit switches shall be metal encapsulated precision switches with robust and compact explosion-proof structures.

(b) Cables shall be equipped with a strain-relief device and safely cast into the enclosure. Switches shall have bottom, side or lateral cable outlets as per the requirement of the application. The integrated basic switch shall have a single-pole changeover contact with a high switching accuracy and a precise repeatability of the switching point.

(c) It shall have high vibration resistance and long mechanical life. It shall have a high protection class that would allow the switch to be used in all processes of Johannesburg Water wastewater treatment plants.

E04.5.3 Mounting of Equipment

E04.5.3.1 Clearance and Access

(a) A minimum clearance of 50mm shall be maintained between items of equipment and the side of the compartment.

(b) Where extra equipment is specified after the design has been finalised, this clearance requirement may be altered subject to the Engineer's approval.

(c) No piece of equipment shall be mounted in any position where it is not visible and accessible to a viewer looking into the compartment through the door opening.

E04.5.3.2 Mounting of Circuit Breakers

(a) All moulded case circuit breakers shall be flush mounted with only toggles protruding.

(b) Miniature circuit breakers may be installed in clip-in trays mounted on the frame.

(c) Special provision shall be made for large main switches.

(d) Circuit breakers shall be installed so that the toggles are in the up position when "ON" and down when "OFF".

E04.5.3.3 Mounting of Contactors

(a) Contactors shall only protrude through the panel in special cases. Plastic covers or other coverings will not be required.

E04.5.3.4 Instrumentation

(a) All metering instruments shall be mounted flush in the front panel unless otherwise specified.

(b) In certain instances it may be required that instruments be mounted flush in the door. In these instances, the back of metres shall be covered by removable covers of isolating material fixed to the door to protect the terminals of instruments and to prevent accidental contact.

(c) Equipment mounted normally on the surface, e.g. time switches and relays shall be mounted behind the front panel. In these cases, hinged access panels shall be provided in the front panel.

E04.5.3.5 Fuse-Links and Carriers

(a) Fuses shall be of the high rupturing capacity type and shall be mounted on insulated draw-out carriers, which shall hold the fuses positively and remain firmly fixed after withdrawal. In all cases, the top terminal shall be the live terminal. This applies also for MCB's.

(b) DC circuits shall have fuses in the positive and negative leads.

(c) Fuses shall be so positioned that they are readily accessible to a person standing on the floor.

(d) Fuses for instrumentation shall be mounted on the outside of the compartment door adjacent to or below the instrument.

(e) Fuses shall be provided with labels giving their rating and duty.

(f) Solid link holders shall be coloured white.

(g) One spare fuse of each type and size used in each board shall be fitted on clip holders on the inside of the front panel.

E04.5.3.6 Control Equipment

(a) All equipment performing control functions, e.g. control relays, transducers, and time relays not requiring adjustment, shall be mounted behind the front panel.

E04.5.3.7 Current Transformers

(a) Current transformers shall be accessible and easily removable.

(b) Secondary windings of current transformers shall be earthed at one point only. Each group of current transformers, i.e. protection, metering, etc., shall be earthed directly to the protective conductor (earth bar).

(c) Current transformers shall be naturally air-cooled, and shall be able to withstand the maximum fault current for the duration of time taken by the functional unit to clear, with protective devices set at the maximum time delay settings.

E04.6 MOTOR CONTROL CENTRE

A Motor Control Centre (MCC) is an assembly of one or more enclosed sections having a common

power bus and principally containing motor control units that serves to govern in some predetermined manner the performance of an electric motor. Motor control centres are in modern practice a factory assembly of several motor starters. A motor control centre can include variable frequency drives, programmable controllers, metering apparatus etc. Motor Control Centre is used for controlling of various motors of a particular plant.

E04.6.1 MCC Buckets

(a) The following types of motor starters will be used:

i. Direct-on-line (DOL) type motor starting;

ii. Star/Delta (S/D) type motor starting;

iii. Forward/Reverse type motor starting;

iv. Soft starting (SS) type motor starting;

v. Variable Speed Drive (VSD) type motor starting.

(b) The main contactors on Star/Delta and Forward/Reverse type starters will be mechanically interlocked. The type of motor starting required shall be project specific and shall be indicated in the MCC schedule/s to be issued by the Engineer.

(c) All the protection devices, i.e. overloads, circuit breakers, motor thermistors, motor heaters, gearbox oil flow switches etc. on mechanical equipment shall be hard wired onto the individual motor starter circuits.

(d) Only one motor will be controlled from any MCC bucket.

E04.6.2 Busbars

(a) Main busbars in MCCs shall be rated for 2000 amps as a minimum.

(b) Busbar droppers in MCCs shall be rated for the maximum possible current (determined by the breaker frame size) in that section with a minimum rating of 1000 amps.

E04.6.3 Earth bar

(a) The earth bar shall be rectangular, with a minimum cross sectional area of 400mm² (10mm x 40mm).

E04.6.4 Power wiring

(a) The minimum MCC power wiring size shall be 25mm².

E04.6.5 Circuit Breakers

(a) Air circuit breaker (ACBs) will be used for Incomer circuit breakers on MCCs.

(b) Bus coupler circuit breakers on MCCs will use an air circuit breaker (ACBs).

(c) Moulded Case circuit breakers (MCCBs) will be used for outgoing feeders on MCCs up to a maximum rating of 800 amps.

E04.6.6 Instruments and Meters

(a) Incoming CBs shall be equipped with an power meter capable of providing multiple parameters of the connection including kWh, kVArh, kW, kVAr, PF, MD, etc. and provide a pulsed output and Ethernet connectivity.

(b) Each bucket shall be equipped with a suitably sized 5A current transformer (CT) operated

96mm x 96mm 90° movement suppressed maximum demand ammeter having an overload rating of 40 times the rated current for one second. The CT primary current rating will match (equal) the outgoing feeder circuit breaker current rating. The CT secondary current rating will be 5A.

E04.7 MAIN DISTRIBUTION BOARD

A Main Distribution Board is a panel from where electrical energy is taken out to distribute power to various consumer points. It has a single incoming power sources from a distribution transformer and includes feeder circuit breakers and protection devices to the consumers.

E04.7.1 Busbars

(a) Main busbars in MDBs shall be rated for 2000 amps as a minimum.

(b) Busbar droppers in MDBs shall be rated for the maximum possible current (determined by the breaker frame size) in that section with a minimum rating of 1000 amps.

E04.7.2 Earth bar

(a) The earth bar shall be rectangular, with a minimum cross sectional area of 400mm² (10mm x 40mm).

E04.7.3 Power wiring

(a) The minimum MDB power wiring size shall be 25mm².

E04.7.4 Circuit Breakers

(a) Air circuit breakers (ACBs) shall be used as Incomer circuit breakers on MDBs.

(b) Moulded Case circuit breakers (MCCBs) will be used for outgoing feeders on MDBs up to a maximum rating of 800 amps.

E04.7.5 Instruments and Meters

(a) Incoming CBs shall be equipped with an power meter capable of providing multiple parameters of the connection including kWh, kVArh, kW, kVAr, PF, MD, etc. and provide a pulsed output and Ethernet connectivity.

(b) Feeder CBs shall be equipped with an power meter capable of providing multiple parameters of the connection including kWh, kVArh, kW, kVAr, PF, MD, etc. and provide a pulsed output and Ethernet connectivity.

E04.8 AUXILIARY DISTRIBUTION BOARD

An Auxiliary Distribution Board is a panel from where electrical energy is taken out to distribute power to various consumer points. It has a single incoming power sources from a Main Distribution Board and includes feeder circuit breakers and protection devices to the consumers.

E04.8.1 Busbars

(a) Main busbars in ADBs shall be rated for 1000 amps as a minimum unless otherwise specified/approved by the engineer.

(b) Busbar droppers in ADBs shall be rated for the maximum possible current (determined by

the breaker frame size) in that section with a minimum rating of 600 amps unless otherwise specified/approved by the engineer.

E04.8.2 Earth bar

(a) The earth bar shall be rectangular, with a minimum cross sectional area of 250mm² (10mm x 25mm) unless otherwise specified/approved by the engineer.

E04.8.3 Power wiring

(a) The minimum ADB power wiring size shall be 16mm² unless otherwise specified/approved by the engineer.

E04.8.4 Circuit Breakers

(a) Air circuit breakers (ACBs) shall be used as Incomer circuit breakers on ADBs unless otherwise specified/approved by the engineer.

(b) Moulded Case circuit breakers (MCCBs) will be used for outgoing feeders on ADBs up to a maximum rating of 800 amps.

E04.8.5 Instruments and Meters

(a) Incoming CBs shall be equipped with an power meter capable of providing multiple parameters of the connection including kWh, kVArh, kW, kVAr, PF, MD, etc. and provide a pulsed output and Ethernet connectivity.

(b) Feeder CBs shall be equipped with a suitably sized 5A current transformer operated 96mm x 96mm 90° movement suppressed maximum demand ammeter having an overload rating of 40 times the rated current for one second. The CT primary current rating will match (equal) the outgoing feeder circuit breaker current rating. The CT secondary current rating will be 5A.

E04.9 FLUSH MOUNTED DISTRIBUTION BOARD

E04.9.1 Internal for of Separation

(a) The internal for of separation will be specified by the Engineer.

E04.9.2 Bonding Tray

(a) Bonding trays for flush mounted switchboards shall be of rigidly constructed 1,6mm thick galvanised steel, braced and reinforced.

(b) Formed gussets shall be provided at the corners. All the tray joints shall be properly welded or securely bolted with a brass or cadmium plated steel earth connecting stud and nut.

E04.9.3 Expanded Metal

(a) Where switchboards are to be built into 116mm thick walls, expanded metal shall be spot welded to the rear of the bonding trays.

(b) The expanded metal shall protrude at least 150mm on each side to prevent plaster from cracking.

E04.9.4 Knock-Outs

(a) Ample knockouts shall be provided in the top and bottom ends of each switchboard tray to allow for the installation of conduits for the specified and future circuits.

(b) Knockouts shall be allowed for any size of specified conduit.

(c) Provision shall however be made for termination of at least 2 x 25mm diameter conduits at top and 2 x 25mm diameter conduits at the bottom of each tray.

E04.9.5 Architrave Frame

(a) The architrave frame shall be of 2,0mm thick sheet steel with bevelled edges.

(b) The architrave frame shall accommodate the chassis, panels and doors.

(c) The architrave shall overlap the bonding tray by at least 25mm on each side.

(d) The architrave frame shall be fixed to the tray in such a fashion to allow for depth adjustment and irregularities of the wall.

E04.9.6 Extension Frames

(a) Semi-flush mounted switchboards shall be equipped with extension frames.

(b) Generally, the frame depths shall be 50mm but may be altered to suit each application.

E04.9.7 Chassis

(a) The chassis for mounting of switchgear and equipment shall be of rigid construction and shall be fixed securely to the architrave frame or bonding tray by means of bolts screwed into tapped holes or bolts and nuts. Self-tapping screws are not acceptable.

(b) The chassis position shall be adjustable in the horizontal plane.

E04.9.8 Panel (Faceplate)

(a) A suitably stiffened panel manufactured of 2,0mm thick sheet steel shall be installed in the architrave frame for flush mounting of switchgear.

(b) The panels shall have machined punched slots for housing the specified and future switchgear, instruments, fuse holders, isolating switches, indicator lamps, etc. In exceptional cases, contractors will be allowed to protrude through the panel.

(c) Blanking plates shall be provided in positions where future switchgear will be installed.

(d) The distance between the inside of the closed doors and the panels shall be not less than 40mm.

(e) No equipment may be mounted on the panel (faceplate) unless it is permanently hinged to the switchboard frame.

E04.9.9 Fixing of Panels

(a) The panel for each switchboard shall be secured to the architrave frame by means of captive fasteners. Alternatively, the panel may be secured to the architrave frame by means of two pins at the bottom and a latch or lock at the top of the panel. Self-tapping screws or dome nuts will not be allowed.

(b) Where it is required that equipment be mounted on the panel, the panel shall be securely hinged to the switchboard frame.

E04.9.10 Panel Handles

(a) Two chromium plated handles shall be provided on each front cover.

(b) The handles shall be mounted at the top and bottom of each panel.

E04.9.11 Hinged Panels

(a) Where hinged panels are specified, the hinges shall be fixed to the architrave frame and the panel shall be secured by means of studs and hexagonal chromium plated nuts or by means of a suitable lock or latch, which can be operated with a screwdriver.

(b) The panel shall be removable when it is in the open position.

E04.10 SURFACE MOUNTED DISTRIBUTION BOARD

This section refers to surface mounted sub-switchboards and not to floor standing main switchboards in substations or sub-main switchboards.

E04.10.1 Internal for of Separation

(a) The internal for of separation will be specified by the Engineer.

E04.10.2 Switchboard Tray

(a) Surface mounted switchboards shall be equipped with a 1,6mm sheet steel reinforced tray.

(b) Securing lugs shall be provided to fix the tray to walls or any other structure.

(c) A solid brass or cadmium plated steel earth connection stud and nut shall be provided.

E04.10.3 Construction

(a) All joints shall be welded or securely bolted.

(b) The tray shall be square and neatly finished without protrusions.

(c) The front tray sides shall be rounded with an edge of at least 20mm to accommodate flush doors.

(d) The requirements for chassis, panels and doors shall be as specified for flush mounted switchboards.

(e) The doors shall be hinged and shall fit flush in the frame in the closed position.

(f) Knockouts shall not be provided unless specifically called for.

E04.11 LV KIOSKS (SWITCH CUBICLES)

LV kiosks shall be of sufficient size to accommodate all the specified equipment.

E04.11.1 Framework

LV kiosks shall be manufactured of mild steel sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 2mm or cold rolled 3CR12 sheet metal with a minimum thickness of 1,6mm. Fibre re-inforced or other corrosion proof material (e.g. glass fibre) may also be used if adequately reinforced.

E04.11.2 Ventilation

Two ventilation slots or grilles, approximately 150 x 125mm and covered on the inside with copper mesh, shall be provided on opposite sides of the cubicle.

E04.11.3 Doors

Doors shall be provided in the front and back panels and shall swivel through 180º. Rigid padlocks and base plates for security latches shall be provided on the doors. Openings for security latches shall be blanked with chromed brass discs.

E04.11.4 Warning Sign

Warning and danger signs shall be mounted on each door in compliance with the requirements.

E04.11.5 Base

The kiosk shall be mounted on a well-finished concrete base, with minimum height of 150mm above ground level in the case of mild steel and any of the other specified acceptable materials. The kiosk can be made for direct mounting into the ground in which case it shall be equipped with a base, forming part of the structure, for this purpose. The switch cubicle shall protrude at least 10mm past the edges of the base to prevent water collecting on the base.

E04.12 STANDBY SUPPLIES

(a) Where standby power from a diesel-generator set or other source is available and has to be connected to some of the equipment on a panel, the panel shall be divided into electrically separate sections with sheet metal division plates to isolate power and mains power sections. The section doors must be appropriately colour coded to provide visual distinguishing.

(b) A means shall be provided to isolate both the standby and mains power supplies simultaneously. For this purpose, either a 6-pole rotary switch or mechanically and electrically interlocked circuit breakers or contactors may be used. Electrical interlocking alone is not sufficient. Rotary switches may only be used on panels where the fault level does not exceed 10kA.

(c) A separate 3-pole circuit breaker shall be provided as main switch for both the standby power section and the mains power section in addition to the isolator of (b) above.

Where a 6-pole rotary switch is used as isolator for the incoming supplies, this switch may be located in the standby section of the switchboard in which case the rotary switch can also serve as the isolator for the standby section. This arrangement is acceptable where the equipment on the mains power section of the switchboard can be turned off whenever it is necessary to work on the standby section of the switchboards.

(d) The main switches to the standby and mains power sections shall be interlocked with the doors providing access to those sections to ensure that the door can only be opened when the switches are in the OFF position.

E04.13 ELECTRICAL SUBSTATION FIRE PROTECTION SYSTEM

It is the duty of the Contractor to appoint a trained and competent fire engineering company to design, supply, install, commission, and test and certify a fire protection system for each electrical substation building forming part of the contract.

Each fire protection system will consist out of a fire detection and an extinguishing system as described below. Both systems will be of the highest quality and latest technology, supplied by a reputable manufacturer. The contractor will submit written proof that local support is available to maintain the system and to supply spare parts as required.

E04.13.1 Fire Detection System

The fire detection system must:

(a) Utilise a sub-micron combustion particle detector that detects a fire at its initial stage, before the presence of smoke. This allows preventative action can be taken before any catastrophic event occurs.

(b) Utilise detectors suitable for dusty plant environments and must be impervious to false alarms caused by dust particles in substation buildings with sheet metal roofs where no ceilings are present.

(c) Cover the substation building, all electrical cabinets and all cable trenches.

(d) Only when there is a second alarm from a second detector the system will trigger the gas.

(e) Double Knock system (Trigger an alarm on the first detector activation and trigger the operation of a fire extinguishing system on a second detector activation).

(f) Alert a control and alarm signalling system in case of a fire or a system fault.

(g) Be designed and installed to conform to SANS/ISO 10139 and SANS 369 Parts 1 and 2.

E04.13.2 Fire Extinguishing System

The fire extinguishing system must:

(a) Utilise an automatic system to flood the substation building with a concentration of a gaseous extinguishing agent to extinguishing a fire burning in Class A, B, and C hazards by lowering the oxygen content below the level that supports combustion as quickly as possible.

(b) Utilise a non-toxic, human friendly extinguishing agent. The use of an extinguishing agent that does not support human life must be approved in writing by the Engineer. In this case, other safety measures such as a lockout system should be integrated to ensure safe entrance into the protected substation.

(c) Utilise an efficient extinguishing agent that is electrically non-conductive and that will not adversely affect the protected electrical equipment. No powder or other residue should remain after actuation of the system.

(d) Audible and visual warnings must alert personnel to vacate the protected substation area before discharging the agent.

(e) Utilise a colourless, odourless environment friendly extinguishing agent that is sustainable against impending global warming regulations.

(f) Utilise an extinguishing agent that has a low refill cost.

(g) Should be fully approved by the local authority to an internationally accepted engineering standard.

E04.13.3 Other measures

(a) All points where cable or other services enter the substation building must be properly sealed with a fire rated medium of at least one-hour or as per local standards and regulations.

(b) All ventilation and air conditioning devices must be tripped in the event of first detection of a fire.

(c) All ventilation openings and doors in the substation building should be sealed in the event of first detection of a fire.

(d) A room integrity test needs to be carried out to validate the hold-time for the extinguishing agent as per the room's natural leakage.

(e) All detection, alarm and extinguishing circuits are to be monitored for system faults.

(f) The substation fire protection system should operate a local audible and visual alarm system and report to a central 24-hour manned operations or security room.

(g) A local handheld fire extinguisher should also be installed within the substation as per local regulations. The type and number should conform to local standards and regulations.

E04.13.4 System Maintenance

(a) The contractor will include a fire protection system maintenance contract for a period of one year after commissioning. A trained and competent fire engineering company must do the maintenance.

(b) Thereafter a trained and competent fire engineering company should be contracted to inspect the system on a three-month basis. It should check that the system is operational in terms of its design and take corrective action in the event of a fault.

(c) The Client should visually check the system once a month for any faults reported on the control panel and anything that might appear out of the ordinary. The Client should immediately report to a competent fire engineering contracting company of any concerns or faults to ensure immediate rectification.

(d) A mandatory annual room integrity test should be carried out as per SANS 1520 Part 1.

(e) Should any physical alterations be made to a substation, a review on the fire protection system must be done to see if its performance has been compromised and appropriate actions should be made to ensure the integrity of the system.

E04.14 QA REQUIREMENTS

The vendor / contractor will be responsible for the following.

TABLE OF CONTENTS			
SECTION	**DESCRIPTION**	**REQUIRED (YES OR NO)**	**WHEN REQUIRED**
DRAWINGS & DESIGN (2 SETS OF EACH)	DESIGN CALCULATIONS		
	GA DRAWINGS	YES	ORDER + 3 WEEKS
	DETAIL DRAWINGS	YES	CONSTRUCTION
	AS BUILT DRAWINGS	YES	COMPLETION
	BROCHURES	YES	CONSTRUCTION
	SKETCHES		
	SCHEMATIC DIAGRAMS	YES	ORDER + 3 WEEKS
	RISK ASSESSMENT BY VENDOR	YES	CONSTRUCTION
	DATA SHEETS	YES	TENDER
	DESIGN CRITERIA	YES	CONSTRUCTION
QUALITY CONTROL DOCUMENTS (2 SETS OF	QUALITY CONTROL PLAN	YES	ORDER + 3 WEEKS
	MANUFACTURING PROGRAM	YES	ORDER + 3 WEEKS

EACH)			
MATERIAL CERTIFICATES		YES	MANUFACTURE
CERTIFICATES OF INSPECTION TESTING AND ACCEPTANCE	PRESSURE TEST CERTIFICATE	YES	DATA BOOK
	ELECTRICAL HAZARD CERTIFICATE		
	ELECTRICAL TEST CERTIFICATES	YES	DATA BOOK
	INSTRUMENT CALIBRATION CERTS.		
	VENDORS CERTIFICATE OF CONFORMANCE	YES	COMMISSIONING
	NON-CONFORMITY / CONCESSION REPORTS	YES	COMMISSIONING
MANUALS	OPERATING / MAINTENANCE MANUAL	YES	COMPLETION
	DATA BOOK	YES	DELIVERY – 1 WEEK
	DRAWINGS	YES	COMPLETION
	WARRANTY/GUARANTEES CERTIFICATES	YES	COMPLETION

E04.15 DRAWINGS AND DATA

(a) The vendor / contractor will supply shop drawings to the Engineer prior to manufacturing.

(b) No switchboard manufacturing may start if the drawings are not approved by the Engineer in writing. Should the vendor / contractor start manufacturing without approved shop drawings, any changes required by the Engineer will be for the vendor / contractor's account.

(c) The following will be included in the shop drawings as a minimum:

i. General arrangement drawings

ii. Schematic diagrams

iii. Equipment lists, including the make, catalogue number and capacity of all equipment such as isolators, circuit breakers, fuses, contractors, etc.

iv. All labelling information on a separate sheet.

(d) The approval of the shop drawings shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to the Client to supply the switchboards according to the requirements of this specification or to the requirements of the Detailed Technical Specification.

(e) The vendor / contractor will supply three hard copies and one soft copy of the equipment data book including all items as specified in the Vendor QA and document requirement list.

(f) Data books will be supplied to Johannesburg Water within 7 days from delivery of equipment. Johannesburg Water will review the data books within 14 days from issue and notify the Vendor of its acceptance or rejection of it.

(g) All drawings and documentation shall be in accordance with Johannesburg Water specifications bound in book format.

(h) A complete set of "As Built" drawings of all switchboards shall be submitted to the Engineer immediately after completion of the installation. The following information shall be presented:

i. Items (i) and (iv) of the previous paragraph.

ii. Terminal strip numbers, numbers and colours of conductors connected to the terminal strips and numbers and colours of the conductors utilised for the internal wiring.

iii. A separate schedule of all equipment.

(i) Where "As Built" drawings are modified during the execution of the contract, the Contractor shall at his own expense modify or replace such drawings. Accurate drawings of the equipment shall be forwarded to the Engineer.

E04.16 PAINTING AND PROTECTIVE COATING

E04.16.1 Powder Coating Systems

(a) Paint system 1: Powder Coating, seven Stage zinc, Phosphate pre-treatment, pure epoxy primer, Polyester finishing coat, and thickness 140 µm.

Paint System	Host Material	Preparation	Primer (70µm)	Finishing Coat (70µm)	Thickness µm
No 1	Mild Steel	7 stage phosphate pre–treatment	Epoxy	Epoxy	140

(b) On completion of the paint job, the powder manufacturer must carry out the following tests on the test panels:

i. SABS 6J impact test

ii. Cross hatch adhesion test

iii. Bend test

(c) The powder manufacturer must issue a Certificate of Compliance for each paint job, which should be included in the contract documentation.

(d) The preferred corrosion protection systems are applied onto cold rolled mild steel plate with a thickness of 2.0mm.

E04.16.2 Epoxy Powder Coat Products

Item	Product Type	Powder - Lak
1	Epoxy Primer	23-007
2	Pure Epoxy / Polyester Finishing Coat.	Series 3000

E04.16.3 General

(a) All chassis plates shall be painted white.

(b) All mild steel gland plates shall be galvanised for improved cable earthing.

(c) All panel doors on equipment supplied from a normal supply must be painted Electric Orange (B26).

(d) All panel doors on equipment supplied from an emergency supply must be painted Signal Red (A11).

(e) All panel doors on equipment supplied from an UPS supply must be painted Dark Violet (F06).

(f) Specific external colours will be provided by Johannesburg Water.

(g) Before the installation is handed over, the Contractor shall ensure that all paint surfaces are clean and undamaged.

E04.17 PERFORMANCE AND GUARANTEE

(a) The performance of the items supplied in terms of this specification, as defined by the order, shall be warranted by the Vendor and, if specified, be tested in accordance therewith.

(b) The vendor shall not be specifically required to conduct a performance test on site.

(c) A minimum warranty period of 12 months is required.

E04.18 INSPECTION AND TESTING

E04.18.1 Factory Acceptance Test

(a) The Johannesburg Water Representative shall have access, at all reasonable times, to those parts of the manufacturing facilities engaged in the manufacturing of items in terms of this specification. He is authorised to witness any stage of manufacture, tests and inspect documentation.

(b) The Johannesburg Water Representative is authorised to reject any items not manufactured to the requirements of the specification.

(c) All equipment shall be inspected at the vendor's works prior to delivery, to ensure compliance with the specification.

(d) No unit shall be considered complete until acceptance by Johannesburg Water.

(e) The minimum testing / pre delivery checklist shall be as follows:

i. The Johannesburg Water representative must carry out a clause-by-clause check of each switchboard, prior to delivery.

ii. This switchboard checklist is intended to assist this process but does not relieve him/her of the responsibility described above.

DETAILED INSPECTION ROUTINE

Order No. : _____

Supplier/Vendor : _____

Project : _____

Motor Control Centre Designation : _____

Inspected by : _____

Date : _____

		Comments
Overall Appearance		
□		
□	**Paint work : Compliance with Annexure A5**	
□	**Paint thickness**	
□	**Door fittings good**	
□	**Dust sealing effective (neoprene seals)**	
□	**Board fully assembled**	
□	**Overall height less than specified height**	
□	**Channel iron base frame (less than 3000m)**	
□	**Lifting lugs provided**	
□	**Equipment supplied in accordance with specification (contractors, overloads, circuit breakers, relays, etc.)**	

		Comments
Busbars		
☐	**Correct cross-section**	
☐	**Correct phasing with incomer/feeders**	
☐	**Rigidly supported/braced**	
☐	**Properly insulated**	
☐	**Joints tightened**	
☐	**Transport section joints supplied (Fishplates, nuts and bolts, control wiring and terminals, etc.)**	
☐	**Droppers from main bars to circuit breakers adequately rated, braced, insulated**	
☐	**Nothing unnecessary mounted on bus bars**	
☐	**Main earth bar, min 70mm²**	
☐	**Control busbars generally as above, separate from power busbars**	
☐	**Air clearances adequate throughout**	
Single Line Diagram Check		
☐	**As per approved single line diagram**	
Outgoing Circuit		
☐	**Correct size/rating for MCCB's**	
☐	**Correct size/rating for ACB's**	
☐	**Correct earth leakage relays**	
☐	**Correct current transformer and associated ammeters**	
☐	**Correct overload relays**	
☐	**Correct setting on overload relays**	
☐	**Reasonable provision for cable termination power and control mounting of equipment**	
☐	**Correct conductor sizing, power and control, and correct colouring**	
☐	**Correct indicator lights and colours**	
☐	**Air clearances correct throughout**	
Incoming Circuits		
☐	**Correct size/rating of ACB's**	
☐	**Correct metering and proper mounting**	
☐	**Connection of power factor meter**	
☐	**Fuses on volt meter, where applicable**	
☐	**Reasonable provision for termination of incoming cable/gland plate**	
☐	**Air clearances correct throughout**	
	Incomer status signal to PLC	
	Interlocks	
Pressure and Injection Tests		
☐	**Primary injection test for correct operation of all protection and overload relays**	
Operational Test		
☐	**Mechanical operation of all circuit breakers, preferably with doors closed**	
☐	**Shunt trip of all circuit breakers**	
☐	**Operation of overload relay**	
☐	**Correct operation of all interlocks**	
☐	**Correct operation of indicator lights**	

		Comments
□	**Correct operation of earth fault/overload alarm system, including general alarm panel**	
	Correct signals to PLC terminals	
	Correct interlocks	
	Door interlocks	
General Checks		
□	**Marking of control wires and power conductors**	
□	**Main Motor Control Centre label**	
□	**Cubicle labels fitted – designation and cubicle number**	
□	**Component labels fitted**	
□	**Warning labels on all removable covers giving access to live 400V conductors**	
□	**Labels for indicator lights, pushbuttons, etc.**	
□	**Terminal strip labels**	
□	**Incoming side of circuit breakers label**	
□	**Incoming circuit label – "FROM _____"**	
□	**No 'Philips' (star) screws**	
□	**No self-tapping screws**	
□	**Grommets fitted on all open holes**	
□	**Correct paint specification**	
□	**All documentation submitted**	
□	**Arc venting arrangements satisfactory**	
□	**Door latches fitted**	

(f) Specific testing and inspection requirements relating to switchgear boards are as follows:

i. Prior to shipment, the switchgear boards shall be completely assembled, wired, adjusted and tested by the supplier in the presence of the engineer and the client representative.

ii. Testing shall include primary injection tests of all current transformers, pressure tests to prove quality of insulation, functional tests of all mechanical and electrical components and electrical circuitry and any other tests required to ensure compliance with this specification.

iii. The supplier shall give one week's notice of readiness for final tests to the Johannesburg Water representative. The vendor shall ensure that the equipment is ready for final testing before requesting the presence of the Johannesburg Water representative at such a test. Repeat inspections necessitated by the lack of readiness of the equipment may be charged to the vendor at the discretion of the Johannesburg Water representative.

E04.18.2 <u>Site Acceptance Test and Commissioning</u>

(a) A Site Acceptance Test (SAT) must be conducted at the place of installation prior to switching the DB on. The test shall include (as a minimum) the following:

i. A visual inspection to ensure all the design specifications are adhered to;

ii. Insulation resistance test;

iii. Function testing of all components.

iv. All switchboards must be thermal imaged a minimum of 1 week after being put on service. The image must be taken in normal operating conditions. The image must be analysed for hot spots and must be part of the Operations and Maintenance

Manuals presented at the end of the project.

E04.19 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item Unit

Supply and deliver Switchboards or Motor Control Centres ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of MCC's or boards supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacture, supply, testing and delivery of the boards as specified in the detailed specification.

Item Unit

Install Switchboards or Motor Control Centres ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of MCC's or boards installed.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the installation of the specified boards, including all required installation material to install the MCC or board in the required position including a heavy-duty strut, mounted 400mm below the gland plate. All incoming and outgoing cables shall be attached to this strut by means of K-clamps or approved equivalent clamps.

Item Unit

Commission Switchboards or Motor Control Centres ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of MCC's or boards.

The tendered rates shall include full compensation for the site testing and commissioning of the specified boards including the keeping of all commissioning records in triplicate, including all material, test equipment and labour required for the testing and commissioning.

Item Unit

Supply and install extra circuits on Switchboards and Motor Control Centres ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of circuits supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacture, supply, testing and installing of extra circuits in switchboards or motor control centres (spare space being available on the board).

Item Unit

Supply and deliver level control equipment ..... No

The unit of measure shall be the number of level control systems supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, manufacturing, testing and delivery of all the material required for the level control system, including all float level switches, will the required length of cable attached to them, mounting brackets, terminal box and mounting equipment together will all material to facilitate a complete level control system.

Separate items will be measured for systems with different numbers of level switches.

Item Unit

Install level control equipment ..... No

The unit of measure shall be the number of level control systems installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for installing, testing and commissioning of the level control system including the required brackets, junction boxes, cables etc. for a complete working system.

Item Unit

Modify existing motor starter panels ..... No

The unit of measure shall be the number of motor starters to be modified.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of all material and labour required to modify the motor starter panel as detailed in the detail specification.

Item Unit

Supply and install PLC/Scada alarm and status signals ..... No

The unit of measure shall be the number of MCC's for which a siren and alarm light has been installed.

The tendered rate shall include for the full compensation for the supply, delivery, installation and commissioning of the specified siren and alarm light including all required installation material including cables required to render a fully operational system.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E05 : ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE POWER AND CONTROL CABLES

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E05 : Electrical Low Voltage Power and Control Cables**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E05**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
5	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
4	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2010-05-03		Review Electrical Standards
1	2010-05-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E05: ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE POWER AND CONTROL CABLES

CONTENTS

E05.1 SCOPE 3
E05.1.1 Statutory Documents and Standards 3
E05.1.2 Definitions and Terminology 3
E05.1.3 Particular Specifications to read in Conjunction with this Specification 3

E05.2 GENERAL SCOPE 4
E05.2.1 Design and Supply 4

E05.3 CONSTRUCTION 4
E05.3.1 Conductor Material 4
E05.3.2 Insulation 4
E05.3.3 Core Colour Identification 4
E05.3.4 Bedding 4
E05.3.5 Armour 4
E05.3.6 Sheath 4

E05.4 CABLE MARKINGS 4

E05.5 STORAGE 4

E05.6 CABLE SIZING AND DE-RATING 5

E05.7 TESTING OF CABLES 5
E05.7.1 Testing and Commissioning 5

E05.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE 5

E05.9 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 5

E05.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the requirements with regards to the manufacture, supply, delivery, installation, testing and commissioning of power and control cables rated up to 600/1000V. The term cable shall indicate electrical conductors or carriers manufactured for supplying power for the control and supervision of multipurpose loads.

E05.1.1 Statutory Documents and Standards

Cables shall be strictly manufactured in accordance with the requirements of the latest editions of the following standards:

(a) SANS 1507	:	Electrical cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500 V to 1 900/3 300 V)
(b) SANS 1411	:	Materials of insulated electric cables and flexible cords
(c) SANS 1339		Electric cables - Cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE) insulated cables for rated voltages 3,8/6,6 kV to 19/33 kV
(d) SANS 1520	:	Flexible electrical cables for use in mines
(e) SANS 10198		The selection, handling and installation of electric power cables of rating not exceeding 33 kV
(f) SANS 10142-1	:	The Wiring of Premises Part 1 – Low Voltage Installations
(g) IEC 60245	:	Rubber insulated cables
(h) IEC 60287	:	Electric cables - Calculation of the current rating
(i) IEC 60811	:	Electric and optical fibre cables - Test methods for non-metallic materials
(j) DIN VDE 0250-816	:	Cables – Wires and flexible cords for power installation – Heat-resistant silicone rubber insulated flexible cable

The Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act No. 85 of 1993)

E05.1.2 Definitions and Terminology

In general, the following definitions and terminology shall apply:

Armouring	A layer or layers of galvanized steel wires applied to the cable to provide mechanical protection or earth continuity, or both.
Bedding	A layer of extruded compound applied to the cable beneath the armouring.
Cable	A length of core or more cores assembled, that may or may not be provided with an overall mechanical covering.
Core	A single insulated conductor without protective covering.
Direction of lay	The lateral direction of inclination to the axis (either left or right) of the receding helix formed by wire or core in a cable or flexible cord.
PVC	Polyvinyl chloride
Sheath	A solid extruded protective covering applied as the exterior of a cable or a flexible cord.

E05.1.3 Particular Specifications to read in Conjunction with this Specification

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

E06: ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION

E05.2 GENERAL SCOPE

E05.2.1 Design and Supply

(a) Conductor sizes

The minimum conductor size for control cables shall be 2.5mm^2.

The minimum conductor size for power cables on plant equipment (excluding small power and lighting) shall be 16mm^2.

(b) Conductor material

In the case of plants with a high risk of cable theft, cables with aluminium conductors must be used where the nominal core diameter exceeding 25mm^2. This must be agreed upon in writing by the Engineer.

E05.3 CONSTRUCTION

The cable shall be constructed as follows:

E05.3.1 Conductor Material

The copper conductors shall be of plain annealed or hard draw wire in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of SANS 1411.

The aluminium conductors shall be of plain hard drawn aluminium wire in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of SANS 1411.

E05.3.2 Insulation

The insulation material shall comprise of PVC in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of SANS 1411.

E05.3.3 Core Colour Identification

The cable cores colour shall be in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of SANS 1507-3.

E05.3.4 Bedding

The bedding shall consist of a continuous PVC extruded sheath.

E05.3.5 Armour

The armouring shall consist of one layer of round galvanised steel wire in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of SANS 1411.

E05.3.6 Sheath

The outer sheathing shall be an impermeable, halogen free, reduced smoke emission, flame retardant PVC in accordance with the latest edition of SANS 1411.

E05.4 CABLE MARKINGS

The cables shall be legibly marked in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of SANS 1507, and shall include the following:

(a) Conductor size in square millimetres
(b) Number of cores
(c) Conductor material (copper)
(d) The specification number (SANS 1507) to which the cable has been manufactured.
(e) The year of manufacture.
(f) Nominal voltage.

E05.5 STORAGE

Cables shall be packed on reeled drums. The moisture content of wooden cable drums shall not exceed 20%.

Each end of the cable shall before being secured to the reeled drum, be sealed by an acceptable

method approved by the Engineer. The outer end shall be secured to the reel drum and the inner end shall be protected in a manner against mechanical damage.

The cable reeled drums shall be capable of taking a round spindle and be lagged with strong, closely fitted battens, at the inner and outer circumference to prevent damage to the cables. The spindle bearing plates shall be steel. The dimensions of the drum shall not exceed 1 100 mm width, 2 000 mm diameter and the spindle bearing plate shall not be less than 9 mm thick. Each drum shall be clearly marked on both sides in accordance with the latest edition of SANS 1507.

The ends of the PVC sheathed cable shall be sealed to avoid penetration of moisture. Each cable drum shall be numbered.

E05.6 CABLE SIZING AND DE-RATING

The cables shall be sized and de-rated in accordance with the requirements of the latest edition of SANS 10142-1.

E05.7 TESTING OF CABLES

E05.7.1 Testing and Commissioning

The contractor shall supply factory test certificates for each drum of cable supplied under the Contract.

After the installation is complete, the contractor and the Engineer shall inspect the installation. The Engineer must be notified in advance of the inspection dates. The contractor will keep a snag list, reflecting all items not acceptable to the Engineer. The contractor will correct the snag items as required to the Engineers approval, updating the snag list as the items are completed and signed off by the Engineer.

On completion of his work, the Contractor will issue an Electrical Certificate of Compliance (CoC). All tests deemed necessary to issue the CoC should be included. The Contractor shall make all arrangements, pay all fees and provide all equipment for these tests. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer timeously so that he may witness the tests.

Each installed cable shall be tested in accordance with:

(a) The Occupational Health and Safety Act (OHSA) 1994;
(b) SANS 1507 (Electric cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500 V to 1 900/3 300 V));

SANS 1507 Test Wave	Duration (min)	Commissioning test voltage between conductors (V)			Commissioning test voltage between conductors / earth (V)		
		300/ 500	600/ 1000	1900/ 3300	300/ 500	600/ 1000	1900/ 3300
AC (rms)	15	1000	2000	6000	1000	2000	3500
DC	15	1500	3000	9000	1500	3000	5000

This test will be conducted to the Engineers judgement. The constructer must obtain written approval from the Engineer before conducting any tests.

(a) The requirements of the Local and Supply Authorities.

E05.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

All the cables supplied under the Scope of Works of this project shall be designed and manufactured under a quality control system, typically to ISO 9000 series. The contractor must supply current compliance certificates on the manufacturers ISO classification.

E05.9 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commissioning of the cabling lengths required.

Item **Unit**

Supply and delivery of low-voltage cable .....metre

The unit of measurement shall be the length of low-voltage cable supplied. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to verify the lengths of cables required on site. The Contractor shall only supply the required length of cables required. The final quantity of installed cable lengths shall determine the final quantity to be paid of the supplied cable lengths.

The tendered rate shall include for the design, manufacture, supply and delivery of the specified cable to the site.

Separate items shall be scheduled under this payment item for each size and type of cable.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E06 : ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

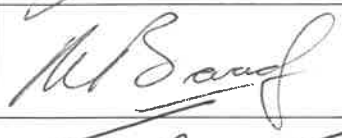
Revision 5

August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title:	**Particular Specification – E06 : Electrical Medium and Low Voltage Cable Installation**
JW Reference:	**BWW523C**
Document Ref. No:	**E06**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
5	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
4	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2010-05-03		Review Electrical Standards
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E06: ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION

CONTENTS

E06.1	**SCOPE**	**3**
E06.1.1	**Statutory Documents and Standards**	**3**
E06.1.2	**Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications**	**3**
E06.2	**GENERAL**	**3**
E06.2.1	**Cable theft prevention**	**3**
E06.2.2	**Competence of Personnel**	**3**
E06.3	**CABLE INSTALLATION ON CABLE RACKS AND STRUCTURES**	**4**
E06.3.1	**Installation of Cables**	**4**
E06.3.2	**Installation of Cable Ladders**	**4**
E06.3.3	**Installation of Cable Supports**	**4**
E06.3.4	**Grouping and Spacing of Cables**	**4**
E06.3.5	**Fixing of Cables on Cable Racks and Supports**	**5**
E06.3.6	**Spacing of Cable Supports**	**5**
E06.4	**CABLE INSTALLATION IN CABLE TRENCHES**	**5**
E06.4.1	**General**	**5**
E06.4.2	**Trench Routes**	**6**
E06.4.3	**Excavation of Cable Trenches**	**6**
E06.4.4	**Excavation of Jointing Chambers**	**6**
E06.4.5	**Excavated Material**	**7**
E06.4.6	**Inspection of Excavations**	**7**
E06.4.7	**Measurement of Excavations**	**7**
E06.4.8	**Maintenance of Excavations**	**7**
E06.4.9	**Bedding Sand**	**7**
E06.4.10	**Cable Laying**	**7**
E06.4.11	**Inspection of Cables**	**8**
E06.4.12	**Measurement of Cables**	**8**
E06.4.13	**Sifted Sand topping**	**8**
E06.4.14	**Concrete Protective Slabs**	**8**
E06.4.15	**Cable Warning Tape**	**8**
E06.4.16	**Backfill**	**9**
E06.4.17	**Identification and Marking of Cable Routes**	**9**
E06.4.18	**Road Crossings**	**10**
E06.4.19	**Crossing of Services**	**10**
E06.5	**CABLE INSTALLATION IN CABLE DUCTS**	**11**
E06.5.1	**General**	**11**
E06.5.2	**Installation**	**11**
E06.5.3	**Covers**	**11**
E06.5.4	**Filled Trenches**	**11**
E06.6	**CABLE JOINTS**	**11**
E06.6.1	**General**	**11**
E06.6.2	**Medium Voltage Cable Joints**	**12**
E06.6.3	**Low Voltage Cable Joints**	**12**
E06.7	**CABLE TERMINATION**	**12**
E06.7.1	**General**	**12**
E06.7.2	**Cable Glands**	**13**
E06.7.3	**Cable Lugs**	**13**
E06.7.4	**Medium Voltage Cable Terminations**	**14**
E06.7.5	**Cable Identification**	**14**
E06.8	**TESTING OF THE INSTALLATION**	**14**
E06.9	**COMPLETION**	**15**

E06.1 SCOPE

This section covers the installation of cables for the distribution of electrical power to be installed in soil trenches, electrical cable ducts, buildings and structures for system voltages up to 11 kV at 50 Hz.

E06.1.1 Statutory Documents and Standards

The installation will be conducted in accordance with the requirements of the following standards. Where any document or standard is referenced, it shall be deemed the latest version of that document.

(a) SANS 10198	:	The selection, handling and installation of electric power cables of rating not exceeding 33 kV
(b) SANS 1507	:	Electrical cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations
(c) SANS 10142-1	:	The wiring of premises Part 1 – Low Voltage installations
(d) SANS 1213	:	Mechanical Cable Glands
(e) DIN EN 50655-2 VDE 0278-655-2	:	Fingerprinting for heat shrinkable components for low and medium voltage applications up to 20,8/36 (42) kV

E06.1.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

(a) E02	:	ELECTRICAL CABLE RACKS
(b) E03	:	ISOLATOR PUSHBUTTON STATIONS
(c) E04	:	MOTOR CONTROL CENTRES
(d) E05	:	ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE POWER AND CONTROL CABLES
(e) E07	:	ELECTRICAL INDUSTRIAL WELDING PLUGS, COUPLERS AND SOCKET OUTLETS
(f) E08	:	WIRING
(g) E12	:	ELECTRICAL MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLES

E06.2 GENERAL

E06.2.1 Cable theft prevention

Consideration must be given at design stage for the risk posed by cable theft. The routing of cables on site must be so that there is minimum risk of cable theft. This can be effected by avoiding use of bare earth copper cables, burying cables where possible, covering with secured covers, using a concrete paving over a cable route and any other approaches that will reduce probability of cable theft. As each site has different exposure to the risk of cable thefts, the user plant personnel must be involved in a risk assessment exercise to determine measures that may be applied on a site-by-site basis.

Cable runs outside of buildings must be buried. Where cables need to cross, rise onto structures, enter buildings or link structures, cable ladders may be used. In such cases, cable racks must be covered to prevent access. The cover may be bolted, welded in such a way that it is secure and may not be easily removed by simple tools.

E06.2.2 Competence of Personnel

Contractor supervisors overseeing work on or the installation of MV equipment and cables on site

will be authorised under the Operating Regulations for High Voltage Systems (ORHVS). A valid authorisation certificate will be submitted with each tender. All contractor personnel working on medium voltage equipment shall work under the direct supervision of the authorised supervisor.

Cables, cable joints, cable terminations and cable accessories shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions by competent personnel. The Contractor shall only employ personnel fully conversant with the cable manufacturer's recommendations to lay, joint and terminate cables.

E06.3 CABLE INSTALLATION ON CABLE RACKS AND STRUCTURES

E06.3.1 Installation of Cables

Cables may be installed in one of the following ways:

(a) On horizontal or vertical cable ladders;
(b) Against horizontal or vertical metal supports or brackets;
(c) Fixed to structures.

E06.3.2 Installation of Cable Ladders

Cable ladders shall be installed:

(a) Within Motor Control Centre stations,
(b) On access platforms to the mechanical equipment;
(c) In accessible cable duct.

Cable ladders shall be supported with struts, channels, brackets, clamps, cantilever arms ext. The corrosion protection of the support elements shall be of the same system as that of the cable ladder. Nuts/bolts/washers shall be used as fasteners. Unless otherwise agreed, all screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be stainless steel 316.

On access platforms, the cable ladder will be installed at minimum of 150 mm from the supporting concrete structure. Crevice corrosion of the metal elements in contact with concrete surface shall be eliminated by means of a suitable layer of non-shrink grouting.

In accessible cable duct, cable ladder shall be supported by a 50mm high strut section securely fixed to the wall. The corrosion protection of the strut shall be of the same system as that of the cable ladder

To minimise cable theft, long cable runs on cable ladders should be avoided. For high risk areas where cable racking is used or, such cable racks must be covered with solid covers of the same material and complying with the same paint specification as the racking itself. Such covers must be bolted onto the rack in such a way that either special tools or a disk grinder would be required to remove these covers. If any additional methods to prevent cable theft are required, such requirements will be made clear to the contractor at the time of tender. This will also apply to all areas where cables are exposed or where cables are visible to by passers.

Before any cables are laid, the Engineer or his representative will inspect all cable racks.

E06.3.3 Installation of Cable Supports

Cable supports must be 3CR12-grade stainless steel, 304-grade stainless steel or 316-grade stainless steel and electric orange powder coated as for the cable racks. The size of angle iron supports must be such that no part of a cable projects beyond the support.

E06.3.4 Grouping and Spacing of Cables

Wherever possible cable racks must be mounted in the vertical plane to avoid accumulation of dirt and debris. Only single layers of cable will be allowed on a rack, to reduce de-rating and for ease of replacement and/or repairs. No more than two cables may be run on a single angle profile (3CR12) support.

Cables with a cross-sectional area of more than 16 mm^2 shall, be spaced two outside cable

diameters apart, for which no grouping correction factor need be applied.

Where parallel cable runs are installed at different levels (e.g. on parallel cable trays), and where the spacing of the layers is not specified, a minimum spacing of 300 mm shall be maintained.

Medium voltage cables shall be separated from other cables and services throughout the installation, and shall be installed in separate floor trenches, pipes or metal channels as far as possible. Where this is not feasible, a minimum spacing of 500 mm shall be maintained.

Cables for telephone, communication and alarm systems and all other low voltage systems (less than 50 V), shall be separated from power cables. In building ducts, a physical barrier shall be provided between power cables and cables for other services. Where armoured cables are used for such other services, they shall be at least 500mm away from power cables or shall be installed on separate cable trays. In the case where unarmoured cables are used for these other services, they shall be installed in separate metal channels or conduits.

E06.3.5 Fixing of Cables on Cable Racks and Supports

UV stabilised PVC straps may be used for cables up to 4core x 25mm2. For cables of larger diameter than this (i.e. 30mm diameter and larger), stainless steel strapping must be used. All cables must be individually strapped.

E06.3.6 Spacing of Cable Supports

The most generally known method of supporting cables is the restrained installation where the distance between supports is small enough to prevent any noticeable sag in the cable.

The maximum spacing between cleats (clamps) to which cables are fixed in horizontal and vertical cable routes shall be determined from Table 1 below. Additional cleats shall be installed at each bend or offset in the cable run. The maximum distance between supports or cleats for multi-core control cables shall be 20 times the outside diameter of the cable with a maximum spacing of 500 mm for unarmoured cables and 30 times the outside diameter of the cable with a maximum spacing of 1 m for armoured cables. A minimum of 20 mm ventilation clearance shall be maintained between cables and the wall to which they are cleated. Spacing of supports for cables for high voltage lighting shall be in accordance with Table 8 of SANS 10142.

Table 1: Maximum Spacing of Supports (Cleats) (mm)

FOR RESTRAINED CABLE				
Cross-sectional area of Cable conductors (mm^2)	**Wire Armoured Cables**		**Other than Wire Armoured Cables and Unarmoured Cables**	
	Horizontal Cable Routes	**Vertical Cable Routes**	**Horizontal Cable Routes**	**Vertical Cable Routes**
1,5	500	750	300	400
2,5	500	750	300	400
4,0	600	750	300	400
6,0	600	750	300	400
10,0	750	900	400	500
16,0	750	1 000	400	500
25,0	900	1 000	400	500
35,0	900	1 000	400	500
Above 35,0	900	1 000	400	500

E06.4 CABLE INSTALLATION IN CABLE TRENCHES

E06.4.1 General

The Contractor shall preserve the site as far as possible. Only the minimum of trees, shrubs,

rocks, etc. shall be removed and cleared for the cable route.

The cable trench will be arranged as shown in figure 2 below:

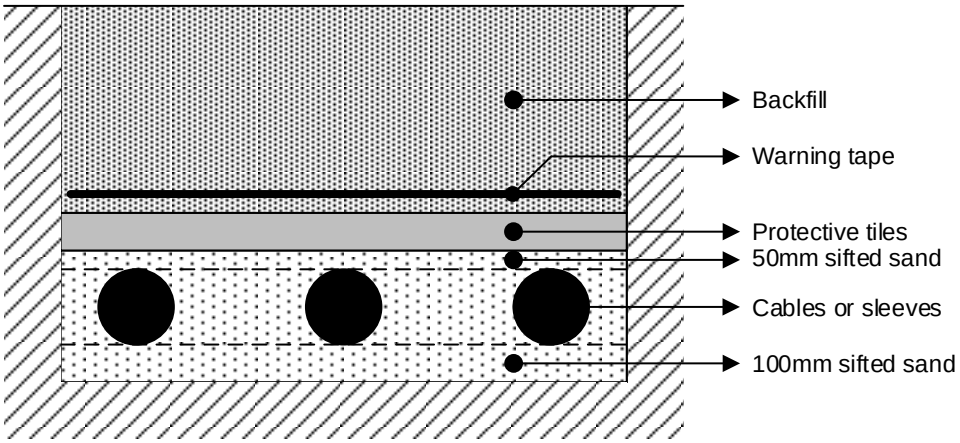


Figure 2: Cable trench arrangement

E06.4.2 Trench Routes

The cable trench shall be excavated along the route indicated on the relevant drawing. The routing should preferably traverse through the lowest theft risk areas as much as is possible.

The trench shall be as straight as possible and shall comply with all requirements. The Engineer shall determine the length of the trench to be excavated, which shall not exceed 300 m, before the cable is installed and the trench backfilled.

If any obstacle or interference should be encountered, which may require alterations to the trench or routes, such alterations shall receive prior written approval from the Engineer.

E06.4.3 Excavation of Cable Trenches

The exact positioning of trenches shall be approved on site by the Engineer and excavations shall not commence until approval has been received.

The trench shall be excavated to a depth indicated on the drawings for the different cables. Where depths are not indicated on the drawings, the following shall apply:

Cable trenches shall be excavated deep enough so that the top layer of the cables is buried a minimum of 600 mm below final ground levels for LV cables and 1000mm for MV cables.

The Contractor shall excavate by hand where he cannot excavate by means of machines due to limited access and the proximity of other services.

The bottom of the trench shall be level and shall follow the contours of the final ground level. Where the excavation is in excess of the required depth, the excavation shall be backfilled and compacted with suitable material to the required depth.

The Contractor shall remove all sharp projections, which could damage the cable where the trench is excavated through rocky formations, and shall remove all loose rocks, material, etc. from the bottom of the trench.

The Contractor shall trim the trenches and clean up the bottom of the trenches after he has completed the required excavation.

E06.4.4 Excavation of Jointing Chambers

Jointing pits shall be excavated to a depth of 1,2 m and shall be rectangular in shape and large enough for the cable jointers to work comfortably and in an efficient manner. Where more than one joint is to be made in the same position the joint pit shall be large and long enough to allow staggered joints to be made. The minimum size of a joint pit shall be as follows:

(a) One joint : 2,5 m long x 1,25 m wide

(b) Two joints : 3,0 m long x 1,5 m wide

E06.4.5 Excavated Material

No excavated material shall be left closer than 300 mm from the side of the excavation. The excavated material shall take up as small an area as possible with the safety of the workers and Works taken into consideration. The excavated material suitable for bedding material shall be placed separately on one side of the trench so that it is available when required.

Where surplus material or material unsuitable for backfilling has to be disposed of, the Contractor shall load and transport the material in the area provided to him, where it will be dumped.

E06.4.6 Inspection of Excavations

All cable excavations will be inspected by the Engineer prior to cable laying and backfilling commences.

The Contractor shall give the Engineer 24 hours' notice to do the inspections. No inspections shall be undertaken on Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays.

E06.4.7 Measurement of Excavations

Full detail of the cable trench dimensions and classification of the type of excavation shall be recorded by the contractor. The report will be presented to the Engineer as the final quantities for such excavations. The Contractor shall be responsible to keep all records as proof of progress and as basis for claims for payment. Inspections and measurements shall be completed before the installation of any bedding or backfilling.

The Contractor shall give the Engineer 24 hours' notice to be present when excavation are measured. No measurements shall be undertaken on Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays.

E06.4.8 Maintenance of Excavations

The Contractor shall maintain the excavation in a good condition, free of water, mud, loose ground, rocks, stones, gravel and other strange material until the cables are installed and the excavation is backfilled and compacted.

E06.4.9 Bedding Sand

A 100mm layer of sifted bedding sand free from sharp objects and rocks shall be laid and levelled at the bottom of each trench after the trench has been approved by the engineer, and prior to cable laying.

If the soil for the sand bed and sand cover has to be sifted, a sieve with holes 6 mm or smaller shall be used. Where this material is not available, the contractor shall import suitable material for such purposes. Where bedding has already been laid, the Engineer may instruct the Contractor to demonstrate that the minimum thickness of bedding has been provided for before authorising cable laying to proceed.

E06.4.10 Cable Laying

After approval of the trench, the cable shall be laid with the minimum of delay so that the trench can be backfilled. The Contractor shall, however, not backfill the trench until each length of cable has been inspected and approved by the engineer.

Only one cable shall be laid at a time and the Contractor shall take precautions that installed cables are not damaged. Cables should be laid with sufficient slack to relieve stresses.

The method to be used for laying cables shall be approved by the Engineer prior to the commencement of the laying of the cables.

Cable rollers shall be used when cables are drawn into trenches. The cable rollers shall be placed so that the cable does not touch the bottom or the sides of the trench. The rollers shall be of an approved construction without any sharp metal parts, which could damage the cables.

If the Contractor intends using a winch to draw the cable into the trench, a cable stocking shall be used or the draw wires shall be soldered to the cable so that the tension is exerted on all the cores, lead sheath and/or steel wire armouring at the same time.

The maximum tension on a cable during laying operations shall not exceed the value specified

by the manufacturer.

Should the Engineer not be satisfied with the manner or method employed to lay the cable he shall have the authority to instruct the Contractor to lay the cable by hand or in accordance with approved standards.

Medium-voltage cables shall overlap by at least 1m, but not more than 1,5m at joints.

Sufficient lengths of cable shall be left at the beginning and end of the cable routes to allow for the termination of the cables. Where necessary the Engineer shall decide on what length of cable is to be left. The Contractor shall take the necessary precautions to protect the cable ends until they are terminated. The cable ends shall be sealed by means of lead or heat-shrink sealing caps to ensure that the cable is waterproof.

Where cables are drawn through sleeves, care shall be taken that they are not kinked or excessively bent. No bend in a cable shall have a radius less than the minimum-bending radius specified by the cable manufacturer.

The Contractor shall keep accurate records of each length of cable laid. The following information shall be recorded:-

(d) Cable drum number
(e) Size of cable
(f) Laid from where to where
(g) Length of cable
(h) Date laid

E06.4.11 Inspection of Cables

The Contractor shall be solely responsible for inspecting all cables before backfilling to ensure that the correct type and number of cables have been installed. All cable installation will be inspected by the Engineer prior to backfilling commences.

The Contractor shall give the Engineer 24 hours' notice to do the inspections. No inspections shall be undertaken on Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays.

E06.4.12 Measurement of Cables

Full detail of the cable length shall be recorded by the Contractor. The report will be presented to the Engineer as the final quantities for such installation. The Contractor shall be responsible to keep all records as proof of progress and as basis for claims for payment. Inspections and measurements shall be completed before the any backfilling commences.

The Contractor shall give the Engineer 24 hours' notice to be present when cables are measured. No measurements shall be undertaken on Saturdays, Sundays and public holidays.

E06.4.13 Sifted Sand topping

A 50mm layer of sifted bedding sand free from sharp objects and rocks shall be laid and levelled on top of the installed cables, prior to laying of the protective concrete tiles. If the soil for the sand bed and sand cover has to be sifted, a sieve with holes 6mm or smaller shall be used. Where this material is not available, the contractor shall import suitable material for such purposes.

E06.4.14 Concrete Protective Slabs

Protective concrete tiles will be installed above the sifted sand topping. Protective concrete tiles in trenches are there to provide protection against hand digging and warning of cables below. These tiles therefore can be paving blocks, precast wall slabs, etc. Requirements are that the tiles are not less than 38mm thick and will not break under their own weight (i.e. when the longest span of the tile or slab is supported on its ends) or when laid in the trenches by commonly accepted means. The tiles must also not break when the soil is compacted. The tiles must cover the entire width and length of the trench. Before purchasing any protective tiles, the contractor must submit details of the proposed tiles to the engineer for approval.

E06.4.15 Cable Warning Tape

Cable warning tape shall be installed on all cable routes (LV and MV) at 300 mm above the

protective concrete slabs. Where a cable route exceeds 600 mm in width, multiple warning tapes shall be run in such a way that the space between adjacent warning tapes does not exceed 185 mm.

The plastic cable warning tape shall consist of a strip of polyethylene of thickness 0,04mm and of nominal width 230 mm. The tape will be completely impregnated with a pigment such that the colour of the tape is yellow, colour No B49 of SANS 1091. A black-triangle and an electric flash symbol and the words "Danger, Gevaar, Ingozi" will be printed on the tape at intervals not exceeding 1m along its length.

E06.4.16 Backfill

When the protective tiles are installed, the trench shall be backfilled with soil containing not more than 40% rock or shale which shall be able to pass through a 100 mm sieve and which is approved by the Engineer.

Where more than 40%, but less than 70% rock occurs, the Contractor shall replace the rock with imported soil. However, should more than 70% rock occur then all the backfilling material shall be imported.

(a) The Contractor may import further stone-free material to the site or sieve the excavated material for sand bedding and cover but payment shall only be compensated for the actual quantity of imported material required as determined by the engineer. The quantity of imported material required shall be calculated from the nominal trench width.

(b) The excavated material shall be backfilled in layers of 150 mm and shall be well compacted and consolidated to 90% MOD AASHTO. Where necessary the Engineer may require that a mechanical vibrator be used for compacting the trench.

(c) The Contractor shall maintain the completed sections of the cable trench in a proper safe condition for the duration of the contract. The Contractor shall refill and compact the trench where subsidence occurs.

(d) After completion of the work, the route of the cable shall be neatly finished off and cleared. All stones bigger than 25 mm as well as all loose organic material and rubble shall be removed.

E06.4.17 Identification and Marking of Cable Routes

Cable route markers, in the form of concrete pre-cast posts, which stand 1.0m above ground level, secured in the ground, must be installed every 50m on straight runs and at every change in direction of the trench. Movable route markers will not be acceptable. The post must be equipped with a stainless steel plate engraved with “ELECTRICAL CABLES”, the cable voltage and the direction indicated in which the cables run. If there are C&I cables in the same trench, there must be a separate label engraved with “C&I CABLES”, and the direction indicated in which the cables run. If there are data communication cables in the same trench, there must be a separate label engraved with “DATA CABLES” and the direction indicated in which the cables run. These labels must be cast into the concrete post so that they cannot be pried off.

At the bottom of the post, a 450 x 450 x 100mm concrete base must be cast to ensure that the route marker can only be removed if it is deliberately dug out of the ground. Steel reinforcing mesh of MRM reference 156, in accordance with SANS 1024 is required in the concrete and the concrete compressive strength of the base must not be less than 15 MPa. (Note: Reinforcing mesh to MRM 156 consists of 3.55mm diameter wire used to create 100 x 100 mm squares).

These route markers must be installed right next to the trench and not over the cables, so that the trench can be re-opened without affecting the route marker. The labels on the route marker must be on the trench side of the route marker.

Cable route markers must be protected in areas of high vehicle traffic.

Figure 1 below provides the required detail of these cable route markers.

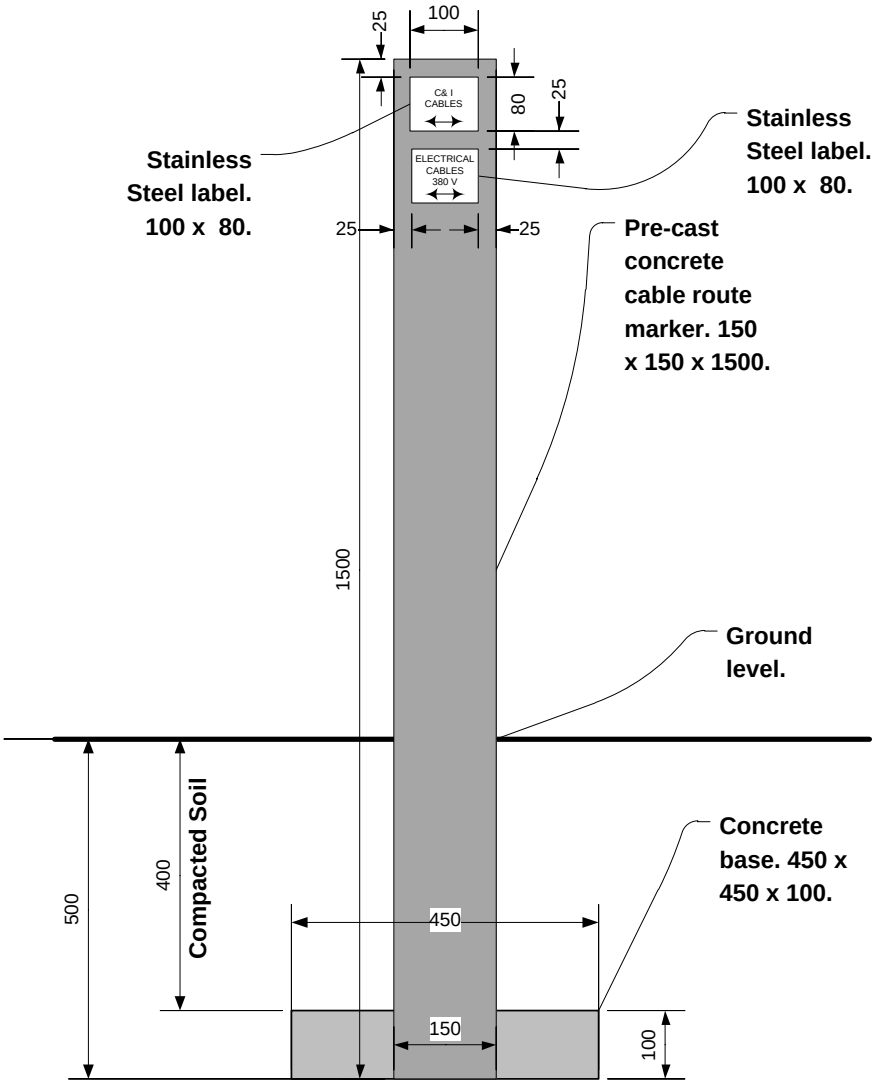


Figure 1: Cable Route Markers

E06.4.18 Road Crossings

The cable sleeves shall be installed 1,5m below ground level to avoid damage when the roads are constructed.

Unless otherwise specified, two additional sleeves shall be installed for future use at each road crossing.

Sleeves used for crossings shall be straight and undamaged. Bends shall not be allowed in road crossings. Sleeves shall be extended for a distance of 1,0m outside the roadway.

After the installation of the sleeves, the sleeves shall be meticulously backfilled so that no air pockets are left. The trench shall thereafter be backfilled in layers of 150 mm and compacted with mechanical vibrators to 95% modified AASHTO density.

The Contractor shall lay and join the cable sleeves and compact the trench to the satisfaction of the engineer. After installation, the sleeves shall be cleaned and a galvanised steel draw wire installed in the sleeve prior to the sleeve ends being sealed by means of plastic plugs.

E06.4.19 Crossing of Services

Where a cable crosses over other services, the cable shall not be installed at a depth less than

800 mm below ground level and if this is not possible, the cable shall be installed underneath the other service and shall be protected in the prescribed manner by means of concrete slabs. The depth of the cable shall be maintained for one metre on either side of the crossing.

If it is not possible to cross over or underneath a service in the prescribed manner, the matter shall be referred to the Engineer for a decision.

The following minimum clearances shall be maintained between electrical cables and other services:-

	Vertical	Horizontal
Water pipes	0,3	1,0
Sewer pipes	0,3	1,0
Storm water pipes	0,3	1,0

E06.5 CABLE INSTALLATION IN CABLE DUCTS

E06.5.1 General

This paragraph covers the installation of cables in build-up trenches, service ducts, etc. inside buildings. The trenches, ducts, etc. will be constructed and installed by others.

The use of this method of cable routing should be avoided where possible as it exposes the cables to high risk of theft. Open channels shall not be used for cable routing on any site.

E06.5.2 Installation

Cables shall be installed in one of the following ways:

(a) On vertical cable trays or.
(b) On metal supports fixed to the side of the trench with suitable clamps.

Cables shall be clamped in position.

Cables shall not be bunched and laid on the floor of purpose built trenches.

E06.5.3 Covers

The covering of concrete trenches shall as a rule fall outside the scope of the electrical installation. However, the Contractor shall be responsible for the cutting or drilling and smoothing of holes for cables through chequer plates, concrete or other coverings as required.

Cables shall enter and exit the trench through sleeves protruding 300 mm beyond the covering. The sleeves shall be permanently secured in position and the open space between the cable and sleeves shall be sealed with a non-hardening, watertight compound.

E06.5.4 Filled Trenches

Where specified herein, floor trenches shall be filled with sand.

If a sand filling is specified, the cables shall be fixed to non-corroding supports.

Sand-filled trenches other than in substations shall be covered in one of the following ways:-

(a) Reinforced concrete covers;
(b) 100mm of 20MPa concrete;
(c) Removable chequer plates. However, this will not be acceptable in open spaces.

Reinforced concrete covers shall be used where vehicular traffic may be encountered over trenches. Unless otherwise specified herein, allowance for a mass of 2 tons shall be made.

E06.6 CABLE JOINTS

E06.6.1 General

Joints in cable runs will not be allowed unless authorized by the Engineer.

Jointing shall be carried out strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions. Only personnel competent in the installation of the specific joint will carry out the work.

During outdoor jointing operations, the joint bays shall be adequately covered by tents of waterproof material suitably supported. When necessary, a trench shall be excavated around the bay to prevent the ingress of moisture. The sides of the excavation shall be draped with small tarpaulin or plastic sheeting to prevent loose earth from falling in during jointing operations.

The crossing of cores in joints shall not be permitted under any circumstances. The electrical continuity of all the conductors, screens and armouring shall not be impaired by the joints and the earth continuity shall be accomplished within the joints, i.e. no external earth continuity conductor that will be subject to corrosion, is acceptable.

Joints shall be waterproof and airtight and shall be free of voids and air pockets. The joint shall not impair the anti-electrolysis characteristics of the cable. In the case of joints in cables with an outer PVC anti-electrolysis sheath, the joints shall be subject to the same electrical insulation test as the outer sheath of the cable.

The Contractor shall notify the Engineer timeously of the day on which jointing is to be carried out in order that an inspection may be arranged if so required. Any cable joint not inspected by the Engineer because of insufficient notice being given, shall be opened for inspection and redone at the discretion of the Engineer at the cost of the Contractor.

E06.6.2 Medium Voltage Cable Joints

Medium voltage cable joints shall be of the heat shrink type.

The joints shall make minimal, if any, use of insulating or stress relieving tapes. The use of electrical stress control and insulating tubing that is heat-shrunk on to the joint is preferred above other methods.

The materials shall comply with VDE 0278 and the supplier shall be called upon to confirm this aspect before acceptance of the materials or installation.

The heat-shrinkable and other materials used for joints shall be of a high quality and shall retain their electrical and mechanical properties without deterioration.

Joint kits shall be of a reputable brand.

E06.6.3 Low Voltage Cable Joints

Low voltage cable joints shall be of the epoxy-resin type.

The resin filled joint kit shall comprise a self-sealing plastic mould of high mechanical strength having sufficient connector space. The exact amount of cold hardening resin shall be provided in a two-compartment plastic bag. The resin shall have absolute minimum shrinkage. The mould and resin shall be waterproof and non-hygroscopic and shall be resistant to ultraviolet radiation.

Joint kits shall be of a reputable brand.

E06.7 CABLE TERMINATION

E06.7.1 General

Connection of cables to switchgear shall always be effected in such a way that the various phases, seen from the front of the switchgear will be in the following positions where practically possible:-

(a) Conductor no 1 : left (red)
(b) Conductor no 2 : centre (white)
(c) Conductor no 3 : right (blue)

Exposed armouring is not acceptable. Glands will be properly fitted with shrouds to cover any bare armouring.

All cable ends shall be supplied with the necessary earth connection.

A strut or other approved means of support shall be provided to remove mechanical stress from the glands.

Cable cores shall be marked with heat-shrunk sleeves where necessary to identify the phases. Refer to SANS 10142.

The current-carrying capacity and breakdown voltage of the cable end shall be the same as for the complete cable.

Cables shall be terminated in accordance with the recommendations laid down by the manufacturers of the cables and glands installed.

E06.7.2 Cable Glands

All cable glands for indoor and outdoor use shall be Ex rated as per SABS 1213 and have corrosion proof guard. It shall have a minimum IP rating of 68.The cable glands shall be suitable for use in hazardous areas classified for zone 1,2,21 and 22.

Cable glands shall be of the adjustable type gland suitable for indoor use and shall be suitable for use with PVC PVC SWA PVC cables complying with the latest edition of SANS 1507. All glands shall be installed with non-deteriorating neoprene shrouds.

Outdoor use cable glands shall be similar to the indoor use cable glands with an additional feature of a nipple gasket and an inner seal kit, rendering the gland suitable for type "EXe" equipment (increased safety equipment).

In high corrosive areas, such as chlorination, chemical dosing and inlet works areas, the cable gland shall

(a) offer a minimum degree of ingress protection of IP 66 according to SANS 60529;

(b) be suitable for type " EXe " equipment;

(c) be corrosion proof;

(d) Have a positive seal internal to the cable gland that seals over the cable outer sheath. For these applications, no shrouds are required.

For all gland installations on armoured cable, the outer sheath of the cable shall be cut back in accordance with the gland manufacturers' recommendations, so that a minimum of armouring is exposed between the gland and the outer sheath after gland installation. The shroud shall seal on the outer sheath of the cable.

E06.7.3 Cable Lugs

Suitable cable lugs shall be used and shall preferably be solidly sweated to cable conductor ends. Lugs may be crimped using mechanical, hydraulic or pneumatic tools specifically designed for this purpose, on condition that evidence is submitted that the system used complies with the performance requirements of BS 4579, Part 1, “Compression joints in copper".

Lugs crimped to cable with a cross-sectional area of more than 16mm² shall entail the use of either pneumatic or hydraulic crimping tools. Under no circumstances may a lug be crimped by means of a hammer and/or punch.

Lugs crimped to aluminium shall be subjected to thorough inspection with relation to the material and quality of crimping by the Engineer. Bi-metallic aluminium-copper lugs shall be used according to the manufacturer's specifications, where solid aluminium conductors are terminated onto copper busbars.

Fixing bolts shall be manufactured of cadmium plated high tensile steel and shall match the lug hole size. Contact surfaces between the lug and the busbar shall be thoroughly cleaned and smoothed.

When cutting away insulation from cable conductors to fit into lugs, care shall be taken that no strands are left exposed. Under no circumstances may any of the conductor strands be cut away to fit into lugs. Care must be taken when cutting the insulation not to damage the conductors.

Cables that are connected to clamp type terminals where the clamping screws are not in direct contact with the conductors need not be lugged, but the correct size terminals shall be used.

Ferrules shall be used where cable conductors are connected directly to equipment with screws against the conductor strands.

E06.7.4 Medium Voltage Cable Terminations

Heat shrinkable termination kits shall be used for all high voltage (above 1 kV) terminations and shall be applied strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations.

The complete termination kit shall be packed in a container that is marked for the type of cable insulation and construction as well as the voltage range for which the materials are suitable. An illustrated set of instructions for the installation of the materials shall accompany every termination kit.

The terminations shall make minimal, if any, use of insulating or stress relieving tapes. The use of electrical stress control and insulating tubing that is heat-shrunk on to the terminations is preferred above other methods.

The termination kits shall include suitable boots for the covering of the terminal studs on the equipment. The cable ends shall be terminated strictly in accordance with the termination manufacturer's specification. The cable ends shall withstand the same test voltage as the cable.

The materials shall comply with VDE 0278 and the supplier shall be called upon to confirm this aspect before acceptance of the materials or installation.

The heat-shrinkable and other materials used for the terminations shall be of a high quality and shall retain their electrical and mechanical properties without deterioration.

Terminations shall be made of a material that gives lasting protection against ultra-violet radiation.

The cores of all cables terminated outdoors and the cores of 3,3 kV and higher voltage cables terminated indoors, shall be completely covered with a shrunk-on protective layer against surface tracking, ultra-violet radiation and weathering.

Outdoor terminations shall be designed to prevent flashover under wet or contaminated conditions and to ensure additional mechanical strength. This shall be achieved with shrunk- on insulating spacers and rain sheds.

E06.7.5 Cable Identification

Cables shall be identified at all terminations (both ends). The identification of MV cables installed in cable ladders, ducts or to structures shall be to SANS 10142-1.

Both ends of the cable shall be marked with the cable number in accordance with the cable schedule. The cable tag shall comprise of a punched stainless steel strap that shall be tied onto the cable by means of a thin stainless steel tape

The use of PVC tape with punched characters or punched metallic bands or tabs is not acceptable.

The identification number of cables shall be shown on the "as built' drawings of the installation.

E06.8 TESTING OF THE INSTALLATION

The contractor shall supply factory test certificates for each drum of cable supplied under the Contract.

After the installation is complete, the contractor and the Engineer shall inspect the installation. The Engineer must be notified in advance of the inspection dates. The contractor will keep a snag list, reflecting all items not acceptable to the Engineer. The contractor will correct the snag items as required to the Engineers approval, updating the snag list as the items are completed and accepted/signed off by the Engineer.

On completion of his work, the Contractor will issue an Electrical Certificate of Compliance (CoC). All tests deemed necessary to issue the CoC should be included. The Contractor shall make all arrangements, pay all fees and provide all equipment for these tests. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer timeously so that he may witness the tests.

Each installed cable shall be tested in accordance with:

(a) The Occupational Health and Safety Act (OHSA) 1994;

(b) SANS 97 (Electric cables - Impregnated paper-insulated metal-sheathed cables for rated voltages 3,3/3,3 kV to 19/33 kV)

SANS 97 Test Wave	Duration (min)	Commissioning test voltage between conductors (V)			Commissioning test voltage between conductors / sheath (V)		
		3300/ 3300	3800/ 6600	6350/ 11000	3300/ 3300	3800/ 6600	6350/ 11000
AC (r.m.s)	15	7000	13000	22000	7000	8000	13000
DC	15	9000	19000	31000	9000	11000	19000

(c) SANS 1339 (Electric cables - Cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE) insulated cables for rated voltages 3,8/6,6 kV to 19/33 kV)

SANS 1339 Test Wave	Duration (min)	Commissioning test voltage between conductors (V)			
		6600	11000	22000	33000
VLF (0.1 Hz)	60	11000	19000	38000	57000
Power frequency	60	8000	13000	25000	38000
DC	10	6000	10000	20000	30000

DC voltage testing is likely to cause irreversible damage to XLPE-insulated cable systems. The voltage and duration should be limited to the appropriate values given in the table above. The contractor shall use a DC test set to apply the test voltage. After completion of the DC test, the contractor shall soft-discharge the cable, using either the DC test set or a discharge stick where after the cable will be fully discharged by solidly earthing it for at least 8 h but preferably for 24 h. DC testing shall only be carried out with written permission from the Engineer,

(d) SANS 1507 (Electric cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500 V to 1 900/3 300 V));

SANS 1507 Test Wave	Duration (min)	Commissioning test voltage between conductors (V)			Commissioning test voltage between conductors / earth (V)		
		300/ 500	600/ 1000	1900/ 3300	300/ 500	600/ 1000	1900/ 3300
AC (rms)	15	1000	2000	6000	1000	2000	3500
DC	15	1500	3000	9000	1500	3000	5000

E06.9 COMPLETION

The Engineer reserves the right to inspect the installation at any stage during the course of construction. However, such inspections will not deem the portions inspected as being complete or accepted and the Contractor shall remain responsible to complete the installation fully in accordance with this specification.

The Contractor shall carry out a final “as built" survey of the cable routes and present to the Engineer “as built" route plans of the complete installation.

The following information shall be reflected on the plans or submitted as separate schedules with the plans:

(a) Overall length of each cable;

(b) Locations of all joints (if any) in relation to permanent reference points. Dimensions shall be shown and the method of triangulation i.e. two dimensions shall be used to each joint;

(c) The location of all cable markers in relation to permanent reference points;

(d) Identification numbers of all cables.

The Works will be deemed incomplete until all tests have been conducted and certified successfully and all "as built" drawings and schedules have been handed to the Engineer.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E07 : ELECTRICAL INDUSTRIAL WELDING PLUGS, COUPLERS AND SOCKET OUTLETS

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E07 : Electrical Industrial Welding Plugs, Couplers and Socket Outlets**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E07**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

CONTENTS

E07.1 SCOPE....3

E07.2 STANDARDS....3
E07.2.1 National Standards....3
E07.2.2 Particular specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification....3

E07.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS....3
E07.3.1 Single phase 16A household and similar purpose socket outlet....3
E07.3.2 Single phase 16A industrial socket outlet....3
E07.3.3 Three phase 63A industrial welding socket outlet (5-pin)....4

E07.4 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING....4

E07.5 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT....5

E07.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the procurement, supply, delivery, installation testing and commissioning of the required industrial welding plugs, couplers and socket outlets for industrial purposes.

E07.2 STANDARDS

E07.2.1 National Standards

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following particular national specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

(a)	SANS 1222	:	Enclosures for electrical equipment classified by IP code
(b)	SANS 1239	:	Plugs, socket-outlets and couplers for industrial purposes
(c)	SANS 6309	:	Plugs, socket-outlets and couplers for industrial purposes
(d)	SANS 1091	:	National colour standard
(e)	SANS164-2		Plug and socket-outlet systems for household and similar purposes for use in South Africa Part 2: Two-pole and earth and 2 pin (Class II), 16 A 250 V a.c. system.
(f)	SANS 10142-1	:	The Wiring of Premises Part 1 – Low Voltage Installations

E07.2.2 Particular specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification

(a)	E26	:	ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATION FOR COLOUR CODES
(b)	G02	:	PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION FOR CORROSION PROTECTION
(c)	E06	:	ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION
(d)	E08	:	WIRING

E07.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Switched 400V 3-phase, 3-wire and earth 63A industrial welding socket outlet plus a switched 230V, single phase, 3-wire 16A industrial socket outlet shall be supplied. A 4-core cable shall be used with an earth included in the supply cable.

E07.3.1 Single phase 16A household and similar purpose socket outlet

Applied to general household, commercial and light industrial installations up to 250Vac 16 A.

(a) Compliance: SANS 164-2/SANS10142-1

(b) Wall mounted socket;

(c) Be of the two-pole earthing contact type;

(d) Incoming power supply via a 2-pole earth leakage protection unit located in the upstream distribution board;

E07.3.2 Single phase 16A industrial socket outlet

(e) Wall mounted socket;

(f) Pin and sleeve configuration;

(g) 2 pole, 3-wire with 2P+E 230V ac, 16A;

(h) Incoming power supply via a 2-pole earth leakage protection unit located in the upstream distribution board;

(i) Ingress protection IP67 (SANS 1222);

(j) Switched locally on the socket outlet;

(k) Mechanical interlock to prevent plugs from being engaged or disengaged under load;

(l) Lockable by a padlock (40mm) at the switch-off position.

E07.3.3 Three phase 63A industrial welding socket outlet (5-pin)

(a) Compliance: SANS 60309-1

(b) 415Vac 3phase, neutral and protective earth (5 pin), 63A current rating

(c) Housing: Powder coated die-cast aluminium

(d) Colour: Electric orange RAL B26

(e) Wall mounted socket with top cable entry with removable flange;

(f) Pin and sleeve configuration;

(g) 3-phase earth leakage protection unit mounted in the feeder cubicle in the MCC/DB;

(h) Rated ingress protection IP55 (SANS 1222);

(i) Switched locally on the socket outlet, lockable by a padlock (40mm) at the switch-off position;

(j) Mechanical interlock: The isolator cannot be “Switched ON” without the plug inserted and the plug cannot be removed while the isolator is in “ON” position

(k) Matching metal clad plug top, 415Vac 3-phase 5 pin, 63A, IP55 to be supplied with the socket outlet.

Where pilot wire connections are required, they shall disconnect before the main phase connectors disconnect.

The equipment enclosures shall be IP55 to SANS 1222. Socket outlets that are exposed to the atmosphere or installed in damp areas, shall be minimum rated at IP 56 or as otherwise specified by the engineer. All sockets shall be constructed of corrosive resistant materials.

Both types of sockets shall be mounted on a 304 stainless steel heavy duty pedestal. The socket outlet mounting height shall be 1200 mm above finished ground level.

A purpose made metal junction box of IP65 rating to SANS 1222 fitted with a canopy shall be provided and mounted on the stand above the socket outlet in such a way that the junction box does not interfere with the use of the socket outlet. The supply cable to the welding socket shall be terminated in the junction box. Where the cross sectional area of the cores of the supply cable to the welding socket outlet exceeds 16 mm^2, the cable core size from the junction box terminals to the socket outlet shall be 16mm^2, 4-core. The 16A single-phase socket shall have its own dedicated supply.

The junction box including the canopy and the welding socket stand shall be powder coated /painted B26 – Light Orange (1673-Y48R) to SANS 1091.

E07.4 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

During testing and commissioning, the contractor shall:

(a) Perform a visual inspection to ensure that the installation complies to the requirements specified herein as well as in detailed specifications;

(b) The rating of all equipment is as specified;

(c) Test all earth leakage protection units supplied to confirm the tripping current.

E07.5 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery and installation / commissioning of industrial welding plugs, sockets, connectors etc.

Item	**Unit**
Supply and deliver of welding plugs and switched socket outlets complete with plugs	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of plugs and switched socket outlets including stands and junction boxes supplied and delivered.

Separate items shall be scheduled in the schedule of quantities for different types of switched socket outlets.

The tendered rate shall include all costs related to the supply and delivery of the specified switched socket outlet and plugs and shall include for the stands and junction boxes required.

Item	**Unit**
Install and commission welding plugs and switched socket outlets	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of plugs and switched socket outlets including stands and junction boxes installed and commissioned.

Separate items shall be scheduled in the schedule of quantities for different types of switched socket outlets and whether the plug must be installed on a cable or whether the plug must be handed over to the employer.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation of the switched socket outlet and plugs as detailed in the detail specification including all required material and labour to render a complete and working installation, including all labour and material required for installing the plug on the cable as detailed or for handing over the plug (free issue) to the employer and obtaining a receipt therefore.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E08 : ELECTRICAL WIRING

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E08 : Electrical Wiring**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E08**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E08: ELECTRICAL WIRING

CONTENTS

E08.1 SCOPE....3

E08.2 STANDARDS....3

E08.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS....3

E08.4 DRAWING OF CONDUCTORS....3

E08.5 WIRING METHOD....3

E08.6 SIZE OF CONDUCTORS....3

E08.7 DIFFERENT PHASES....4

E08.8 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING....4

E08.9 MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS AND GUARANTEES....4

E08.10 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT....4

E08.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the wiring requirements of electrical installations.

E08.2 STANDARDS

The latest edition, including all amendments to until the date of tender, of the following particular national and international specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

(a) SANS 10142-1 : The wiring of premises Part 1: Low-voltage installations

(b) SANS 1411-2 : Materials of insulated electric cables and flexible cords: Part 2 – Polyvinyl Chloride (PVC)

(c) SANS 1507 : Electric Cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500 V to 1 900/3 300 V)

E08.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

PVC insulated conductors for general wiring shall consist of high conductivity annealed copper wire strands with polyvinyl chloride insulation. The insulation shall be compounded and stabilised to comply with SANS 1411-2 as amended.

Conductors shall be finished in the required colours and shall be manufactured in accordance with SANS 1507 as amended.

Any special requirement regarding the type and size of wiring to be installed in a specific installation shall be specified.

E08.4 DRAWING OF CONDUCTORS

Wiring shall only be carried out after the wireway installation is completed, but before painting has commenced. No conductors shall be installed before the wireways have been cleaned of all debris and moisture. Wireways shall contain no sharp edges.

When conductors are drawn through conduit, care shall be taken that they are not kinked or twisted.

E08.5 WIRING METHOD

All wiring shall be carried out according to the loop-in system. When earth continuity conductors are looped between terminals of equipment, the looped conductor ends shall be twisted together and ferruled to ensure that earth continuity is maintained when the conductors are removed from a terminal.

When connecting more than one conductor in a terminal, the strands shall be securely twisted together. Under no circumstances shall strands be cut off.

E08.6 SIZE OF CONDUCTORS

The following minimum conductor sizes shall be used:

Bell circuits = 1.5 mm^2
Clock circuits = 1.5 mm^2
Lighting circuits = 1.5 mm^2
Plug circuits = 2.5 mm^2
All the above = 2.5 mm^2 earth conductor
Motor circuits = As specified

E08.7 DIFFERENT PHASES

With the exception of three-phase outlets, circuits connected to different phases shall not be present at light, switches or socket-outlet boxes.

E08.8 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

The contractor shall supply factory test certificates for each drum of cable supplied under the Contract.

After the installation is complete, the contractor and the Engineer shall inspect the installation. The Engineer must be notified in advance of the inspection dates. The contractor will keep a snag list, reflecting all items not acceptable to the Engineer. The contractor will correct the snag items as required to the Engineers approval, updating the snag list as the items are completed and signed off by the Engineer.

On completion of his work, the Contractor will issue an Electrical Certificate of Compliance (CoC). All tests deemed necessary to issue the CoC should be included. The Contractor shall make all arrangements, pay all fees and provide all equipment for these tests. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer timeously so that he may witness the tests.

Each installed cable shall be tested in accordance with:

(a) The Occupational Health and Safety Act (OHSA) 1994;

(b) The requirements of the Local and Supply Authorities.

E08.9 MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS AND GUARANTEES

E08.10 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver LV conductors .....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of conductor supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery to site of the specified conductors. Conductors will be measured linearly along the full length installed in the wireway and sufficient provision will be made in the quantities for conductor slack at outlet boxes and distribution board trays. No extra will be allowed for jointing, overlapping and wastage at connections.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each conductor size.

Item **Unit**

Install LV conductors in conduit .....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of conductors installed in conduit.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, pulling in conduit the specified number and sizes of conductors, cutting and testing of the conductors. Sufficient provision will be made for conductor slack at outlet boxes and distribution board trays to make the necessary connections to equipment.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each size of conductor.

Item **Unit**

Install LV conductors in trunking .....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of conductors installed in trunking.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, installing in trunking the specified number and sizes of conductors, the grouping of these conductors into circuits using plastic cable ties, cutting and testing of the conductors.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each size of trunking and for each size of conductor.

This rate shall furthermore include for the supply of all cable ties, clamps and other materials

necessary to ensure that the wiring conforms to the specification.

Item **Unit**

Install LV conductors in power skirting.....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of conductor installed in power skirting.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, installing in power skirting the specified number and sizes of conductors, the grouping of these conductors into circuits using plastic cable ties, cutting and testing of the conductors. Sufficient provision will be made for conductor slack at power outlets.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of power skirting and for each size of conductor.

This rate shall furthermore include for the supply of all cable ties, PVC sleeving for earth conductors and other materials necessary to ensure that the wiring conforms to the specification.

Item **Unit**

Install LV conductors in floor ducting .....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of conductors installed in floor ducting.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, installing in floor ducting the specified number and sizes of conductors, the grouping of these conductors into circuits using plastic cable ties, cutting and testing of the conductors. Sufficient provision will be made for conductor slack at power outlets. Were cables are exposed to the sun they shall be strapped, using stainless steel strapping.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of floor ducting and for each size of conductor.

This rate shall furthermore include for the supply of all cable ties, PVC sleeving for earth conductors and other materials necessary to ensure that the wiring conforms to specification.

Item **Unit**

Supply conductor terminals..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of conductor terminals supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery to site of the specified terminals complete with mounting rail and all hardware required to fasten the terminals and mounting rail. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size of terminal.

Item **Unit**

Install conductor terminals ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of conductor terminals installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection and installation of the specified terminals and mounting rail. Separate items shall be scheduled for each size of terminal.

Item **Unit**

Supply PVC insulated multicore cables .....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of cable installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the cables. Separate items shall be scheduled for the different types and sizes of cables.

Item **Unit**

Install PVC insulated multi core cables.....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear length of cable installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the cables. Separate items shall be scheduled for the different types and sizes of cables.

Item **Unit**

Supply and install the terminations for PVC multicore cables ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of terminations installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installing of the terminations as specified.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E09 : ELECTRICAL BUILDING INSTALLATION

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E09 : Electrical Building Installation**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E09**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E09: ELECTRICAL BUILDING INSTALLATION

CONTENTS

E09.1 GENERAL 4

E09.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS 4
E09.2.1 Standards 4
E09.2.2 Regulations, Acts and Bylaws 4
E09.2.3 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification 4

E09.3 ARRANGEMENTS WITH THE SUPPLY AUTHORITY 5

E09.4 FIXING AND SUPPORTING OF EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS 5

E09.5 ELECTRICAL CONDUIT INSTALLATION 6
E09.5.1 General 6
E09.5.2 Other Services 6
E09.5.3 Galvanised Conduit 6
E09.5.4 Debris 6
E09.5.5 Defects 6
E09.5.6 Conduit Ends 6
E09.5.7 Joints 6
E09.5.8 Finish 6
E09.5.9 Continuity 6
E09.5.10 Inspection Type Accessories 6
E09.5.11 Position of Outlets 6
E09.5.12 Draw Wires 7
E09.5.13 Bends 7
E09.5.14 Wall Sockets 7
E09.5.15 Luminaires 7
E09.5.16 Withdrawal of Conductors 7
E09.5.17 Temperature Differences 7
E09.5.18 Flush Mounted Outlet Boxes 7
E09.5.19 Excess Holes 7
E09.5.20 PVC Conduit 7
E09.5.21 Terminations 8
E09.5.22 Open Roof Spaces 8
E09.5.23 Installation in Concrete and Screeds 8
E09.5.24 Surface Installation 9
E09.5.25 Flexible Conduits 10
E09.5.26 Stove connection 10
E09.5.27 Expansion Joints 11
E09.5.28 Chases and Builder's Work 11
E09.5.29 Connections to Switchboards 12

E09.6 CABLE TRAYS AND LADDERS 12

E09.7 WIRING DUCTS 12
E09.7.1 Responsibility of the Contractor 12
E09.7.2 Materials and Finishes 12
E09.7.3 Cover Plates 13
E09.7.4 Connections 13
E09.7.5 Support for Conductors 13
E09.7.6 Vermin Proofing 13
E09.7.7 Earth Continuity 13
E09.7.8 Internal Finishes 13
E09.7.9 Services 13
E09.7.10 Vertical Installation 13
E09.7.11 Number of Conductors 13
E09.7.12 Fixing 13
E09.7.13 Installation in Concrete 14

E09.7.14 Fire Barrier 14
E09.7.15 Conduit Connection 14

E09.8 INSTALLATION OF LUMINAIRES 14
E09.8.1 Positions 14
E09.8.2 Cover Plates 14
E09.8.3 Hanger and Supports 14
E09.8.4 Suspended Cable Channels 14
E09.8.5 False Ceilings 14
E09.8.6 Fluorescent Luminaires Fixed to Concrete Slabs 14
E09.8.7 Fluorescent Luminaires Fixed to False Ceilings 15
E09.8.8 Continuous Rows of Luminaires 15
E09.8.9 Recessed Luminaires 15
E09.8.10 Special Ceilings 15
E09.8.11 Waterproof Luminaires 15
E09.8.12 Bulkhead Luminaires 15

E09.9 INSTALLATION OF LIGHT SWITCHES 15
E09.9.1 Mounting 15
E09.9.2 Doors 15
E09.9.3 Walls 16
E09.9.4 Switch Boxes 16
E09.9.5 Cover Plates 16
E09.9.6 Escutcheon Plates 16
E09.9.7 Surface Mounted Switches 16
E09.9.8 Cutting of Cover Plates 16
E09.9.9 Partitions 16
E09.9.10 Waterproof Switches 16
E09.9.11 Appearance 16

E09.10 INSTALLATION OF SOCKET OUTLETS 16
E09.10.1 Mounting Heights 16

E09.11 PROVISION FOR TELEPHONE INSTALLATION 17
E09.11.1 General 17
E09.11.2 Regulations 17
E09.11.3 Sleeves for Main Cables 17
E09.11.4 Separation of Services 17
E09.11.5 Main Telephone Distribution Board 17
E09.11.6 Telephone Outlets 18
E09.11.7 Connection of Telephone Outlets 18

E09.12 SWITCHBOARDS AND DISTRIBUTION BOARDS 18

E09.13 NOISE AND VIBRATION 18

E09.14 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING 19

E09.15 LABELLING AND IDENTIFICATION 19

E09.16 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS; "AS BUILT" OR "AS INSTALLED" RECORD DRAWINGS 20

E09.17 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING 21

E09.18 MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS AND GUARANTEES 22

E09.19 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 22

E09.1 GENERAL

The Particular Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Detailed Technical Specification.

Where the Detailed Technical Specification is in contradiction with this Particular Specification, the former shall apply to this contract.

E09.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS

E09.2.1 Standards

The installation shall be erected and carried out in compliance with:

(a) SANS 10142-1	:	The wiring of premises Part 1: Low-voltage installations
(b) SANS 60529	:	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)
(c) SANS 10400-FR	:	National Building Regulations and Building Standards Act (Act 103 of 1977), as amended
(d) SANS 60529	:	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)

E09.2.2 Regulations, Acts and Bylaws

The installation shall be erected and carried out in compliance with the latest edition of the following:

(a) Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993) and Regulations;

(b) Construction Regulation;

(c) Applicable By-Laws and Regulations as implemented by the Local Authority;

(d) Fire Regulations as implemented by the Local Authority.

E09.2.3 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification

This specification shall also be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

(a) E02	:	ELECTRICAL CABLE RACKS
(b) E06	:	ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION
(c) E08	:	WIRING

In addition, the Contractor shall issue all notices and pay all the required fees in respect of the installation to the local authorities, and shall exempt the Employer from all losses, costs or expenditures that may arise because of the Contractor's negligence to comply with the requirements of the regulations enumerated in paragraph 9.2.

It is assumed that the Contractor is conversant with the above-mentioned requirements. Should any requirements, by-law or regulation, which contradict the requirements of this document, apply or become applicable during erection of the installation, such requirement, by-law or regulation shall overrule this document and the Contractor shall immediately inform the Engineer of such a contradiction. Under no circumstances shall the Contractor carry out any variations to the installation in terms of such contradictions without obtaining the written permission to do so from the Engineer.

E09.3 ARRANGEMENTS WITH THE SUPPLY AUTHORITY

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to issue all notices and pay all monies that are due for the electrical builders / temporary supply connection, except where otherwise specified. If, according to the contract, these monies are reclaimable from the Employer, then these claims by the Contractor shall be substantiated with official receipts.

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to make the necessary arrangements at his own cost with the local supply authority and to supply the labour, equipment and means to inspect, test, commission and to hand over the installation.

The Contractor shall supply and install all signage, notices and warning signs that are required by the appropriate laws, regulations and/or by this document.

E09.4 FIXING AND SUPPORTING OF EQUIPMENT AND MATERIALS

(a) It is the responsibility of the Contractor to position and securely fix conduits, wiring ducts, cables and cable channels, switchboards, fittings and all other equipment or accessories as required for the installation. The Contractor shall provide and fix all supports, clamps, brackets, hangers and other fixing materials.

(b) All supporting steelwork shall be wire-brushed and given one coat of rust resisting primer, followed by one coat of high quality enamel paint before any other equipment is fixed.

(c) Supports, brackets, hangers, etc. may only be welded to steel structural members where prior permission has been obtained. Drilling of holes into or welding onto steel structural members is only allowed where prior permission has been obtained.

(d) All methods of suspension or supports shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval and for reference to the Structural Engineers where necessary, prior to manufacture or installation.

(e) Supporting of any rotating equipment shall incorporate anti-vibration mountings of the type and selection specified in the applicable clauses referring to equipment bases herein.

(f) Supports shall preferably be strut channel, shall be of mild steel sections, purpose fabricated for their application. Under no circumstances whatsoever will sheet metal straps be accepted as a supporting method. All supports shall cradle the item to be supported; supports shall not be riveted or welded to the equipment. Rod hangers shall not exceed 3000mm in length and be of minimum diameter 12mm. For longer suspensions use mild steel angles. Angle profile supports shall be of 38 x 5mm minimum section.

(g) Where holes in equipment exist, bolts and fixing screws as specified shall be used. Where sizes are not specified, the largest bolt or screw that will fit into the hole shall be used.

(h) Anchor bolts shall be used for fixing supports to brick or concrete walls, it not being permissible to utilise gunpowder shot-driven bolts for this purpose unless prior permission has been obtained.

(i) Where the fixing holes in brick or concrete walls are smaller than 10mm diameter and where the mass of the equipment is less than 15kg, wall plugs may be used to fix conduits, cables and other equipment. Aluminium, fibre or plastic plugs only may be used. Wooden plugs are not acceptable. Plugs installed in seams between bricks are not acceptable. A masonry drill of the correct size shall be used to drill holes for plugs. Round headed screws shall be used throughout.

(j) Where the fixing holes are 10mm and larger or where the mass of the equipment is 15kg or more, equipment shall be fixed by means of expanding anchor bolts or by means of bolts cast into the concrete.

(k) Galvanised screws, bolts and nuts shall be used to fix galvanised equipment.

(l) No shot-fired or explosion driven tools will be allowed.

E09.5 ELECTRICAL CONDUIT INSTALLATION

E09.5.1 General

Where conduits are to be installed in concrete, this shall be done while the building work is still in progress. Surface mounted conduit shall only be installed after the concrete has cured sufficiently.

E09.5.2 Other Services

Conduits may not be installed closer than 150mm to pipes containing gas, steam, hot water or other materials which may damage the conduits. Conduits may not touch pipes or other service installations in order to prevent electrolytic corrosion. Where doubtful situations of this nature occur or where there are installation incompatibilities, the matter shall be reported to the Engineer immediately.

E09.5.3 Galvanised Conduit

Galvanised conduit and accessories shall be used under all circumstances:

Conduit and accessories shall be hot-dipped galvanised to SANS 32: Internal and/or external protective coatings for steel tubes - Specification for hot dip galvanized coatings applied in automatic plants and SANS 121: Hot dip galvanized coatings on fabricated iron and steel articles - Specifications and test methods.

E09.5.4 Debris

Care shall be taken to prevent any debris or moisture from entering the conduit during and after installation of the conduits. All conduit ends shall be sealed by means of a solid plug, which shall be screwed to the conduit end. All conduits shall be cleaned to remove all oil, moisture or other debris that may be present, before conductors are installed.

E09.5.5 Defects

Each length of conduit shall be inspected for defects and all burrs shall be removed. All conduits that are split, dented or otherwise damaged or any conduits with sharp internal edges shall be removed from site. The Contractor shall ensure that conduits are not blocked.

E09.5.6 Conduit Ends

Conduit ends shall be cut at right angles to ensure that ends butt squarely at joints. Threads shall not be visible at joints and connections except at running joints for steel conduits.

E09.5.7 Joints

All conduit ends shall be reamed and all joints tightly screwed. Only approved couplings shall be used. Running joints with long threads shall be kept to a minimum and locknuts shall be provided to ensure a strong mechanical and a continuous electrical joint for steel conduits.

E09.5.8 Finish

All joints shall be painted with cold galvanizing paint to prevent them from rusting in damp areas, and in cases where the installation is exposed to the weather for any length of time. Where the galvanising finish was damaged, the area shall first be cleaned and a coat of cold galvanizing paint applied subsequently. Additional coats of paint shall only be applied after the undercoat has been completed.

E09.5.9 Continuity

Mechanical and electrical continuity shall be maintained throughout the conduit installation. The use of conduits as earth continuity conductors are not allowed.

E09.5.10 Inspection Type Accessories

Inspection type couplings, elbows and tees shall not be used except with the written consent of the Engineer. All outlet boxes and draw boxes shall however be of the inspection type.

E09.5.11 Position of Outlets

All accessories such as socket outlets, switches, lights, etc., shall be accurately positioned. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that all accessories are installed level and

square at the correct height from the floor, ceiling or roof level as specified. It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to determine the correct final floor, ceiling and roof levels in conjunction with the Main Contractor. Draw boxes shall not be installed in positions where they will be inaccessible after completion of the installation. Draw boxes shall be installed in inconspicuous positions to the approval of the Engineer. All installed draw boxes shall be pointed out to the Engineer. The positions of all draw boxes shall be indicated on the 'as-built' drawings.

E09.5.12 Draw Wires

Galvanised steel draw wires shall be installed in all unwired conduits, e.g. conduits for future extensions, telephone installations and other services.

E09.5.13 Bends

A maximum of two 90º bends or the equivalent displacement will be allowed between outlets and/or draw boxes. Draw boxes shall be installed at maximum intervals of 12m in straight conduit runs. All bends shall be made without heating the conduit or without reducing the diameter of the conduit. The inside diameter of a bend shall not be less than three times the outside diameter of the conduit.

E09.5.14 Wall Sockets

Where more than one socket outlet is connected to the same circuit, the conduit shall be looped from one outlet box to the following on the same circuit. Where a metal channel is used, the conduit may be installed from the channel directly to the outlet box on condition that the conductors can be looped from one outlet to the next without the jointing of wires.

E09.5.15 Luminaires

Conduit end may not be used to solely support luminaires. Where luminaires are specified which are fixed directly to the pendant box, the pendant box shall be fixed independently of the conduit installation except where the pendant box is cast into concrete.

E09.5.16 Withdrawal of Conductors

To ensure that all electrical conductors shall be easily withdrawable from conduits, the Engineer reserves the right to have the conductors on any circuit removed at his discretion and replaced at the cost of the Contractor. If the conductors are damaged during removal, the damaged conductors shall be replaced and the cost of the replacement shall be borne by the Contractor.

E09.5.17 Temperature Differences

Should the conduit installation be subject to temperature gradients at the same time, an expansion joint shall be installed in a suitable position to accommodate expansion and contraction. The conduit at the higher temperature shall be insulated from the rest of the installation with a suitable material. The above conditions for example apply where conduits leave cold rooms.

E09.5.18 Flush Mounted Outlet Boxes

The edges of flush mounted outlet boxes shall not be deeper than 10mm from the final surface. Where this is not the case, an extension box which ends flush with the surface, shall be screwed to the outlet box. This method shall be used in partitions and clad surfaces.

E09.5.19 Excess Holes

All excess holes in draw boxes, distribution boxes, switchboards, cable ducts or trunking, power skirting, etc., shall be securely blanked off to render the installation vermin proof.

E09.5.20 PVC Conduit

The use of PVC conduit shall not be allowed, only if stated in the Detailed Technical Specification portion of the document.

E09.5.21 Terminations

E09.5.21.1 Switchboards, Power Skirting, Etc.

A female bush and two lock nuts shall be installed where conduits terminate in pressed steel switchboards and distribution boxes, cable ducts, power skirting, etc. The conduit end shall only project far enough through the hole to accommodate the bush and lock nut.

E09.5.21.2 Draw Boxes

A female bush and lock nut must be used to terminate conduits at draw boxes and outlet boxes without spouts.

E09.5.22 Open Roof Spaces

E09.5.22.1 Sequence of Work

Conduits and wiring in open roof spaces above ceilings other than concrete slabs must be installed before the ceilings and walls are painted and before removable ceiling tiles are installed. In roof spaces where access is limited after installation of the ceiling. It is the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure close liaison with the Main Contractor in connection with the work.

E09.5.22.2 Fixing

All conduits is open roof spaces shall be installed parallel and at right angles to the roof members and shall be fixed to the structures at intervals not exceeding 1 metre. Approved saddles shall be used throughout. Clout nails, clamps or wood screws shall be used to secure the saddles to wooden roof members. Saddles which comply with the requirements of this specification shall be used to secure conduits against concrete slabs. Written permission shall be obtained to secure conduits to steel beams in which case saddles shall be fixed by means of bolts, nuts and lock washers or purpose made saddles shall be used.

E09.5.22.3 Cross-Overs

Crossovers in conduit routes shall be minimised. Where crossovers are unavoidable offset one conduit only to cross the other conduit. Where several conduits enter the same draw box, they shall as far as possible be installed parallel to each other.

E09.5.22.4 Draw Boxes

Install draw boxes with metal cover plates where required and as far as possible near gangplanks. The use of socket and switch boxes instead of draw boxes in open roof spaces is unacceptable.

E09.5.22.5 Positions of Accessories

Install conduits in open roof spaces, which is accessible after completion of the building to allow wiring or inspection from a position above the conduits. Install conduits in ceiling voids with less than 900mm clear space between the ceiling and the roof, to permit wiring and inspection from a position below the conduits. Loop conduits between outlet boxes.

E09.5.22.6 Incandescent Luminaires

Where luminaires are secured directly to draw boxes in false ceilings or where ceiling roses or special connections are used, flush mounted, rear entry round draw boxes that are independently fixed to roof beams, shall be provided.

E09.5.22.7 Conduit Ends

All conduit ends for lighting outlets in ceilings shall be securely supported.

E09.5.22.8 Fluorescent Luminaires

Draw boxes for fluorescent luminaires shall be installed as specified in the previous paragraph but luminaires shall be installed as specified in paragraph 9.5.22.6.

E09.5.23 Installation in Concrete and Screeds

The Contractor must position all conduits and accessories casted in concrete in good time to prevent building delays.

In order not to delay building operations, the Contractor shall ensure that all conduits and accessories that casted in concrete are positioned in good time. The Contractor or his representative must attend when the concrete casting.

E09.5.23.1 Draw Boxes

Draw boxes, expansion joints and round ceiling boxes shall be installed where required and shall be neatly finished to match the finished slab and wall surfaces. Ceiling draw boxes shall be of the deep type. In hollow tile slabs, rear-entry draw boxes shall be used. In columns where flush mounted draw boxes are installed, the conduits shall be offset from the surface of the column immediately after leaving the draw box.

E09.5.23.2 Cover Plates

Where possible draw boxes and/or inspection boxes shall be grouped together under a common approved cover plate. The cover plate shall be secured by means of screws.

E09.5.23.3 Fixing to the Shuttering

All conduits, draw boxes etc., shall be securely fixed to the shuttering to prevent displacement when concrete is cast. Wire will not be accepted for securing boxes to the shuttering where off-shutter finishes are required. All draw boxes and outlet boxes shall be plugged with wet paper before they are secured to the shuttering.

E09.5.23.4 Concrete Floor Slabs

Conduits will not be allowed in concrete floor slabs of boiler rooms (or boiler houses), laundries, dewatering buildings, pump stations or other damp areas. Equipment in damp areas shall only be supplied from above by means of multi-core PVC-insulated cables which shall either be installed in galvanised steel ducting or on galvanised cable trays. All socket outlets and three phase outlets in damp areas shall be supplied from above.

E09.5.23.5 Screeds

The installation of conduits in floor screeds shall be kept to a minimum. Where conduits are installed in screeds, the top of the conduit shall be at least 20mm below the surface of the screed. Where the screed is laid directly on the ground, galvanised conduits shall be used. This ruling will always be applicable to the lowest floor of a building. A minimum distance of twice the outside diameter of the conduit shall be left free between adjoining conduits. Conduits shall be secured to the concrete slab at intervals not exceeding 2,0m.

E09.5.23.6 Inspection

All draw boxes, conduits, etc., which are installed in concrete shall be cleaned with compressed air and provided with draw wires two days after removal of the shuttering. Errors that occur during the installation of the conduits, or any lost draw boxes, or blocked conduits, shall be immediately reported to the Engineer in order that an alternative route can be planned and approved by the Engineer before the additional concrete is cast. Any additional cost shall be to the Contractor's account.

E09.5.24 Surface Installation

Except where installed in ceiling spaces, the installation of conduit on the surface of walls and concrete slabs will only be allowed when authorised, in writing, by the Engineer. Where surface conduits are specified, saddles shall be of the hospital (spacer) type.

E09.5.24.1 Building Lines

All conduits shall be installed horizontally or vertically as determined by the route and the Contractor shall take all measures to ensure a neat installation. Where conduits are to be installed directly alongside door frames, beams, etc., that are not true, conduits shall be installed parallel to the frames, beams, etc. When in doubt, the Contractor shall consult the Engineer before installation is commenced.

E09.5.24.2 Saddles

Conduits shall be firmly secured by means of saddles spaced at maximum intervals of 2000mm with at least two saddles per run. Saddles shall be submitted to the Engineer for

approval prior to commencement of installation. Where saddles are used to secure vertical lengths of conduit connected to surface mounted switch boxes or socket outlet boxes, the saddles shall be spaced so that the intervals between the box and the first saddle, between any two successive saddles and between the last saddle and the ceiling or roof are equidistant. Conduits shall be secured within 250mm before and after each 90° bend.

E09.5.24.3 Joints

Joints will not be allowed in conduit lengths not exceeding 3500mm when these conduits are installed on the surface of a wall. Threads shall not be visible at joints of completed installations, except where running joints are used. Running joints will be allowed only when absolutely necessary. All running joints shall be provided with lock nuts and shall be painted with red lead immediately after installation.

E09.5.24.4 Accessories

Inspection bends or tee pieces shall not be used. Non-inspection type bends may be used in the case of 40mm or 50mm diameter conduits. All draw boxes supporting luminaires or other equipment shall be fixed independently of the conduit installation.

E09.5.25 Flexible Conduits

In installations where the equipment has to be moved frequently to enable adjustment during normal operation, for the connection of motors or any other vibrating equipment, for the connection to thermostats and sensors on equipment, for stove connections and where otherwise required by the Engineer, flexible conduit shall be used for the final connection to the equipment.

The lengths of flexible conduit shall be as short as possible to comply with the requirements of the particular connection but shall not exceed 600mm, except when specified or approved by the Engineer.

Flexible conduit shall preferably be connected to the remainder of the installation by means of a draw box. The flexible conduit may be connected directly to the end of a conduit if an existing draw box is available within 2000mm of the junction and if the flexible conduit can easily be rewired.

Flexible conduit shall consist of metal-reinforced plastic conduit or PVC covered metal conduit with an internal diameter of at least 15mm, unless approved to the contrary. In false ceiling voids, flexible conduit of galvanised steel construction may be used. Connectors for coupling to the flexible conduit shall be of the gland or screw-in type, manufactured of either brass or cadmium or zinc plated mild steel. The requirements of paragraphs 9.5.9 are applicable.

Where the possibility exists that the conduit can come into contact with moisture, suitable covering and/or packing shall be installed to isolate the conduit from the moisture.

Flexible conduit connections shall be provided with an internal or external earth wire connection as required by the local Supply Authority, with preference given to internal earth wires where no specific local regulations apply.

E09.5.26 Stove connection

A freestanding stove, rated above 16A must be plugged in by means of a stove coupler (see figure 1). The stove coupler, which shall comply with SABS IEC 60309-with a minimum of 45Amp single-phase and 16 A per phase for three-phase. The open end of the connector tube shall point downwards.The switch-disconnector for the cooking appliance shall

(a) be in the same room as the appliance,

(b) be at a height above floor level of not less than 0, 5 m and not more than 2, 2 m,

(c) not be above the cooking appliance,

(d) be within 3 m of the appliance, but within 0, 5 m of the appliance if the switch-disconnector's purpose is not clearly indicated, and

(e) not be fixed to the appliance.

Figure 1: Stove coupler

E09.5.27 Expansion Joints

Where conduits cross expansion joints in the structure, approved type draw boxes which provide a flexible connection in the conduit installation shall be installed.

The draw box shall be installed adjacent to the expansion joint of the structure and a conduit sleeve, one size larger than that specified for the circuit, shall be provided on the side of the draw box nearest the joint. The one end of the sleeve shall terminate at the edge of the joint and the other shall be secured to the draw box by means of locknuts.

The circuit conduit passing through the sleeve shall be terminated 40mm inside the draw box. The gap between the sleeve and the conduit at the joint shall be sealed to prevent the ingress of wet cement.

The conduit boxes shall be drilled and tapped and the earth wire shall be bonded to the boxes by means a 2,5mm^2 copper wire(minimum) with lugs and brass screws.

Draw boxes at the expansion joint shall be provided with a suitable steel cover plate fixed to the boxes by means of screws. The cover plates shall be installed before the ceilings are painted by others.

E09.5.28 Chases and Builder's Work

Except where otherwise specified, the Contractor shall be responsible for the builder's work connected with conduits, outlet boxes, switchboard trays, bonding trays and other wall outlet boxes as well as the necessary chasing and cutting of walls and the provision of openings in ceilings and floors for luminaires and other electrical outlets. The Contractor shall notify the Main Contractor of his requirements and the responsibility lies with the Contractor to ensure that these requirements are met.

Electrical materials to be built in must be supplied, placed and fixed in position by the Contractor when required by the Main Contractor. The Contractor shall also ensure that these materials are installed in the correct positions.

Where no Main Contractor is on site the Contractor is required to cover conduits installed in chases by a layer of 4 : 1 mixture of coarse sand and cement, finished 6mm below the face of the plaster and roughened. In all cases chases shall be deep enough to ensure that the top of conduits are at least 12mm below the finished plaster surface.

The Contractor is responsible for the cutting of chases and the building-in of conduits or other equipment. , He will be held responsible for all damage as a result of this work and will be required to make good to the satisfaction of the Engineer. Chases shall be made by means of a cutting machine.

Under no circumstances shall face brick walls or finished surfaces be chased or cut without the written permission of the Engineer. Where it is necessary to cut or drill holes in the concrete structure, then prior permission of the Structural Engineer shall be obtained to ensure that the structure is not weakened.

The Contractor shall maintain close co-operation with the Main Contractor and all his Contractors throughout the course of the contract. Should the Contractor not comply with this requirements, any additional costs resulting from lack of his co-operation will be recovered from him.

E09.5.29 Connections to Switchboards

Wherever possible conduits connected to switchboards shall terminate in a common fabricated sheet steel draw box installed in the vicinity of the switchboard. In open roof spaces this draw box shall be placed in a roof space of not less than 900mm clearance. Lighting and plug circuits may be separately grouped in common conduits or metal ducts (trunking) from the distribution board to the draw box.

The draw box shall be of sheet steel with a minimum thickness of 1,6mm and shall be provided with a removable cover plate.

E09.5.29.1 Flush Mounted Switchboards

Where flush mounted switchboards are required, the recessed switchboard tray shall be built into the brick or concrete wall. All conduits from the floor or roof shall be fully recessed and shall be bonded directly to the tray.

E09.5.29.2 Surface Mounted Switchboards

Where surface mounted switchboards are specified but where the conduits can be fully recessed, the conduit shall be connected to a recessed connection box installed behind the switchboard. An opening with the same dimensions as the connection box shall be cut in the back of the switchboard and be provided with a suitable grommet.

E09.6 CABLE TRAYS AND LADDERS

Please revere to the specification E02: Electrical Cable Racks.

E09.7 WIRING DUCTS

E09.7.1 Responsibility of the Contractor

The Contractor shall supply and install all wiring ducts as specified or as required by the cable and wiring installation including the necessary supports, hangers, fixing materials, bends, angles, junction T-pieces end caps, etc.

E09.7.2 Materials and Finishes

Wiring ducts shall be rolled from 1,2mm minimum sheet steel and shall be finished as follows:

(a)	In boiler rooms (or boiler houses), laundries, dewatering buildings, pump stations or other damp areas damp areas.	Stainless steel 3CR12 and epoxy powder coated
(b)	False ceiling voids	Pre-galvanised
(c)	Vertical building ducts	Hot-dipped galvanised to SANS 32 and SANS 121
(d)	Surface mounted in plant rooms, substations, service tunnels, basement, offices	Epoxy powder coated or electro-galvanised
(e)	Undercover industrial applications	Hot-dipped galvanised to SANS 32 and SANS 121.

The abovementioned finishes shall apply unless specifically to the contrary in the Detailed Technical Specification. Epoxy powder coats shall comply with paragraph EO9.12.9. Hot-dipped galvanised or electro-galvanised wiring ducts shall be cold galvanised at all joints, sections that have been cut and at places where galvanising has been damaged. Powder coated ducts shall likewise be touched up at joints, cuts and damaged portions using spray canisters recommended by the manufacturers of the channels.

E09.7.3 Cover Plates

All wiring ducts shall have metal snap-in cover plates. Cover plates for wider ducts shall be fixed by means of screws that shall permanently be tapped into the cover plates spaced at suitable intervals to prevent warping. The finish of the covers shall comply with paragraph EO9.7.2

E09.7.4 Connections

Adjoining lengths shall be correctly aligned and securely joined by means of fishplates and mushroom bolts, washers and nuts or connection pieces that are pop-riveted to both adjoining sections. All adjoining sections shall be rectangular and shall butt tightly. Covers shall fit tightly across the joint.

E09.7.5 Support for Conductors

All conductors in inverted wiring ducts shall be retained by means of metal clips or metal spacer bars at not less than 1m centres.

E09.7.6 Vermin Proofing

All wiring ducts shall be vermin proof after installation. Holes shall be covered by means of screwed metal plugs or by means of metal strips that are bolted or pop-riveted to the channel. Wooden or other plugs which are driven into holes or other temporary plugs or covers are not acceptable.

E09.7.7 Earth Continuity

Electrical and mechanical continuity shall be maintained throughout the wiring duct installation. A tinned copper bonding strip ($6mm^2$) shall be installed across each joint and secured to both adjoining ducts by means of galvanised bolts, nuts and washers. The duct shall be bonded to the earth bar of the associated switchboard.

E09.7.8 Internal Finishes

All bends shall be of easy sweep design with 45^o gussets. Burrs and sharp edges shall be removed and the inside edges of all joints shall be lined with rubber cement or other suitable rubberised or plastic compound to prevent conductor insulation laceration.

E09.7.9 Services

Multiple duct runs or internal metal partitions shall be used where conductors for power, control and other services are present.

E09.7.10 Vertical Installation

Where vertical duct lengths exceed 5m, conductors shall have intermediate fixings.

E09.7.11 Number of Conductors

Wiring ducts shall be large enough to ensure that the combined total cross-sectional area (including insulation) of all conductors does not exceed 40% of the cross-sectional area of the duct.

E09.7.12 Fixing

The Contractor shall supply and install all hangers, supports or fixings for the ducts. Ducts up to 75 x 75mm shall be supported at maximum intervals of 1m and larger channels at maximum intervals of 2m. Duct runs shall be carefully planned to avoid clashes with other services and to ensure that all covers can be removed after completion of the entire installation. The method of fixing the ducts or supports to the structure shall comply with paragraph E09.4 with particular

reference to paragraphs E09.4.f and E09.4.h. Purpose made cable clamps, hangers, etc. shall be used as required.

E09.7.13 Installation in Concrete

The installation of wiring ducts in concrete will not be allowed.

E09.7.14 Fire Barrier

Where wiring ducts pass through walls, non-asbestos filling shall be installed around the conductors to serve as a fire barrier.

E09.7.15 Conduit Connection

All conduit connections shall be terminated by means of two lock nuts and a brass female bush. All holes through which conductors pass shall be equipped with grommets.

E09.8 INSTALLATION OF LUMINAIRES

E09.8.1 Positions

The mounting positions of luminaires shall be verified on site. All luminaires shall be placed symmetrically with respect to ceiling panels, battens, beams, columns or other architectural features of the space. The layout as shown in the documents shall generally be adhered to but any discrepancies or clashes with structural or other features must be referred to the Engineer before commencing erection of the installation. Should the Contractor neglect to refer such discrepancies to the Engineer, costs incurred as a result of subsequent alterations to suit the architectural features shall be to the Contractor's account.

E09.8.2 Cover Plates

Cover plates shall be fitted over all draw boxes and outlets for luminaires that are not covered by the luminaire canopy, lamp-holder, ceiling rose or similar accessories.

E09.8.3 Hanger and Supports

Where provision has not been made for the fixing of luminaires, the Contractor shall supply the necessary supports, hangers, conduit extensions, angle brackets or any fixing method approved by the Engineer.

E09.8.4 Suspended Cable Channels

Luminaires (especially fluorescent luminaires) may also be suspended from ceilings by means of suspended metal channels. The channel may be supported by conduits or threaded rods.

Should metal rods be utilised, these shall be screwed to anchor bolts fixed in the roof slab.

Wiring shall either be installed in conduits fixed to the metal channel or in the metal channels. Purpose-made clamps shall be used to fix the fittings to the cable channel.

E09.8.5 False Ceilings

In all cases where luminaires are fixed to false ceilings, the Contractor shall ensure that the ceiling is capable of carrying the weight of the luminaires before commencing installation.

Should any doubt exist in this regard, the matter shall be referred to the Engineer.

In cases where the mass of the luminaire is not carried by the ceiling but by a support or other suspension method, provision shall be made to prevent relative movement between the ceiling and luminaire, ceiling rose or connection point.

E09.8.6 Fluorescent Luminaires Fixed to Concrete Slabs

Fluorescent luminaires to be installed directly against concrete slabs or walls shall be fixed to the outlet box and at two additional points. The additional fixing can be effected by:

(a) bolts built into the ceiling or wall,

(b) screws and approved plugs, or

(c) anchor bolts.

Shot-fired fixings are not acceptable. If specified or where approved by the Engineer, fluorescent fittings may be fixed to metal channels installed against concrete slabs or walls. The metal channel fixing may in this case be short-fired or fixed by any of the abovementioned methods. Purpose-made clamps shall be used to fix fittings to cable channels.

E09.8.7 Fluorescent Luminaires Fixed to False Ceilings

When fixing fluorescent luminaires to false ceilings, a gap shall not be visible, except where the ceiling tile is of non-fire resistant material, between the fitting and the ceiling. The luminaire shall be fixed directly to the ceiling beams by means of 40mm round-head wood screws and washer or alternatively be fixed to 50 x 76mm wooden supports that are fixed to the ceiling beams. In the case of tiled ceilings with exposed or concealed T-section supports, the luminaires shall be fixed to the metal supports by means of butterfly screws, pop-rivets or bolts with nuts and washers. Self-tapping screws may not be used.

E09.8.8 Continuous Rows of Luminaires

In cases where fluorescent luminaires are installed in tandem, only one connection outlet need be supplied per circuit. All luminaires shall be coupled to one another by means of nipples or brass bushes and lock nuts to ensure that wiring is not exposed and that earth continuity is maintained. Luminaires on the same circuit may be wired through the channel formed by the fitting canopies. In this case silicon-rubber insulated conductors shall be used and internal connections shall be made at terminal blocks.

Screw connectors are not acceptable. The wiring for any other circuits or outlets, even though these may be in the same row may not be installed through the fitting canopies. The Contractor shall ensure that continuous rows are straight and parallel to the relevant building lines.

E09.8.9 Recessed Luminaires

Where recessed luminaires are required, the Contractor shall maintain close liaison with the Ceiling Contractor. In the case of tiled ceilings, the luminaires shall be installed while the metal supports are being installed and before the tiles are placed in position. The Contractor shall be responsible for the co-ordination of the cutting of ceiling tiles with the Main Contractor and the Ceiling Contractor concerned. All mounting rings and other accessories shall fit closely into cut-outs to ensure a proper finish.

E09.8.10 Special Ceilings

In cases where special ceilings e.g. aluminium strips, decorative glass, metal leaves, etc., are to be installed, the Contractor and the manufacturer of the ceiling shall agree upon the method of fixing of luminaires to the ceiling.

E09.8.11 Waterproof Luminaires

Waterproof and flameproof luminaires shall be screwed directly to the conduit end. Draw boxes that may be required must be approved by the Engineer beforehand.

E09.8.12 Bulkhead Luminaires

Surface mounted bulkhead luminaires shall not be screwed directly to conduit ends. The conduit shall terminate in a round draw box at the top or back of the fitting. The PVC-insulated conductors shall terminate in a porcelain terminal strip in the draw box. Asbestos or silicon-rubber insulated conductors shall be used from the terminal strip to the luminaire lamp-holder. Porcelain-screw connectors will also be allowed.

E09.9 INSTALLATION OF LIGHT SWITCHES

E09.9.1 Mounting

All light switches shall be installed 1400mm above the finished floor level unless specified to the contrary. Mounting heights given shall be measured from the finished floor level to the centre of the switch.

E09.9.2 Doors

Unless specified to the contrary, switches adjacent to doors shall be installed on the side containing the lock. If the position of the lock is not shown on the drawings, the position shall

be verified before the switch box is installed. Switch boxes in brick or concrete walls, shall be installed 150mm from the door frame. Light switches installed in partitions or door frames shall be of the type designed for that purpose.

E09.9.3 Walls

Where the lower portion of a wall is face brick and the upper portion plastered, light switches shall be installed wholly in the plaster, provided that the lower edge of the plaster is not higher than 1600mm above the finished floor level. In general where different wall finishes are used in the same area, switches shall be installed within the same finish and not on the dividing lines between finishes.

E09.9.4 Switch Boxes

Switches shall be installed in standard rustproof (galvanised) pressed steel switch boxes with the necessary knock-outs for the proper termination of conduits. The installation of switch boxes shall comply with the requirements of paragraph E09.5 of this specification. Boxes shall be flush mounted or recessed as specified for the whole installation.

E09.9.5 Cover Plates

Cover plates which overlap the switchbox and which fit tightly against the wall finishes shall be installed in the case of flush mounted switch-boxes. All fixing screws in cover plates and switch grids shall be supplied and securely fitted.

E09.9.6 Escutcheon Plates

Where flush mounted switches are installed in special wall finishes, e.g. wood or board panels, acoustic tiles or other cladding, etc., and where the wall finishes have to be cut to accommodate the switch, it may be necessary to fix an escutcheon plate to the wall to cover the cut-outs. The escutcheon plate shall fit closely around the switch box and shall be fixed independently of the switch box and cover plate. Bevelled cover plates that overlap the switch boxes shall be used. Cover plates shall be fixed to the switch boxes and shall fit firmly against the escutcheon plate.

E09.9.7 Surface Mounted Switches

Surface mounted switches shall consist of a metal switch-box, cover plate and switch specially manufactured for the purpose. Switch boxes shall be fixed to the surface as described in paragraph E09.4 of this specification.

E09.9.8 Cutting of Cover Plates

Cover plates shall under no circumstances be cut unless specifically authorised in exceptional cases by the Engineer.

E09.9.9 Partitions

Light switches installed in partitions shall preferably be of the type designed for this purpose to be accommodated in the partition design. Switches installed in the metal support do not require switch boxes. Switches may not be flush mounted in partition walls without switch boxes.

E09.9.10 Waterproof Switches

Switches that are exposed to the atmosphere or are installed in damp areas, shall be of the waterproof type.

E09.9.11 Appearance

The sides of adjacent switches, plugs, push-buttons, etc., shall be parallel or perpendicular to each other and uniformly spaced. A common escutcheon plate shall be used for flush mounted outlets and accessories where the cover plates do not cover the cut-outs in the finishes.

E09.10 INSTALLATION OF SOCKET OUTLETS

E09.10.1 Mounting Heights

Unless otherwise specified socket outlets (flash or service mounted) shall be installed at the

following heights above finished floor level:

Socket outlets in general	300mm
Above working counter (kitchens, laboratories and prep areas)	1200mm
Shops	300mm
Offices	300mm

All mounting heights shall be measured from finished floor level to the centre of the outlet box Socket outlet boxes shall comply with paragraph E09.9.4.

E09.11 PROVISION FOR TELEPHONE INSTALLATION

E09.11.1 General

This specification covers only the supply and installation of outlet points and wiring channels and/or conduits for telephones in buildings. The telephone installation will be carried out by Telkom personnel or Specialist Contractor.

E09.11.2 Regulations

All provisions for telephones in buildings shall comply with the latest issue of "FACILITIES FOR TELECOMMUNICATION SERVICES IN BUILDINGS" as issued by Telkom. In cases where the provision of this publication and the requirements of the Detail Technical Specification are in conflict, the latter shall take precedence.

E09.11.3 Sleeves for Main Cables

One or more asbestos-cement or PVC sleeves as specified, shall be installed from a point at the boundary of the stand, (position indicated by the Engineer), to the main telephone distribution board or the main telephone building duct , 600mm below ground level.

A manhole with steel cover (as specified in Part 2, Detail specification) shall be installed at each bend in the underground route or at intervals not exceeding 50m in straight sections.

The inner radius of bends shall not be less than 12 times the outside diameter of the sleeves.

All sleeves, manhole covers and accessories shall be supplied by the Contractor including the building work of the manhole, unless specified to the contrary.

E09.11.4 Separation of Services

Cables or conductors for telephone services shall be separated from all other services by:

(a) Installation in separate metal channels or conduits, or

(b) Installing the cables at a minimum distance of 300mm from all power cables, conductors and accessories, or

(c) An earthed metal barrier installed to ensure that the minimum distance through free air space between the telephone cables and other services is at least 300mm.

Conduits or wiring channels installed for telephone services may not be used for any other purpose. Where non-metallic channels are used, the separation as stated in (b) above shall be maintained through the installation.

E09.11.5 Main Telephone Distribution Board

The size and position of the Main Telephone Distribution Board where required, shall be installed according to the requirements of the Detailed Technical Specification.

The board shall consist of a metal tray, architrave frame and hinged doors and shall be flush mounted in the position shown on the drawings.

A 20mm thick wooden panel shall be installed in the main telephone distribution board and shall cover the entire back of the board.

The finish of the board shall comply with the requirements of paragraph E09.16.9.

All conduits to telephone outlets or sub-distribution boards in the building as well as the main incoming sleeves, shall terminate at the main distribution board as indicated on the drawing.

Where 100 x 100 x 50mm draw boxes are specified, the boxes shall be provided with a cover plate. A wooden panel need not be provided in these cases.

E09.11.6 Telephone Outlets

The Contractor shall make provision for outlets with blank cover plates only.

Telephone outlets in walls shall consist of flush mounted 100 x 50 x 50mm draw boxes with blank cover plates.

Telephone outlets in floors shall be of the same type as floor outlets for power sockets which may be specified in the Detailed Technical Specification.

These provisions also apply to underfloor ducting. If no floor outlets are specified, 100 x 100 x 50mm flush mounted draw boxes with blank cover plates shall be provided in the floor at the positions indicated on the drawings.

Where twin underfloor ducts are provided and where the one duct is intended for telephone cables, the separation between the ducts shall be maintained throughout the underfloor ducting installation, including power outlets and telephone outlets.

Where power skirting is specified for telephone installations, the Contractor need only install the skirting with covers since the telephone socket outlet will be fixed directly to the cover.

Where multiple power skirting is provided containing other services, no other cables may be installed in the section intended for telephone cables and the separation between the sections shall be maintained throughout the installation.

E09.11.7 Connection of Telephone Outlets

Telephone outlets shall be inter-connected and connected to the telephone distribution boards as shown on the drawings.

If the inter-connecting conduits are not specified, conduit sizes shall be 25mm diameter for a maximum of 10 outlets and 32mm diameter for 11 to a maximum of 20 outlets.

Metal channels or power skirting installed on the same floor level on opposite walls of the same area as well as parallel runs of underfloor ducting intended for the installation of telephone cables, shall be inter-connected at intervals of 8 metres. Conduits may be used for these inter-connections.

All conduit and all ducts or channels which do not have removable covers, shall be provided with galvanised steel draw wires.

Conduit connections to power skirting or surface mounted metal channels, shall be made by means of a 100 x 100 x 50mm draw box which is flush mounted immediately behind the duct or channel in which the telephone cables are to be installed. A hole shall be cut in the back of the duct or channel, immediately opposite the draw box. The edges of the hole shall be grommetted. The draw box shall be accessible from the front when the cover is removed.

Purpose-made accessories for the connection of conduits to underfloor ducts shall be used. Where these are not available a 100 x 100 x 50mm draw box shall be installed below the underfloor duct opposite a floor telephone outlet. A hole shall be cut in the back of the duct opposite the draw box. The draw box shall be accessible from the top via the floor outlet.

E09.12 SWITCHBOARDS AND DISTRIBUTION BOARDS

Please see Specification E04: Electrical Low Voltage Distribution Boards and Motor Control Centres.

E09.13 NOISE AND VIBRATION

If in the opinion of the Engineer, any equipment operates with, or transmits from it, objectionable noise or vibration, it will be necessary to rectify or replace such plant in order

that the system operates at conditions acceptable to the Engineer. Remedial measures taken to achieve satisfactory noise and vibration levels shall be at no additional cost to the Employer.

The following measures shall be taken where necessary, whether specifically stipulated in these documents or not, all to ensure quiet, vibration-free operation of the installations:

(a) Equipment shall be mounted on vibration isolators of the correct type and selection, dependent upon deflection requirements versus vibrating frequency.

(b) Pipework and ductwork shall be suspended or mounted using suitable supports with vibration isolators to prevent transmission of vibration from them to the structure to which they are attached.

E09.14 COMMISSIONING AND TESTING

The Contractor shall commission and test the entire installation at his own expense, including provision of all test equipment, such testing to be done in the presence of the Engineer, who shall have been notified of the dates and approximate duration of the tests sufficiently early to allow him to witness tests if necessary.

The Contractor shall properly test and call for inspection by the Engineer any work which is to be covered, concealed, built-in, otherwise closed up or rendered inaccessible, before such closing up takes place. The Engineer may require any work of this nature which he has not been called on to inspect before closing up, to be uncovered or made accessible to him entirely at the Contractor's expense, making good included.

It is in the interest of the Contractor to notify the Engineer when the installation reaches various stages of completion (e.g. before plastering, final finishes, before casting concrete, etc) in order that the Engineer may inspect the installation and point out discrepancies. These inspections shall be considered informal and under no circumstances will they, in part or in whole, invalidate the requirements of the document. Any costs incurred in correcting discrepancies shall be to the Contractor's account.

The Contractor shall keep full and proper written records of all tests conducted and commissioning information, such data to be properly indexed and submitted to the Engineer for his records.

The Contractor shall test electrical wiring for compliance with regulations and have the complete installation tested by the relevant authorities.

The Engineer reserves the right to inspect any item of equipment during manufacture or before delivery to site. The Contractor shall make available any item for such inspection. The Engineer shall also be furnished with manufacturer's test certificates whenever these are required by law or called for by the Engineer.

The Contractor shall commission the complete installation prior to inviting the Engineer to accept it, commissioning including inter alia the following services, as relevant:

(a) The Contractor shall record all motor running currents and set overload protection devices to correct values.

(b) The Contractor shall adjust and set all time clocks, time delay relays, automatic control devices and check their function for correctness and response.

(c) The Contractor shall remedy any defects apparent on the installation prior to calling upon the Engineer to accept the plants.

Thermal images of the panels and distribution board must be taken once the units are more than one week in operation. The images must be taken while in normal operating condition. The images should be reviewed and then presented as part of the Operations and maintenance manuals.

E09.15 LABELLING AND IDENTIFICATION

All equipment shall be labelled and identified using white trifoliate labels having black lettering engraved on them; where two similar items exist, they shall additionally be numbered for clarity in identification.

Labels shall be secured by means of white rivets, slotted label holders or screwed on. Self-tapping screws will not be allowed.

All other equipment including metres, instruments, indicator lights, switches, push-buttons, circuit breakers, fuses, etc., shall be identified. The function of the equipment and circuits shall be clearly identified. Flush mounted equipment within doors or front panels shall be identified with labels fixed to the doors or front panels respectively.

E09.16 OPERATING AND MAINTENANCE MANUALS; "AS BUILT" OR "AS INSTALLED" RECORD DRAWINGS

Provide three hard copies and one disk of all operating and maintenance manuals and record drawings.

Provide a MSWORD for WINDOWS disk copy for any word processed elements of the operating and maintenance manuals. Employ a specialist to prepare manuals for the form and content of the operating and maintenance manuals.

Agree format and contents with the Employer Operating and maintenance manuals must include, but are not limited to the following:

- Index of Contents
- A full description of each of the systems installed, written to ensure that the Employer's staff fully understand the scope and facilities provided. Description to include data on general design parameters, normal associated operating conditions and manufacturer's information concerning correct operation, etc., based on commissioning results.
- A description of the mode of operation of all systems.
- **Diagrammatic** drawings to each system (including distribution boards) indicating principal items of plant, equipment, valves, etc.
- A photo-reduction of all record drawings, together with an index.
  Size A4
  Size A3
- Legend for all colour-coded services.
- Schedules (system by system) of plant, equipment, valves, etc., stating their locations within the building, duties and performance figures. Ensure each item has a unique code number cross-referenced to the record and diagrammatic drawings and schedules.
- The name, address and telephone number of the manufacturer of every item of plant and equipment together with catalogue list and order acknowledgement numbers.
- Manufacturer's technical literature for all items of plant and equipment, assembled specifically for the project, excluding irrelevant matter and including detailed drawings, electrical circuit details and operating and maintenance instructions.
- A copy for all Test Certificates, Certificates of Compliance, Inspection and Test Records, Commissioning and Performance Test Records (including, but not limited to, electrical circuit tests, corrosion tests, type tests, start and commissioning tests) for the installations and plant, equipment, valves, etc., used in the installations.
- A copy of all manufacturers' guarantees or warranties.
- Copies of Insurance and Inspecting Authority Certificates and Reports.
- Starting up, operating and shutting down instructions for all equipment and systems installed.
- Details of procedures to maintain plant in safe working conditions.
- Control sequences for all systems installed.
- Schedule of all fixed and variable equipment settings established during commissioning.
- Back-up copies of any system software.
- Documentation of the procedures for updating and/or modifying software operating systems and control programs.

- Instructions for the creation of Control procedure routines and Graphic diagrams
- Details of the software revision for all programs provided.
- Two back-up copies of all software items, as commissioned.
- Details of lubrication systems and lubrication schedules for all lubricated items.
- A list of normal consumable items.
- A list of recommended maintenance spares to be kept in stock by the Employer, being those items subject to wear or deterioration and which may involve the Employer in extended deliveries when replacements are required at some future date.
- A list of any special tools needed for maintenance cross referenced to the particular item for which required.
- Procedures for fault finding.
- Emergency procedures, including telephone numbers for emergency services.
- Copies of all items incorporated in the plant room and switch room schedules and schematics.
- Encase the Manuals in A4 size, plastic-covered, loose leaf, four ring binders with hard covers, each indexed, divided and appropriately cover-titled. Fold drawings larger than A4 and include in the binder so that they may be unfolded without being detached from the rings.
- Provide record drawings. Include the provision of relevant framed plasticised drawings in all electrical rooms.
- Three copies of all “AS BUILT” or “AS INSTALLED” record drawings, in print form, are required to be handed to the Engineer before completion of the project. There shall have been previously submitted to the Electrical Engineer for comment and approval. The Electrical Engineer also requires 2 copies of all record drawings to be made available on disk on CAD format. All “AS BUILT” or “AS INSTALLED” record drawings are to be prepared by the Electrical contractor in CAD format.

E09.17 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

The contractor shall supply factory test certificates for each drum of cable supplied under the Contract.

After the installation is complete, the contractor and the Engineer shall inspect the installation. The Engineer must be notified in advance of the inspection dates. The contractor will keep a snag list, reflecting all items not acceptable to the Engineer. The contractor will correct the snag items as required to the Engineers approval, updating the snag list as the items are completed and signed off by the Engineer.

The contractor shall carry out all the tests for the Main distribution board and will also conduct all tests and complete copies of the tests for each distribution board and for each supply (normal and alternative supplies), and attach as annexes to the completion report. The tests required will be the following as a minimum:

(a) Continuity of bonding
(b) Resistance of earth continuity conductor
(c) Continuity of ring circuits (if applicable)
(d) Earth loop impedance test
(e) Elevated voltage between incoming neutral and external earth (ground)
(f) Earth resistance at electrode (if required)
(g) Insulation resistance MΩ
(h) Voltage at main distribution board with no load for each phase to neutral
(i) Voltage at main distribution board with load (as calculated for full load) for each phase to neutral V
(j) Voltage at available load (worst condition as calculated for full load) for each phase to neutral
(k) Operation of all earth leakage units
(l) Operation of all earth leakage test buttons

(m) Polarity of points of consumption
(n) Phase rotation at points of consumption for three-phase systems
(o) All switching devices, make-and-break circuits

On completion of his work, the Contractor will issue an Electrical Certificate of Compliance (CoC). All tests deemed necessary to issue the CoC should be included. The Contractor shall make all arrangements, pay all fees and provide all equipment for these tests. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer timeously so that he may witness the tests.

Each installed cable shall be tested in accordance with:

(a) The Occupational Health and Safety Act (OHSA) 1994;

(b) The requirements of the Local and Supply Authorities.

E09.18 MAINTENANCE INSTRUCTIONS AND GUARANTEES

Retain copies of all maintenance instructions and guarantees delivered with components and equipment (failing which, obtain), register with manufacturer as necessary and handover to the Employer on or before Practical Completion. Notify the Employer of telephone numbers for emergency services by Specialist Contractors and Suppliers after Practical Completion.

E09.19 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver distribution boards ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution boards supplied and installed. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the distribution board as specified in the detail specification complete with all the electrical equipment specified.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install, test and commission the distribution boards..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution boards installed, tested and commissioned. The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing, testing and commissioning of the distribution boards complete with all the specified electrical equipment in the distribution board. The tendered rate shall furthermore include for the wiring of the distribution board.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver isolators..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of isolators supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the isolators where the isolators are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install isolators ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of isolators installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the isolators where the isolators are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver circuit breakers ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of circuit breakers supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the circuit breakers where the circuit breakers are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install circuit breakers ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of circuit breakers installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the circuit breakers where the circuit breakers are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver fuse switches ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of fuse switches supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the fuse switches where the fuse switches are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install fuse switches ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of fuse switches installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the fuse switches where the fuse switches are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver earth leakage units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of earth leakage units supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the circuit breaker earth leakage units where the earth leakage units are specified separately, e.g. (30 mA)

Item ..... **Unit**

Install earth leakage units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of earth leakage units installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the circuit breaker earth leakage units where the earth leakage units are specified separately, e.g. (30 mA)

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver contactors ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of contactors supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the contactors where the contactors are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install contactors ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of contactors installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the contactors where the contactors are specified separately.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver light fittings ..... No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery to site of the specified light fitting, complete with lamp/s, wiring, control gear where applicable, diffusers, etc.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of light fitting required.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install light fittings ..... No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, fastening, connecting and testing of the light fitting.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of light fitting. This rate shall furthermore include full compensation for the cost of providing and installing all hardware, timber backing, plugs, screws connector terminals and other materials required to install the light fitting in accordance with the specification.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver switches ..... No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery to site of the specified switch complete with cover plate and fastening screws.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of switch.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install switches ..... No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, fastening, connecting, fitting of cover plate and testing of the switch.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of switch.

This rate shall furthermore include full compensation for the cost of providing and installing all hardware screws and wall plugs in the case of surface mounted switches, required to install the switch in accordance with the specification.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver photo-electric switch ..... No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery to site of the specified photo-electric daylight switch complete with mounting bracket and around bulkhead light enclosure.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install photo-electric switch ..... No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, fastening of the bulkhead enclosure and photo electric switch, connecting and testing of the switch.

This rate shall furthermore include full compensation for the cost of providing and installing all hardware, screws, wall plugs and other material required to install the photo electric light switch in accordance with the specification.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply lighting track ..... m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of track supplied.

The tendered rate shall include the supply and delivery to site of the track as specified in the detail specification.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install lighting track ..... m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of lighting track installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for cutting to size and fixing to the ceiling or wall with appropriate fasteners of the lighting track and shall include the wiring connections of the supply circuit.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and install lighting track accessories ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of splices, bends, elbows, connector units and end caps.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply, connecting, installation and fixing of accessories as detailed in the schedule of quantities.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply consumer distribution kiosks ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosk supplied.

The rate shall include full compensation for the supply of the distribution kiosks complete as specified.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install consumer distribution kiosks ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution kiosks installed.

The rate shall cover the cost of the sitting, handling, transporting, installing, painting, testing and commissioning of each kiosk.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and erect concrete plinths for consumer distribution kiosks ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of plinths supplied and erected.

The rate shall include full compensation for the supply of precast plinths and bases and the erection thereof as specified.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply consumer distribution pillars ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution pillars supplied.

The rate shall include full compensation for the supply of the distribution pillars fully equipped as specified.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install consumer distribution pillars ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of distribution pillars installed.

The rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the distribution pillars and shall include for the excavation for the installing of the pillar and the backfilling, compacting and disposal of the surplus material once the pillar has been installed.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply service connection cable ..... m

The unit of measurement shall be the length in metres of service connection cables supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the cable to site.

Item ..... **Unit**

Lay service connection cable ..... m

The unit of measurement shall be the length in metres of service connection cable laid.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the handling, inspection, laying, cutting and testing the cable. Cables will be measured linearly over all lengths laid.

Item ..... **Unit**

Terminate service connection cable ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of service connection cable terminated.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the termination cable including all material and labour to render complete terminations of the cables.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply socket outlets..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of socket outlets supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of single or double single phase, three pin socket outlets.

Separate items shall be scheduled for the following:

(a) socket outlets flush mounted

(b) socket outlets surface mounted

(c) socket outlets to be installed in power skirting

(d) socket outlets to be installed in pedestals for floor ducting

(e) socket outlets to be installed in recessed service outlets for floor ducting.

Separate items shall be scheduled for standard and dedicated switched socket outlets. All socket outlets shall be supplied complete with cover plates and boxes where required. The tendered rate shall therefore include for the supply of the cover plates and fixing screws where applicable.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install socket outlets ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of socket outlets installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the socket outlets. Separate items will be scheduled for the various type of socket outlets specified in item 6.6.8. The tendered rate shall furthermore include for the installing of the cover plates where applicable.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply plug tops for dedicated socket outlets ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of plug tops supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply of plug tops for each of the dedicated socket outlets supplied and installed under this contract.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and deliver double pole isolator for geyser supply ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of double pole isolators supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of double pole isolators for the geyser supplies.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install double pole isolator for geyser supply..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of double pole isolators installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of double pole isolators for the geyser supplies.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and install connections to heaters, stoves, fans and air conditioners units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of connections made.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the connections to the heaters, stoves, fans and air conditioners and shall include for the supply and installing of the

double pole isolator or control unit which ever is applicable.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of connections.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply double pole isolators for power skirting..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of double pole isolators supplied for the power skirting.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery to site of the double pole isolators.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install double pole isolators for power skirting ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of double pole isolators installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation of the double pole isolators in the power skirting and shall include the connections of the conductors to the isolators.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply junction boxes..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of junction boxes supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery to site of the junction boxes.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of junction box.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install junction boxes ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of junction boxes installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation of the junction boxes as specified.

Separate items shall be scheduled for each type of junction box.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and delivery of conduit .....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of conduit supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include for full compensation for the supply and delivery of the specified conduit and shall include full compensation for the supply of the couplings to join the conducts. Separate items shall be scheduled for the different types of conduit specified.

Item ..... **Unit**

Installing of conduit.....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of conduit installed.

The tendered rate shall include for full compensation for the installing of the conduit including jointing and bending the conduit and fixing the conduit using saddles as specified. Separate items shall be scheduled for the different types of conduit and for installing the conduit in concrete, fixing the conduit in brick work, including the chasing thereof, fixing the conduit on the surface of structures or installing the conduit in ceiling voids.

Item ..... **Unit**

Terminate conduit..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of terminations made.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for terminating the conduit in draw boxes and outlet boxes and shall include for all locknuts and bushes.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and install draw boxes ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of draw boxes supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying and installing the draw boxes including the cover plates. Separate items shall be scheduled for installing the boxes in concrete, in brickwork including chasing, and on the surface of structures.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and install conduit outlet boxes ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of conduit outlet boxes supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for supplying and installing conduit outlet boxes and shall include blank cover plates where no equipment is installed in the boxes. Separate items shall be scheduled for 1, 2, 3 and 4 way outlet boxes and for installing the boxes in concrete, in brick walls, including the chasing thereof, and surface on structures.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply power skirting .....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of power skirting supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the specified power skirting including cover plates. Separate items shall be scheduled for one, two and three compartment power skirting.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install power skirting.....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of power skirting installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for installing the power skirting including all material required to install the power skirting.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply and install power skirting end caps, bends, conduit outlets & accessories ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of power skirting end caps, bends and conduit outlets supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installing of the power skirting end caps, internal and external bends and outlets and shall include for the supply of all material required to complete the installing thereof.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply under floor ducting.....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of under floor ducting supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply of under floor ducting. Separate items shall be scheduled for the two and three compartment ducting.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply under floor ducting accessories..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of accessories supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply of the required accessories for the completion of the under floor installation. Separate rates shall be scheduled for cross-over, T-junction and right angle bend draw boxes and up-bends.

Item ..... **Unit**

Supply pedestal units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of pedestals supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply of the specified pedestal units.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install under floor ducting..... m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of ducting installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation of the under floor ducting.

Item ..... **Unit**

Install under floor ducting accessories ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of accessories installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation of the accessories. Separate items shall be scheduled for the cross-over, T-junction and right angle bend draw boxes and up-bends.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E10 : ELECTRICAL BUSAR TRUNKING

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E10 : Electrical Busbar Trunking**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E10**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E10: ELECTRICAL BUSBAR TRUNKING

CONTENTS

E10.1 SCOPE 3

E10.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS 3
E10.2.1 Standards 3
E10.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification 3

E10.3 BUSBAR TRUNKING 3
E10.3.1 General 3
E10.3.2 Materials 3
E10.3.3 Rating 4
E10.3.4 Construction 4
E10.3.5 Installation 4
E10.3.6 Testing and commissioning 4

E10.4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 6

E10.1 SCOPE

This section covers the supply and installation of busbar trunking.

E10.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS

E10.2.1 Standards

The latest edition of the following particular specifications and Codes of Practice shall be read in conjunction with this section:

(a) SANS 10142-1 : The wiring of premises Part 1: Low-voltage installations

(b) SANS 121 : Hot dip galvanized coatings on fabricated iron and steel articles - Specifications and test methods

(c) SANS 60439-2 : Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies Part 2: Particular requirements for busbar trunking systems (busways)

(d) SANS 61439-6 : Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies Part 6: Busbar trunking systems (busways)

(e) SANS 1195 : Busbars

(f) BS 159 : Specification for high-voltage busbars and busbar connections

(g) BS EN 13601 : Copper and copper alloys. Copper rod, bar and wire for general electrical purposes

(h) SANS 61439 : Low voltage switchgear and control gear assemblies

E10.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification

The following particular specifications shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification:

(a) E26 : ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATION FOR COLOUR CODE

(b) G02 : PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION FOR CORROSION PROTECTION

(c) E06 : ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION

E10.3 BUSBAR TRUNKING

E10.3.1 General

This section covers the supply and installation of trunking and accessories in buildings.

E10.3.2 Materials

Rising and overhead busbar trunking shall be fully enclosed in a metal duct which shall form part of the busbar support. The metal enclosure shall form an integral part of the bus section and shall be of the same length as the conducting sections of the busbar. The covers of the busbar trunking shall be secured to the framework by at least four points per section. Busbar covers shall be so designed that they are easily removable after installation of the trunking. Sections of the busbars which pass through walls and floors shall have separate covers.

Two fire barriers of non-flammable, non-conducting material in the busbar trunking shall form an integral part of each section of rising busbars.

The fire barriers shall be so placed as to prevent the spreading of fire from one floor to another but shall not restrict the ventilation of the busbar.

Overhead busbars shall be equipped with fire barriers where the busbars pass through walls or partitions.

E10.3.3 Rating

Busbars shall be manufactured from either aluminium or solid drawn high conductivity copper with a rectangular cross-section, as specified in the "detail specification". Busbars shall be in accordance with SANS 60439-2, SANS 1195 and BS EN 13601, BS 159 where applicable.

The rating shall be as specified in the detail specification with the maximum allowable temperature of the busbars (including joints) carrying full load current in an ambient temperature as specified

not exceeding 80 °C.

Busbars shall not be tapered and the neutral busbar in three-phase, four wire supplies shall have a cross-section equal to 100% of the cross-section of the phase busbars.

An earth busbar shall be installed along the entire length of the busbar trunking and shall be calculated according to SANS 61439 with a minimum cross-section of 6,3 mm x 20 mm.

E10.3.4 Construction

The busbar rating must match that of the transformer with respect to load and fault currents.

The busbars shall be supported at a minimum of two points in each section and shall be supported by a suitable resin bound synthetic material. The surface of these supports shall be treated to prevent surface tracking. The fixing of the busbars shall be designed to withstand the mechanical and thermal stresses during fault conditions at the specified fault level. Where concrete roofs are available, the busbar can be hung from the roof.

Busbar support must not impede with the rest of the electrical installation.

All non-current carrying metal parts of the trunking shall be bonded to the earth busbar.

Expansion joints shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 10 m to allow for a temperature variation of 0 °C to 90 °C. These expansion joints shall have the same current rating as the rest of the busbar trunking.

All accessories shall be purpose-made and shall conform to the same specification as the busbars.

All ratings and the name and address of the manufacturer shall be indicated on a metal label fixed to each section of the busbar trunking.

E10.3.5 Installation

Trunking shall be of the size and type as specified in the detail specification.

The electrical subcontractor shall ensure that the trunking is installed in accordance with the routes indicated on the relevant drawings.

However should the electrical subcontractor discover that the indicated route is not practically possible, or for some other reason the route clashes with other services, he shall immediately contact the engineer for clarification in this regard.

E10.3.6 Testing and commissioning

All busbar trunking must be type tested. A type test certificate must be supplied at tender stage.

The busbar trunking must be subjected to site acceptance tests to verify the integrity and performance prior to commissioning. A schedule of the SAT must be provided and approved by the engineer prior to commencement of manufacture.

The contractor shall supply factory test certificates for all bus trunking supplied under the Contract.

After the installation is complete, the contractor and the Engineer shall inspect the installation. The Engineer must be notified in advance of the inspection dates. The contractor will keep a snag

list, reflecting all items not acceptable to the Engineer. The contractor will correct the snag items as required to the Engineers approval, updating the snag list as the items are completed and signed off by the Engineer.

On completion of his work, the Contractor will issue an Electrical Certificate of Compliance (CoC). All tests deemed necessary to issue the CoC should be included. The Contractor shall make all arrangements, pay all fees and provide all equipment for these tests. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer timeously so that he may witness the tests.

Each installed bus trunking shall be tested in accordance with:

(a) The Occupational Health and Safety Act (OHSA) 1994;

(b) The requirements of the Local and Supply Authorities.

Once commissioned the assembly should be scanned and a thermal image obtained. The image should be reviewed after which they will form part of the Operations and Maintenance Manuals to be presented to the engineer.

E10.4 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver busbar trunking.....m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of busbar trunking supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include for full compensation for the supply of the specified busbar trunking including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver busbar trunking end feed units..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of trunking end feed units supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include for the full compensation for the supply and delivery of the specified busbar end feed units including all material needed for the installation of the busbar end feed unit.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver busbar trunking directional change units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of busbar trunking directional change units supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include for full compensation for the supply and delivery of the specified busbar directional change units including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking directional change unit.

Item **Unit**

Supply and deliver busbar trunking fire barriers ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of busbar trunking fire barriers supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include for the full compensation for the supply and delivery of the specified busbar trunking fire barriers including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking fire barriers.

Item **Unit**

Supply and delivery of busbar trunking expansion units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of busbar trunking expansion units supplied and delivered.

The tendered rate shall include for the full compensation for the supply and delivery of the specified busbar trunking expansion units including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking expansion units.

Item **Unit**

Install busbar trunking ..... m

The unit of measurement shall be the linear metre of busbar trunking installed.

The tendered rate shall include for full compensation for the installation of the specified busbar trunking including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking.

Item **Unit**

Install busbar trunking end feed units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of busbar trunking end feed units installed.

The tendered rate shall include for the full compensation for the installation of the specified busbar end feed units including all material needed for the installation of the busbar end feed unit.

Item **Unit**

Install busbar trunking directional change units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of busbar trunking directional change units installed.

The tendered rate shall include for full compensation for the installation of the specified busbar directional change units including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking directional change unit.

Item **Unit**

Install busbar trunking fire barriers ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of busbar trunking fire barriers installed.

The tendered rate shall include for the full compensation for the installation of the specified busbar trunking fire barriers including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking fire barriers.

Item **Unit**

Install busbar trunking expansion units ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of busbar trunking expansion units installed.

The tendered rate shall include for the full compensation for the installation of the specified busbar trunking expansion units including all material needed for the installation of the busbar trunking expansion units.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E11 : ELECTRICAL EARTHING AND LIGHTING PROTECTION

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E11 : Electrical Earthing and Lighting Protection**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E11**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
5	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
4	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2010-05-03		Review Electrical Standards
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E11: GENERAL ELECTRICAL GENERAL EARTHING AND LIGHTNING PROTECTION

CONTENTS

E11.1 SCOPE ... 3

E11.2 STATUATORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS ... 3
E11.2.1 Standards ... 3
E11.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this Specification ... 3

E11.3 CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE ... 4
E11.3.1 New or modified installations ... 4
E11.3.2 Maintenance of installations ... 4

E11.4 PROTECTION MEASURES ... 4
E11.4.1 Protection measures to reduce injury of living beings by electric shock ... 4
E11.4.2 Lightning Protection System (LPS) to reduce physical damage ... 4
E11.4.3 Surge Protection Measures (SPM) to reduce failure of electrical and electronic systems ... 4

E11.5 RISK MANAGEMENT ... 4

E11.6 EXTERNAL LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM (LPS) ... 5
E11.6.1 Design of the LPS ... 5
E11.6.2 Air-termination systems ... Error! Bookmark not defined.
E11.6.3 Down-conductor systems ... 6
E11.6.4 Earth-termination system ... 6
E11.6.5 Components ... 7

E11.7 LPS FOR STRUCTURES WITH A RISK OF EXPLOSION ... 7

E11.8 INTERNAL LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM (LPS) ... 8
E11.8.1 Equipotential bonding ... 8

E11.9 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE OF LPS ... 9
E11.9.1 Inspection ... 9
E11.9.2 Maintenance ... 9

E11.10 INJURY TO LIVING BEINGS DUE TO TOUCH AND STEP VOLTAGES ... 9
E11.10.1 Touch voltage ... 9
E11.10.2 Step voltage ... 9

E11.11 SURGE PROTECTION MEASURES (SPM) ... 10
E11.11.1 Design and installation of SPM ... 10
E11.11.2 Earthing and bonding ... 10
E11.11.3 Magnetic shielding and line routing ... 10
E11.11.4 Coordinated SPD system ... 10
E11.11.5 SPM management ... 11

E11.12 EARTHING OF THE LV DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM ... 11
E11.12.1 TN-S system earthing – Separate neutral and protective conductors ... 11
E11.12.2 Requirements of the TN-S system earthing ... 12
E11.12.3 Installation of the TN-S system earthing ... 12

E11.14 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM (LPS) ... 13

E11.15 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT ... 14

E11.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detail requirements of the general protection against lightning to be installed under the contract, including:

a) General notes on the lightning protection measures;

b) The risk management and definition of the risk to a structure due to lightning strikes;

c) A Lightning Protection System (LPS) describing principles to be followed for the protection against physical damage to a structure including the installations within the structure as well as injury to living beings due to touch and step voltages;

d) Surge Protection Measures (SPM) to reduce the risk of permanent failures of electrical and electronic installations within a structure due to a Lightning Electromagnetic Pulse (LEMP).

e) Information for the design, installation, inspection, maintenance and testing of the above.

E11.2 STATUATORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS

E11.2.1 Standards

The latest edition, including all amendments up to date of tender of the following particular national and international specifications, publications and codes of practice which shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

a)	SANS 10142-1	The wiring of premises Part 1: Low-voltage installations.
b)	SANS 10142-2	The wiring of premises Part 2: Medium-voltage installations above 1 kV ac not exceeding 22 kV ac. and up to and including 3 MVA installed capacity.
c)	SANS 62305-1	Protection against lightning Part 1: General principles
d)	SANS 62305-2	Protection against lightning Part 2: Risk management
e)	SANS 62305-3	Protection against lightning Part 3: Physical damage to structures and life hazard
f)	SANS 62305-4	Protection against lightning Part 4: Electrical and electronic systems within structures.
g)	SANS 62561	Lightning protection system components (LPSC).
h)	SANS 1063	Earth rods, couplers and connections.
i)	SANS 10199	The design and installation of earth electrodes.
j)	SANS 10313	Protection against lightning — Physical damage to structures and life hazard.
k)	SANS 10292	Earthing of low-voltage (LV) distribution systems.

E11.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this Specification

The following particular specifications shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification:

a) Automation and Control Design Standards, Volume 5: Clean Power and Surge Protection.

E11.3 CERTIFICATE OF COMPLIANCE

E11.3.1 New or modified installations

The Contractor shall appoint a competent and experienced lightning protection design engineer for the design, supply, installation, inspection and testing of the Lightning Protection System (LPS) as well as the Surge Protection Measures (SPM).

After installation and testing of the LPS and SPM, the lightning protection design engineer will issue a Lightning Protection System Installation Safety Report as prescribed in SANS 10313: Annex A as well as SANS10142-1, for each area of protection. The Engineer will witness the installation as well as all tests conducted.

Two copies of this report shall be submitted to the Engineer before handing over of any repair, modification or new installation involving LPS or SPM systems.

E11.3.2 Maintenance of installations

The Client shall appoint a competent and experienced lightning protection engineer to maintain and inspect the Lightning Protection System (LPS) as well as the Surge Protection Measures (SPM) on an annual basis. Tests and inspections should be done prior to the start of the lighting season.

The lightning protection engineer will issue a Lightning Protection System Maintenance Certificate as prescribed in SANS 10313: Annex B, for each area of protection.

E11.4 PROTECTION MEASURES

The following protective measures should be installed as far as possible. The most suitable protective measure shall be selected during the design phase, considering technical and economic aspects based on a risk assessment.

E11.4.1 Protection measures to reduce injury of living beings by electric shock

a) Adequate insulation of exposed lightning conductive parts;

b) Equipotential bonding of equipment and conductive parts and connection to a meshed earthing system;

c) Physical restrictions and warning notices where the above is not achievable.

E11.4.2 Lightning Protection System (LPS) to reduce physical damage

a) Air-termination system on high points;

b) Down-conductor system;

c) Earth-termination system;

d) Equipotential bonding;

E11.4.3 Surge Protection Measures (SPM) to reduce failure of electrical and electronic systems

a) Earthing and bonding measures;

b) Magnetic shielding;

c) Line routing;

d) Isolating interfaces;

e) Coordinated Surge Protection Device (SPD) system.

E11.5 RISK MANAGEMENT

Risk to a structure exposed to lightning flashes is managed by a process based on risk evaluation or assessment. Appropriate protection measures are selected to reduce the risk to or below the tolerable limit.

The following basic procedure must be followed during the risk assessment:

a) Identification of the structure to be protected;

b) Partitioning of the structure into zones;

c) Identification of all the types of loss in the structure;

d) The identification and calculation of the corresponding risk components for each type of loss;

e) Evaluation of need of protection;

f) Selection of protective measures (LPS, SPM or other protection measure);

g) Evaluate the cost-effectiveness of the protection measures;

h) Re-evaluation of the corresponding risk components and the need for further protection.

The risk assessment and the evaluation of loss and risks as well as protection selection must be done by a competent and experienced lightning protection design engineer. It is the responsibility of the contractor to appoint a lightning protection design engineer for this purpose.

E11.6 EXTERNAL LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM (LPS)

An external LPS is installed on a structure to intercept a direct lightning flash to the structure, conduct the lightning current safely towards earth and to disperse the lightning current into the earth. It consist out of an air-termination system, a down-conductor system and an earth-termination system.

E11.6.1 Design of the LPS

The design of the LPS must be done in accordance with SANS 62305-3 with specific reference to Annex E.

The LPS should be designed and installed by competent and experienced LPS design engineer and LPS installer (person who is competent to install, construct and test an LPS for compliance with this SANS 10313). It is the responsibility of the contractor to appoint a competent and experienced LPS design engineer and installer. The Contractor is responsible to manage consultation between the various parties involved in the project (client, local authorities, LPS design engineer, LPS installer, architect, civil contractor/builder and electrical engineer). In new structures, the LPS should be installed during the construction phase; proper timing for soil resistivity test and the design of the LPS is of utmost importance.

The LPS design engineer and installer will be responsible for the quality assurance on the project.

E11.6.2 Isolated LPS

On structures at risk of explosion and fire an isolated external LPS must be installed.

E11.6.3 Air-termination systems

Air-termination systems can be composed of any combination of the following elements:

a) Rods (including free-standing masts);

b) Catenary wires;

c) Meshed conductors.

Air terminals installed shall be located at corners, exposed points and edges on a structure. To determine the exact location one or more of the following methods should be followed:

a) Protection angle method;

b) Rolling sphere method;

c) Mesh method.

All types of air terminals shall comply in full with SANS 62305-3. The positioning of air termination system shall comply with SANS 62305-3 (Annexure A).

All air-termination components must be fixed and secured in such a way to withstand accidental external mechanical forces as well as electromechanical forces during a lightning strike.

E11.6.4 Down-conductor systems

If the air-termination system is supported by one or more non-conductive columns, at least one down-conductor is required for each column. Steel columns do not require additional down-conductors.

All down-conductor components must be fixed and secured in such a way to withstand accidental external mechanical forces as well as electromechanical forces during a lightning strike.

Down conductors may be placed on the surface of non-combustible walls. On structures at risk of explosion and fire, all down conductors must be isolated from the structure walls.

E11.6.5 Earth-termination system

For lightning protection, a single integrated structure earth-termination system is preferable and is suitable for all purposes (i.e. lightning protection, power systems and telecommunication systems).

An earthing resistance not exceeding 3Ω (measured at low frequency) is required for earth termination systems. Should it be impossible to achieve this earthing resistance value, the Engineer must approve the value obtained and deemed reasonable.

Type A earthing arrangement

Each down connector is connected to a horizontal or vertical earth electrode installed outside the protected structure. A minimum of two earth electrodes will be installed, buried at an upper end depth of minimum 0.5 m with a separation distance to minimize electrical coupling effects in the earth. The minimum length of the earth electrodes will be calculated during the design phase, based on the soil resistivity.

Type B earthing arrangement

A ring conductor is installed external to the protected structure, buried at an upper end depth of at least 0.5 m and at a distance of about 1 m away from the external walls. The radius of protection will be calculated during the design phase, based on the soil resistivity. Additional electrodes should be added to obtain the desirable protection radius. The number of electrodes shall not be less than the number of down conductors (with a minimum of two electrodes).

Test points

A test point must be installed at the connection between each down-conductor and earth termination electrodes. The joint will only be opened for testing and will remain closed at all times.

Conductor connections

Conductor connections shall be made secure by exothermic welding. Clamping or bolting of conductor connection points shall only be accepted with permission from the Engineer. All points of connection must be covered with a cold applied anti-corrosion and sealing tape based on a synthetic fabric, impregnated and coated with a neutral petrolatum compound.

E11.6.6 LPS Installation

Type B earthing will be installed as the preferred arrangement. Type A earthing will only be accepted with prior approval from the Engineer (in writing). The installation of the earth electrodes will be inspected and approved by the Engineer during the construction phase.

The LPS shall be bonded to the fixed electrical installation protective earthing in accordance with the requirements of SANS 10142-1. Where an installation may typically consist of a main building or plant and one or more satellite subsystems, the various earth networks shall be interconnected to form one earth system. Only in the rare instance of a subsystem being totally isolated, with no cables, pipes, fences or other conductive structures connecting it to the rest of the installation, may a system be provided with a separate earth network.

E11.6.7 Components

All material and components used in a LPS must conform to the requirements specified in SANS 62561.

Minimum cross-sectional area of conductors

a) Air-termination conductors, air-termination rods and down-conductors:

Configurations and minimum cross-sectional areas of air-termination conductors, air-termination rods and down-conductors are given in SANS 62305-3: Table 6 “Material, configuration and minimum cross-sectional area of air-termination conductors, air-termination rods, earth lead-in rods and down-conductors”.

The following material and dimensions will be specifically applicable. No copper conductors will be accepted.

Material	**Configuration**	**Cross-sectional area (sq. mm)**
Aluminium	Solid tape	70
	Solid round	50
Stainless steel	Solid tape	50
	Solid round	50

Table 1: *Specific configurations and minimum cross-sectional areas of air-termination conductors, air-termination rods and down-conductors.*

b) Earth conductors and electrodes:

Configurations and minimum dimensions of earth electrodes are given in SANS 62305-3: Table 7 “Material, configuration and minimum dimensions of earth electrodes”.

The following material and dimensions will be specifically applicable. No copper conductors will be accepted.

Material	**Configuration**	**Dimensions**	
		Earth rod diameter (mm)	**Earth conductor (sq. mm)**
Copper coated steel	Solid round	14	
Stainless steel	Solid round	15	78
	Solid tape		100

Table 2: *Specific configurations and minimum dimensions of earth conductors and electrodes*

E11.7 LPS FOR STRUCTURES WITH A RISK OF EXPLOSION

The design, construction, extension and modification of lightning protection systems for structures with a risk of explosion must comply with SANS 62305-3: Annex 3.

a) The LPS must be isolated from the structure. This includes the air termination conductors as well as all down conductors. Under no circumstances may any parts of the structure be used as part of the LPS

b) The distance between down conductors will not exceed 5m. The down conductor count and spacing will be determined during the design phase with a minimum of two down conductors installed.

c) The earth-termination system will be a type B arrangement

d) All installations/structures/equipment will be equipotential bonded to the lightning protection system. Junctions shall be provided for the joining of connection and earthing leads to containers, metal construction parts, drums and tanks

e) Aboveground metal piping shall be earthed at least every 30 m. Bonding conductors will

be connected to the piping at tap holes in the flanges for taking up screws. Where this is not possible, welded-on lugs or bolts will be used

f) Such devices shall be suitable for the environment in which they are installed.

The above will be applicable to aeration basins, bioreactors, HOW, digester (high risk areas)

E11.8 INTERNAL LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM (LPS)

An internal LPS is intended to prevent flashover between electrically conducting elements within the structure and the external LPS components using either equipotential bonding or an adequate separation distance.

E11.8.1 Equipotential bonding

All equipment likely to be subjected to surge currents shall be securely bonded together and to the earth network.

Bonding bar

A single bonding bar shall be installed for equipotential bonding. The bar shall be manufactured from electrical grade hard drawn aluminium 80sq mm complete with mounting insulators. The bar will be pre-drilled with ten M8 holes, fitted with stainless steel high tensile hex bolts with nuts and washers. The bar will be fitted with two removable test links, one on each end of the bar.

The bonding bar shall be connected to the earth-termination system at two connection points with two separate cables.

A ring bonding bar where more than one interconnected bonding bars are installed can be used for larger installations.

External conductive parts

External conductive parts shall be bonded to the bonding bar from a point as near as possible to the point of entry into the structure. This will include all electrical conductive pipes, cable ladder, fences and gates.

External electrical lines

Live conductors shall be bonded to the bonding bar via SPD's. (See Paragraph E11.1 Surge Protection Measures). All gland plates in electrical panels will be bonded to the earth network. Power cable armouring shall be bonded to the earth network at both ends of the cable via the cable glands on the gland plates.

Telecommunication and Instrumentation lines

Please refer to Automation and Control Design Standards, Volume 5: Clean Power and Surge Protection.

Internal systems

Screened cables installed in the internal system must be bonded to the bonding bar via the screen. Cables in metal conduits installed in the internal system must be bonded to the bonding bar via the conduits. Unscreened cables must be connected to the bonding bar via SPD's (See Paragraph E11.1 Surge Protection Measures).

Bonding conductors

Bonding conductors shall be short and shall run in straight or smoothly contoured routes. Material, dimensions and conditions of use shall comply with SANS 62305-3. The minimum cross-section for bonding components shall comply with SANS 62305-4 Table 1 "Minimum cross-sections for bonding components".

The following material and dimensions will be specifically applicable.

Bonding component	Material	Cross-section (sq. mm)
Bonding bars	Aluminium	80
Bonding to LPS	Aluminium	70
Connecting conductors from internal metal installations to bonding bars (carrying a partial lightning current)	Aluminium	70

Table 3: *Specific material and cross-section area for bonding components*

E11.9 INSPECTION AND MAINTENANCE OF LPS

E11.9.1 Inspection

Inspections should be conducted during the construction period as well as after completion of the installation. A Lightning Protection System Installation Safety Report as described in SANS 10313 Annex A (or similar) must be issued by the LPS installer after completion of the installation. All tests conducted during the commissioning of the LPS must be witness by the Engineer. Inspections must be conducted after any alteration or repair of the LPS.

Regular periodic inspections must be conducted on the LPS system of explosives facilities. A maintenance and inspection plan shall be developed for the installed protection systems. The system shall be tested every 12 months. A register shall be kept for this purpose. Only qualified personnel having the necessary training and expertise shall be permitted to maintain, inspect, test and sign off these facilities.

E11.9.2 Maintenance

Routine inspections should be conducted on a 12-monthly basis. Any observed faults must be repaired immediately.

E11.10 INJURY TO LIVING BEINGS DUE TO TOUCH AND STEP VOLTAGES

The area surrounding the down-conductor (within a 3-meter radius) may be hazardous despite measures described in this specification. Additional measure must be installed to reduce this risk to acceptable values:

E11.10.1 Touch voltage

a) The area is demarcated to prevent access and relevant notices are displayed (ISO 3864-1), or

b) The number of down-conductors are increased to above 10, which will reduce the current and induced voltages, or

c) Increasing the contact resistance of the soil to above 100kΩ, or

d) The down conductors are insulated against the lightning impulse (100 kV, 1, 2/50 µs impulse withstand voltage).

E11.10.2 Step voltage

a) The area is demarcated to prevent access and relevant notices are displayed (ISO 3864-1), or

b) The number of down-conductors are increased to above 10, which will reduce the current and induced voltages, or

c) Increasing the contact resistance of the soil to above 100kΩ, or

d) The down conductors are insulated against the lighting impulse (100 kV, 1,2/50 µs impulse withstand voltage), or

e) The installation of a meshed earth-termination system.

E11.11 SURGE PROTECTION MEASURES (SPM)

Surge Protection Measures (SPM) are implemented to reduce the risk of permanent failures of electrical and electronic installations within a structure due to a Lightning Electromagnetic Pulse (LEMP).

Equipment failure due to LEMP is caused by surges conducted by connected wiring or by radiated electromagnetic fields. The effect of line surges is reduced by the installation of Surge Protection Devices (SPD's). The effect of radiated electromagnetic fields is reduced by shielding of equipment and shielded lines. Equipment generally complies with EMC product standards, which is sufficient to protect such equipment against LEMP.

E11.11.1 Design and installation of SPM

The SPM should be designed, installed and signed off by a competent and experienced SPM design engineer and SPM installer (person who is competent to design, install, construct and test an SPM with a broad knowledge of Electromagnetic compatibility (EMC)). It is the responsibility of the contractor to appoint a competent and experienced SPM design engineer and installer.

The design of the Surge Protection Measures (SPM) must be done in accordance with SANS 62305-4 as well as the Risk Assessment study done as described in SANS 62305-2.

E11.11.2 Earthing and bonding

A meshed network with a 5m mesh width is installed around the structure. This mesh is connected to the Type B ring earth electrode as well as the structure's interconnected mesh reinforced concrete floor to form a meshed earth termination system. The earth-termination systems of all internal systems should be bonded together to prevent potential differences between the systems.

Bonding bars in a stand-alone or ring configuration should be used to bond all conductive parts and incoming services (metal pipes, power lines, signal lines) together. Incoming lines should be bonded with SPD's. The material and minimum cross-sections for bonding component must comply with SANS 62305.

E11.11.3 Magnetic shielding and line routing

Spatial shielding is used to define protections zones. It can be grid like and can use electrical conductive reinforcement in the building. Internal lines can comprise of shielded cables or metallic enclosures of cables. Cables must be routed close conductive parts in the shielding system (reinforced concrete) to minimise induction.

The requirement of SANS 62305 concerning the material and minimum cross-sections or thickness of air-termination and down conductors must be followed.

E11.11.4 Coordinated SPD system

Please read this section in conjunction with the document Automation and Control Design Standards, Volume 5: Clean Power and Surge Protection for system compatibility.

The principle of a coordinated SPM is based on the division of the protected area/s into Lighting Protection Zones (LPZ), where the first LPZn is the overall protection zone which borders the inner zone LPZ (LPZn+1). The effect of the LEMP is reduced with each zone employed. LPZ 0 is the unprotected outer zone where equipment will be exposed to full LEMP and lighting surge currents. LPZ 1…n is the inner zones where equipment is exposed to limited surge current and attenuated electromagnetic field. (Refer to SANS 62305-4 typical drawings.)

SPD's must be selected to reduce the surge overvoltage between the live conductors and earth to a value lower than the equipment's rated impulse withstand voltage U_W at its terminals (common mode withstand voltage). The type of SPD, the location of the SPD (as close as possible to the point of entrance of the line vs as close as possible to the equipment to be protected) as well as the connecting conductors must be considered.

Types of SPD's:

There are three types of SPD's:

a) Type 1 SPD

The Type 1 SPD is recommended in the specific case of service-sector and industrial buildings, protected by a lightning protection system or a meshed cage. It protects electrical installations against direct lightning strokes. It can discharge the back-current from lightning spreading from the earth conductor to the network conductors. Type 1 SPD is characterized by a 10/350 µs current wave.

b) Type 2 SPD

The Type 2 SPD is the main protection system for all low voltage electrical installations. Installed in each electrical switchboard, it prevents the spread of overvoltages in the electrical installations and protects the loads. Type 2 SPD is characterized by an 8/20 µs current wave.

c) Type 3 SPD

These SPDs have a low discharge capacity. They must therefore mandatorily be installed as a supplement to Type 2 SPD and in the vicinity of sensitive loads. Type 3 SPD is characterized by a combination of voltage waves (1.2/50 µs) and current waves (8/20 µs).

E11.11.5 SPM management

A Management Plan must be implemented by a competent and experienced SPM design engineer:

a) Risk analysis;
b) SPM planning;
c) SPM design;
d) Installation of the SPM;
e) Approval of the SPM;
f) Recurrent inspections (documented);
g) Maintenance (following defects noted during recurrent inspections).

E11.12 EARTHING OF THE LV DISTRIBUTION SYSTEM

E11.12.1 TN-S system earthing – Separate neutral and protective conductors

The protective conductor (PE) is a separate conductor connected to the transformer neutral (star point).The transformer neutral is connected to the structure earth-termination system.

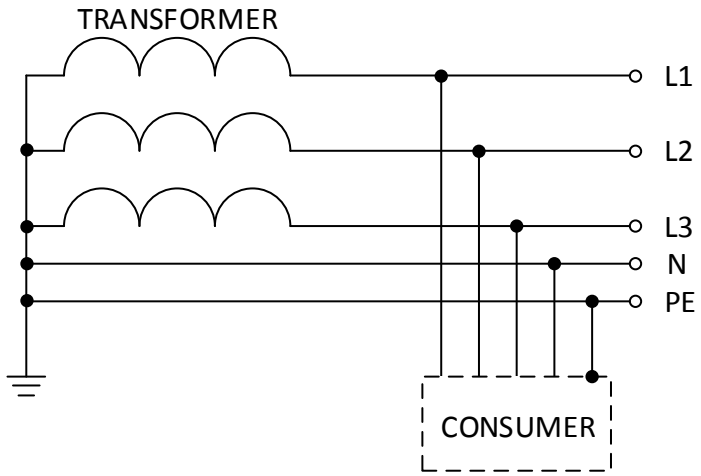


Figure 1. *TN-S System earthing*

E11.12.2 Requirements of the TN-S system earthing

a) In a single-phase TN-S system, the equivalent area of the neutral (N) conductor should be not less than the area of the phase conductor.

b) In a three-phase TN-S system, the equivalent area of the N conductor should be not less than half the area of one phase conductor.

c) In a three-phase TN-S system, all power cables will be four core, with the fourth (black) core used as the N conductor.

d) The protective earth (PE) conductor shall be able to carry the maximum fault current for the duration of the fault. This applies to any point in the distribution system.

e) The PE conductor should be of copper not less than $10mm^2$.

f) The minimum cross-sectional area of the PE conductor for phase conductors $16mm^2$ to $35mm^2$ is $16mm^2$.

g) The minimum cross-sectional area of the PE conductor for phase conductors above $35mm^2$ is at least 50% of the phase cross-sectional area.

h) No mechanism (circuit breaker, disconnector, fuse or removable link) which can separate the neutral conductor from the neutral point may be installed.

E11.12.3 Installation of the TN-S system earthing

a) The PE conductor will be installed next to the associated LV power cable.

b) Where the PE conductor is installed directly in the ground, bare copper earth wire will be used.

c) Where the PE conductor is installed in a covered cable trench or on a cable rack, black PVC insulated earth wire will be used. Both ends of the PE conductor will be identified with yellow/green crimp sleeves.

E11.14 LIGHTNING PROTECTION SYSTEM (LPS)

Figure 2 shows a typical LPS as implemented by Johannesburg Water

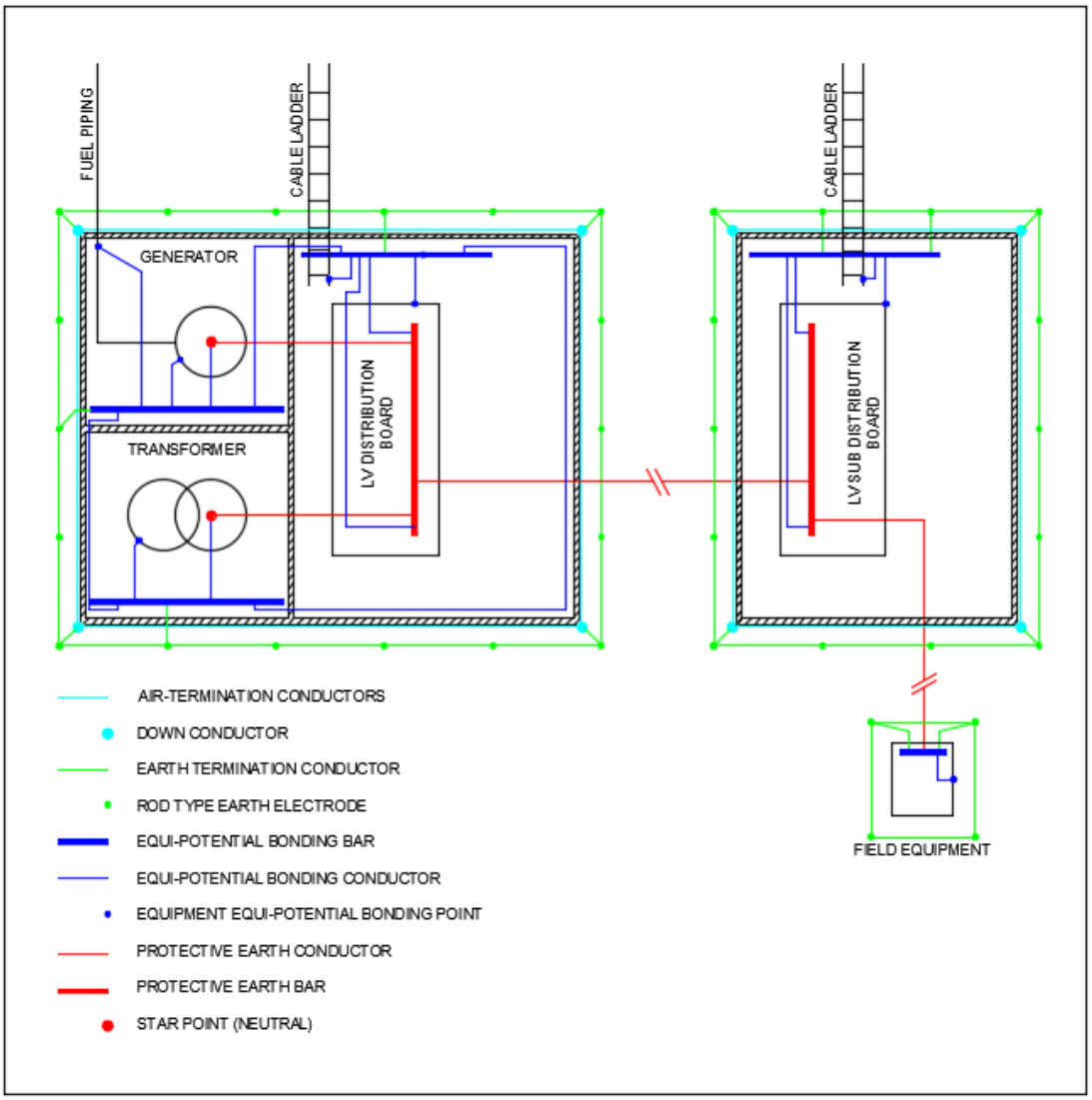


Figure 2. *Lighting Protection System (LPS)*

E11.16 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Unit
Earth resistivity tests	No

The tendered rate shall include for the carrying out of the earth resistivity tests by a competent and experienced LPS engineer. The unit for measurement shall be per point where such tests have to be carried out.

Item	Unit
Design of a Lightning Protection System (LPS)	No

The tendered rate shall include for the design by a competent and experienced LPS engineer and must include the design of the Surge Protection Measures (SPM). The unit for measurement shall be an area of design.

Item	Unit
Installation of a structure LPS	Sum

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply of all material required and the installation of the Lighting Protection system as per the design by a competent and experienced LPS engineer. It shall include for the testing of the LPS by a competent and experienced LPS engineer.

Item	Unit
Extra over for the supply and installation of additional rod type earth electrodes of specified length including welding/clamps for the connection of earth-termination conductors	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supplying and installation of the earth electrodes.

Item	Unit
Provision for additional earthing as required	Provisional sum

The provisional sum provided shall include for any additional earthing which may be specified by the Engineer after the acceptance of the contract.

The Contractor shall submit a written quotation to the Engineer when requested to by the Engineer and shall not commence with the installation of any additional earthing without the written instruction of the Engineer.

Item	Unit
Testing of a LPS	No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of tests undertaken by a competent and experienced LPS engineer, including the supply of the equipment required to do the test.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E12 : ELECTRICAL MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLES

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E12 : Electrical Medium Voltage Cables**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E12**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E12: ELECTRICAL MEDIUM VOLTAGE CABLES

CONTENTS

E12.1 INTRODUCTION 3

E12.2 SCOPE 3
E12.2.1 General 3
E12.2.2 Work to be included 3
E12.2.3 Work to be excluded 3

E12.3 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS 3
E12.3.1 Standards 3
E12.3.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications 4

E12.4 DEFINITIONS 4

E12.5 CABLE REQUIREMENTS 4
E12.5.1 General 4
E12.5.2 Specific Requirements of MV Cables 4

E12.6 MARKING, LABELLING AND PACKAGING 6
E12.6.1 Packaging 6
E12.6.2 Marking of drums 6

E12.7 TESTING OF CABLES 6

E12.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE 7

E12.9 MEASURE AND PAYMENT 7

E12.1 INTRODUCTION

This specification covers the following:

(a) Medium Voltage (MV) cables for underground and surface installation;

(b) The type of MV cables that shall be used;

(c) The general requirements of the MV cables;

(d) The practice to be followed when storing, installing and testing the cables.

E12.2 SCOPE

E12.2.1 General

This specification details the requirements for single-core and three-core, MV cables. The preferred type of MV cables which is detailed in this specification is

(a) Paper insulated and lead covered double steel tape armoured 6.35/11kV cables to SANS 97;

(b) Three-core cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE) insulated PVC bedded, steel wire armoured, PVC sheathed 6.35/11kV cables to SANS 1339 Type A (Individually screened).

E12.2.2 Work to be included

The scope of work includes the supply, delivery and storage of MV cables prior to installation of the cables..

The following is specifically included in the scope:

(a) Description of the MV cables required for the work.

(b) Marking and labelling of the cables and cable drums.

E12.2.3 Work to be excluded

The following work and items are specifically excluded from the scope of work:

(a) All civil works

(b) Installation, laying or termination of any cables.

E12.3 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS

E12.3.1 Standards

The cables and their installation methods shall comply with the requirements of this specification including the valid and relevant requirements of the following Acts, Codes of Practice and Standards:

SANS 10142-1	:	The wiring of premises Part 1: Low-voltage installations
SANS 10142-2	:	The wiring of premises Part 2: Medium-voltage installations above 1 kV a.c. not exceeding 22 kV a.c. and up to and including 3 MVA installed capacity
BS EN 13601	:	Copper and copper alloys. Copper rod, bar and wire for general electrical purposes
SANS 97	:	Electric Cables – Impregnated paper-insulated metal-sheathed cables for rated voltages 3.3/3.3 kV to 19/33 kV
SANS 1339	:	Electric cables - Cross-linked Poly-ethylene (XLPE) insulated cables for rated voltages 3.8/6.6kV to 19/33kV
SANS 1507	:	Electrical cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500 V to 1 900/3 300 V)

SANS 1411	:	Materials of insulated electric cables and flexible cords
SANS 1520	:	Flexible electrical trailing cables for use in mines
IEC 60287	:	Electric cables - Calculation of the current rating
VDE 0250	:	Cables, wires and cords for power installation
SANS 10198	:	The selection, handling and installation of electric power cables of rating not exceeding 33kV

a) The Occupational Health and Safety Act (Act 85 of 1993)

E12.3.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications

The following particular specifications shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification:

E23	:	ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATION FOR COLOUR CODE
G02	:	PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION FOR CORROSION PROTECTION
E06	:	ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION

E12.4 DEFINITIONS

PILC Cable	Single-core and three-core, paper insulated lead covered electric cables
Armour	A layer or layers of galvanized steel wires applied to the cable to provide mechanical protection or earth continuity, or both.
Sheath	A solid extruded protective covering applied as the exterior of a cable or a flexible cord.
Bedding	A layer of extruded compound applied to the cable beneath the armouring.
Core	A single insulated conductor without protective covering.
XLPE	Cross-linked Poly-ethylene cable

E12.5 CABLE REQUIREMENTS

E12.5.1 General

PILC cables shall comply with the requirements of SANS 97.

XLPE cables shall comply with SANS 1339

The nominal cable voltage will be 6.35/11kV.

The cores of three-core cables shall be identified by the colours Red, White and Blue (R, W, B) or numbers 1, 2 and 3.

E12.5.2 Specific Requirements of MV Cables

E12.5.2.1 Voltage Frequency

The cable is needed for an underground, three phase, medium voltage, 50 hertz, alternating current distribution system.

E12.5.2.2 Core Screen

The conductor core shall be individually screened. The core screen shall be strippable.

E12.5.2.3 Metal Sheath

The metal sheath shall comprise of pure lead for PILC.

XLPE cables shall be PVC.

E12.5.2.4 Bedding

A bitumen impregnated fibrous bedding complying with SANS 97 shall be provided.

XLPE cables must be PVC bedded.

E12.5.2.5 Armour

Double steel tape armouring in accordance with SANS 97.

XLPE cables to have a steel or aluminium wire armour.

E12.5.2.6 Outer Sheath (Serving)

A PVC outer sheath will be required for XLPE, An impermeable black PVC sheath in accordance with SANS 97 shall be provided for PILC.

E12.5.2.7 Conductors

The standard conductor shall be copper or aluminium with cross-sectional areas as specified in Table 1:

CONSTRUCTION	PILC		XLPE TYPE A	
	NOMINAL VOLTAGE (kV)		NOMINAL VOLTAGE (kV)	
	3.8 / 6.6	6.35 / 11	3.8 / 6.6	6.35 / 11
	AREA (sq mm)		AREA (sq mm)	
1 CORE Copper/Aluminium	-	-	50	50
	-	-	70	70
	-	-	95	95
	-	-	120	120
	150	150	150	150
	185	185	185	185
	240	240	240	240
	300	300	300	300
3 CORE Copper/Aluminium	25	25	25	25
	35	35	35	35
	50	50	50	50
	70	70	70	70
	95	95	95	95
	120	120	120	120
	150	150	150	150
	185	185	185	185
	240	240	240	240
	300	300	300	300

Table 1: Standard Cable Conductor Cross Sectional Areas

E12.5.2.8 Cable Markings

Cables shall be legibly marked as specified in SANS 97, including:

(a) Conductor size in square millimetres

(b) Number of cores

(c) Conductor material (copper)

(d) The specification number (SANS 97) to which the cable has been manufactured.

(e) The year of manufacture

(f) Nominal voltage

Typically cable marking – MAKE YEAR 6.6/11kV XXmm^2 x 3 Cu SANS 97

E12.6 MARKING, LABELLING AND PACKAGING

E12.6.1 Packaging

Cables shall be supplied on wooden drums.

Unless otherwise stated, standard drum lengths shall be 300m for all 3-core cables.

E12.6.2 Marking of drums

On the cable drums, weatherproof and well legible labels shall be fixed, containing the information as follows:

(a) Cable manufacturer;

(b) Complete cable identification according to applied standard;

(c) Delivery length (in meter);

(d) Overall weight;

(e) Cable drum number;

(f) Rolling direction arrow.

E12.7 TESTING OF CABLES

The contractor shall supply factory test certificates for each drum of cable supplied under the Contract.

After the installation is complete, the contractor and the Engineer shall inspect the installation. The Engineer must be notified in advance of the inspection dates. The contractor will keep a snag list, reflecting all items not acceptable to the Engineer. The contractor will correct the snag items as required to the Engineers approval, updating the snag list as the items are completed and signed off by the Engineer.

On completion of his work, the Contractor will issue an Electrical Certificate of Compliance (CoC). All tests deemed necessary to issue the CoC should be included. The Contractor shall make all arrangements, pay all fees and provide all equipment for these tests. The Contractor shall notify the Engineer timeously so that he may witness the tests.

Each installed cable shall be tested in accordance with:

(a) The Occupational Health and Safety Act (OHSA) 1994;

(b) SANS 10142-2

(c) SANS 97 (Electric cables - Impregnated paper-insulated metal-sheathed cables for rated voltages 3,3/3,3 kV to 19/33 kV)

SANS 97	Duration (min)	Commissioning test voltage between conductors (V)			Commissioning test voltage between conductors / sheath (V)		
Test Wave		3300/ 3300	3800/ 6600	6350/ 11000	3300/ 3300	3800/ 6600	6350/ 11000
AC (r.m.s)	15	7000	13000	22000	7000	8000	13000
DC	15	9000	19000	31000	9000	11000	19000

(d) SANS 1339 (Electric cables - Cross-linked polyethylene (XLPE) insulated cables for rated voltages 3,8/6,6 kV to 19/33 kV)

SANS 1339	Duration (min)	Commissioning test voltage between conductors (V)			
Test Wave		6600	11000	22000	33000

VLF (0.1 Hz)	60	11000	19000	38000	57000
Power frequency	60	8000	13000	25000	38000
DC	10	6000	10000	20000	30000

DC voltage testing is likely to cause irreversible damage to XLPE-insulated cable systems. The voltage and duration should be limited to the appropriate values given in the table above. The contractor shall use a DC test set to apply the test voltage. After completion of the DC test, the contractor shall soft-discharge the cable, using either the DC test set or a discharge stick where after the cable will be fully discharged by solidly earthing it for at least 8 h but preferably for 24 h. DC testing shall only be carried out with written permission from the Engineer,

(e) The requirements of the Local and Supply Authorities.

E12.8 QUALITY ASSURANCE

All cables supplied under the scope of works of this project shall be designed and manufactured under a quality control system, typically to the ISO 9000 series. The contractor must supply proof of manufacturer's certification.

E12.9 MEASURE AND PAYMENT

All cables supplied under the scope of works of this project shall be designed and manufactured under a quality control system, typically to SANS ISO 9000 series.

Item **Unit**

Supply and delivery of medium voltage paper insulated cable.....m

The unit of measurement shall be the metre of cable supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the specified cable to the site.

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

ANNEX A

Derating Factors FOR PILC Cables

For Installation Conditions other than Standard

Variations of depth of laying - single and multicore PILC cables				
Depth of laying	Direct in ground		In single way ducts	
m	Up to 300 mm²	Above 300 mm²	Single core	Multi- core
0,5	1,15	1,15	1,15	1,15
0,6	1,10	1,10	1,10	1,10
0,8	1,00	1,00	1,00	1,00
1,0	0,98	0,97	0,98	0,99
1,25	0,96	0,95	0,95	0,97
1,5	0,95	0,94	0,93	0,96
2,0	0,92	0,90	0,90	0,94

Variations of thermal resistivity of soil - single and multicore PILC cables								
Conductor Size	Direct in ground				In single way ducts			
	Size Soil resistivity (K.m/W)				Size Soil resistivity. K.m/W			
mm²	1	1.5	2	2.5	1	1.5	2	2.5
25	1.06	0.93	0.85	0.78	1.03	0.96	0.91	0.86
35	1.06	0.93	0.85	0.78	1.03	0.96	0.9	0.85
50	1.07	0.93	0.84	0.77	1.03	0.96	0.9	0.85
70	1.07	0.93	0.84	0.77	1.03	0.96	0.9	0.85
95	1.07	0.93	0.84	0.77	1.03	0.95	0.89	0.84
120	1.07	0.92	0.83	0.76	1.03	0.95	0.89	0.83
150	1.07	0.92	0.83	0.76	1.04	0.95	0.89	0.83
185	1.07	0.92	0.82	0.75	1.04	0.95	0.88	0.82
240	1.07	0.92	0.82	0.75	1.04	0.95	0.88	0.82
300	1.07	0.92	0.82	0.74	1.04	0.95	0.87	0.82
400	1.07	0.91	0.81	0.74	1.04	0.94	0.86	0.81
500	1.08	0.91	0.8	0.72	1.05	0.94	0.84	0.78
630	1.08	0.91	0.79	0.72	1.05	0.94	0.84	0.78
800	1.08	0.9	0.79	0.71	1.06	0.93	0.83	0.77
1000	1.08	0.9	0.79	0.71	1.06	0.93	0.83	0.76

Ground Temperature derating factors					
Maximum sustained conductor temperature	Ground Temperature °C				
°C	25	30	35	40	45
70	1.00	0.95	0.90	0.85	0.80
80	1.00	0.96	0.92	0.88	0.83

Derating factors for grouping of multicore PILC cables in horizontal formation in ground or ducts									
No. of cables in group	In ground - Axial spacing m					In ducts - Axial spacing m			
	Touch	0,15	0,30	0,45	0,60	Touch	0,30	0,45	0,60
2	0,80	0,85	0,89	0,90	0,92	0,88	0,91	0,93	0,94
3	0,69	0,75	0,80	0,84	0,86	0,80	0,84	0,87	0,89
4	0,63	0,70	0,77	0,80	0,84	0,75	0,81	0,84	0,87
5	0,57	0,66	0,73	0,78	0,81	0,71	0,77	0,82	0,85
6	0,55	0,63	0,71	0,76	0,80	0,69	0,75	0,80	0,84

No. of circuits	Derating factors for Grouping of single core PLIC cables (3.3 to 22kV)								
	Horizontal formation in single way ducts			Horizontal formation laid direct					
	Axial spacing			Axial spacing of circuits					
	m			m					
	Touch	0.45	0.60	Touch		0.15	0.30	0.45	0.60
				Trefoil	Flat				
2	0.85	0.88	0.90	0.78	0.80	0.81	0.85	0.88	0.90
3	0.75	0.80	0.93	0.66	0.69	0.71	0.76	0.80	0.83
4	0.70	0.76	0.80	0.60	0.63	0.65	0.72	0.76	0.80
5	0.67	0.73	0.77	0.55	0.58	0.61	0.68	0.73	0.77
6	0.64	0.71	0.76	0.52	0.55	0.58	0.66	0.72	0.76
7	0.62	0.70	0.75	0.49	0.52	0.55	0.63	0.70	0.74
8	0.61	0.69	0.74	0.47	0.51	0.54	0.62	0.69	0.74
9	0.59	0.68	0.73	0.45	0.49	0.52	0.61	0.68	0.73
10	0.58	0.67	0.73	0.44	0.48	0.51	0.60	0.67	0.73
11	0.58	0.66	0.72	0.43	0.46	0.49	0.59	0.67	0.72
12	0.57	0.66	0.72	0.42	0.46	0.49	0.58	0.66	0.72

Derating factors for variations in ambient air temperature				
Maximum sustained conductor temperature °C	Ground Temperature °C			
	30	35	40	45
70	1	0.94	0.87	0.79
80	1	0.95	0.89	0.79

ANNEX B

Derating Factors FOR XLPE Cables

For Installation Conditions other than Standard

RATING FACTORS FOR DEPTH OF LAYING	
Depth of Laying (mm)	Factor
500 - 800	1.00
850 - 1000	0.97
1050 - 1200	0.95
1250 - 1400	0.93
1450 - 1600	0.92

RATING FACTORS FOR GROUND TEMPERATURE		
Ground Temperature	Conductor Temperature	
°C	90°C	65°C
25	1.00	1.00
30	0.96	0.94
35	0.92	0.87
40	0.88	0.79

RATING FACTORS FOR THERMAL RESISTIVITY OF GROUND	
Thermal Resistivity K.m/W	Factor
0.7	1.23
1.0	1.08
1.2	1.00
1.5	0.90
2.0	0.80
2.5	0.72
3.0	0.66

GROUP RATINGS FOR 3-CORE VULTEX CABLES IN FLAT FORMATION IN GROUND			
No. of cables in same trench	Spacing		
	Touching	0.25 m	0.7 m
2	0.79	0.85	0.87
3	0.69	0.75	0.79
4	0.63	0.68	0.75
5	0.58	0.64	0.72
6	0.55	0.60	0.69
8	0.50	0.56	0.66
10	0.46	0.53	0.64

RATING FACTORS FOR AMBIENT AIR TEMPERATURE					
Conductor Temp. °C	Air temperature °C				
	30	35	40	45	50
90	1.00	0.95	0.89	0.84	0.78

XLPE cable on trays, ladders or building structures						
Type of laying			No. of ladders or trays	Number of cables		
				1	2	3
				Rating factors		
Horizontal on metal tray	Touching		1	0.97	0.85	0.74
			≥ 2	0.97	0.83	0.71
	Spacing	≥ 30mm, ≥ D max 30mm	1	0.97	0.96	0.93
			≥ 2	0.97	0.94	0.90
Horizontal on metal tray	Touching		1	1.00	0.86	0.74
			≥ 2	1.00	0.82	0.71
	Spacing	≥ 30mm ≥ D, max 30mm	1	1.00	1.00	1.00
			≥ 2	1.00	1.00	1.00
Horizontal on floor	Touching			0.94	0.80	0.66
	Spacing	≥ 30mm, ≥ D max 30mm		0.94	0.90	0.87
Vertical on wall	Touching			0.94	0.80	0.66
	Spacing	≥ 30mm, ≥ D max 30mm		0.94	0.90	0.87
Horizontal in ceiling	Touching			0.89	0.76	0.57
	Spacing	≥ 30mm, ≥ D max 30mm		0.89	0.81	0.77

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E13 : ELECTRICAL MEDIUM VOLTAGE SWITCHGEAR

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E13 : Electrical Medium Voltage Switchgear**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E13**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E13: ELECTRICAL MEDIUM VOLTAGE SWITCHGEAR

CONTENTS

E13.1 SCOPE 4

E13.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS 4
E13.2.1 Standards 4
E13.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications 5

E13.3 SERVICE CONDITIONS 5

E13.4 EXTENT OF WORK 5

E13.5 SWITCHGEAR LAYOUT 5

E13.6 CUBICLE CONSTRUCTION 5
E13.6.1 General 5
E13.6.2 Segregation of circuits 5
E13.6.3 Doors 6

E13.7 CIRCUIT BREAKERS 6

E13.8 NON-AUTOMATIC SWITCHES AND FUSED SWITCHES 9
E13.8.1 General 9
E13.8.2 Construction 9
E13.8.3 Busbar and circuit shutters 9
E13.8.4 Interlocks 10

E13.9 BUSBARS 11
E13.9.1 Design and rating 11

E13.10 SECONDARY CIRCUITRY 14
E13.10.1 Cabling 14

E13.11 CURRENT TRANSFORMERS 15
E13.11.1 General 15
E13.11.2 Ratings 15

E13.12 VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS 16
E13.12.1 General 16

E13.13 CURRENT AND VOLTAGE SENSORS 16

E13.14 PROTECTION RELAYS 17

E13.15 INSTRUMENTS 17
E13.15.1 General Requirements 17

E13.16 AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT 18
E13.16.1 Control Switches 18
E13.16.2 Fuses 18
E13.16.3 Indicator Lamps 19
E13.16.4 Voltage Indicator System 19
E13.16.5 Instrument Test Blocks 19
E13.16.6 Labels 19

E13.17 CABLE END BOXES 19

E13.18 FINISH 19

E13.19 LABELS 20

E13.20 BATTERY TRIPPING UNIT 20

E13.21 TESTS 20

E13.21.1 On site tests 20
E13.21.2 Test Certificates 21
E13.21.3 Test Performance and Inspection 21

E13.22 TOOLS AND AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT 21

E13.23 TECHNICAL INFORMATION 21

E13.24 DRAWINGS AND DIAGRAMS 21
E13.24.1 Drawings for Approval 21
E13.24.2 Final drawings 21

E13.25 COMPLETION 22

E13.26 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 22

E13.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the supply, delivery, installation, testing and commissioning of indoor metal-clad switchgear and associated equipment.

E13.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS

E13.2.1 Standards

All materials and apparatus shall be new and of the best quality and shall comply with the relevant current specifications of the SANS, BSI or IEC and as stated in this document.

The following standards may be used as a guide but must not be regarded as a complete list.

SANS 62271-1	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 1: Common specifications for alternating current switchgear and controlgear
SANS 62271-200	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 200: AC metal-enclosed switchgear and controlgear for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV
SANS 62271-103	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 103: Switches for rated voltages above 1 kV up to and including 52 kV
SANS 62271-100	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 100: Alternating-current circuit-breakers
SANS 62271-102	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 102: Alternating current disconnectors and earthing switches
SANS 62271-105	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 105: Alternating current switch-fuse combinations for rated voltages above 1 kV up to and including 52 kV
SANS 62271-107	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 107: Alternating current fused circuit-switchers for rated voltages above 1 kV up to and including 52 kV
SANS 62271-206	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 206: Voltage presence indicating systems for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV
SANS 60282-1	:	High-voltage fuses Part 1: Current-limiting fuses
SANS 60529	:	Degrees of protection provided by enclosures (IP Code)
SANS 60044-8	:	Instrument transformers Part 8: Electronic current transformers
SANS 61869-2	:	Instrument transformers Part 2: Additional requirements for current transformers
SANS 61869-3	:	Instrument transformers Part 3: Additional requirements for inductive voltage transformers
IEC 62271-1		High-voltage switchgear and controlgear – Part 1: Common specifications for alternating current switchgear and controlgear
IEC 60255	:	Measuring relays and protection equipment

E13.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications

The following particular specifications shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification:

(a) E06 : ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION

(b) E05 : LOW VOLTAGE POWER AND CONTROL CABLE

(c) E20 : BATTERY TRIPPING UNIT

(d) E08 : WIRING

E13.3 SERVICE CONDITIONS

Nominal voltage	11 kV
Rupturing capacity	20 kA
Impulse level	95 kV
Highest system voltage	12 kV
Rated short-time withstand current (Ik)	20 kA (1 S)
Frequency	50 Hz
Phases	3
Power factor	0,5 - 0,85 lagging

All switchgear and auxiliary equipment shall be designed to withstand the stresses of an unearthed system.

E13.4 EXTENT OF WORK

The successful Tenderer will be responsible for the delivery, off-loading and erection on site, testing and putting into operation of the switchgear. The Contractor shall furthermore be responsible for checking all connections made by others and for commissioning the switchgear. All paintwork damaged during transport and/or erection and/or connecting up, etc., shall be made good to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

E13.5 SWITCHGEAR LAYOUT

The switchboard shall be designed as a continuous assembly in a straight line, capable of being extended at either end.

The switchboard will be located in a totally enclosed, naturally ventilated chamber and shall be suitable for installation directly on a finished floor.

E13.6 CUBICLE CONSTRUCTION

E13.6.1 General

All cubicles shall be of the totally enclosed, floor mounted type and shall be vermin proof and where possible dustproof. The cubicles shall have a minimum enclosure rating of IP 42 to SANS 60529.

Cubicles shall be designed so that it is possible to add additional panels to existing switchboards without undue difficulty.

E13.6.2 Segregation of circuits

Each circuit in a switchboard shall be provided with an individual cubicle so arranged that accidental contact with live parts in adjacent circuit cubicles is impossible.

It shall be possible to terminate the cables of any circuit without exposure to any live conductors

of the same circuit while the busbars are energized.

E13.6.3 Doors

Where doors are provided on circuit breaker switch cubicles, the doors shall be fitted with handles consisting of a push-button-and-handle combination with a spring-loaded latch or a rotary handle-and-catch combination. The closing mechanism shall be designed to draw the door closed. Flush mounted ring type handles or square key operated latches are not acceptable. Locking latches shall be padlockable.

Doors shall be suitably braced and stiffened to carry the weight of equipment installed in doors and to prevent warping.

Control panel doors shall be fitted with handle closing mechanisms as described above. Alternatively, captive knurled bolts designed to be screwed in by hand may be used.

Doors shall have stops to prevent overswing of the door when opening and to prevent interference with adjacent panels.

Doors shall be fitted with suitable rubber or synthetic rubber seals.

All doors shall be bonded to the framework by a braided copper earth strap.

E13.6.3.1 Earthing

All metal parts other than those forming part of electrical circuits shall be connected to the cubicle earth bar.

All non-current carrying conductive parts, including relays, instruments, transformer and contactor cores, etc. shall be effectively connected to the earth bar either by means of their mounting arrangements on the panel or by means of a special earthing conductor fitted with lugs for attaching to the earth bar.

E13.7 CIRCUIT BREAKERS

E13.7.1.1 General Construction

Circuit breakers may be of the trip-free, double break, SF6 or vacuum type.

Circuit breakers shall be of the horizontal draw-out truck mounted type with either vertical or horizontal isolation action.

Each circuit breaker shall be installed in a freestanding metal clad cubicle and the front of each panel shall be totally enclosed.

It shall be possible to remove the circuit breakers from the cubicles without moving the cubicle, without removing parts thereof or without disconnecting any wiring thereto.

Any circuit breaker shall be interchangeable with any other panel of the board of the same rating. It shall not be possible to insert a circuit breaker into a higher rated circuit.

Contact spouts, bushings, covers, busbar insulators, etc. shall be designed to minimise dust collection.

Mechanical stops shall be provided to ensure accurate location of the circuit breaker truck prior to racking into the service position. The breaker carriage shall be locked in position on both sides of the cubicle with a robust mechanical lock that will not distort or jam under fault conditions.

All openings, joints, etc., in the entire switchboard shall be adequately vermin proofed.

All components including screws, nuts, bolts, washers, etc. used in the construction of or fixing of components shall be rendered corrosion proof.

E13.7.1.2 Circuit breaking features

The circuit breaker contacts shall ensure rapid and consistent extinction of the arc with a minimum release of arc energy under all loading and fault conditions and a low power factor.

The arcing contacts shall be tipped or coated with an erosion resistant material, preferably a tungsten alloy.

The main contacts shall be self-aligning with a high contact pressure and a self-cleaning action.

E13.7.1.3 Busbar and circuit shutters

Protective shutters, which automatically cover the contacts of the fixed portion of the switchgear when the circuit breaker is withdrawn to the isolation position, shall be provided.

The busbar orifices shall be provided with automatic separate shutters.

Facilities shall be provided for padlocking the shutters in the closed position.

All shutters shall close automatically after being opened by hand and it shall not be possible for the shutters or shutter operating links to be jammed by the circuit breaker.

Shutters shall be painted and designated as follows:

(a) Busbar shutters

The word "BUSBAR" in black lettering on a red background.

- Circuit shutters

  The word CABLE in black lettering on a yellow background.

- Earthing shutters

  The word "EARTH" in black lettering on a green background.

- Lettering shall be a minimum of 40 mm high.

E13.7.1.4 Interlocks

The switchgear shall be mechanically interlocked in accordance with SANS 62271 and all interlocks shall be robust and shall not distort or jam in the event of an incorrect operation. The minimum safety features provided shall prevent the following actions:

(a) A closed circuit breaker from being withdrawn from or inserted into the isolating contacts. The circuit breaker shall trip if an attempt is made to do so.

(b) The closing of the circuit breaker except when it is correctly located and fully racked in the "service" or "earthing" positions or in the fully lowered position. It must, however, be possible to close the circuit breaker when it is fully withdrawn from the cubicle.

(c) The lowering of the tank of circuit breakers unless the circuit breaker is fully withdrawn and the racking-in of the circuit breaker unless the tank is securely bolted in position.

(d) The circuit breaker from being closed when the secondary circuits are not fully engaged. It shall also not be possible to remove the secondary circuit plugs unless the circuit breaker contacts are fully open.

(e) Electrical tripping of the circuit breaker when the circuit breaker is in the earthed position. Padlocking facilities shall also be provided to lock off the mechanical trip lever on the breaker mechanism.

(f) The integral earthing switch (where applicable) from closing unless the circuit breaker is in the correct earth position. It must not be possible to close the earth switch onto live busbars.

E13.7.1.5 Secondary isolating contacts

The connections in the secondary circuit between the fixed and moving portions of the equipment shall be by means of self-aligning contacts. Robust guide pins or other approved guides shall engage before the contacts.

Circuit breaker auxiliary contracts for functions common to the various panel type specified, shall be wired to secondary isolating contacts in the same relative position on all panel types specified.

The secondary isolating contacts must be so arranged that when the circuit breaker is in the lowered or racked down position the secondary isolating contacts can still be made without the addition of separate jumper equipment.

E13.7.1.6 Position stops

Immediately prior to racking in, positive stops shall be engaged to locate the circuit breaker in the

correct position relative to the busbar selection guides or other approved means shall be provided to ensure accurate entry into the guides.

A positive stop shall be provided to ensure correct location without danger of "over-run" in the "racked in" position.

E13.7.1.7 Earthing

Integral earthing facilities shall be provided.

Integral earthing facilities through the circuit breaker are preferred, but separate earthing devices or earthing switches mounted on separate trucks are acceptable.

Where separate earthing devices or earthing trucks are supplied, the gear shall be suitable for use on all the circuit breakers in a switchboard and shall also be suitable for earthing either the busbar or the cables. A full set of earthing devices or earthing trucks shall be supplied for each switchboard.

Earthing equipment shall have a making capacity and a rated short-time withstand current (Ik) equal to the rest of the switchboard.

E13.7.1.8 Capacities and Fault Levels

The complete primary circuit (CB's, busbars, etc.) shall be capable of withstanding the rated short time withstand current.

The circuit breakers shall have continuous current ratings as specified in the Detail Technical Specification.

There shall be no audible corona discharge under working conditions. These requirements shall be taken to be complied with only if the audible corona extinction voltage is less than 9 kV to earth or 14 kV between phases.

Compliance may be conceded if it can be shown that any discharge below the specified levels takes place at points remote from all dielectric materials, and cannot cause their deterioration.

The switchgear shall have an assigned impulse rating of not less than 95 kV at sea level, supported by recent test certificates proving successful testing, using a standard 1/50 micro-second voltage wave, on identical units manufactured in the factory from which an order would be executed.

Circuit breaker tanks and top plates shall be capable of withstanding, without permanent distortion, a hydraulic pressure of 700kPA for 1 minute, unless a lower pressure is approved after reference to actual pressures measured during short circuit tests.

Each circuit breaker shall be clearly and indelibly marked to show the current and voltage ratings and breaking capacities.

E13.7.1.9 Closing Mechanisms

The closing mechanism shall be either of the hand charged, spring or hand operated, spring assisted or motor wound spring charging or solenoid operated types as specified in the Detail Technical Specification.

The closing action of the hand operated, spring assisted mechanisms shall ensure that once closing is initiated the action becomes independent of the operator.

All mechanisms shall be of the trip-free type and it shall not be possible for the mechanism to maintain the circuit breaker in a "closed" position during fault conditions or when the "open" signal has been initiated.

The electrical closing circuitry shall be open circuited as soon as the closing sequence has been completed to prevent continued electrical loading of the closing circuitry and to deactivate the closing signal until a new sequence is initiated.

Where auto-reclosing duties are specified, the mechanisms shall be capable of performing a "BREAK-MAKE-BREAK" operation.

All electrically operated closing devices shall be at least suitable for operation at any voltage between 80% - 120% of the nominal control voltage at the device terminal. The nominal control

voltages are specified in the Detail Technical Specification.

Anti-pumping devices shall be provided on all mechanisms to prevent pumping while the closing circuit remains energised and the circuit breaker either fails to latch or trip during closing due to the operation of the protection system. The arrangement shall be to the approval of the Engineer.

E13.7.1.10 Tripping Mechanisms

A manual tripping mechanism shall be provided on each circuit breaker. It shall be clearly marked "MANUAL".

Where shunt tripping is specified DC shunt trip coils shall be provided. The rated control voltage shall be as specified in the Detail Technical Specification.

Shunt trip coils shall be suitable for operation at any voltage between 80% - 120% of the nominal voltage at the device terminals.

Secondary contacts operated by the circuit breaker mechanism shall be provided and rated to interrupt the maximum trip coil current after the circuit breaker has opened. These contacts shall close the tripping circuitry before the circuit breaker closes.

E13.7.1.11 Racking Mechanisms

The racking mechanisms for inserting or withdrawing the circuit breaker shall be designed and constructed to provide a positive action throughout the operations.

E13.7.1.12 Indicating devices

Each circuit breaker shall be equipped with mechanical indicators to indicate the switching positions and the state of the spring mechanisms (if applicable).

A mechanical indicator shall also be provided to indicate whether the circuit breaker is racked in or out.

All mechanical indicators shall be clearly visible from the front of the panel.

In all cases positive indication must be provided.

E13.7.1.13 Auxiliary Contacts

Circuit breakers shall be provided with sufficient auxiliary contacts to suit the circuits served.

Auxiliary contacts shall be positively driven in both directions and shall be readily accessible for maintenance and shall be properly adjusted where necessary.

At least two spare normally open and two spare normally closed contacts shall be provided and shall be completely wired to an accessible terminal block.

E13.8 NON-AUTOMATIC SWITCHES AND FUSED SWITCHES

E13.8.1 General

The switches shall be of the fault-making, load-breaking type with earthing and testing facilities.

The switches shall be manufactured and tested in accordance with SANS 62271.

E13.8.2 Construction

The switches shall be totally enclosed, metal-clad, air or SF6-insulated type.

The switch units shall be designed for extension with circuit breaker panels described in this specification and/or similar switch units.

Each unit shall be installed in a free standing metal clad cubicle and the front of the cubicle shall be totally enclosed.

The switch may be either of the horizontal draw-out with vertical or horizontal isolation, or non-withdrawable fixed tank types.

E13.8.3 Busbar and circuit shutters

Busbar and circuit shutters shall be provided on all withdrawable type switches as specified for circuit breakers.

E13.8.4 Interlocks

The mechanism shall be incapable of moving directly to the "EARTH" position from the "ON" position.

A time delay shall be built into the mechanism to prevent immediate opening of the switch after closure. This shall be achieved by means of non-reversible operating handles, mechanical sliding interlocking gates or a non-reversible movement.

Padlocking facilities shall be provided.

Access to the testing facilities shall only be possible with the switch in the "EARTH" position. With the testing devices fitted operation to either the "ON" or "OFF" positions shall be prevented.

Interlocks shall be provided on withdrawable type switches to prevent:

- The switch from being withdrawn from or inserted into the isolating contacts.
- The closing of the switch except when it is correctly located or fully withdrawn.
- The opening of the tank unless the switch is fully withdrawn and the racking-in of the switch unless the tank is securely fitted.

E13.8.4.1 Operating Mechanism

The switch shall have three positions, namely "ON", "OFF" and "EARTH".

Except for removing the earth, the switch actuating mechanism shall have a positive action and shall be spring assisted to ensure that once the operation is initiated, it becomes completely independent of the operator.

The fused switch shall close fully when making onto a fault to ensure full clearance of the fault by the fuses before tripping and opening the switches.

A blown fuse on any of the three phases shall open all three phases of the switch and shall inhibit the closure of the switch pending fuse replacement.

E13.8.4.2 Earthing

Integral cable earthing facilities shall be provided for non-withdrawable switch units. For withdrawable switches earthing facilities similar to that of circuit breakers shall be provided.

E13.8.4.3 Cable Test Facilities

Cable test facilities are required and must be easily accessible.

Refer to paragraph 8.4 regarding interlocking of test facilities.

In the event of a separate test unit being provided, it shall be easily fitted.

E13.8.4.4 Ratings

The fault making capacities, impulse levels and busbar ratings shall be identical to the ratings of the circuit-breakers installed in the same switchboards.

The continuous current rating of a switch shall not be less than 400 A and that of a fused switch not less than 90 A.

Each unit shall be clearly marked to show the current and voltage ratings and fault making capacity.

E13.8.4.5 Indicating Devices

Each switch shall be equipped with positive mechanical indicators to indicate the switching position and the racked mode (where applicable).

All indicators shall be visible from the front of the panel.

Potential indicator lights shall be provided to indicate the status of all three phases of the cable circuit.

E13.8.4.6 Fuses

Fuses shall comply with SANS 60282-1.

Fuse links shall be of the striker pin type, hermetically sealed and shall be suitable for use under oil.

The fuse link carriage shall be suitable to accept either 254 mm or 359 mm long fuses both with a diameter of 63,5 mm. The carriage shall be adjustable for this purpose and shall not necessitate additional parts.

Automatic shutters shall be provided to safeguard against inadvertent contact with live parts when the fuse carriage is removed.

The ratings of the fuses shall be as specified.

E13.9 BUSBARS

E13.9.1 Design and rating

Busbars shall be manufactured of solid drawn high conductivity copper with rectangular cross-section in accordance with BS 159, SANS 1195 and BS 13601, where applicable.

The busbars shall be rated for the continuous current carrying capacity specified in the Detail Technical Specification and the fault levels specified in paragraph 1.3. The busbars shall be designed to withstand mechanical and temperature stresses for normal and fault conditions taking into account correction factors for different configurations, "proximity and skin" effects, the effect of ferrous enclosures, ventilation, etc. The maximum allowable temperature of busbars carrying full load at the specified ambient temperature is 80°C. Tables 1 and 2 may be used as a guide to determine the current rating of the busbars.

Table 1 :Derating Factors for Laminated Busbars

Area of cross-section (mm)	Number of parallel busbars per phase		
	2	3	4
500	1,78	2,24	3,13
1 000	1,72	2,36	3,00
1 500	1,65	2,24	2,84
2 000	1,60	2,16	2,70
2 500	1,55	2,10	2,60
3 000	1,52	2,02	2,52
3 500	1,48	1,98	2,48
4 000	1,44	1,96	2,45

Table 2 : Current Rating of Single Copper Busbars (A)

Width (mm)	Thickness (mm)						
	2,5	3,15	4,0	6,3	10	12,5	16
12,5	155	180					
16	190	220	250				
20	230	265	300				
25	280	320	365	470			
31,5	340	385	440	560			
40	420	475	540	680	870		
50	510	575	650	820	1030	1160	
63			790	990	1240	1370	
80			970	1200	1480	1640	
100			1160	1430	1760	2180	
125				1710	2100	2310	2570
160				2070	2530	2780	3090
200						3290	3660
250						3900	4300
315						4630	5120
400							6230

In additions to current rating busbars shall comply with the following fault level rating:

$A = 8,2 \times I \times (t)$

where:

A = minimum cross section (mm)

I = prospective fault current (kA)

t = maximum time in seconds required for protection equipment to clear the fault.

(Minimum allowable value for t = 3s.)

Where a busbar consists of two or more busbars per phase (laminations), the laminations shall be separated by a minimum distance of the thickness of one lamination. The laminations shall be clamped together with copper spacers at intervals not exceeding 450 mm in order to equalize the current distribution in the laminations.

Busbars shall be able to carry the rated current along their entire length. Tapering is not permitted.

The manufacturer shall, where requested, provide design calculations of the busbar ratings.

Busbars shall be as short and straight as possible.

Busbars shall be adequately ventilated and shall be situated in separate, totally enclosed, dust free, metal enclosures.

At each end of a switchboard a removable cover shall be fitted to the busbar chamber in order to extend the switchboard in both directions in the future.

The busbar ends shall be suitably manufactured and drilled for future extensions without modifications to the existing busbars.

E13.9.1.1 Insulation and joints

All busbars and connections shall be air insulated and shall be shrouded with heat-shrinkable sleeving or shall be epoxy resin encapsulated. PVC taping, insulating compound or oil immersion is not acceptable. The colours shall correspond to the colour of the supply phase:

Red, Yellow or White	Phases
Blue or Black	Neutral

Busbar joints and tees shall be encased in a non-hardening compound and taped with PVC tape unless suitable shrouds are provided.

The complete primary system shall withstand the full power frequency test voltage specified by SANS 62271 and the insulations level of all busbars and connections shall be in accordance with the values specified in paragraph 8.3.

Where connections between busbars and any other part of the switchgear consist of bare copper conductors, and no other insulation except air exists between phases or phases and earth, the clearance distances and insulator lengths shall be in accordance with SANS 62271 with correction for altitude as required.

E13.9.1.2 Earth busbar

An earth busbar shall be installed in a convenient position along the entire length of the switchboard. The cross-sectional area of earth busbars shall be calculated in accordance with the following formula in IEC 439 with a minimum cross-section of 6,3 x 20 mm:

$$S = \frac{Ix(t)}{X(dT)}$$ ½ ½

where

S = cross-section (mm)
I = the r.m.s. value of the current (A)
X = 13 for Copper
t = operating time of protective equipment (s)

(Minimum value for t = 3 s)

dT = temperature rise (°C)
= 120°C for insulated conductors
= 180°C for uninsulated conductors

If t is between 2 s and 5 s then dT may be increased in the same formula

to:

dT = 145°C for insulated conductors
= 215°C for uninsulated conductors

In addition the longer side of the earth bar shall be at least twice the diameter of the largest bolt that will be fitted to the busbar.

E13.10 SECONDARY CIRCUITRY

E13.10.1 Cabling

Gland plates, suitably drilled to accept the glands for all the external power, control protection and DC supply cables, shall be provided.

The internal wiring to be connected to the cabling mentioned above shall be terminated on numbered terminal strips in close proximity to the gland plate in order that the cable cores can be connected directly to the opposite sides of the terminal strips.

E13.10.1.1 Wiring

All wiring shall present a neat appearance and shall be suitably braced, placed in wiring channels or clipped and/or laced.

Connections to equipment mounted on doors shall be arranged to give a twisting motion and not a bending motion to the conductors.

All panel and equipment terminals, labels, etc. shall be completely accessible after the wiring and cabling has been completed.

Conductors shall be identified at both ends by means of durable closed ring interlocking cable marking ferrules. PVC or other tape is not acceptable. The numbers on the markers shall also be shown on the wiring diagrams.

Where conductors are terminated on equipment terminals that do not require the use of lugs, the identification ferrules shall be fixed so that they do not fall off when disconnecting a conductor.

Identification ferrules shall read from the terminal along the wire.

All wiring terminating on meters, fuse holders and other equipment with screwed terminals, shall be fitted with lugs. The lugs shall be soldered or crimped to the end of the conductor.

Secondary wiring shall generally consist of insulated stranded copper conductors with a minimum cross-sectional area of 2,5 mm^2. Solid core conductors are not acceptable. Flexible cords not smaller than 1,0 mm^2 shall be installed between equipment mounted on doors and the rest of the switchboard. For voltage ratings in excess of 50 V the wiring insulation shall withstand a test voltage of 2 kV to earth for one minute. For voltages of 50 V or less the insulation shall withstand 500 V to earth for one minute.

All wiring between different panels within the same switchboard shall be installed in wiring channels. Grommets shall be installed in each hole in the metalwork through which conductors pass. Wiring shall also be kept away from exposed metal edges or shall be protected where they cross metal edges. All wiring shall be installed away from terminals, clamps or other current carrying parts.

Conductors may be jointed at equipment terminals or numbered terminal strips only.

To minimize the effect of electrolysis, DC circuits shall be so arranged that the isolating or N/O operation contacts are connected to the positive pole of the battery.

E13.10.1.2 Secondary terminals

All external wiring and connections to auxiliary contacts, all alarm, protection, intertripping, DC supply circuits, etc. shall terminate on numbered terminal strips. All numbers shall appear on the switchboard drawings.

Terminals of the type where clamping screws are in direct contact with the conductor are not acceptable.

Where stud type terminals are provided they shall have a minimum size of 0 B.A.

Approximately 10% with a minimum of 2 spare terminals shall be provided on each terminal strip.

Terminal and test blocks of a reputable manufacturer, complying with the requirements of SANS 60947-7-1 shall be provided in each panel for the secondary wiring of the current transformers.

E13.11 CURRENT TRANSFORMERS

E13.11.1 General

Current transformers shall comply with the requirements of SANS 60044-8 with the exception of the required impulse test level, refer to paragraph E13.11.6 below.

E13.11.2 Ratings

Current transformers shall be suitable for the primary currents and secondary ratings as specified in the detail specification.

Current transformers shall have secondary outputs of 2.5, 5, 10, 15 or 30 VA as applicable in terms of the burden of the instruments and interconnecting wiring. The current transformer output shall match the actual instrument burden as closely as possible in order not to introduce unnecessary errors.

E13.11.2.1 Accuracy Class

For metering applications, accuracy classes of 0.1, 0.2, 0.5, 1, 3 or 5 are applicable. Where no accuracy class has been specified, the following table may be used as a guide:

Application	Primary current	Suggested class
Indicating instruments	All	5
Metering applications	Up to 200 A	2
Metering applications	250 to 600 A	0,5
Metering applications	800 A and above	0,2

Where ring type current transformers are specified, the aperture shall not be unnecessarily large as accuracy is thereby reduced.

The classes for protection are 5P, 10P, 15P, 20P or 30P with 5P and 10P being standard. Turns compensation shall be employed on protection current transformers for ratios greater than 30/1.

Class X current transformers shall be used in differential protection systems.

Manufacturers shall supply the magnetization curve details and saturation factors for each different transformer ratio.

E13.11.2.2 Markings

All current transformers shall come complete with a label on which the following information is indelibly stamped:

- Manufacturer
- Serial No. or Type
- Rated primary and secondary current
- Rated frequency
- Rated output and accuracy class
- Highest system voltage
- Rated insulation level

A duplicate of this label must be attached in a position which is clearly visible on the inside of the protection panel. The specific connections for both the high and low ratio's of a dual-ratio CT, must be clearly labelled at a visible position in the protection panel.

E13.11.2.3 Fault Current

Current transformers shall be capable of withstanding the dynamic forces resulting from the maximum through-fault current which may be encountered at the point where they are installed. The short time current rating of current transformers shall be at least equal to that of the associated circuit-breaker.

E13.11.2.4 Impulse Level

Current transformers used in system voltages in excess of 660 V shall withstand an impulse test level of 95 kV.

E13.11.2.5 Tests

One protection current transformer of each type used in a contract shall be tested to confirm the estimated characteristics. The following results shall be submitted:

(a) Magnetization curve

(b) Secondary resistance

(c) Secondary leakage reactance, if not negligible or if required by the Engineer.

The power frequency, secondary to earth and overvoltage interturn tests in accordance with BS 3938 shall be conducted on all current transformers. Impulse tests shall be conducted on all current transformers intended for use in system voltages in excess of 660 V.

E13.12 VOLTAGE TRANSFORMERS

E13.12.1 General

Voltage transformers shall comply with SANS 61869-1 and 3 where applicable.

The voltage transformers are of the epoxy resin insulated type and are used to supply measurement and protection devices. VT's can be installed as a fixed assembly or installed on removable and withdrawable trucks. Fixed voltage transformers can be installed directly on the main busbar system in a dedicated VT compartment. Withdrawable trucks must allow replacement of the fuses with the switchgear in service. The withdrawable truck arrangement must be fitted with automatic shutters between the live parts of the switchgear and the instrument compartment. The VT can have one pole (L-N) with a secondary voltage of $110/\sqrt{3}$ (63.5V) or two poles (L-L) in which case the secondary voltage shall be 110 V unless specified to the contrary.

E13.12.1.1 Voltage Transformer Protection

The primary side of all voltage transformers shall be connected to the circuit through high voltage HRC fuses. Fixed VT installations will have external MV fuses and withdrawable VT installations will have internal MV fuses.

Secondary HRC fuses or protective circuit breakers shall be provided on the output terminals, located in the LV compartment.

E13.12.1.2 Voltage Transformer Ratings and Tests

The voltage transformers shall have an output suitable for the connected load but at least 200 VA per phase at class B accuracy.

The voltage ratios shall be suitable for the primary busbar and the required output voltages.

Voltage transformers shall be tested in accordance with BS 3941 and shall withstand an impulse level of 95 kV.

E13.13 CURRENT AND VOLTAGE SENSORS

Current and voltage sensors shall comply with SANS 61869.

(a) IEC 61869-10: Instrument transformers - Part 10: Additional requirements for low-power passive current transformers

(b) IEC 61869-11: Additional requirements for low power passive voltage transformers

Current and voltage sensors are designed without the use of a ferromagnetic core. The current sensor is based on the principle of Rogowski coil. Voltage sensor uses the principle of resistive voltage divider. The main benefit is that the behaviour of the sensor is not influenced by magnetizing curve that results in a highly accurate and linear response across a wide dynamic range of measured quantities. The linear and highly accurate characteristic curve of the sensor

across its full operating range enables several metering and protection classes to be combined in one particular winding.

E13.14 PROTECTION RELAYS

Protection relays shall comply with IEC 60255: Measuring relays and protection equipment.

Digital protection relays which use a microprocessor to analyse power system voltages, currents or other electrical quantities for the purpose of detection of faults in an electric power system will be supplied. The characteristics and behaviour of the protection relay must be programmed to requirements. The protection relay must offer multifunctional protection (overcurrent and earth-fault as a minimum).

The protection relay should offer the following features:

(a) Self-checking facility;

(b) Local HMI display with basic system parameters shown;

(c) Low burden on current and voltage sensors;

(d) Communication port for the connection to a LAN;

(e) Adaptive relaying schemes which can vary its setting parameters in response to changes in the power system;

(f) Storage of historical data with time stamping;

(g) Simple and easily maintainable.

E13.15 INSTRUMENTS

E13.15.1 General Requirements

Instruments shall be suitably rated for the supply voltage and frequency to be applied, which shall be 400/230 V, 50 Hz unless specified to the contrary.

All the instruments used for a particular application or a specific project shall be from the range of a single reputable supplier and shall have the same face dimensions. The face dimensions shall be square and not less than 96 x 96 mm.

All instruments shall comply with IEC 60051-1.

Instruments shall be screened against magnetic interference and shall have anti-static against magnetic interference and shall have anti-static, impact-resistant faces.

Preference will be given to locally manufactured instruments.

Instruments shall be insulated to achieve a 2 kV insulation resistance to earth.

All instruments shall be splash proof and dustproof unless more stringent requirements are specified for hazardous locations.

Instruments shall be sufficiently resistant to vibration that may be encountered in the specific application.

For normal environmental and supply conditions, instruments shall be suitable for use inside the limits specified in IEC 60051-1.

All instruments shall be capable of withstanding overloads of continuous or short duration in accordance with IEC 60051-1.

Instruments shall be provided with studs for rear connection. Shrouds shall be provided to prevent accidental contact where instruments are to be installed in hinged panels of switchboards.

E13.15.1.1 Voltmeters and Voltmeter Selector Switches

Voltmeters shall be of the moving iron type with class 1,5 accuracy as specified in IEC 60051-1.

A zero adjustment screw shall be provided.

Unless specified to the contrary, a single voltmeter and selector switch shall be provided. The voltmeter switch shall have an "OFF" and three metering positions to indicate readings between neutral and each of the three phases.

The markings shall be indicated clearly on the face plate of the selector switch and the handle position shall be accurate in relation to the markings on the face plate.

The selector switch shall be of the cam-actuated or wiping air break type with two breaks per pole.

E13.15.1.2 Ammeters

Ammeters shall have a moving iron element to indicate instantaneous values.

Current transformer operated ammeters shall be 5 A full scale, calibrated to read actual primary circuit currents. The current transformer ratio shall be indicated on the faceplate.

A zero adjustment screw shall be provided.

Where combined maximum demand and indicating ammeters are specified, a bimetallic spiral element shall be provided in the same housing to indicate mean value over a 15 minute period.

The bimetal element shall drive a residual pointer to indicate maximum mean current between resetting. This pointer shall operate on the main scale and shall be of a distinctive colour. The pointer shall be resettable from the face of the meter.

The bimetal element shall be designed to compensate for limits of ambient temperature between -20°C and 70°C.

Full load or rated current shall be clearly indicated, preferably with a red line. Unless specified to the contrary, a 100% condensed over scale shall be provided for instantaneous reading instruments and no over scale for combined maximum-demand ammeters.

The intrinsic error, expressed in terms of the fiducial value in accordance with IEC 60051-1, shall be class 1,5 for the instantaneous readings and class 2,5 for the mean maximal.

Where saturation current transformers are required, these shall form an integral part of the meter. Separate saturation current transformers are unacceptable.

E13.16 AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT

E13.16.1 Control Switches

Circuit-breaker closing and tripping control switches shall close the associated circuit breaker when rotated clockwise.

Control switches may be fitted with one pair of lazy contacts, i.e. contacts which make when the control switch is turned to the closed position, remain closed when the handle returns to the neutral position and only open when the control switch is moved to the trip position.

The switches shall be provided with a suitable faceplate indicating the angle of throw and the switching positions.

The switches shall be suitable for the supply voltage and the contacts shall be silver-plated or gold laminated and shall be suitably rated for the switching functions intended.

Control switches shall be lockable in the "NEUTRAL" or "OFF" position.

E13.16.2 Fuses

All fuses for the protection of auxiliary circuits shall be of the high rupturing capacity cartridge type and shall be mounted on insulated draw-out carriers which shall hold the fuses positively after withdrawal.

The top terminal shall be the live terminal in all cases.

HRC fuses shall be provided in the positive leads of all DC circuits.

Fuses shall be so positioned that they are readily accessible to a person standing on the floor in front of the panel.

Labels shall be fitted adjacent to fuses stating their use, rating and duty.

E13.16.3 Indicator Lamps

The following indications shall be provided:

Function ..... Colour

Circuit-breaker closed ..... Red

Circuit-breaker open ..... Green

Incoming supply available (on incoming panel only) ..... White

Auto-trip ..... Amber

Trip circuit healthy ..... White

A lamp test pushbutton for all the indicating lights shall be provided on each switchboard.

The "trip circuit healthy" indication shall normally be off and a pushbutton shall be provided to indicate the status. The purpose of the indication is to ensure that the tripping voltage supply is available on the panel before the circuit-breaker is closed. An indicator light with pushbutton is required on each panel and one indication per switchboard is not sufficient. The circuitry shall be arranged to provide indication with the circuit breaker in both the "OPEN" and "CLOSED" positions.

The conditions indicated shall be designated below each light.

E13.16.4 Voltage Indicator System

All switchgear will be fitted with a capacitive divider voltage indicator system (VDS) connected to the cable side of the switchgear. All systems supplied will permit phase comparison (with specialised measuring Units) All VDS's will comply with IEC 61243-5.

E13.16.5 Instrument Test Blocks

For the purpose of connecting external test equipment or instruments in the secondary circuits of the current transformer or potential circuits, these circuits shall be wired via an approved test block mounted on each panel.

The test blocks shall be fitted with terminal strips and links for performing the various short circuiting and bridging functions.

E13.16.6 Labels

Labels shall be made of durable material to approval. Metal labels where used shall be engraved or etched. Labels made of trifoliate or other similar materials shall have engraved lettering. Self-adhesive printed tape labels shall not be used. All labels shall be fixed mechanically.

E13.17 CABLE END BOXES

Cable end boxes to accept the cables specified for each panel shall be provided.

The boxes shall be of the metal clad type suitable for indoor use. These shall be equipped with armour clamps and brass or gunmetal conical wiping glands for lead covered steel tape or galvanized steel wire armoured, paper-insulated cables or XLPE galvanized steel wire armoured cables (as specified in the Detail Technical Specifications).

The cable boxes shall be fitted with insulating pieces to allow for the possible future installation of frame leakage busbar zone protection when specified in the Detail Technical Specifications.

Cable boxes shall be so designed that cable terminal connections can be made below compound level.

E13.18 FINISH

The switchboards shall be finished with a high quality paint applied according to the best available method. Baked enamel, electrostatically applied powder coating or similar proven methods shall be used.

E13.19 LABELS

Care shall be taken to ensure that all equipment is fully labelled.

Panel designation labels shall appear on the front and back of each panel and on the circuit breaker truck.

Engraved sandwiched interchangeable plastic or ivory strips shall be used throughout. The strips shall bear white lettering on a black background.

Labels shall be secured by means of brass bolts, nuts and washers. Where this is not practicable cadmium-plated self-tapping screws may be used. The gluing of labels will not be acceptable. Sufficient fixing screws shall be provided to prevent labels from warping.

E13.20 BATTERY TRIPPING UNIT

Please refer to specification E24: Electrical battery Tripping Unit

A battery tripping unit, suitable for connection to a 230 V, 50 Hz, single-phase ac supply shall be provided with each switchboard. The charger shall be metal-clad and shall be suitable for charging a Ni-Cad battery with voltage and capacity as specified in the detail specification. The charger shall be such that the change-over from trickle to boost charge is automatic. The tripping unit shall be supplied complete with fuses on the ac supply side and on the outgoing dc. side of the charger, an ammeter to indicate the charging current, a voltmeter with spring-loaded push buttons to indicate battery voltage and a circuit to test the state of battery charge.

E13.21 TESTS

All component parts of the equipment shall be subject to type tests and routine tests in accordance with the relevant SANS, BSI or IEC standard specifications.

Circuit breakers shall be subjected to the following tests in accordance with IEC 62271-1, adjusted for atmospheric correction:

(a) Type Tests

- Mechanical endurance
- Temperature rise
- Dielectric strength and impulse voltage
- Making and breaking capacity and short time current

(b) Routine tests

- Power, frequency, voltage
- Resistance of the main circuit
- Mechanical operation.

E13.21.1 <u>On site tests</u>

The equipment shall be tested on site after erection and prior to commissioning.

The following minimum tests shall be performed:

(a) Pressure tests on the primary and secondary circuits in accordance with IEC 62271-1.

(b) Insulation resistance tests.

(c) Primary injection tests.

(d) Earth continuity and earth resistance tests.

(e) Operating tests.

(f) Any other tests which may be required to ascertain the correct functioning of the equipment.

The contractor is to provide a schedule of tests to be done on site prior to commencement of manufacture for approval by the engineer. This schedule must be ticked off prior to commissioning.

After putting the panel to service for a minimum 1 week, a thermal image must be scanned and analysed for any hot spots. The image should be presented as part of the Operations and Maintenance manual.

E13.21.2 Test Certificates

Copies of type test certificates shall be submitted together with the tender.

Copies of test certificates of all other tests i.e. routine tests and on site tests shall be forwarded to the Engineer on completion of the tests.

E13.21.3 Test Performance and Inspection

The Engineer shall be notified in writing at least two weeks in advance of any tests to be conducted to allow its representative to be present at such tests.

The Engineer shall also be notified timeously of the completion of the equipment in order that an inspection may be carried out prior to delivery.

E13.22 TOOLS AND AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT

The following equipment shall be provided with each switchboard and the cost shall be included in the tender price:

(a) One raising and lowering handle for every three circuit breakers.

(b) One complete set of special maintenance tools for all sizes of circuit breakers.

(c) A full set of earthing devices or earthing trucks.

(d) One wall mounted steel box for the storage of the above loose equipment. The door shall be padlockable.

(e) At least six spare HRC fuses of each rating for secondary circuits and three high voltage HRC fuses for the voltage transformer.

(f) One cable test unit for each size circuit breaker or oil switch housed in a wall-mountable metal box.

E13.23 TECHNICAL INFORMATION

Tenderers shall submit descriptive literature of the equipment with their tenders.

Three copies of erection, operating and maintenance instruction manuals covering each type of equipment shall be provided with each switchboard.

E13.24 DRAWINGS AND DIAGRAMS

E13.24.1 Drawings for Approval

A set of three prints of the following drawings shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

- General arrangement drawings
- Detailed dimensional drawings
- Schematic diagrams
- Wiring diagrams
- Foundation drawings.

The approval of drawings shall not relieve the Contractor of his responsibility to the Engineer to supply the switchboards according to the requirements of this Specification.

E13.24.2 Final drawings

On completion, a complete set of final transparent drawings shall be delivered to the Engineer. These drawings shall include the following:

(a) An accurate "as built" wiring diagram of the complete installation showing circuit numbers, terminal strip numbers, conductor colours and numbers, etc.

(b) A schematic diagram clearly showing the functions of all equipment.

(c) An equipment schedule showing the make, model and characteristics of all components used, including a recommended spare list.

(d) Fully dimensioned "as built" physical layout of the panel.

E13.25 COMPLETION

The contract shall be regarded as incomplete until all tests have been conducted successfully and all drawings and manuals have been handed to the Engineer.

E13.26 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item **Unit**

Supply medium voltage switch or fused switch panels ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of panels supplied.

The rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of switch panel complete with busbars, cable boxes and potential indicators as specified. Separate items will be scheduled for switch and fused switch panels.

Item **Unit**

Install medium voltage switch or fused switch panels ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of panels installed.

The rate shall include full compensation for the installing, testing and commissioning of switch panels by the manufacturers of the equipment complete with the connecting of the busbars, secondary wiring and all the material required to complete the installation. Separate items will be scheduled for switch and fused switch panels.

Item **Unit**

Supply medium-voltage circuit breaker panel ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of panels supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacture, supply and delivery of the circuit breaker panel complete with busbars, relays, switches and other equipment as specified in the Detail Specification, to site.

Item **Unit**

Install medium-voltage circuit breaker panel ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of panels installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing, testing and commissioning of the circuit breaker panel complete with the connecting busbars, secondary wiring and other material required.

Item **Unit**

Supply battery tripping unit ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of units supplied.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and delivery of the battery tripping unit complete as specified in the detailed specification.

Item **Unit**

Install battery tripping unit ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of units installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installing of the battery tripping unit and shall include the cable for the DC connection between the battery tripping unit and the switchboard as well as the cable from the mains outlet to the battery tripping unit.

Item **Unit**

Supply and install voltage transformer ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of transformers supplied and installed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the supply and installing of the voltage transformer where the voltage transformer is specified separately.

Item **Unit**

Remove existing MV circuit breakers ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of MV circuit breakers removed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the busbars to which the switchgear are connected, as well as the delivery of the equipment to a location not further than 5km from the original location. The rate shall furthermore provide for the disconnecting of all the MV and LV cable terminations from the switchgear.

Item **Unit**

Remove existing MV switches ..... No

The unit of measurement shall be the number of MV switches removed.

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the removal of the busbars to which the switchgear are connected, as well as the delivery of the equipment to a location not further than 5km from the original location. The rate shall furthermore provide for the disconnecting of all the MV and LV cable terminations from the switchgear.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E14 : ELECTRICAL SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF A STANDBY GENERATOR

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E14 : Electrical Supply and Installation of a Standby Generator**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E14**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E14: ELECTRICAL SUPPLY AND INSTALLATION OF A STANDBY GENERATOR

CONTENTS

E14.1 SCOPE 4

E14.2 STANDARDS AND STATUTORY DOCUMENTS 4
E14.2.1 Standards 4
E14.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification 4

E14.3 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS 5

E14.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 5
E14.4.1 Operation 5
E14.4.2 Rating 6

E14.5 ENGINES 6
E14.5.1 General 6
E14.5.2 Flexible Connections 7
E14.5.3 Lubrication 7
E14.5.4 Cooling 8
E14.5.5 Engine Fuelling 8
E14.5.6 Combustion Air 8
E14.5.7 Instrumentation 8
E14.5.8 Engine Speed Governing 9
E14.5.9 Automatic Voltage Regulator (AVR) 9
E14.5.10 Exhaust Gas 9
E14.5.11 Starting (Electrical) 10
E14.5.12 Battery 10
E14.5.13 Battery Charging Systems 11
E14.5.14 Engine Protection 11
E14.5.15 Fuel Tank 12
E14.5.16 Engine/alternator Coupling 12

E14.6 ALTERNATORS 13
E14.6.1 Standards 13
E14.6.2 Rating 13
E14.6.3 Insulation 13
E14.6.4 Enclosure 13
E14.6.5 Shaft 13
E14.6.6 Main Windings 13
E14.6.7 Damper Windings 13
E14.6.8 Winding Terminations 13
E14.6.9 Excitation 13
E14.6.10 Steady State Voltage Performance 14
E14.6.11 Transient Voltage Performance 14
E14.6.12 Voltage Adjustment 14
E14.6.13 Wave Form 14
E14.6.14 Overload Factor 14
E14.6.15 Radio Interference Suppression 14

E14.7 SET MOUNTING 14
E14.7.1 Main and Sub Frames 14
E14.7.2 Lifting and Transportation 15

E14.8 CONTROL SYSTEM 15
E14.8.1 General 15
E14.8.2 Control Panel Equipment 15
E14.8.3 Sequence of operation 16
E14.8.4 Auto/test/manual/off selector switch 16
E14.8.5 Mains voltage sensing module 17

E14.8.6 Alternator Voltage Sensing Module 17
E14.8.7 Timing Module 17
E14.8.8 Start Control Module 17
E14.8.9 Protection and Alarm Module 18
E14.8.10 Battery charging module 18

E14.9 POWER SYSTEM 19
E14.9.1 General 19
E14.9.2 Control system 19
E14.9.3 Changeover Distribution Board 19

E14.10 TESTING 19
E14.10.1 General 19
E14.10.2 Testing at works 19
E14.10.3 Procedures (Works testing) 20
E14.10.4 Testing at site 20
E14.10.5 Test Reports 21

E14.11 INSTALLATION 21
E14.11.1 Handling, Hoisting and Crane Usage 21
E14.11.2 Erection 21
E14.11.3 Cabling 21
E14.11.4 Notices 22
E14.11.5 Tools and Loose Equipment 22

E14.12 DRAWINGS AND MANUALS 22
E14.12.1 Drawings Submitted for Approval 22
E14.12.2 "As-built" Drawings 22
E14.12.3 Manuals 23

E14.13 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS AND MAINTENANCE 23
E14.13.1 Training for Owner's Representative 23
E14.13.2 Maintenance Period 23
E14.13.3 Maintenance Contract 23

E14.14 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 24

E14.1 SCOPE

This section covers the design, manufacture works testing, delivery to site, site erection, site testing, commissioning and handover of 50 Hz 380V standby diesel generator sets.

E14.2 STANDARDS AND STATUTORY DOCUMENTS

All materials and apparatus shall be new and of the best quality and shall comply with the relevant current specifications of the SANS, BS or IEC and as stated in this document.

The equipment offered and work performed, shall comply with the requirements of the governing occupational Health and Safety act, at time of tender.

The standby generator shall be produced in a factory with ISO9000 rating and the applicable quality assurance standards.

E14.2.1 Standards

(a) SANS 60439	:	Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies
(b) SANS 60529	:	Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures (IP Code)
(c) SANS 60947	:	Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear
(d) SANS 10142-1	:	The wiring of premises Part 1: Low-voltage installations
(e) SANS 60439	:	Low-voltage switchgear and controlgear assemblies
(f) SANS 1195	:	Busbars
(g) SANS 61238	:	Compression and mechanical connectors for power cables for rated voltages up to 30 kV (Um = 36 kV) Part 1: Test methods and requirements
(h) SANS 342	:	Automotive fuel - Requirements and test methods for diesel
(i) SANS 62271-206	:	High-voltage switchgear and controlgear Part 206: Voltage presence indicating systems for rated voltages above 1 kV and up to and including 52 kV
(j) SANS 8528	:	Reciprocating internal combustion engine driven alternating current generating sets
(k) BS 5000-3	:	Rotating electrical machines of particular types or for particular applications - Part 3: Generators to be driven by reciprocating internal combustion engines - Requirements for resistance to vibration
(l) BS 2869	:	Fuel oils for agricultural, domestic and industrial engines and boilers
(m) SANS 10219	:	The determination of performance (at net power) of industrial internal combustion engines
(n) BS 800	:	Limits of radio interference.

E14.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification

The following particular specifications shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification:

E06	:	ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION
E05	:	LOW VOLTAGE POWER AND CONTROL CABLES
E08	:	WIRING
E11	:	GENERAL EARTHING AND LIGHTNING PROTECTION

E14.3 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

The engine shall be amply rated for the site electrical demand, load characteristics and power factor as specified in the detail specification. The engine shall be derated for the specific site conditions as stated in the detailed specification. The engine shall be capable of delivering the specified real power (kW) output continuously at the stated site conditions without overheating.

E14.4 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

The standby power installation shall automatically take over the load in the event of a mains failure, under voltage or any abnormal voltage condition on any one or more phases after this condition has persisted for a pre-set (but adjustable) period. The transition shall be done automatically via an automatic mains transfer equipment with sufficient intelligence and logic.

E14.4.1 Operation

The most common form of backup generator to the mains supply is a single generator in “standby” mode. When the mains supply fails, the load is left without power until the generator is started. Once the set is “available”, the transfer switch changes over so that the load is supplied by the generator. Typically, the “down time” will be around 15 seconds, but may be longer depending upon the time taken to run the engine to nominal speed and other application dependent factors. When the mains supply returns, the load-switching device (contactors/breakers) will momentarily remove power from the load (typically 1 second) before transferring the load back to mains supply power.

The break in supply when transferring back to the mains can be eradicated by synchronising the generator supply to the returned mains supply, and closing the supplies in parallel with each other for a short period. Then, the generator load switch is opened, returning the mains to supply power to the load. There has been no break in supply to the load during this return transfer process. Terms often used for this procedure are “bumpless transfer”, “no break return” and “no break transfer”. Additionally, the same procedure can be used to transfer from mains supply to generator supply enabling, for instance, “on load” testing of the generator set with no break in supply to the load. This can also be performed if the supply authority informs customers of a scheduled break in supply.

An Automatic Load Transfer system shall be provided which shall:

(a) Monitor the mains power supply continuously to ensure it is within limits.

(b) In the event of any mains abnormality (parameters pre-set but generally adjustable) initiate the disconnection of the load from the mains supply.

  i. Start the diesel alternator set;

  ii. Monitor the generator output (voltage and frequency);

  iii. Automatically transfer the load to the standby power installation as soon as the alternator output is within specified limits and stable.

(c) In the event of any mains return (parameters pre-set but generally adjustable) initiate the transfer of the load from the generator to the mains supply.

  Two modes of operation are possible as specified in the detail specification:

  i. Break Transfer

The Automatic Load Transfer system will momentarily remove power from the load (typically 1 second) before transferring the load back to mains supply power

ii. No-break transfer

Reconnect the load to the mains after the stable re-establishment of the mains by synchronising the generator to the mains and transferring the load to the mains before disconnecting the generator.

(d) Transfer the load from mains supply to generator supply when a scheduled break in mains supply is scheduled by the supply authority.

A detailed description of the sequence of operation, time delays, adjustment parameters, set points, etc., may be found under clauses dealing with the generator control system.

E14.4.2 Rating

The rating of the standby power installation shall be such that the prime mover and the alternator with all deductions for auxiliaries are amply rated for the site electrical output, load characteristic and power factor as specified in the detail specification.

(a) The engine should be Prime Rated

A Prime rated generator is capable of providing power to a varying load for an unlimited number of hours per year (maximum 8760 hour/year less service), if:

i. The maximum average load factor over a 24-hour period does not exceed 70% of Prime Rated Power (PRP), including the following;

- Full Prime Rated Power (PRP) for a period of time;
- Ten present (10%) overload of Prime Rated Power (PRP) during emergencies. Operating at 110% is restricted to a period of 1 hour within a 12-hour period of operation and the total operating time at the 10% overload power cannot exceed 25 hours per year;

(b) Should the load fall below 30% of the engine maximum power (kWe), a dummy load (resistive load bank) must be automatically connected to the generator to add load to above the 30% margin.

(The diesel engine should be run at loads greater than 30% of its maximum power (kWe) for optimum engine life. This ensures that the exhaust temperature will be high enough to burn up the majority of particulate in the exhaust gas. Incomplete combustion at low loads can cause increased valve wear and degradation in the turbochargers, both of which increase maintenance needs and decrease reliability.)

E14.5 ENGINES

E14.5.1 General

The prime mover shall be a diesel fuelled, compression ignition, direct injection, four-stroke industrial engine designed for stationary duty.

The output of the engine under the specified site conditions shall be the net available output power after allowance for all auxiliary equipment including air filter, radiator and fan, oil pump, water pump, battery charging alternator, governor, etc., has been made. The engine shall be rated for diesel fuel complying with BS 2869 as amended, Class A1 or SANS 342, as amended, for diesel fuel with a minimum octane number of 40 and a minimum nett calorific value of 10 000 kcal/kg.

The starting period from either automatic or manual switching until the taking over by the generating set of a load equal to the specified site electrical demand shall not exceed 25 seconds or the time as in the detail specification. The load acceptance shall comply with the requirements stated in the detail specification.

The engine speed shall be 1500 rpm.

The engine and installation shall be of neat appearance and all water, lubricating and diesel oil

lines, filters and stopcocks shall be leak free.

All service connections to the engine shall be flexible to allow the free movement of the set and to prevent the transmission of vibration to the building or other structural elements.

All engine flexible or rigid piping not heat resistant shall be adequately protected against damage by radiant heat.

Engine wiring shall be of the heat-resisting type.

The crankcase vent pipe shall terminate inside the plant room above the drip tray to collect condensate.

All moving parts shall be adequately protected mechanically against accidental contact.

It shall be the responsibility of the Contractor to design the dynamic system comprising engine, flywheel and alternator rotor. The Contractor shall ensure that the vibration stresses in the crank and rotor shafts shall not exceed allowable tolerances.

Tenderers shall state in the technical data sheets the specified fuel consumption of the complete set with auxiliary equipment in kg/kWh of alternator output at 100%, 75% and 50% load to an accuracy of ± 10%. These figures shall be guaranteed.

Modern electronic engine control units (ECU) that monitor and manage engine status and operating conditions of the generator set and can be interfaced to an external computer for monitoring diagnostic purposes and setting of operation limits are preferred. A digital interface for remote status and alarm monitoring based on a common industrial communication protocol is also preferred.

E14.5.2 Flexible Connections

Any supply line or hose connected to the generator set, including exhaust coupling and exhaust pipe hangers, jacket water connections, heat recovery systems and fuel lines must be fitted with a flexible section that can withstand vibrations incurred by the operating generator set. These flexible connections should be installed as close to the generator set as possible and be designed to prevent line leaks or breaks.

E14.5.3 Lubrication

The engine shall have a forced feed pressure lubrication system adequately rated to supply circulating lubrication oil to all bearings, gear trains and important moving parts.

The filter(s) shall be suitable for use with detergent type lubricating oils and shall be fitted between the lubricating oil pump and the engine circuit. It shall be equipped with replaceable elements capable of 500 hours working time without attention and shall be placed for easy access and maintenance.

An engine oil heater (250Vac) must be installed to maintain the engine oil in the sump between 40 and 50°C to ensure coming online at the engine's rated speed and full load rating within a short period without engine damage.

An oil temperature gauge shall be fitted in the case of air-cooled engines and if required as per the Detailed Specification.

A semi-rotary hand operated sump drain pump shall be fitted if draining the sump is difficult. The drainpipe and shut-off valve shall be placed in a convenient position outside the bedplate frame to facilitate drainage. The successful Tenderer must advise the Engineer whether additional concrete plinths are required for the generator set, in order to drain the sump properly.

A stainless steel or galvanised mild steel, removable, drip tray shall be placed under the engine. The tray must be large enough to catch a drip from any part of the engine and must be at least 25 mm deep.

The tender price shall include

(a) Supply and fill all lubricating oils (first fill)

(b) Supply and install all filter elements

E14.5.4 Cooling

Water-cooled or air-cooled engines may be offered.

Careful attention shall be paid at the time of tendering to the cooling system and the building requirements to accommodate the cooling system. Any special building requirements shall be stated by the Tenderer in his submission.

Where radiators are used, they shall be heavy duty, air blast tropical type pressurised radiators, adequately sized for rated load operation of the set. The radiator fan may be either engine or motor driven and shall be complete in all respects including fan, drive, guards, filling and drain connections. The fan shall be arranged to draw cooling air from the plant room and exhaust the air to atmosphere. The capacity of the fan shall be sufficient to provide the required engine cooling and plant room ventilation.

Engine jacket water shall be circulated by an engine mounted centrifugal pump that is driven by the engine.

A water jacket heater (250Vac) must be installed to maintain the cooling water between 40 and 50 °C to ensure coming online at the engine's rated speed and full load rating within a short period without engine damage.

E14.5.5 Engine Fuelling

An engine-mounted fuel pump shall be fitted.

The governor-controlled fuel injection pump(s) shall be fitted between the lift and injection pumps and shall be arranged for easy access and easy maintenance.

A micro filter with replaceable elements suitable for the full flow rate of the injection pump(s) shall be fitted between the lift and injection pumps and shall be arranged for easy access and easy maintenance.

The filter element shall be capable of filtering out particles down to 5 microns in size.

An additional heavy-duty primary filter (sludge filter), suitable for the full flow rate of the fuel pump, shall be fitted in the fuel line between the fuel tank and the lift pump. The filter shall be rated for 500 hours service without attention. The filter shall be arranged for easy access and maintenance.

Interconnection fuel piping shall be neatly run in copper tubing from the sludge filter to the other component parts of the fuel system.

The overflow from the engine fuel and injection pumps shall be returned to the fuel tank via a steel return pipe.

All piping shall be securely fixed by means of saddles and clamps.

Connections between static and vibrating components shall be flexible.

Should the engine require a particular grade of fuel, this shall be clearly stated in the tender.

E14.5.6 Combustion Air

The engine shall be fitted with a high efficiency air filter adequately sized for 500 hours running without attention.

Dry type, cartridge air filters are preferred and, if offered, shall be complete with a service indicator.

E14.5.7 Instrumentation

The Engine Control Unit (ECU) must give digital indication for:

(a) Enine speed (RPM)

(b) Battery volts (DC volts)

(c) Generator operating hours

(d) Engine oil pressure (kPa)

(e) Engine coolant temperature (°C)

(f) Output volts (L-L and L-N)

(g) Output frequency (Hz)

(h) Current (Amps - per phase and average)

(i) ekW, kVA, kVAR, kW-hr, %kW, PF

Alarm/Trip (shutdown) with indication for:

(a) Low lubrication oil pressure

(b) High coolant temperature

(c) Low coolant temperature

(d) Low coolant level

(e) Overspeed

(f) Emergency stop

(g) Failure to start (overcrank)

E14.5.8 Engine Speed Governing

(a) Break transfer

A solid-state isochronous electronic speed governor to SANS 8528-2, as amended, or better is required unless stated in the detail specification. Approved governors shall be provided with

i. Steady state speed bank, 0.25% isochronous control

ii. Speed regulation (droop), externally adjustable 0% to 15%.

(b) No-break transfer

An electronic governor with remote speed control capability must be supplied:

i. Digital signals (raise/lower inputs) to control engine speed (droop control must be configured in the governor);

ii. An analogue signal is used to control engine speed;

iii. An electronic engine with an Electronic Control Unit (ECU) with CANbus that supports speed control over the engine data link (CAN).

(c) Operating voltage

24Vdc unless starting battery bank nominal voltage is different in which case the operating voltage is to be the same as the nominal starter motor voltage.

When commissioning the set, the normal nominal speed shall be accurately set with the aid of a frequency meter.

E14.5.9 Automatic Voltage Regulator (AVR)

An electronic AVR must be supplied. The AVR must be sourced from a reputable manufacturer and must be from a known brand. The AVR must match the type of alternator supplied. The AVR must be installed, commissioned and tested in the generator supplier's facility.

E14.5.10 Exhaust Gas

The exhaust gases shall be ducted into the atmosphere through insulated piping and an exhaust silencer.

A baffle or absorption type silencer shall be installed in the plant room.

The silencer shall be of such a size and construction that sound level measurements taken within two meters of the exhaust opening shall not exceed 70 dB absolute.

The silencer shall be of stainless steel construction.

The silencer shall be fixed independently of the exhaust pipe and engine. All material including brackets, hanger/s clamps, etc., to support the entire exhaust system form part of this contract.

The exhaust pipe shall be of stainless steel construction.

The exhaust pipe diameter shall be sufficiently sized to ensure that the back-pressure limits of the engine are not exceeded. It shall be taken overhead and protrude through the wall at a height of not less than 2 meters. Exhaust gases shall be expelled into the open air. If exhaust angle is vertical, the exhaust pipe end should be fitted with a flap lid to avoid ingress of rain into the pipe.

A stainless steel, concertina type, flanged, flexible section shall be installed between the exhaust manifold and the exhaust line to allow relative movement between the engine and exhaust pipe as well as thermal expansion and contraction without placing any strain on the exhaust manifolds and silencer. Except for the length of flexible exhaust pipe mentioned above the exhaust pipe shall be of rigid construction. All bends shall have a radius of at least two and a half times the pipe diameter.

The exhaust system shall be sufficiently offset from the centre-line of the engine to allow for the installation of a crawl beam above the centre of the engine for maintenance on the engine without fouling the exhaust system.

Where the exhaust pipe arrangement specified above passes through the engine room wall a weatherproof anti-vibration seal complete with insulation and/or expansion gaskets shall be provided.

The exhaust pipe outlet will be protected with a stainless steel mesh wire (horizontal pipe) to prevent access of birds or other foreign objects. If the exhaust pipe is vertically installed, a stainless steel counterbalanced flapper type rain cap will be installed on the pipe opening to prevent water and debris from entering the pipe. The flapper should be installed at a point that allows clearance for counterweight rotation.

The exhaust system shall be lagged with 25 mm thick asbestos rope, cloth wrapped and thereafter clad in bright polished stainless steel sheeting. On bends, the cladding shall be segmented to provide a semi-smooth neatly curved appearance.

E14.5.11 Starting (Electrical)

The engine shall be easily started from cold under summer as well as winter conditions without the use of special starting equipment.

Water-cooled engines shall be fitted with thermostatically controlled immersion heaters capable of maintaining jacket water temperature to ensure successful starting in the lowest ambient temperature stated. The rated heater voltage shall be the same as the mains voltage and shall be wired to the control panel and the circuit protected by suitably rated circuit breakers or fuses.

A 24 Volt DC starter motor, fitted with an approved positive engagement device, shall be used. The motor will be controlled by the panel mounted starter control circuitry and will be supplied from a 24V battery set.

Arrangement shall be made to ensure that the starter motor cannot be engaged unless the engine is at rest, i.e. the starting system shall be blocked while the engine is running or running down.

The contractor shall provide all necessary auxiliary equipment, i.e. solenoids, bendix drives etc. for the full automatic operation of the system.

E14.5.12 Battery

The set shall be supplied with a fully charged lead-acid battery rated for the voltage and current requirements of the starting motor(s) and control equipment, but shall not be rated for less than 150 ampere hour.

The battery discharge capacity at 5°C shall be such that the full cranking current can be drawn for 60 seconds with cell voltage falling to not less than 1,5 Volt, taking into account locked motor current and minimum motor cranking voltage. Where the control equipment is operated from the engine starting battery, the battery voltage, after six starting attempts at 5°C (i.e. six starting cycles of 10 seconds each shall be sufficient to provide satisfactory operation of the control equipment and five rest periods of 10 seconds in between starts).

Should the required battery ampere/hour rating be specified in the detail specification, for the purpose of obtaining comparable tenders, the Contractor would be relieved of the responsibility

for meeting the requirements of the above clause.

The cells shall be of 2 Volts per cell, and shall be mounted on an angle iron frame of sufficient size to allow 50 mm clearance between units for ventilation and mounted as close as possible to the starter motor.

E14.5.13 Battery Charging Systems

The battery shall be charged from an engine driven brushless alternator/rectified with automatic rate control during engine operation.

A battery charging system must be supplied to maintain batteries while the generator unit is on standby. The charging system must be mounted in the control panel

The charging system must:

(a) Recharge batteries quickly in the constant current mode, then automatically switches to maintain charge in a constant voltage mode

(b) Recharge completely dead batteries or those with no open circuit voltage

(c) Float and equalize batteries, which maintains charge with minimal water loss in cells

(d) Match charger capacity to the battery's ampere-hour (AH) capacity. Charger output should be between C/5 and C/20, where C equals the battery AH capacity. For example, a 10 amp unit can charge batteries between 50 and 200 AH.

(e) Offer short circuit protection to prevent damage to any DC powered controls, and allows engine cranking without disconnecting the charger

(f) Diagnostic functions or alarms complete with an output voltage sensor to detect power loss as well as overcharging problems. The voltage sensor must be time delayed to prevent false alarms caused by power drains from engine cranking

E14.5.14 Engine Protection

The necessary sensors for low oil pressure protection and engine over-temperature protection shall be fitted. Over speed and/or under speed protection shall be derived from the frequency sensor.

A continuously rated fail-safe engine-stop solenoid (energised to run), shall be provided. If a separate short time rated pull-in winding is employed, the linkage must ensure transfer to the full-time rated hold-in winding. The engine protective devices shall cut off the solenoid hold-in current and shut the engine down.

A fail-safe series circuit for the engine-mounted protection devices shall actuate the fuel cut-off solenoid in the event of the operation of a sensor, failure of a sensor, breaks in wiring or failure of the associated timing or control circuits.

A fail-safe device shall bypass the protection circuits during engine cranking and the protection circuits shall become operative with the start-discontinue signal. This device and the associated protection control circuitry shall be incorporated in the control section of the generator panel.

The sensors shall also operate the parallel protection circuits as stated.

All protection devices shall cut off the engine-run solenoid hold-in current to shut the engine down. Provision must be made in the control circuitry of each engine to disconnect the load immediately should the engine shut down for any reason whatsoever. The alternator must not be connected to load during the "run down" period.

Water-cooled engines shall be fitted with a water temperature gauge and an engine over-temperature cut-out system. A high engine water temperature cut-out system on its own is not acceptable. In the case of an air-cooled engine, the over-temperature protection shall be derived from the oil-temperature. For both water and air-cooled engines the over temperature protection shall de-energise the engine stop solenoid on the engine and give the required alarms.

An oil pressure gauge shall be fitted in the main lubrication oil circuit after the oil filter(s).

Digital engine protection with status monitoring provide via an engine control unit is preferable. All engine protection parameters must be accessible at the set mounted control panel as either

indicator lamps or a scrollable LCD display. In the event of a fault, the screen mode should be in alarm display mode for the faults to be displayed. A reset button must be provided for clearing faults after correction.

E14.5.15 Fuel Tank

A proper constructed diesel fuel tank shall be supplied complete with all pipework and shall be installed in the plant room.

a) The fuel tank shall be sized to supply fuel to the generator for 24h operation without refilling the tank

b) The fuel tank shall preferably be mounted in such a position that fuel is gravity fed to the engine.

c) The tank shall be designed and positioned such that access to the set and the movement of maintenance personnel will not be impeded.

d) The tank shall be fitted with a full height transparent gauge glass.

e) A flange will be fitted on the tank for the future installation of an ultrasonic fuel level transmitter. The flange will comply to EN-1092-1, with

- Type 1 Plate flange for welding
- Nominal diameter DN 300mm
- Nominal pressure PN2.5
- Sealed with a matching blind flange
- Mounted 300mm above the top of the fuel tank (offset on a matching pipe DN300mm)

f) The tank shall be designed to collect water and sludge at the lowest point to be drained off.

g) A manual outlet shut-off valve in the fuel line to the engine shall be fitted.

h) A manual outlet shut-off valve in the fuel return line from the engine shall be fitted.

i) The fuel pipe to the primary sludge filter and the return pipe shall be steel.

j) The fuel shall be supplied directly from and returned to the tank. The fuel return pipe shall be connected directly to the fuel tank and shall terminate at the same depth as the fuel feed pipe.

k) The fuel feed pipe shall be connected to the tank in such a manner that any sludge or sediment formed in the tank will not enter the fuel line.

l) A semi-rotary, hand-operated, wing-pattern pump with hose shall be provided to facilitate filling the service tank from 200 litre drums.

m) It is the responsibility of the Contractor to supply and install fuel pipes of adequate diameter. Galvanised materials or materials containing zinc shall not be used in the fuel lines.

n) The engine fuel pumps shall be amply rated to overcome any height difference that may exist between the suction point and engine.

Base mounted fuel tanks are also acceptable, provided the above requirements are met.

E14.5.16 Engine/alternator Coupling

The engine shall be directly or closely coupled to the alternator without a reduction gearbox and the engine power shall be correctly matched to the alternator output at 1 500 rpm.

The coupling shall be by means of a flange adaptor ring or bell housing within which a shock absorbing flexible coupling shall be fitted.

E14.6 ALTERNATORS

E14.6.1 Standards

The alternator shall be a 4 pole, self-excited, brushless, 3 phase, 4 wire, 50 Hz unit alternator complying with SANS 60034, as amended.

E14.6.2 Rating

The site rating of the alternator shall be no less than the site rating of the prime mover.

The alternator shall be capable of delivering the output specified in the detail specification continuously as well as on overload of 10% for one (1) hour in any period of twelve (12) hours consecutive running under the site conditions as stated without exceeding the temperature limits of SANS 60034, as amended.

The kVA rating shall be derated strictly in accordance with SANS 60034, as amended, for the worst engine room conditions specified in the detail specification. (installation at an altitude above 1000m).

E14.6.3 Insulation

The alternator shall be tropically insulated, i.e. special precautions shall be taken against the attack by harmful fungi on the insulation.

Both stator and rotor windings shall be fully impregnated for tropical climate and shall have an oil resisting anti-tracking finishing varnish.

The insulation provided shall be Class H or better throughout.

E14.6.4 Enclosure

The alternator shall be self-ventilated, screen protected and of IP23 construction.

E14.6.5 Shaft

The shaft shall be horizontal for direct coupling to the prime mover.

The shaft shall be either a single bearing or a two-bearing version designed to be suitable for commercially available heat engines. The bearings shall be of the “permanently greased” type.

A second shaft extension is not a requirement but would be an advantage for unforeseen additions such as tacho-generators, etc.

E14.6.6 Main Windings

The main field shall be of the rotating salient pole type and shall employ laminated poles in order to reduce eddy current losses to a minimum.

The rotor shall be dynamically balanced and the windings, excitation and regulating equipment shall be suitably braced to allow an over speed of 20%.

E14.6.7 Damper Windings

Brazed copper damper windings shall be provided on the main field poles.

The alternator damper windings shall allow an unbalanced load of 25% under steady state conditions.

E14.6.8 Winding Terminations

All alternator windings shall terminate in a suitable terminal box with removable cover plate. The terminal box shall be large enough to accommodate the cables and cable glands.

E14.6.9 Excitation

The alternator shall be provided with brushless, solid state excitation and automatic voltage regulation.

Excitation shall be provided by a rotating-armature AC exciter, flange-mounted on the alternator shaft on the non-drive side.

The rotor-mounted 3 phase AC exciter and full-wave rotating rectifier bridge shall supply a DC

field current controlled by a solid state Automatic Voltage Regulator (AVR). The inherent damping of the exciter shall limit overshoot and hunting.

The rotating silicon diodes shall be protected from voltage spikes by means of a selenium diode which shall rotate with them. Alternative surge suppression means may be submitted for consideration.

In cases where a compounding circuit is provided, it shall be possible to remove the AVR when it fails and by a simple adjustment run the machine on compound regulation only.

E14.6.10 Steady State Voltage Performance

The voltage regulation shall be better than ± 1% of the nominal voltage specified at all loads with a power factor between unity and 0,8 and within the engine speed variations of 4,5% between 0% and 100% of full load.

The steady state voltage regulation may deteriorate under the unbalanced conditions as specified under Damper Windings above but shall not be worse than ± 3% under steady state conditions with phase power factors individually varying between 0,8 to unity power factor and engine speed variations of 4,5%.

E14.6.11 Transient Voltage Performance

The excitation system shall be designed to promote rapid voltage recovery following the sudden application of full load.

With instantaneous application of full load (70% in the case of turbocharged engines) from the no-load condition the voltage drop must not exceed 10% and recovery to rated voltage must be within 300 milliseconds.

The voltage recovery and voltage dip specified shall apply on site for the engine offered and do not refer to laboratory test conditions where large prime movers may be used.

E14.6.12 Voltage Adjustment

Alternator voltage adjustment over a range of ± 5% of nominal rated voltage shall be provided.

E14.6.13 Wave Form

The output waveform shall be sinusoidal and the deviation from a true sine wave shall not exceed 5% when measured in accordance with BS or VDE standards.

The line-to-line harmonic content or distortion (Distortion Factor) when measured between any of the phases at any linear load capacity of the alternator shall not exceed 4%.

E14.6.14 Overload Factor

The overload capacity of the alternator shall be such as to allow overloads of 10% for one hour or 50% for two minutes or any straight line interpolated intermediate overloading condition in between once every twelve hours.

Unless exactly equally rated, the site rating of the alternator shall always exceed the net site rating of the prime mover (as specified under clause - "Engines (General)") taking due cognisance of the overload factors applying in both cases. For power factors of 0,8 or higher it shall therefore not be possible for the alternator to be damaged by overloading.

E14.6.15 Radio Interference Suppression

The alternator output shall comply with the RF suppression requirements of EN 55011 group 1 class B standard, and the requirements of the Supply Authority, the Department of Posts and Telecommunications and any other statutory body having authority.

E14.7 SET MOUNTING

E14.7.1 Main and Sub Frames

The engine and alternator shall be built together and bolted onto a common painted mild steel frame.

The base frame shall be placed on adequate anti-vibration mounting blocks, fit for the specific

installation, on a concrete floor.

The frame must be high enough off the floor to facilitate easy installation and removal of the drip tray specified and for the draining of engine oil.

The outer casing of the alternator, the engine and all parts of the base frame shall be earthed to the plant room main earth busbar.

E14.7.2 Lifting and Transportation

The frame shall be of rigid construction enabling the complete set to be transported without dismantling.

The frame shall have lifting hooks or holes to facilitate handling during transportation and when positioned on site.

E14.8 CONTROL SYSTEM

E14.8.1 General

The control panel shall be freestanding, all metal construction with a rated level of protection of IP55 according to SANS 60529.

The control panel shall be divided into two compartments to separate the instrument and control circuits from the power circuits.

E14.8.2 Control Panel Equipment

All meters shall be either 96 mm 240° circular scale instruments or alternatively rectangular linear scale 64 mm x 192 mm (approximately).

The following flush mounted equipment shall be incorporated in the control panel, together with the associated apparatus:

- Three maximum demand ammeters, 96 mm x 96 mm with a red line at the full load amperes, conforming to SANS 61958.
- Frequency meter 45-55 Hz with prominent mark on 50Hz
- Protection and alarm devices as specified
- Battery charger: Automatic trickle and boost and shall include overload protection, silicon diode full wave rectifiers, voltage surge suppressors, DC indication ammeter and voltmeter plus ON/OFF switch with automatic switching from normal mains supply to alternator.
- One flush voltmeter scaled 0 - 400 volt, indicating alternator voltage with a multi-position voltmeter selector switch with one off position, connecting the voltmeter between the various phases and phases and neutral.
- One flush maximum demand indicating kW meter scaled to suit alternator output. At 100% and 110% of engine output the scale is to be crosshatched with red lines. Above 110% of rated engine output the scale is to be coloured solid red.
- One flush power factor meter.
- "running hours" meter with cyclometer counter.
- Adequately rated main MCB with overload and short circuit protection
- Automatic start stop cranking module with a four position mode selector OFF, MANUAL, AUTO and TEST with START and STOP pushbuttons operating on the manual mode.
- Voltage failure relay monitoring the voltage and phase rotation of the main supply working in conjunction with the AUTO mode of the automatic start/stop cranking.
- Over and under voltage relay, phase unbalance relay, phase reversal relay and earth fault relay.
- One set of potential fuses.

All instruments shall match and shall be clearly scaled for maximum legibility.

LCD display capable of providing multiple-parameter-viewing with critical parameter recording,

networkable via common industrial protocol is preferable (Ethernet).

E14.8.3 Sequence of operation

In the event of a mains failure (for description of mains failure refer to the clause - "MAINS VOLTAGE SENSING"), the sequence of events shall be generally as described in the clause - "OPERATION". The timing of the detailed sequence shall be as follows:

E14.8.3.1 Mains Disconnection

As a mains failure may also include single phasing, incorrect phase sequence, phase angle deviations or under/over voltage, a positive disconnecting of the mains is required immediately after detection of a fault. This shall be effected by operation of the Mains/Standby transfer switch.

E14.8.3.2 Engine Start Command

Following a mains fault a start command shall be given to the engine after an adjustable delay of 0 to 60 seconds (pre-set at 10 seconds).

If the mains fault is cleared before the expiry of the adjustable start delay period the start command shall not be given.

Instead, a command shall immediately be given for the immediate changeover by the Mains/Standby transfer switch back to the healthy mains.

E14.8.3.3 Start Attempts

Three start attempts by the starting system of 10 seconds each with a 15 second interval between each attempt shall be provided.

Restoration of the mains after the first engine start command has been given shall not interrupt the complete starting and power transfer sequence.

E14.8.3.4 Alternator Output CB Closure

Assuming the engine has started correctly the alternator output circuit breaker, or contactor as specified, shall be closed approximately two seconds after the output has reached voltage and frequency to specification, or, alternatively, immediately after the output is stable and within specification.

Restoration of the mains or clearance of the mains fault shall not inhibit the transfer from Mains to Standby, the sequence shall however advance to a "mains restored" situation.

E14.8.3.5 Mains to Standby Changeover

A changeover command shall be given to the mains/standby transfer switch immediately after the alternator output ACB closure if the mains fault has not been cleared.

E14.8.3.6 Mains Restored, Standby to Mains Changeover

A changeover command shall be given to the mains/standby transfer switch after a period adjustable from 10 to 60 minutes (pre-set at 10 minutes) after restoration of the main supply. Transfer from standby power to mains will be break or no-break transfer as specified in the detailed specification.

E14.8.3.7 Engine No-load Rundown

An engine stop command shall be given after an engine cooling period of no load adjustable from 5 to 15 minutes (pre-set at 5 minutes).

E14.8.4 Auto/test/manual/off selector switch

A key operated, four-position selector switch shall be provided.

(a) Auto

In this position, the generator and control circuit shall operate automatically under control of one or more of the logic modules detailed hereunder.

(b) Test

The generator shall start automatically but the alternator circuit breaker shall not close. The

mains control shall not be affected.

It shall be possible to prove the operation of the automatic synchronising unit (if provided) without closing the alternator circuit breaker.

The operation of the engine/alternator protective devices shall be provided by simulating a fault by means of test buttons.

(c) Manual

In this position, all automatic control circuits shall be inoperative. The set shall be started from a pushbutton or switch on the control board. The alternator circuit breaker, voltage and engine speed shall also be controlled by pushbuttons or potentiometers.

(d) Off

In this position, the set shall be completely disconnected from the automatic control for cleaning and maintenance purposes. The mains control selection shall, however, still operate normally.

A digital interface for selecting any of the above may be provided, in which case a by-pass switch should be provided to allow for test mode.

E14.8.5 Mains voltage sensing module

A mains voltage sensing module shall be provided. This shall monitor all three phases and the neutral both individually and jointly and shall initiate the starting sequence upon failure or malfunction of any one or all three phases and the neutral.

The over-voltage drop-out shall be adjustable between 110% and 120% of the normal supply voltage (400 V) and adjusted to 110%.

The under-voltage dropout shall be adjustable between 80% and 90% of the normal supply voltage (400 V) and adjusted at 90%.

Phase unbalance sensing shall be provided in the form of a phase unbalance monitor. A phase angle unbalance shall be adjustable between 5 to 20% and pre-set at 5%.

E14.8.6 Alternator Voltage Sensing Module

An alternator voltage/frequency sensing module shall be supplied.

The module shall provide voltage monitoring features as detailed above.

The unit shall incorporate a frequency monitor, adjustable to within limits of $\pm$ 10% of 50 Hz.

Three separate outputs from the module shall be provided: one for voltage and two for frequency. These outputs shall initiate operation of the over speed, under speed, as well as abnormal voltage trip and alarms but shall be sufficiently delayed to overcome short time voltage or frequency variations.

Visual monitoring facilities in the form of LEDS or LCD display shall be provided for voltage and frequency.

E14.8.7 Timing Module

A time delay unit which upon mains failure, initiates start delay of 0 - 60 seconds (set at 15 seconds) shall be provided. If the mains should return during the start delay, the start-up cycle shall not proceed.

E14.8.8 Start Control Module

A control module incorporating the start command circuits shall be provided which shall, in the event of a power failure as sensed by the mains voltage sensing module and the mains having been restored by the time the start delay timer has elapsed, initiate the automatic starting sequence and thereafter prevent interruption of the starting sequence even if power is restored before starting is achieved.

The control panel, after the delay start timer has timed out, shall initiate three 10 second attempts

with a 15 second delay between each attempt.

E14.8.9 Protection and Alarm Module

A protection and alarm circuit module offering engine protection and alarm circuits shall be provided which shall include:

ALARMS NON-URGENT (Visual only)	ALARMS URGENT (Visual + audible + engine shutdown)
Selector switch not in auto	Low oil pressure (engine)
Starter battery charger failed	High temperature (engine)
Low fuel	Under speed (engine)
Low cooling water	Over speed (engine)
	Start failure (engine)
	Abnormal output voltage (alternator)
	Reversed power (alternator)
	CB O/C trip (alternator)

Operation of each of the protection circuits shall interrupt the fuel cut-off solenoid supply and give a separate visual indication on the module.

The protection circuits shall be reset by a push-button and a further push-button shall be provided for lamp testing of the visual indicators.

The protection and alarm indication circuits shall be operated from the starter battery.

A spare voltage-free single pole changeover contact rated at 5 amps 220 AC shall be provided for each alarm indication. Each contact shall be wired to terminals to enable a remote alarm panel to be installed by others.

The protection and alarm module may be digital, separate or integral to the main control module or engine control unit.

E14.8.10 Battery charging module

One mains-operated battery charger module, complete with ammeter, voltmeter and protection, which shall charge the engine starter battery shall be provided.

The charger shall operate in parallel with the engine-driven generator and shall have self-adjusting, stepless control characteristics (constant voltage, current limiting).

A loss-of-charge current alarm shall be provided to indicate failure of the mains charger. This may be a current or voltage monitor. The alarm signals (contacts or voltage) shall be brought to terminals for connection to an external monitoring system.

The module shall be suitable for connection to the 230 Vac mains with a maximum voltage variation of $\pm$ 15% and a maximum frequency deviation of $\pm$ 3 Hz.

Output voltage shall be kept within 1% of the float charge voltage designed for maximum water conservation and maximum life of the battery.

The ripple content in the output of the charger shall be less than 2%.

The battery charger shall be equipped with the following additional equipment:

(a) Overload protection

(b) One 48 mm x 48 mm dial shielded voltmeter and associated push-button for the indication of battery volts

(c) One 48mm x 48 mm dial shielded type ammeter for the indication of battery charging current.

E14.9 POWER SYSTEM

E14.9.1 General

Unless detailed otherwise in the detail specification to suit a particular installation, an integral, free floor-standing switchboard/control unit shall be provided which shall house the control system covered under the clause - "CONTROL SYSTEM" as well as a switchboard as describe below.

For installations where the changeover equipment forms part of the set requirements, the section "400 V switchboards" shall apply, in addition to any additional requirements as set out in the detail specification.

E14.9.2 Control system

The control system shall comply with the requirements as set out under the clause "CONTROL SYSTEM".

E14.9.3 Changeover Distribution Board

The Changeover Distribution Board must comply with all requirements as stipulated in the specification E04: ELECTRICAL LOW VOLTAGE DISTRIBUTION BOARDS AND MOTOR CONTROL CENTRES

The following shall be provided:

(a) 25 mm x 6 mm earth bar and terminal stud.

(b) Terminal blocks as necessary (approved).

(c) One fully automatic supply change over assembly, which will function as the automatic closing and opening device to connect or disconnect the alternator supply from the main LV switchboard.

(d) Copper busbars (3 phases and neutral). The busbars shall be drilled to accept suitably sized copper lugs.

(e) A removable gland plate which shall be located a minimum of 800 mm above floor level and shall be large enough to mount the glands of all the power cables plus 50% spare capacity for sensing, control and LT supply cables.

(f) The copper busbar shall be connected by means of secondary busbars to the outgoing terminal stubs of the CB and are to be spaced well apart and firmly braced.

The star-point (neutral) of the alternator shall be earthed to the earth bar in the switchboard. The size of the earth wire shall be at least 50% of the cross-sectional area of the supply cable connected to the generator and switchboard with a maximum size of 70 mm^2.

E14.10 TESTING

E14.10.1 General

The complete testing including the provision of test facilities, instruments, dummy loads and switchgear at both the manufacturer's premises and on site, as well as fuel at both sites shall form part of this Contract.

For both tests at the manufacturer's premises and on site, the Engineer shall be notified two weeks in advance in order that a representative can be sent to witness these tests.

The test instruments provided shall in all cases be of high quality and suitable to adequately assess the quantities being measured or the equipment being tested. The test equipment remains the property of the Contractor.

E14.10.2 Testing at works

The necessary tests to prove compliance with this Specification shall be carried out at the manufacturer's premises.

These tests shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, the tests detailed below:

(a) Full load and overload output with all auxiliary equipment attached.

(b) Cold starting and load acceptance

(c) Governing for steady and step-loads.

(d) Fuel consumption

(e) All relevant pressures, flows, speeds, etc.

(f) Alternator characteristics including rated full load and overload output, harmonic distortion, regulation under steady and step-loads, voltage transients, recovery times and overshoot, etc.

(g) Systems operation and fault protection circuits

(h) Switchgear and instrumentation

(i) Insulation of alternator, cables and switchboard

(j) Battery capacity

(k) All relevant operating temperatures including cooling medium, alternator windings, bearings, exhaust gas, etc.

E14.10.3 Procedures (Works testing)

The set shall be run long enough to satisfactorily determine all the relevant quantities under stabilised conditions.

A varying load test shall be carried out at the manufacturer's premises where the set must be run at various loads from no-load to 10% overload and back to no-load, the following readings being taken at 20% load steps:

(a) Voltage

(b) Current

(c) Power factor (alternatively wattage)

(d) Frequency

(e) The test sequence is to be carried out at unity power factor and a second test sequence at 0,85.

(f) It has to be ensured that the machine was stationary for a minimum period of six (6) hours before the test is performed.

(g) The engine water heaters may be supplied from the mains for the purpose of the test.

E14.10.4 Testing at site

(a) The final acceptance tests at site shall include, but not necessarily be limited to, the tests listed below:

(b) Insulation and continuity of wiring

(c) Cold starting and load acceptance

(d) System operation, fault protection circuits and alarm

(e) Switchgear and instrumentation

(f) Battery capacity and battery charger

(g) A six (6) hour test. The set shall be subjected to prime rated load for five (5) hours followed by 10% overload for one (1) hour. The following readings shall be taken at 30 minute intervals during the five hour period and at 10 minute intervals under overload:

- temperature (oil, water and exhaust gas)
- oil pressure
- alternator voltage, frequency, power factor or wattage
- battery voltage and charging current

- ambient temperature

(h) The alternator and engine shall be inspected after the test.

E14.10.5 Test Reports

At the completion of all tests, a comprehensive test report shall be compiled and submitted to the Engineer in duplicate.

The tests at the manufacturer's premises and the on-site tests shall be shown separately. In addition, the test reports shall be included in the manuals as specified.

A thermal image of the generator running under normal operating conditions shall be taken and presented as part of the Operation and Maintenance Manuals.

E14.11 INSTALLATION

E14.11.1 Handling, Hoisting and Crane Usage

The Contractor shall provide and carry out everything necessary to complete the whole installation and put it into service.

The set is to be located as indicated on the drawings and the subcontractor is to allow for all handling, hoisting, crane usage and other equipment necessary for installing the set in position.

The time of arrival on site and method of handling and installation is to be fully discussed with the Building Contractor in order that this may be co-ordinated with the construction programme.

E14.11.2 Erection

Before erection commences the equipment shall be inspected and properly cleaned to remove the protective coverings and coatings applied before dispatch.

All coils, instrument windings and relays shall be tested by means of a 500 Volt Megger to ascertain whether any breakdown of insulation has taken place.

All components shall be examined for visible signs of damage and all damage shall be reported in writing to the Engineer.

The Contractor shall carry out the erection, including cutting holes for holding down bolts, positioning and grouting holding down bolts in accordance with jigs or drawings supplied, observing all erection instructions and precautions for erection that may be issued by the manufacturers of the equipment.

The Contractor is to make sure that the complete set has been properly aligned and that all bolts and connections and mating parts have been properly assembled.

All bolts and any other fastenings are to be tightened up and all electrical connections checked for tightness.

All wedges and packings installed at manufacturer's works to prevent damage to moving or delicate components during transport are to be removed.

The paintwork is to be touched up with matching paint.

E14.11.3 Cabling

The Contractor must include for the complete installation and wiring of the set, including the termination and connection of those cables as shown on the drawings.

The installation is to comply with the requirements of the relevant Machinery and Occupational Safety Act and the relevant regulations of the Factories, Machinery and Building Works Act of 1941, as amended, and with the Code of Practice for the Wiring of Premises, as amended.

For the alternator circuit PVC insulated steel wire armoured and PVC sheathed cables are to be used and for control circuits multi-core PVC cable or PVC insulated wires in buried conduit may be used.

E14.11.4 Notices

In the plant room a clearly legible and indelible warning notice must be mounted in a conspicuous position. The notice shall be made of a non-corrodible and non-deteriorating material, preferably plastic, and must read as follows, in red letters on a white background:

DANGER
The engine will start without notice
Turn selector switch on control board to “OFF” before working on the plant

A metal danger plate of 250 mm x 150 mm complete with skull and crossed bones with the following words engraved on the plate shall be supplied and installed on the door leading into the plant room:

DANGER

All other notices as required by the Machinery and Occupational Safety Act, and the relevant regulations of the Factories, Machinery and Building Works Act, as amended, shall be supplied and installed both inside the plant room and outside on the entrance doors.

An additional notice or engraved metal plate shall be fitted to the engine to indicate the type, grade and manufacture of the lubricating oils for the engine.

An "Operator's Check List" shall be mounted in a suitable position below one of the emergency lights. The Check List shall contain a step-by-step procedure to be carried out should the set fail to start. The Check List shall be printed in bold, black letters and shall either be made of plastic or metal or shall be printed on stiff paper and mounted behind Perspex or glass.

The drawings as mentioned under the clause - "DRAWINGS AND MANUALS" are required.

E14.11.5 Tools and Loose Equipment

A wall-mounted sheet steel cabinet is to be provided containing a recommended set of tools for the service, maintenance and small repairs of the complete installation. All equipment shall be neatly hung in the cabinet for easy identification. The cabinet shall be padlockable.

A list of the proposed items shall be submitted with the Tender.

E14.12 DRAWINGS AND MANUALS

E14.12.1 Drawings Submitted for Approval

As soon as possible after the award of the Contract, the successful Tenderer shall, at his expense, submit to the Engineer for approval three prints of the drawings scheduled below:

(a) All general arrangement drawings, including a dimensioned plant room layout.

(b) Installation drawings for the cooling and exhaust systems.

(c) Detailed dimensioned drawings of all plant and equipment.

(d) Complete wiring diagrams and block schematic diagrams.

(e) Dimensioned general arrangement drawing of all equipment on the switchboard.

E14.12.2 "As-built" Drawings

On completion of the Contract, all drawings required for the manuals shall be prepared and included in the manuals as specified. In addition a set of transparencies shall be handed to the Engineer to form the "as-built" records. These final drawings shall include the drawings schedules below:

(a) A proper and accurate as-made wiring diagram of the complete installation showing circuit numbers, terminal strip numbers and conductor colours.

(b) A schematic diagram clearly showing functions and components of the control equipment and switchgear is to be included.

(c) Fully dimensioned as-made physical layout drawings of the generating set, substation, cooling and exhaust system.

(d) Fully dimensioned as-made physical layout of the switchboard.

(e) A detailed schedule of all wiring.

(f) The Contract shall be deemed incomplete until all drawings have been received by the Engineer.

(g) A print of the drawings under the second and third clauses of this section shall be mounted on the wall of the plant room behind a Perspex or glass cover.

(h) The drawings must be professionally drawn on plastic transparencies with annotations.

(i) A copy of each wiring- and circuit-diagram shall be supplied mounted in a single glass-fronted timber frame adjacent to the switchboard.

E14.12.3 Manuals

(a) Upon completion of the Contract, three complete sets of manuals shall be handed to the Engineer.

(b) Each handbook shall contain complete information on the following aspects of all units comprising a working installation:

(c) Technical descriptions and specifications of equipment

(d) Engine workshop manual

(e) Erection and commissioning instructions

(f) Operating instructions

(g) Description of functioning, adjustment and maintenance of equipment

(h) Parts lists, with illustrations where necessary, for correct identification of components for ordering of replacements.

(i) The Contract shall be considered incomplete until all drawings and manuals have been received and approved by the Engineer.

(j) An additional notice or engraved metal plate shall be fitted to the engine to indicate the type, grade and manufacture of the lubricating oils for the engine.

(k) An "Operator's Check List" shall be mounted in a suitable position below one of the emergency lights. The Check List shall contain a step-by-step procedure to be carried out should the set fail to start. The Check List shall be printed in bold, black letters and shall either be made of plastic or metal or shall be printed on stiff paper and mounted behind Perspex or glass.

(l) The drawings as mentioned under the clause - "DRAWINGS AND MANUALS" are required.

E14.13 OPERATING INSTRUCTIONS AND MAINTENANCE

E14.13.1 Training for Owner's Representative

After completion of the installation and when the plant is in running order, the Contractor will be required to train the Owner's (user) Engineer and/or attendant in the operation of the plant until he is fully conversant with the equipment and the handling thereof.

E14.13.2 Maintenance Period

The Contractor will be required to maintain the plant in good running order after the plant has been taken over by the Client for a period of twelve (12) months. The Contractor shall carry out the maintenance as described in the clause - "MAINTENANCE CONTRACT". The cost of this maintenance must be included in the tender price.

E14.13.3 Maintenance Contract

After the lapse of the maintenance period, the Contractor may be required to enter into a maintenance agreement with the Owner. This agreement will initially be for one calendar year and may subsequently be renewed for yearly periods.

Tenderers shall prepare and submit a pro forma maintenance and service contract. This

maintenance and service contract shall be a formal service agreement of the suppliers of the standby set signed by an authorised employee and shall include the monthly cost of the services to be provided. Tenderers must state to what extent the price quoted will be subject to variation.

The entering into of a Maintenance and Service Contract shall in no way invalidate the Guarantee.

Under this agreement the Contractor will undertake to arrange monthly visits to the plant by a qualified member of his staff, who shall effect the following:

(a) Report to the Officer-in-Charge, keeping the maintenance records and enter into a log book the date of the visit, the test carried out, the adjustments made, any further details that may be required.

(b) When necessary, clean the plant and its components.

(c) Grease and oil moving parts where necessary.

(d) Check the air filter and when necessary, clean the filter and replace filter oil.

(e) Check the lubricating oil and top-up when necessary.

(f) After the plant has run on one oil change for the number of hours stipulated by the makers, drain the sump and refill with fresh lubricating oil. The reading of the hour meter on the switchboard will be taken to establish the numbers of hours run by the plant.

(g) Clean the lubricating oil filter and/or replace the filter element at intervals recommended by the engine manufacturer.

(h) Check and when necessary adjust the valve setting and the fuel injection equipment.

(i) Check the battery and top-up the electrolyte when necessary.

(j) Test-run the plant for two hours and check the proper working of all parts, including the electrical gear, the protective devices and fault indicators, the change-over equipment and the battery charger. Make the necessary adjustments.

(k) Advise the Owner when it has become necessary to decarbonise the engine and submit a quotation for this service.

(l) Report to the Owner on any parts that have become unserviceable, through fair wear and tear, or damaged by causes beyond the control of the Contractor and submit a detailed quotation for the repair or replacement of such parts.

E14.14 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	**Unit**
Supply and deliver standby diesel generator	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the manufacture, supply, testing and delivery of the standby diesel generator incorporating all options/extras as detailed in the detail specification. The tender price shall also include the supply and fill of all lubricating oils (first fill) and the supply and install of all filter elements

Item	**Unit**
Install standby diesel generator	No

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the installation, site testing and commissioning plus the 12 months maintenance of the standby diesel generator incorporating all options/extras as detailed in the detail specification.

Item	**Unit**
Yearly maintenance contract	Sum

The tendered rate shall include full compensation for the work detailed under paragraph "maintenance contract" above.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E15 : ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMERS

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 4

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E15 : Electrical Transformer**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E14**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
4	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E15: ELECTRICAL TRANSFORMERS

CONTENTS

E15.1 SCOPE ... 3

E15.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS ... 3
E15.2.1 Standards ... 3
E15.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification ... 3

E15.3 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS ... 3

E15.4 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS ... 4
E15.4.1 General ... 4
E15.4.2 Indoor Transformers ... 4
E15.4.3 Cooling Method ... 4

E15.5 TRANSFORMER OIL ... 4

E15.6 TRANSFORMER LOSSES ... 4

E15.7 WINDINGS ... 5

E15.8 TAP CHANGER SWITCH ... 5

E15.9 FIXTURES ... 5
E15.9.1 Conservator Tank ... 5
E15.9.2 Cable Box MV side ... 5
E15.9.3 Cable Box LV Side ... 5
E15.9.4 Jacking Pads and Lifting Lugs ... 6
E15.9.5 Wheels ... 6

E15.10 AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT ... 6
E15.10.1 Oil Level Gauges ... 6
E15.10.2 Air Breather ... 6
E15.10.3 Buchholz Relays ... 6
E15.10.4 Dual-type Thermometers ... 6
E15.10.5 Pressure Relief Device ... 6
E15.10.6 Oill Filling Point ... 6
E15.10.7 Oil Drain Point ... 6
E15.10.8 Alarm and Trip Contacts ... 6

E15.11 PAINTING ... 7

E15.12 TESTS REQUIREMENTS ... 7

E15.13 DRAWINGS ... 8

E15.14 SOUND LEVEL ... 8

E15.15 IDENTIFICATION TAGS ... 8

E15.16 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING ... 8

E15.17 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT ... 9

E15.1 SCOPE

This section covers the design, manufacture, supply and delivery and assembling on site of oil filled distribution transformers.

E15.2 STATUTORY DOCUMENTS AND STANDARDS

E15.2.1 Standards

The transformers offered in terms of this specification shall comply with the requirements as set out in the detailed specification as well as the relevant sections of SANS 780:2004.

The units offered will have the SANS mark of approval.

Any deviation from these conditions will be clearly indicated, and any equipment so offered will only be used with the express permission/concession, in writing, of the Engineer.

The equipment offered and work performed, shall comply with the requirements of the governing occupational Health and Safety act, at time of tender.

Transformer shall be produced in a factory with a SANS ISO 9001 accredited quality system.

a)	SANS 780	:	Distribution transformers
b)	SANS 60078	:	Power transformers
c)	SANS 555	:	Fluids for electro-technical applications
d)	SANS 60529	:	Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures (IP Code)
e)	SANS 12944	:	Paints and varnishes - Corrosion protection of steel structures by protective paint systems
f)	SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
g)	SANS 121	:	Hot dip galvanized coatings on fabricated iron and steel articles
h)	SANS 1091	:	National colour standard
i)	SANS 61958	:	Indicating devices
j)	SANS 10142-2		The wiring of premises Part 2: Medium-voltage installations above 1 kV a.c. not exceeding 22 kV a.c. and up to and including 3 MVA installed capacity

E15.2.2 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specification

The following particular specifications shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification:

a)	E06	:	ELECTRICAL MEDIUM AND LOW VOLTAGE CABLE INSTALLATION
b)	E05	:	LOW VOLTAGE POWER AND CONTROL CABLES
c)	E08	:	WIRING
d)	E11	:	GENERAL EARTHING AND LIGHTNING PROTECTION
e)	E26		ELECTRICAL SPECIFICATION FOR COLOUR CODES

E15.3 ENVIRONMENTAL CONDITIONS

The transformers shall be suitable for use at full continuous rating, in terms of Paragraph 1.3 of the latest issue of SANS 780.

E15.4 CONSTRUCTION REQUIREMENTS

In addition to the requirements of SANS 780, the following will also be considered:

E15.4.1 General

The transformer vector symbol shall be Dyn11 (step down transformer) of YNd11 (step-up transformers) as per SANS 780 unless otherwise specified in the detailed specification.

Total and component losses shall not exceed 10% of the loss figures as indicated in the tender.

The nominal voltages (primary and secondary) will be as specified in the detailed specification/data sheet.

Transformers will have a removable top lid for maintenance and repair purposes. The lid must be fixed with bolts and nuts, sized to contain integrity of the transformer tank under all circumstances.

All openings on the transformer tank must be sealed with cork gaskets.

The minimum transformer rating will be 500kVA.

The maximum transformer rating will be 1600kVA.

Transformers offered will be painted and finished in accordance with SANS 780.

E15.4.2 Indoor Transformers

Transformers supplied will be free breathing in accordance with SANS 780.

(a) The contractor will specify the required room size to accommodate the transformer with sufficient free space for maintenance purposes.

(b) The doors to the transformer room should be sized to allow the installation/removal of the transformer without dismantling the unit.

(c) A bund wall must be erected around all oil-filled transformers. The bund area must be sized to hold 1.5 times the transformer oil. The bund wall must be sealed to contain the oil, no seepage into cable trenches or surrounding areas will be allowed. The bund area must be supplied with a 50mm stop valve to allow drainage of spilled oil. The stop valve must be kept in the closed position at all times.

(d) An approved firewall must be erected between the transformer and all adjacent equipment/areas to prevent the spreading of smoke and fire. The firewall should have a fire rating of at least 1 hour.

E15.4.3 Cooling Method

The cooling method used shall be the method represented by the symbol group ONAN in accordance with SANS 780.

E15.5 TRANSFORMER OIL

The transformers will be provided and delivered filled with the required quantity of insulating oil. Should the transformer be delivered with the conservator tank separate from the transformer (dismantled), the supplier will be responsible for assembling the transformer on site and filling it with oil. The oil shall be filtered and tested for break down voltage (BDV) and moisture content before filling. The oil shall be filled under vacuum. All oil shall be new and the use of recycled oil is not acceptable. The oil shall comply with SANS 555.

E15.6 TRANSFORMER LOSSES

Low loss transformers are required for this tender. Accordingly, the Engineer shall retain the right to either not accept the transformers offered or to call for changes to be made to the transformers before acceptance,

Should in the Engineer's opinion, either the no-load losses or the full-load losses of the transformers supplied by the successful tenderer exceed the loss figures specified in the tender, by a quantity exceeding the permissible tolerances in accordance with SANS 780. Any such

changes, called for by the Engineer, will be for the account of the tenderer.

Where any transformer is accepted with reduced performance figures and where tolerances exceed the provisions of paragraph 4.9 of SANS 780, the tender price will be adjusted and reduced by a sum equal to the capitalized value of the excess losses, calculated in accordance with the following capitalization formula:

K = 1,46 V + 2,86 N

Where

K = capitalized value of the losses in South African Rand (ZAR)

V = full - load losses at normal voltage and frequency, in watts

N = No - load losses at normal voltage and frequency, in watts

In view of adjusting the tender price, the said excess losses shall be taken as the quantity by which the actual losses exceed the loss figure in the tender document, without taking into consideration the permissible tolerances in accordance with SANS 780.

The no - load and full – load losses will be taken into consideration independently when calculating the adjustment of the tender price. Low full-load losses will not be able to compensate for high no-load losses, or vice versa.

Neither will the tender price be increased, should the actual no-load losses and/or full load losses be less than the losses tendered.

The above formula with V and N will be used in adjudicating the tender.

E15.7 WINDINGS

HV and LV windings shall be wound from aluminium conductor. All internal busbars must be aluminium. The core/coil assembly shall be securely held in position to avoid any movement under short circuit conditions.

E15.8 TAP CHANGER SWITCH

A off-load tap changer switch shall be installed. The switch shall have 5 tap positions, i.e. - 5%, - 2.5%, Normal, + 2.5%, + 5%.

Tap changing shall be carried out by means of an externally operated self-position switch. Provision shall be made for locking the taping switch handle in position. The tap setting shall be clearly visible in each step. The displayed tap numbers shall be referenced on the diagram plate.

E15.9 FIXTURES

E15.9.1 Conservator Tank

A conservator tank shall be provided on the transformer tank as per SANS 780.

E15.9.2 Cable Box MV side

The transformer shall be fitted with a suitable cable box on the MV side to terminate one 11kV/ 3 core copper conductor cable up to 240 sq. mm The cable box must prevent the ingress of moisture into the box (IP54). The cable box shall be of the split type with machined faces and must be fitted with a quality gasket. It must be fitted with a separate split type gland with an earthing clamp (bottom cable entry unless otherwise specified in the detailed specification/datasheet). The bushings of the cable box shall be fitted with nuts and stem to take the cable cores without bending them. The stem shall be of copper with copper nuts. The cross section of the terminal rods shall be adequate for carrying the rated currents and shall have a diameter of not less than 12 mm. Cable support clamp should be provided to avoid tension due to cable weight. Phase windings shall be marked in both the terminal boards inside the tank and on the outside with capital letter 1U, 1V, 1W

E15.9.3 Cable Box LV Side

The transformer shall be fitted with a suitable LV cable box having non-magnetic material gland plate with appropriate sized single compression glands on LV side to terminate (bottom cable

entry unless otherwise specified in the detailed specification/datasheet) 1 kV/single core XLPE unarmoured cable (size as per detail requirement). Bushings shall be marked by small letter 2u, 2v, 2w. The neutral point terminal shall be indicated by the letter 2n. Neutral terminal is to be brought out and terminated to the tank earthing point.

E15.9.4 Jacking Pads and Lifting Lugs

Sufficient jacking pads shall be fitted to jack the oil-filled transformer into position. The tank plate and the lifting lugs shall be of such strength that the complete transformer filled with oil may be lifted without the use of a sling spreader bar. A lifting procedure must be supplied.

E15.9.5 Wheels

Transformers must stand on skids. No wheels will be allowed. Where wheels are required to position the transformers, the wheels must be removed after positioning.

E15.10 AUXILIARY EQUIPMENT

The required auxiliary equipment to be included are specified in the detailed specification.

E15.10.1 Oil Level Gauges

Oil level gauges shall be flush mounted with the gauge glass (of plastic material) securely attached to the tank throughout its length by means of a metal shroud. The oil in the gauge will not be in contact with the air outside the tank.

E15.10.2 Air Breather

Silica gel air breathers shall have a window for inspection of the condition of the silica gel and oil cup or other device to prevent continuous contact of the silica gel with the air outside the transformer.

E15.10.3 Buchholz Relays

Buchholz relays shall be of the double float or bucket type and shall be of approved manufacture.

The gas release cock for the relay shall be placed within easy reach from ground level and connected to the relay by small-bore non-ferrous tubing. The sight window of the relay will be clearly visible from ground level.

The Buchholz relays will be equipped with a set of alarm and trip contacts.

E15.10.4 Dual-type Thermometers

Dual-type thermometers will be graduated in °C for registering “top oil” temperatures. The instrument will be provided with resettable maximum-temperature indicator and a pair of adjustable alarm contacts that can be set to close at a predetermined temperature. An additional set of adjustable contacts will be provided for tripping purposes. All thermistors or other temperature sensors will be installed in oil pockets. Unused thermometer pockets will be fitted with a captive screw cap.

E15.10.5 Pressure Relief Device

A pressure relief device is not required.

E15.10.6 Oil Filling Point

A point must be provided to fill the oil level up. The point must be of the screw type and be sealed to prevent air intake when not in use.

E15.10.7 Oil Drain Point

A drain point must be provided to drain the oil from the transformer tank. A shut-off valve must be installed at the drain point. The drain point must be sealed with a screw type cover when not in use.

E15.10.8 Alarm and Trip Contacts

All alarm contact will be capable of breaking up to 20W DC, inductive, at the specified alarm and

tripping voltages.

All contacts will be capable of making and carrying for 0.5 sec, a current corresponding to 150 watts at the specified alarm and tripping voltage.

All auxiliary relays associated with tripping shall be DC operated and suitable for the specified alarm and tripping currents.

Alarm and tripping contacts will be provided with un-grounded and electrically independent circuits.

E15.11 PAINTING

The interior and exterior surfaces of a tank, the tank cover and the conservator tank shall be abrasive blast-cleaned or pickled, rinsed and dried (SANS 10064).

(e) Corrosion protection

A corrosion preventative layer will be applied to the interior surfaces of the transformer. The transformer and cooling radiators will be painted as specified in SANS 780 and SANS 12944.

(f) Final Coat Colour

The colour of the final paint coat is C12 Avocado Green (6022-G91Y) according to SANS 1091 unless specified otherwise in the detailed specification.

(g) Damaged Paintwork

Any damage occurring to any part of a painting scheme shall be made good to the same standard of corrosion protection and appearance as that was originally applied.

E15.12 TESTS REQUIREMENTS

Routine factory acceptance tests (FAT) in accordance with SANS 780 shall be performed at the supplier's facility prior to delivery. Type tests and special tests to SANS 780 shall be performed on one transformer of the size to be delivered in terms of this contract unless the manufacturer can provide certificates of previous tests done on identical transformers. The following routine tests will be carried out on the transformer as a minimum (The tests are described in SANS 780) The Engineer reserves the right to witness the FAT tests.

(a) Measurement of winding resistance

(b) Insulation resistance measurement

(c) Measurement of voltage ratio

(d) Impedance test

(e) Vector group test

(f) Measurement of transformer losses

(g) Induced over voltage test

(h) Separate source voltage withstand test

(i) Tank effectiveness of sealing

The results of these tests will be made available to the Engineer for his evaluation prior to acceptance and delivery of the transformers. Two copies of test results will be provided to the Engineer.

The contractor must arrange for site acceptance tests (SAT) on all transformers. A schedule of all tests to be done must be provided by the contractor for approval prior to commencement of manufacture. The SAT must be witnessed by the Engineer or the client's representative. The results of the SAT will be recorded and issued to the Engineer.

The contractor shall arrange for thermal imaging of the transformer a minimum of 1 week after commissioning and while the transformer is in continuous use. The results of the imaging and

SAT are to form part of the deliverable Operations and Maintenance Manuals.

E15.13 DRAWINGS

Tenderers shall furnish the following drawings together with their tenders:

(a) Outline drawings of the transformers, showing:

i. All external fittings;

ii. Typical mass of the transformer with and without oil;

iii. Typical volume of transformer oil;

iv. The most important external dimensions.

(b) Details of MV and LV bushings

The successful tenderer will provide three copies of each of the following drawings, to the Engineer, before manufacturing may commence:

(a) General Arrangement drawings indicating

i. External fittings;

ii. Lifting lugs and lifting requirements;

iii. The mass of the transformer with and without oil;

iv. The volume of the transformer oil;

v. Transformer dimensions with free space required;

vi. The transformer rating plate (to SANS 780);

(b) The internal construction of the transformer and the arrangement of the windings, giving full particulars of insulation, as well as the bracing of the cores and windings;

(c) A diagram of the connections showing the exact manner in which the leads are taken from the tank, as well as the number of windings;

(d) Schematic drawings of the alarm and trip circuits.

E15.14 SOUND LEVEL

During design and manufacture of transformers, care should be exercised to limit transformer noise and vibration to within the parameters as recommended in SANS 780.

E15.15 IDENTIFICATION TAGS

All data on the identification tags shall be in SI units.

E15.16 TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

During testing and commissioning, the contractor shall:

(a) Perform an transformer oil test prior to livening of the transformer;

(b) Perform a visual inspection to ensure that the installation complies to the requirements specified herein as well as in detailed specifications;

(c) Ensure the rating of all equipment is as specified;

(d) Test the function of all alarm and trip signals to ensure the transformer circuit breaker trips as required;

(e) Do a transformer insulation resistance test (as described in SANS 780).

(f) When the transformer is on load, the correct tap changer setting must be determined. Tap setting changes can only be done off-load.

E15.17 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Item	Unit
Supply, delivery and off-loading	No

The tendered rate will include full compensation for the supply, delivery and off-loading of the transformers together with all other materials and ancillary equipment required to effect a complete installation.

Item	Unit
Install, test and commission	No

The tendered rate will include full compensation for installing the transformers in the designed positions and for the testing and commissioning of the transformers.

The rate shall include for the installation of the control cables between the transformer and the switchgear and all auxiliaries and the connection thereof.

The rate will include for the filling of the transformer with oil to the specified level, as well as the undertaking of any drying out process which may be required to ensure the transformers are ready for operation.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

E17 : ELECTRICAL VARIABLE SPEED DRIVE (VSD) UNITS

Johannesburg Water

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5

August 2019

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – E17 : Electrical Variable Speed Drive (VSD) Units**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **E17**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Senior Electrical Engineer	B Pieterse	August 2019	
Reviewed	Director	R Baard	August 2019	
Approved	Regional Maintenance Manager	T Thabeng	August 2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
5	2019-08-20	B Pieterse	Review of Electrical Standards, plus New Design Guidance
4	2014-06-03		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
3	2012-05-30		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance
2	2010-05-03		Review of Electrical Standards
1	2009-05-12		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: VOLUME E17: VARIABLE SPEED DRIVES (VSD)

CONTENTS

E17.1 SCOPE 3

E17.2 INTERPRETATIONS 3
E17.2.1 Abbreviations 3
E17.2.2 Standards 3
E17.2.3 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications 3

E17.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 3

E17.4 WORKING VOLTAGE AND SUPPLY SYSTEMS 4

E17.5 ENVIRONMENTAL LIMITS 5
E17.5.1 Operating Temperature 5
E17.5.2 Relative humidity 5
E17.5.3 Storage and transport temperature 5
E17.5.4 Operating altitude: 5
E17.5.5 Withstand to harsh environments: 5
E17.5.6 Ingress Protection: 5

E17.6 PROTECTION FUNCTIONS 5

E17.7 ASSEMBLY METHOD AND PROTECTION CLASS 6

E17.8 DOCUMENTATION 6

E17.9 INSTALLATION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING 6

E17.10 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 7

E17.1 SCOPE

This specification shall cover all variable speed drives to be designed, supplied installed and tested that shall drive any of the items of equipment to be supplied under the contract.

E17.2 INTERPRETATIONS

E17.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification, the following abbreviations will apply:-

(a) VSD	:	Variable Speed Drive
(b) ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
(c) ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
(d) BS	:	British Standards Institution
(e) SANS	:	South African National Standards

E17.2.2 Standards

The latest edition, including all amendments to until the date of tender, of the following particular national and international specifications, publications and codes of practice shall be read in conjunction with this specification and shall be deemed to form part thereof:

(a) SANS 60529	:	Degrees of Protection Provided by Enclosures (IP Code)
(b) IEC 60 664 –1	:	Degree of Pollution – no condensation permitted during operation
(c) IEC 60721-3-3	:	Classification of environmental conditions - Part 3-3: Classification of groups of environmental parameters and their severities - Stationary use at weather protected locations
(d) BS EN 55011	:	Industrial, scientific and medical equipment — Radio-frequency disturbance characteristics — Limits and methods of measurement
(e) IEC 61800-3	:	Adjustable speed electrical power drive systems - Part 3: EMC requirements and specific test methods

E17.2.3 Particular Specifications to be read in conjunction with this specifications

The following particular specifications shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification:

(a) E04	:	PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION FOR MCC

E17.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

(a) The VSD units shall control asynchronous motors with standard constant torque, variable standard torque or optimized torque.

(b) The VSD units shall be specifically designed to offer extensive flexibility in water and wastewater applications.

(c) The VSD units shall be provided with six programmable, isolated digital inputs (24V DC, positive or negative logic).

(d) VSD units shall have three programmable relay outputs (1 with NO/NC contacts and 2 with NO contacts)

(e) The VSD units shall be provided with 3 programmable analogue inputs (configurable as voltage (0...10 V) or current (0-20 mA/4-20 mA), 2 of them including probes (PTC, PT100, PT1000 or KTY84)).

(f) The VSD units shall have two programmable analog outputs configurable as voltage (0...10 V) or current (0-20 mA).

(g) The VSD units will have the option to extend the I/O with optional modules.

(h) The VSD shall have low-noise motor operation due to high pulse frequencies.

(i) The VSD unit shall have complete protection for motor and inverter.

(j) The VSD units shall comply with the requirements of the EU low-voltage guideline.

(k) The VSD unit shall have the CE marking.

(l) All VSD units shall have the same interface, including a control panel, I/O connections and software, regardless of power rating, voltage or enclosure (IP rating).

(m) All VSD units shall be supplied with an internal Class A filter. The requirements are fulfilled using shielded cables with maximum length of 25m.

(n) The VSD units shall be supplied with line commutating choke in line with EN61 000-3-2 Regulations “Limits for harmonic currents with device input current < =16A per phase”.

(o) The maximum permissible motor cable lengths (shielded/unshielded) for a mains voltage of 400V are 150 m/ 225 m.

(p) The VSD units shall be supplied with integrated category C3 EMC filters.

(q) The VSD units shall be supplied with graphic display terminal for parameterising the inverter, complete with mounting kits for installation in the control cabinet doors.

(r) The unit shall have complete protection for motor and inverter.

(s) The VSD units shall have the following standard communication modules Modbus/TCP, Modbus serial link.

(t) The VSD units shall have the following optional communication modules EtherNet/IP and Modbus/TCP Dual port, ProfiNet, CANopen, Profibus DP V1, DeviceNet, and BACnet MS/TP.

(u) Depending on the power rating and application, the VSD unit should be available as a wall mounted unit, a cabinet integration unit or a floor-standing unit.

(v) **Note**:
Attention shall be given to ventilation to prevent the accumulation of heat in cubicles where power electronic drives (soft starters and VSD’s) or other heat generating equipment (i.e. control transformers) are contained. Extraction ventilation fans should be installed in these cases to remove heat from the cubicle. The filtered extraction fan should be placed as high as possible in the compartment door with a filtered air inlet opening as low as possible in the compartment door. The fan and opening must be sized to ensure all generated heat is extracted from the cubicle. Natural convection cooling will not be accepted. All specific requirements from the VSD OEM must be adhered to.

E17.4 WORKING VOLTAGE AND SUPPLY SYSTEMS

Depending on the power rating and application, the following power supply alternatives shall be available:

i. Single-phase: 200...240 V
ii. Three-phase: 380...480 V

E17.5 ENVIRONMENTAL LIMITS

E17.5.1 Operating Temperature

The VSD must be able to operate in the specified operating temperature without any derating of the specified output power

i. 0... 40 °C as standard
ii. 40...50 °C with derating

E17.5.2 Relative humidity

i. 5...95% without condensing.

E17.5.3 Storage and transport temperature

i. -40…+70 °C

E17.5.4 Operating altitude:

i. 0…1,000 m without derating
ii. 1,000...2,000 m with derating of 1% per 100 m

E17.5.5 Withstand to harsh environments:

i. Chemical class 3C3 conforming to IEC/EN 60721-3-3 (1)
ii. Mechanical class 3S3 conforming to IEC/EN 60721-3-3 (1)
iii. Electronic cards with protective coating

E17.5.6 Ingress Protection:

i. IP 00 for mounting in an enclosure.
ii. IP 20/21/UL type 1 for wall mounting in a plant room and in an enclosure
iii. IP 55 for wall mounting, with protection against dust and water jets
iv. Floor-standing IP 21
v. Floor-standing IP 54, with protection against dust and water jets

E17.6 PROTECTION FUNCTIONS

The following protection functions shall be available:

(a) Under voltage
(b) Overvoltage
(c) Overload
(d) Earth faults
(e) Short-circuits
(f) Stall prevention
(g) Locked motor protection
(h) Motor over temperature
(i) Inverter over temperature parameter change protection.

E17.7 ASSEMBLY METHOD AND PROTECTION CLASS

The VSD units should be available with listed mounting types and IP classes:

(a) Wall-mounting
   i. IP 20/21/UL Type 1 from 0.75 to 315 kW,
   ii. IP 55 from 0.75 to 90 kW.

(b) Floor standing
   i. IP 21 and IP 54 from 110 to 315 kW

(c) Cabinet integration
   i. IP 20 from 0.75 to 90 kW.

E17.8 DOCUMENTATION

Technical details shall be delivered with the offered VSD unit:

User manual, describing systematically how to install, start up, trouble shoot and maintain the VSD. It shall be optionally possible to acquire multiple manuals together with a delivery unit.

Documents to be delivered per order:

a) Dimensional drawings (both AutoCAD and .pdf formats)
b) Customer connections and power wiring diagrams (both AutoCAD and .pdf formats).
c) Power losses and cooling air temperature (both in .xls and .pdf formats).
d) Manufactures statements on output currents available continuously in different ambient temperature up to 50°C. Type of product needed at 50°C continuous operations must be clearly listed.
e) Environmental product declaration according to life cycle assessment (LCA).

E17.9 INSTALLATION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

The contractor will supply a factory test certificate with the VSD unit.

The VSD shall be installed and commissioned by a competent person approved and accredited by the manufacturer. The installer must provide a method statement for transporting, storage, installation, testing and commissioning processes for approval by the engineer.

The installer is required to perform site acceptance tests (SAT) on the VSD witnessed by the employer and the engineer, prior to commissioning the VSD. The contractor will be responsible for the VSD setup, including software configuration and settings. A schedule of the checks, tests and results of the SAT must be available for signing by the engineer at the completion of the SAT. The contractor will provide the final VSD setup and software settings to the Engineer on a USB flash drive.

A thermal imaging record of the VSD shall be taken after the VSD has been in operation for a

minimum one week under typical normal conditions and while running. The thermal imaging record will form part of the deliverable documentation together with Operation and Maintenance Manuals and delivered to the employer on completion of the works.

E17.10 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

VSD units shall not be paid as a separate item in the Bill of Quantities. VSD unit form part of motor starter circuits and payment thereof shall be included in the price/s of motor control centres.

5.3 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M01: H.O.W MECHANICAL SCREENING EQUIPMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5 September 2021

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: Particular Specification – M01: H.O.W MECHANICAL SCREENING EQUIPMENT

JW Reference:

Document Ref. No: M01

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Mechanical Engineer (Hatch)	Mbongiseni Mahlangu, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Reviewed	Project Manager (Hatch)	Johan Prinsloo, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Approved	JW Best Practice Manager	Rendani Davhana	13/06/2022	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2021-09-17	5	J Prinsloo	Detailed Review
2013-10-23	4	J Ritchie	Minor updates and re-issued
2012-07-30	3	T Wellard	General review
2010-02-16	2	J Ritchie	General review
2009-05-12	1		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M01: H.O.W MECHANICAL SCREENING EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M01.1 SCOPE 5

M01.2 INTERPRETATIONS 5
M01.2.1 Definitions 5

M01.3 ABBREVIATIONS 6
M01.3.1 Standards 7
M01.3.2 Other Referenced Particular Specification 8

M01.4 DESIGN OF SCREENS 9
M01.4.1 General Design Parameters 9
M01.4.2 Specific Design Parameters 9
M01.4.3 Head of Works (HoW) Screens Design Parameters 9
M01.4.4 Head of Work (HOW) Screen Isolation 10
M01.4.5 Types of Screens 10

M01.5 COARSE HAND RAKE SCREEN(S) (WHERE APPLICABLE) 11
M01.5.1 Design and Performance Requirements 11
M01.5.2 Coarse Hand Rake Screen Material of Construction 11

M01.6 COARSE HAND RAKE SCREEN(S) IN EMERGENCY BYPASS CHANNELS 11
M01.6.1 Design and Performance Requirements 11
M01.6.2 Coarse Hand Rake Screen in Emergency Bypass Channel Material of Construction 12

M01.7 TRASH RAKE SCREEN(S) 12
M01.7.1 Design and Performance Requirements 12
M01.7.2 Trash Rake Screen in Emergency Bypass Channel Material of Construction 13
M01.7.3 Equipment Design Features 14

M01.8 MECHANICAL (COARSE INCLINED FRONT RAKE BAR) SCREEN(S) 15
M01.8.1 Design and Performance Requirements 15
M01.8.2 Equipment Design Features 16
M01.8.3 Materials of Construction 19

M01.9 FINE PERFORATED SCREEN(S) 19
M01.9.1 Design and Performance Requirements 19
M01.9.2 Materials of Construction 20
M01.9.3 Equipment Design Features 21

M01.10 SCREENINGS CONVEYOR 22
M01.10.1 General Specification 22
M01.10.2 Covered screw type conveyor: 23
M01.10.3 Covered Hydro Conveyors 24

M01.11 SCREW WASHER COMPACTOR 26
M01.11.1 General 26
M01.11.2 Design Parameters 26
M01.11.3 Helical Shaft Screws 27
M01.11.4 Trough 27
M01.11.5 Drive Unit 27
M01.11.6 Screw Wash Compactor Material of Construction 27

M01.12 FASTENERS 28

M01.13 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS 29

M01.14 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE 29
M01.15 CORROSION PROTECTION....29
M01.16 COLOUR CODES 29
M01.17 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE....29
M01.17.1 General 29
M01.17.2 Material Tests 30
M01.17.3 Type Tests....31
M01.17.4 Manufacture....31
M01.17.5 Installation 31
M01.18 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE 31
M01.18.1 Works Testing....31
M01.18.2 Before Commissioning 32
M01.18.3 During Commissioning....32
M01.18.4 Before expiry of the Defects Liability Period....32
M01.18.5 Substandard Quality Control 32
M01.18.6 Access for Surveillance....32
M01.19 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE....32
M01.20 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY 33
M01.21 INTERCHANGEABILITY....33
M01.22 DRAWINGS 33
M01.23 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT....34
M01.23.1 General 34
M01.23.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation....34
M01.23.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment....34
M01.23.4 Trial Operations....35
M01.23.5 Employer's Operator Training....35
M01.23.6 Spares Equipment....35

M01.1 SCOPE

This specification covers detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, off-loading on site installation, testing and commissioning of "trash" screens, inclined coarse mechanical front raked screens, screenings conveyor and screenings screw compactor for the screening of raw sewage incoming to a wastewater treatment works. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification and other relevant Particular Specifications.

M01.2 INTERPRETATIONS

This specification shall be interpreted as follows:

- For the Employer design components, it shall be regarded as a specification.
- For the Contractor design components obligations, it shall be regarded as an Employer's requirements.

M01.2.1 Definitions

For the purpose of this Specification the following definitions apply:

a) "**Manufacture**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, fabrication and assembly, any specified corrosion protection measures and any off-site inspection or testing of materials or parts.

b) "**Supply**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, manufacture and fabrication, any specified corrosion protection measures and all required off-site inspection or testing.

c) "**Installation**" includes, as applicable, all handling and transport from storage, erection and aligning of Works.

d) "**Factory Acceptance Test (FAT)**" shall refer to all tests done on Plant or Plant items at the factory to ensure its functionality

e) "**Screenings**" shall refer to all debris or solid materials removed from the influent raw sewage in a wastewater treatment plant.

f) **"Trash Screen"** shall refer a mechanical screen with a minimum of 100mm bar spacing raked by a mechanical device, which is installed upstream of the coarse mechanical screens to remove large and heavy objects

g) "**Coarse Screen**" shall refer to a bar screen with a 12mm bar screen spacing which can be either mechanically or manually raked installed at an angle sufficient for ease of screening removal.

h) "**Screenfield**" shall refer to the portion of any screen type where screening of wastewater will take place on the effective screening area of the screen.

i) "**Fine Screen**" shall refer to a perforated screen with a screen perforation diameter of 6mm which is driven by a mechanical system to remove the screenings.

M01.3 ABBREVIATIONS

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

°C	: Temperature in degrees Celsius
A	: Ampere
AC	: Alternating Current
AGMA	: American Gear Manufactures Association
ANSI	: American National Standards Institute
API	: American Petroleum Institute
ASCE	: American Society of Civil Engineers
ASME	: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	: American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	: British Standards Institution
BSPT	: British Standard pipe thread
CAD	: Computer Aided Drawing
CAM	: Computer Aided Manufacturing
CIP	: Cleaning in Place
COC	: Certificate of Conformance
Dia	: Diameter
dB(A)	: Sound pressure level, “A” weighed in decibels
DCS	: Distributed Control System
DFT	: Dry Film Thickness
DIN	: Deutsch Industry Normen
DN	: Nominal diameter
DP	: Differential Pressure
Eff.	: Filter efficiency in %
EPDM	: Ethylene Propylène Diène Monomer
ERW	: Electrical resistance weld
ETP	: Effluent Treatment Plant
FA	: Flange adaptor
FAT	: Factory Acceptance Tests
FBE	: Flanged both ends
FOE	: Flanged one end
FW	: Field weld
HDPE	: High Density Polyethylene
HoW	: Head of Works
ID	: Inside diameter
ISO	: International Organisation for Standardization
JW	: Johannesburg Water
ℓ/s	: Flow in litres per second
LV	: Low Voltage
m	: Distance in metre
m.a.s.l	: Metres above (mean) sea level
m/s	: Speed in metres per second
MCC	: Motor Control Centre
mm	: Dimension in millimetres
MPVC	: Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes
MV	: Medium Voltage
N+1	: No of units in operation + 1 installed spare

Nm^3/hr	: Normal cubic meters per hour
O&M	: Operation and Maintenance
OD	: Outside diameter
OHS	: Occupational Health and Safety
Pa	: Pressure in Pascals
PBE	: Plain both ends
PE	: Plain end
PN	: Nominal pressure (Rating)
PPE	: Personal Protective Equipment
PQP	: Project Quality Plan
PSV	: Pressure Safety Valve
QCP	: Quality Control Plan
RFA	: Restrained flange adaptor
rpm	: Rotational speed in revolutions per minute
SAECC	: South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
SANS	: South African National Standards
SAT	: Site Acceptance Tests
SAW	: Submerged arc weld
SCADA	: Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SIS	: Swedish Institute of Standards
SOC	: Slip-on coupling
SS	: Stainless Steel
STP	: Standard Temperature and Pressure (i.e. T = 20°C, P = 101, 3 kPa).
w.t.	: Wall thickness of pipes
TDS	: Total Dissolved Solids
uPVC	: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
VSD	: Variable Speed Drive
WP (B)	: Weld preparation (Butt)

M01.3.1 **Standards**

All design standards for the front raked screen equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications: -

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
(PD 5304:2014)	:	Guidance on safe use of machinery (British Standards Institution)
SANS 9606-1	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS ISO1312-1:2018	:	Rolling bearings. Accessories for sleeve type linear ball bearings. Boundary dimensions, geometrical product specifications (GPS) and tolerances for series 1 and 3 (British Standards Institution)
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 15614-1	:	Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials - Welding procedure test Part 1: Arc and

gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys.

SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-14	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10104	:	Hand railing and balustrading (safety aspects)
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless-steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless-steel fasteners-Nuts
ISO 281	:	Rolling bearings -- Dynamic load ratings and rating life (International Organization for Standardization)
BS 4999	:	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for standard dimensions (British Standards Institution)
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surface (Swedish Standards Institution)

M01.3.2 **Other Referenced Particular Specification**

This particular specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

E03: Particular Specification for Isolator Push Button

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

M16: Particular Specification for Conveyor Equipment

M17: Particular Specification for Actuator equipment

M34: Particular Specification for Sluice Gates, Adjustable Weirs and Hand Stops

Volume 1: Automation and Control Design Standards SCADA

Volume 6: Automation and Control Design Standards Cabling

Volume 9: Automation and Control Design Standards Level Measurement

M01.4 DESIGN OF SCREENS

M01.4.1 General Design Parameters

The Screening equipment shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:-

- To ensure reasonable standards of engineering in design, materials selection and construction processes.
- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,
- Ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 15 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- The offered equipment shall be support in forms of spares by the original equipment manufacturer for at least 15 years in alignment with the specified life expectation of 15 years from project installation.
- The minimum availability of the equipment shall be 99 %;
- Prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes,
- Keep maintenance costs to a minimum that represent the value for money in both the initial purchase and subsequent running costs.
- To comply with the legal such as the Occupational Health & Safety Act no. 85 of 1993 and Regulations requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the latest editions of the published statutory codes and legislation,
- Suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions, and
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise with maximum noise level of 75dBA measured at 1 metre generated from operating the equipment.

M01.4.2 Specific Design Parameters

The screening equipment shall remove the screenings from raw sewage to minimise the subsequent damage to equipment or that may result in unsatisfactory operation of downstream unit processes. This shall be considered as a pre-treatment process.

The influent characteristics received at the Head of Works (HoW) for the particular wastewater treatment works shall be given in the Project Specification.

M01.4.3 Head of Works (HoW) Screens Design Parameters

The design loads of the screenings for the head of works screens shall be based on the influent sewage characteristics at the particular wastewater treatment works.

The average daily screenings production rate is 0.025 m3 of dry screenings per mega litres.

The peak screening production shall be equal to 5 times that of the average daily load.

The inflow channel shall not be divided into more than two channels at any division of a channel to maintain the minimum required inlet flow velocity. No fewer than two

screens shall be in parallel, but the total number of screens shall be based on the influent flow characteristics or in accordance with and the project specification, the screening design shall be subject to approval by the Employer's Agent or employer's Representatives.

M01.4.4 **Head of Work (HOW) Screen Isolation**

The head of works screens are to be supplied with an Isolation gates as referenced in the M34 particular specification upstream and downstream of each screen for ease of isolation.

M01.4.5 **Types of Screens**

The incoming wastewater flow from the main sewer outfall to the Head of Works shall split into channels and screening sections. Refer to the Project Specific plant layout Tender Drawings.

Five (5) Types of bar screens are covered under this particular specification namely: -

1. Coarse Hand Rake Screen(s) (where applicable)

2. Coarse Hand Rake Screen(s) in Emergency Bypass Channels

3. Trash rake screen(s)

4. Coarse Inclined Front Rake Bar Screen(s)s (mechanical screen)

5. Fine or Perforated Screen(s)

NB. Inclined **Back** Rake Screens will not be considered.

M01.5 COARSE HAND RAKE SCREEN(S) (WHERE APPLICABLE)

M01.5.1 Design and Performance Requirements

1. Screenfield bars having a clear spacing between the bars of 100 mm minimum shall be installed at the head of works. with a minimum bar width of 10mm and a minimum depth of 40mm.
2. Manually hand raked screens shall be installed at an inclination of 60°from the horizontal unless otherwise specified in the Project Specification, not more than a convenient raking distance of 2m. A suitable lightweight rake shall be provided with the hand rake screen.
3. The bar screen and framework support shall be designed to withstand forces at peak flow with the screen 100% blinded at the water elevations shown on the Tender drawings.
4. The bar rack screen shall be manufactured from the bar sections with the longer dimension parallel to the flow. Bars shall be offset from the supports by a length sufficient to allow for full penetration of the rake teeth. Bars welded or directly connected to the horizontal supports shall not be acceptable.
5. The screen shall be supplied with a perforated drip tray to which the screenings will deposited into when raked. The drip tray shall allow the conveyance of the screenings into the provided conveyor or skip bag as detailed in the project specification. The drip tray shall be wide enough to be able to accommodate the screening production from each screen.

M01.5.2 Coarse Hand Rake Screen Material of Construction

Coarse Hand Rake Screen components shall be constructed of the material specified in the following Table 5-1:

Table 5-1 Coarse Hand Rake Screen Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Bar Screen	304 L stainless steel
Support frame, walkways and handrails	304 L stainless steel
Drip tray (If Not Concrete Design)	304 L stainless steel
Rake	Aluminium

M01.6 COARSE HAND RAKE SCREEN(S) IN EMERGENCY BYPASS CHANNELS

M01.6.1 Design and Performance Requirements

1. Screenfield bars having a clear spacing between the bars of 100 mm minimum shall be installed at the head of works. with a minimum bar width of 10mm and a minimum depth of 40mm.
2. Manually hand raked screens shall be installed at an inclination of 60° from the horizontal unless otherwise specified in the Project Specification, not more than a convenient raking distance of 2m. A suitable lightweight rake shall be provided with the hand rake screen.
3. The bar screen and framework support shall be designed to withstand forces at peak flow with the screen 100% blinded at the water elevations shown on the Tender drawings.
4. The bar rack screen shall be manufactured from the bar sections with the longer dimension parallel to the flow. Bars shall be offset from the supports by a length sufficient to allow for full penetration of the rake teeth. Bars welded or

directly connected to the horizontal supports shall not be acceptable.

5. The screen shall be supplied with a perforated drip tray to which the screenings will deposited into when raked. The drip tray shall allow the conveyance of the screenings into the provided conveyor or skip bag as detailed in the project specification. The drip tray shall be wide enough to be able to accommodate the screening production from each screen.

M01.6.2 **Coarse Hand Rake Screen in Emergency Bypass Channel <u>Material of Construction</u>**

Coarse Hand Rake Screen in the Emergency Bypass Channel components shall be constructed of the material specified in the following Table 6-1:

Table 6-1 Coarse Hand Rake Screen in Emergency Bypass Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Bar Screen	304 L stainless steel
Support frame, walkways and handrails	304 L stainless steel
Drip tray (If Not Concrete Design)	304 L stainless steel
Rake	Aluminium

M01.7 TRASH RAKE SCREEN(S)

M01.7.1 **Design and Performance Requirements**

1. Screenfield bars having a clear spacing between the bars of minimum 100 mm shall be installed at the head of works.
2. The trash screens with a rake mechanism shall be installed at an inclination between 60° and 80° from the horizontal.
3. The screening installation shall comprise trash screens and with a corresponding number of overhead rake cleaning mechanisms typically on a duty and standby as a minimum. The cleaning mechanism will clean the trash screens and deposit the screenings into a skip positioned adjacent to the trash rake screening channels. The screen layout and design shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent / Representative.
4. The raking mechanism shall not rake or collect wastewater together with the screenings into the skip bins. There shall be a drying area allowing the draining of screening before discharge into the skip bins. The drying area shall avoid the attraction of vectors by means of covering the screenings or odour control.
5. The trash screen field shall be removable for maintenance purposes under operating conditions and also under a blocked screen scenario.
6. Equipment shall be suitable for automatic and manual operation in raw sewage and shall be designed and arranged to remove trash, plastic bags, branches, tires and other debris from multiple bar screens, transport it to and discharge into the designated discharge area.
7. The Trash Rake System shall primarily consist of an overhead rail type track, a traversing carriage and a raking unit. The carriage shall travel along an overhead track until the desired section of the bar rack has been reached. The rake shall then be lowered to engage and penetrate the bar rack for debris removal to just above invert elevation. The rake shall then be closed, raised and debris transported to the designated discharge area.
8. The overhead track shall be fabricated as I-beam, which is the track for the traversing trolleys and the support the festoon system. The track shall be supported by steel support columns located where shown on plan or as

determined by the contractor to the approval of The Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative

9. The rake carriage unit shall contain the traversing trolleys with motor(s), hoisting gear motor(s) and a hydraulic power unit. Two trolleys mounted on top of the carriage shall traverse the carriage. The hoisting system shall consist of spirally grooved rope drums mounted on a common shaft within the carriage to raise and lower the rake. A geared motor unit shall drive the hoist shaft with brake. Electrical power to the carriage shall be supplied by a festooning system.
10. Gripper Trash Rake shall be designed to be operated both manually by an operator and automatically without an operator. The rake shall be lowered to engage and penetrate the bar rack for debris removal to just above invert elevation. The rake shall then be closed, raised and debris discharged to the appropriate discharge area. Trash rack cleaning must be possible up to the maximum clogged trash rack head differential at maximum flow.
11. The rake cleaner frame shall be rigid and dimensioned to carry the load of the hoist machinery and the maximum rake load.
12. The rake cleaning frame shall contain the electrically operated hoisting and lowering gear motor. The hoisting system shall consist of spirally grooved rope drums mounted on a common shaft within the carriage to raise and lower the rake. The hoist shaft shall be driven by a geared motor unit with brake.
13. The hoisting gear shall incorporate a power monitor to protect the motor if the rake becomes jammed by an obstruction on rising. A "slack rope" device shall be provided to operate a cut-out to stop the motor should the rake jam when lowering. Lowering the rake shall be accomplished by running the hoist motor in reverse, and limit switches shall be provided to limit upward and downward travel. An electromechanical brake shall be incorporated in the hoist gear to prevent movement of the rake immediately should the hoist motor stop or electricity supply fails.
14. The rake grab shall be supported by wire ropes and shall consist of a series of teeth designed to engage with the bar rack and shall be opened and closed by hydraulic cylinders. The rake head shall be prevented from excessive lateral swaying when traversing motion stops by a swing restrictor.
15. Each trash rake bar screen shall be front cleaned by one trash rake cleaning mechanism with stationary teeth/bars designed to penetrate the static bar field while descending from the overhead monorail mounted operating mechanism. A wire rope operated gripper assembly shall close over the collected debris for transportation back to surface and monorail to the designated discharge area into the screening skip.
16. Trash Rack screens shall be designed and constructed in accordance with the plant specific channel configuration requirements and the influent level in the channel.

•

M01.7.2 **Trash Rake Screen in Emergency Bypass Channel Material of Construction**

Trash Rake Screen components shall be constructed of the material specified in the following Table 6-1:

Table 7-1 Trash Rake Screen Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
All wetted parts	304 L stainless steel
Trash Bar screen	304 L stainless steel
Gripper or rake	304 L stainless steel
Bar Rack	304 L stainless steel
Drum	304 L stainless steel

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Trolleys	304 L stainless steel
Monorail and Support columns	stainless steel
Wire or slack robe	316 stainless steel
Guards or Covers	304 L stainless steel
Un wetted Fasteners	304 L stainless steel

M01.7.3 **Equipment Design Features**

M01.7.3.1. Screen Construction

- The bar screen is to be supplied by the same supplier as the gripper rake assembly. The bar screen and framework support shall be designed to withstand forces at peak flow with the screen 100% blinded at the water elevations shown on the Tender drawings.
- The bar rack screen shall be manufactured from the bar sections with the longer dimension parallel to the flow. Bars shall be offset from the supports by a length sufficient to allow for full penetration of the rake teeth. Bars welded or directly connected to the horizontal supports shall not be acceptable.

M01.7.3.2. Screen Rake and Gripper Assembly (Where Applicable)

- The gripper shall be manufactured with teeth spaced to match the openings in the bar screens. The gripper shall operate by being traversed over the required section of the bar screen during a cleaning cycle. The gripper shall be in the open position when being lowered.
- The rake rear teeth shall normally engage with the bar screen above the maximum high-water elevation pushing the debris to the channel invert. Teeth shall automatically engage and self-centre between the bars during the descent.
- The rake and gripper assembly will ride on non-metallic, non-lubricated wheels and guide the rake along guide channels while ascending and descending.
- The rake rear teeth shall be capable of passing all the way through the bar screen without interference from the bar screen horizontal supports. The gripper shall continue to be lowered until it reaches the invert elevation (or an immobile object). The gripper mechanism shall close, trapping the collected debris for removal.
- The gripper shall be closed under hydraulic power by controls above deck level when the invert has been reached (or at any time under manual control). The hydraulic cylinders shall be suitable for submerged service.
- When closing, the upstream teeth of the gripper shall be rotated towards the rear teeth and close in conjunction with the rear teeth to remove and lift objects or debris build up wider than the bar screen opening and within the lifting capacity of the hoist.
- With the gripper in the closed position, the front teeth shall form an “overbite” past the rear teeth. During the hoist raising operation, the “overbite” shall penetrate the screen bars to prevent heavy build-up of debris. Designs employing pivoting rear or lower teeth shall not be allowed.

M01.7.3.3. Trolley Assembly (Where Applicable)

- Trolley assembly shall contain all the necessary traversing and hoisting equipment to support and move the Rake and Gripper assembly. This includes the traversing drive and wheels, hydraulic power unit, hoisting drive, hoist drums, hoist cable, hydraulic hoses with spring tensioned hose reel, slack cable tension roller with limit switches, hoist raising and lowering limit sensors, over-travel limit switches

and position sensors for automatic operation.

- Each trolley shall include four wheels. Two of the wheels shall be driven by rack-wheel, fitted to the gearbox on one side. Each shall be independently driven and shall have their own gearbox and brake motor. The trolley drives shall be controlled via VSD's allowing the speed to be adjusted with the increasing influent flows.
- The hydraulic power pack shall provide for the operation of the hydraulic cylinders which open/close the gripper. Designs which utilize mechanical closing rakes shall not be allowed. Fluid power shall be transferred to cylinders through high strength hoses which are to be wound on spring tensioned drum(s) operating in sequence with hoisting drums. The hoses shall be located downstream of the hoisting cables for protection. The hydraulic fluid shall be biodegradable for environmental concerns.
- Electrical power to the trolley unit shall be supplied by a trailing cable which power and control leads supported on cable wagons inside the track or other festooning method acceptable to the gripper.

M01.7.3.4. Support Structure

- The track (monorail) support columns shall be manufactured from carbon steel that is hot dipped galvanized. The columns shall be adequately sized to support the track, spaced as indicated on the drawings and sized to withstand the conditions that will be experienced during operation. The columns shall be "U" shaped or "L" shaped with heavy flanged feet for fixing to the deck level or other location. The feet shall be anchored via properly sized anchor bolts supplied by the grab rake supplier and grouted in place by the contractor.
- Steel supports columns and monorail shall be corrosion proteceted after fabrication and welding (no fabrication and / or welding shall be allowed post corrosion protection).

M01.7.3.5. Guards

The trolley movement area shall be protected in accordance with Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993. .

M01.8 MECHANICAL (COARSE INCLINED FRONT RAKE BAR) SCREEN(S)

M01.8.1 Design and Performance Requirements

1. The screenfield bars shall be accurately set and secured to give the clear spacing between the bars of 12 mm. The screen bars shall be manufactured from bars that have a tapered cross section.
2. The maximum velocity through the screenfield openings shall be 1.2 m/s.
3. The minimum approach velocity shall be 0.6 m/s. The screen shall be set in the channel at between 60° and 85° from the horizontal. with a maximum allowable headloss of 150mm.
4. The individual bars (or screenfield) shall welded into position and shall extend from the sole plate and shall extend to at least 200 mm above the maximum flow depth within the channel as indicated on the drawings. The bars shall be fitted with laser cut spacer plates that shall allow for easy removal in the event of damage to the spacer plates.
5. The screen shall be front raked and the rake shall operate by means of a suitably designed lifting device, the entire driving device shall be installed above the channel coping level.
6. The screen frame, superstructure and operating components above channel coping level shall be completely clad in 304L stainless steel panels which shall be removable for maintenance and repair purposes. Screens discharge chute and conveyors shall be provided with sufficient wind deflection shielding to prevent light screening's (e.g. paper and plastic) from being blown off the when

transferred.

7. Approach velocities shall be not more than 0.9 m/s at peak hourly flow rate and not less than 0.6 m/s at average dry weather flow. Should grit removal chambers follow the bar screens then the minimum velocity shall be greater than 0.6 m/s. These requirements shall be met in the design and detailing of the civil structures.
8. The Tenderer shall submit full details regarding the plant offered by him and shall submit full details of the requirements for fitting the units into the civil structure including all necessary illustrations, drawings and pamphlets, etc. The Tenderer shall submit with his tender complete references of clients who have installed screens identical to that offered by the Tenderer.

M01.8.2 **Equipment Design Features**

M01.8.2.1. Housing

The screen housing shall be manufactured from 304 stainless steel, with a minimum thickness of 4.5 mm and shall be recessed to accommodate the scraping mechanism, chain guides and idler sprockets in order to maintain the screening of the full channel width and depth shall be provided. The screen housing shall be fitted with a rubber skirt and stainless-steel diversion plates, to accommodate the total channel width not covered by the screen field. The diversion plates shall keep away any screenings that might settle on this region. Furthermore, the screenfield shall be selected based on the channel size requirements to which it will be installed in order to minimize the space between the screenfield support and the channel wall. The covers shall be hinged on both end and lockable in the middle.

M01.8.2.2. Access

The screens shall be provided with suitably designed 304 stainless steel hand railings and deck gratings which shall provide access to the screens for repair and maintenance. The screening channel shall be provided with electrically actuated channel gates manufactured from 304 L stainless steel on either side of the screen to facilitate the maintenance and the repair thereof.

M01.8.2.3. Sole Plate

The screening field shall be provided with a sole plate designed such and profiled as to induce the accumulation of debris material at the lower portion of the screen for effective removal. The leading edge of the sole plate shall be installed at the invert level of the receiving channel.

M01.8.2.4. Rake System

The screen design shall be based on continuous operation. The screen shall be periodically raked by a mechanized rake system which shall be controlled by the differential water level and timing devices or by continuous operation. Thus, the level upstream of the screen and shall be monitored by level instrumentation which shall be selected with reference to the Johannesburg Water (SOC) LTD Control & Instrumentation Particular specification; Volume 6 & 9: Automation and Control Design Standards SCADA and Level Measurement.

A scraper cleaning mechanism at the top of the travelling rake shall remove the screenings collected by the rakes and discharge onto a discharge chute without any screenings remaining. The moving rakes shall be suspended between two side chains, which shall be driven through a head shaft and sprocket.

The rakes shall be bolted with counter sunk bolts to the main comb frame for ease of removal when necessary.

M01.8.2.5. Screen Scraper

The scraper cleaning mechanism shall be positioned at the discharge chute area and shall comprise of a single UHDPE blade positioned above the upper edge of the screening retention plate which is activated as the rakes rotate. The blade shall be positioned so that it efficiently cleans the full width of each screen rake.

Scraper arms shall be attached to the side frame and designed to pivot so as to allow efficient cleaning of each rake as it passes. The bearing for the scraper arm shall be self-lubricating polypropylene. The discharge height of the rake mechanism and the discharge chute shall be sufficient to allow free and unhindered discharge to the conveyor.

M01.8.2.6. Discharge Chute

Screenings shall be removed from the rakes and dropped onto the discharge chute.

The discharge chute shall be manufactured from 304 L SS, shall at least be the length of the screen and shall be positioned such that the screenings are deposited into the screenings conveyor without spillage of any of the screenings. The discharge chute shall be hinged for easy maintenance and operation.

The discharge chute of the screen shall be able to rotate at least 90degrees away from the conveyor centre in order to allow the screening operation to continue in cases, where the conveyor is out of service.

M01.8.2.7. Drive Units

Refer to Particular Specification M08: Mechanical Gearboxes for a detailed specification on gearboxes. Also refer to Particular Specification and E01 for a detailed specification for the Electric Motors.

A torque arm shall be attached to the drive unit to accommodate vertical adjustment. A facility shall be incorporated within the drive mechanism, to enable the drive chains to be correctly tensioned, and the combs to be accurately positioned across the screen field face. The design shall ensure that the chain drive is selected with due consideration to the class of work, length of the chain and the position of the drive, effective safety factor shall be provided for the working chain tension and the bearing pressure to ensure the useful life expectancy of 15 years is attainable.

This adjustment shall be possible without the dismantling of any part of the screen frame and without the necessity for any special tools. The comb teeth shall make an approximate angle of 5° to the plane of the screen field when engaged.

The geared motor and moving comb system shall be protected from damage caused by jamming, by means of an Intelligent Motor Protection Relay type device with built in phase angle protection. As a backup device a torque overload coupling with a proximity shall be provided. The limit switch must have at least one SPDT contact or one normally open and one normally closed contact capable of switching at least 500mA at 230 Volts AC. The limit switch protection shall be minimum of IP 67. The motor and gears shall be correctly sized to avoid over stressing of parts. A facility for reversing the rake drive back to a stationery park position must be provided.

M01.8.2.8. Bearings

All bearings shall be enclosed in a watertight assembly suitable for and shall be design to continuously exposed to moisture. The bearing shall have an L-10 rating life of 100 000 hours while operating at maximum load. Internal bearing parts shall be

completely sealed from outside contamination. The bearing shall be accessible for maintenance without dismantling the entire screen mechanism.

M01.8.2.9. Screen Rake Control

The operation of the screen raking mechanism shall be automatically controlled by the upstream water level and shall be timer controlled incorporating; variable time between activation and variable operation duration. An override for continuous operation based on a maximum water level within the inlet structure shall be included. The automatic controls of the raking mechanism shall be supported by a manual override. The timing devices shall be supplied and installed by others.

M01.8.2.10. Channel Parameters

The channel preceding and immediately following the screen shall be shaped and sloped to eliminate the deposition of solids and permit draining of the channel. The channel shall be constructed by the Civil Contractor.

The Contractor shall be responsible for providing the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and the Civil Contractor with information regarding the civil requirements of their screening equipment on a timeous basis. This is to allow the Civil design to incorporate the necessary structures or changes to accommodate the installation of the equipment.

M01.8.2.11. Chains and Sprockets

The chain type shall be pin bush link type chain. The chain connecting the comb frames are to have vesconite rollers and 304L SS side plates and pins.

Preference will be given to a chain turn about track arrangement instead of bottom sprockets below water level. Chain links shall be straight line design and any oval shape design shall not be acceptable.

M01.8.2.12. Welds

All welds are to be in accordance with SANS 15614-1.

M01.8.2.13. Control Process

The screens shall be automatically controlled, based on:

- Timer controlled operation of the screen raking mechanism with a variable time between activation of the raking mechanism and variable duration of operation of the raking mechanism
- Override for continuous operation of the raking mechanism based on a water level in the inlet channel
- The activation of the raking mechanism shall be fitted with a manual override with "inching" facility in both the forward and reverse directions
- The screen control settings must be adjustable from the SCADA.

M01.8.3 **Materials of Construction**

Coarse Inclined Front Rake Screen components shall be constructed of the material specified in the following Table 6-1:

Table 8-1 Coarse Inclined Front Rake Screen Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Screen frame or Housing	304 L stainless steel
Discharge Chute	304 L stainless steel
Access platforms and handrails	304 L stainless steel
Screening Elements	304 L stainless steel
Screen rake	304 L stainless steel
Heavy-duty Drive Links and sprockets	304 L stainless steel
Screen scrapper (wearing part or squeegees)	UHDPE
Chain Pins	304 L stainless steel
rollers	Vesconite (Material Detail)
Resting Pads	UHMW-PE
Monorail and Support columns	stainless steel
Screening element	304 with UHMW-PE wear surface
Fasteners	316 stainless steel
All other accessories shall be of manufacturer's standard coated material.	

M01.9 FINE PERFORATED SCREEN(S)

M01.9.1 **Design and Performance Requirements**

- Fine screens of 6mm perforated type shall be installed downstream of the coarse screen.
- The minimum approach velocity shall be 0.6 m/s. Should grit removal chambers follow the bar screens then the minimum velocity shall be greater than 0.6 m/s. These requirements shall be met in the design and detailing of the civil structures.
- Solids will collect on a continuous belt of perforated filter panels perpendicular to the flow, elevating solids to the discharge point. The perforated filter panels shall be cleaned by means of an automatic adjusting rotating cleaner brush.
- The perforated filter panels shall be driven by drive sprockets secured to the main drive shaft.
- The Tenderer shall provide the spray water flow and pressure requirements for the screens offered as per the OEM recommendation and submit to the Employer Agent's or Representative for acceptance before procurement. Manual Isolation or control of the feed flow shall be allowed for and additionally consider a mechanical means of measurement.
- The minimum screening capture rate shall be 80% for the screens and must be confirmed by an independent testing authority. The documented report of the test which shows the result of screenings capture rate (SCR) must be provided with datasheets.
- The screen shall be designed to provide maximum solids filtration and thus maximize capture of debris and minimize rate of head loss increase through the screen. This shall be achieved by means of one piece perforated curved filter elements. The screen will be operated continuously by means of level

measurement upstream of the screen by means of a timer.

- The screen shall be mounted by fastening to the top of the channel. The screen mounting system shall be constructed in 304L stainless steel complete as required to function in accordance with the specification. The mounting system should be designed to allow easy dismantling to facilitate installation and removal of the screen.
- Routine service, repair or replacement of damaged parts, shall be possible with the screen installed in the channel.
- The use of roller chain, filter shafts and rollers and/or two or more motors for screen band rotation is not acceptable.
- The screen shall be designed so that maintenance of the drive mechanism can be accomplished at operating floor level. Screen elements shall be capable of removal at the operating level without taking the screens out of the channel or effecting the continuous or intermittent rotation of the screen.
- The screen shall be factory assembled and tested prior to delivery and shall be delivered to the site fully assembled (other than the motor/reducer unit, discharge chute, and support legs). It shall be capable of being set in place and field erected by the contractor with minimal field assembly.
- The screen shall be fitted with a rotating deflector to prevent bypassing of solids into the downstream channel, driven from the screen drive via a drive chain.
- All components shall be amply proportioned for all stresses that may occur during manufacturing, transportation, erection, and operation.

M01.9.2 **Materials of Construction**

All moving wetted parts, all wetted parts on which moving parts ride, all filter belt components under guiding, bearing, or driving loads shall be 316 stainless steel, wear resistant heat treated, high tensile, wear resistant steel, or UHMW-PE as detailed below:

Fine Inclined Perforated Screen components shall be constructed of the material specified in the following Table 6-1:

Table 9-1 Fine Inclined Perforated Screen Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Screen frame or Housing or covers	304 L stainless steel
Discharge Chute	304 L stainless steel
Access platforms and handrails	304 L stainless steel
Screen and brush drive shafts	304 L stainless steel
Screen rake	304 L stainless steel
Screening elements	304 L stainless steel
Heavy-duty Drive Links and sprockets	304 stainless steel
Seals	UHMW-PE
Screening element support rails	304 with UHMW-PE wear surface
Fasteners	316 stainless steel
Spray bars	304 stainless steel
All other accessories shall be of manufacturer's standard coated material.	

M01.9.3 **Equipment Design Features**

M01.9.3.1. Filter Screen Elements

- The one-piece curved screening elements shall be fixed by fasteners to the heavy-duty drive links. On every tenth screen panel a set of static, non-engaging 'finger' type lifters shall be attached to the lower edge of the panel, designed specifically to lift spherical and large size solids (stones, square lumber cans, bottles, rag clumps, etc…) from the bottom of the channel. Screens that use lifting ledge on top of the panel thereby preventing the removal of solids from the bottom of the channel floor will not be acceptable. To prevent metal to metal wear and bearing damage no submerged roller bearing wheels and spindles will be allowed as well as bearings that require lubrication. Screens which do not support the drive chains on the downstream side will not be acceptable.
- A submerged curved stainless-steel plate shall be provided at the base of the screen. The base of the screen shall be fitted with a rubber seal directly followed by a nylon brush along the full length of the filter panel to prevent ingress of stones and grit and to prevent solids bypass.
- To prevent deflection, the one-piece filter elements shall be made of curved stainless steel. This is required to ensure structural integrity and smooth operation. engaging tines, fingers or engaging elements, which can bind or jam, will not be acceptable.
- The screening elements are to be of the engineered curved shaped so that they can be cleaned with optimum efficiency with an automatic adjusting rotating cleaner brush. Minimum diameter of rotating cleaner brush is 450 mm. The rotation direction of the brush drive must be in the opposite direction of the belt drive.
- The screening elements must be sealed against the frame by means of special knuckle joint side plates attached to each perforated plate filter element. Side plates must be made in Stainless steel type 304L. Simple brush systems are not acceptable. This is to ensure that small items are not floated past the sides of the screening elements.

M01.9.3.2. Filter Screen Panels

- The screen filtration belt shall be provided with one piece perforated curved elements, which limits the maximum opening in any direction to the perforated opening size. This restricted opening profile prevents long thin materials from passing through the openings. Filter panels that are not curved shall not be acceptable. Filter panels with a flat face inclined and a horizontal ledge shall not be acceptable.
- Cleaning device that causes screenings to be pushed or dropped into the interior of the filtration belt will not be acceptable.
- The individual screening elements must not exert stresses on one-another, and the load transmission must be exclusively via chains. Systems which involve connecting the screen elements together with other or additional attachments are therefore not acceptable because of stressing. Furthermore, the elements must not be able to overlap one another, which would create spaces in which material could collect.

M01.9.3.3. Screen Drive Mechanism

- Motor: 400 V, 3 Phase, 50 Hz. Overload protection shall be provided by a true power monitor electrical overload device that senses the motor power factor.
- Gear Reducer:
  - Helical Worm type.
  - Hollow, shaft mounting.
- Chain shall be heavy-duty block chain, which is supported outside the frame by UHMW-PE, a hardwearing, high lubricity synthetic material. Breaking load of the chain shall be a minimum 90 kN.
- Chain shall have no rollers.

- Chain shall have no metal to metal wear associated with running roller chain in the screen frame.
- All drive components shall be designed to operate the screen continuously under a calculated load resulting from the differential water level between the upstream and downstream sides of the screen.

M01.9.3.4. Brush Drive Mechanism

- Motor: 380 V, 3 Phase, 50 Hz
- Gear Reducer:
  - Helical Worm type.
  - Hollow, shaft mounting.
- Rotating Deflector Drive Mechanism:
  - The rotating deflector shall be driven from the screen drive via a drive chain.
  - Screens that require a third motor for the rotary deflector shall not be acceptable.
  - The brush mechanism shall automatically adjust with reference to wear to ensure constant brushing efficiency.

M01.9.3.5. Discharge Chute/Hood

- A discharge chute/hood shall be provided that fully encloses the discharge section of the screen. The upper section of the discharge chute/hood shall be hinged to allow complete access to the screen cleaner brush. The hinged hood shall be secured with quick closing clamps and supplied with two (2) gas cylinders to aid opening and closing.
- Discharge chute shall be manufactured from stainless steel type 304L
- Each screen discharge chute/hood shall direct screenings directly to the hydro-conveyor designed to match the screenings hydro-conveyor with no water leaking or screenings dropping to the floor.

M01.9.3.6. Frame Enclosures / Covers

- The screen shall be provided with hinged covers.
- Covers shall be provided on the upstream and downstream portion of the screen above the operating floor.

M01.10 SCREENINGS CONVEYOR

Three Types of conveyors shall be covered under this particular specification namely:

- Covered screw type conveyor
- Covered Hydro type conveyor
- Belt conveyor type. Refer to M16: Particular Specification for Conveyor Equipment

M01.10.1 General Specification

- The screenings from the screening equipment will be discharged onto a transfer conveyor as per the installation layout shown in the Tender drawings.
- Screenings that are conveyed will be deposited in the feed hoppers of the duty washer/compactor unit.
- Dewatered screenings will be deposited into a skip that will be mounted on a motorized dolly to facilitate positioning of the skips for loading/unloading.

M01.10.2 **Covered screw type conveyor:**

M01.10.2.1. Design Parameters

- The design of the screw conveyor shall be of a spiral design enclosed in U-trough with the top closed with sectional hinged covers installed at an inclination that will allow the ease of flow of the screenings into the wash/screw compactor hopper unit or a collection skip. The diameter of the spiral screw shall be a minimum of 310mm. The U-trough shall be design and sized to facilitate the movement of the screw and conveyance of the screenings.
- The screening inlet or collection point shall have a hopper design along with the screens discharge chute to facilitate the ease of screenings deposit into the screw conveyor.
- The covers shall be manufactured from clear plastic which is UV resistance and hinged for easy inspection of the screw.
- A relatively low friction liner around the inside peripheral section of the U-trough shall be installed and secured. This shall be made from a minimum 10 mm UHDPE liner, alternative material offers can be provided but will be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.
- The screw unit shall be manufactured from carbon steel which is as the per corrosion specification G01.
- Any drainage, spillage and wash water from the conveyor must be returned to the influent sewer upstream of the screens.
- The geared motor and moving comb system shall be protected from damage caused by jamming, by means of an Intelligent Motor Protection Relay type device with built in phase angle protection. As a backup device a torque overload coupling with a limit switch shall be provided. The limit switch must have at least one SPDT contact or one normally open and one normally closed contact capable of switching at least 500mA at 230 Volts AC. The motor and gears shall be correctly sized to avoid over stressing of parts.
- Refer to Particular Specification M08: Mechanical Gearboxes for a detailed specification on gearboxes and to Particular Specification E01 Electrical Motors for a detailed specification for the Electric Motors.
- The size of the screw, gearbox and motor shall be selected based on the plant specific screens production rate.
- Lower bearings shall be enclosed in a watertight assembly suitable for submerged operation in grit service. The bearing shall have an L-10 rating life of 100 000 hours while operating at maximum load. Internal bearing parts shall be completely sealed from outside contamination
- The spiral screw flights shall have easily replaceable bearing shoes on the leading edge which shall support the screw through the trough and keep drain holes clean.
- The bearings shall be designed to withstand the thrust forces imposed. The screw shall operate at a maximum speed of 10 rpm
- The bearing design shall make provision for self-alignment and allowance for axial movement of the shafts. Bearings for the lower stub shaft shall be designed to withstand bending, down pull, thermal expansion and radial loads imposed under 100% loading. The bearing can be provided as seal for life bearing or continuous lubricated bearing. Continuous lubricated bearing shall be preferable grease lubricated. Selection and design of screw bearing shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative.
- The screw shaft shall be seamless and continuous. Where not practically possible to supply a continuous screw shaft. A multi-screw shaft(s) may be offered, the Contractor shall submit the full design of the screw shaft to the Employer's Agent or Representative for acceptance. The shaft shall not be jointed on maximum deflection. On sections where there is less deflection or bending.

M01.10.2.2. Covered screw type conveyor Material of Construction

Covered screw type conveyor components shall be constructed of the material specified in Table 10-1 below with a minimum thickness of 3mm.:

Table 10-1 Covered screw type conveyor Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
U-trough frame	304 L stainless steel
U-trough Liner	UHDPE
Covers	Clear Plastic (UV protected)
Screw unit	Epoxy coated Carbon steel

M01.10.3 **Covered Hydro Conveyors**

M01.10.3.1. Design Parameters

- The selection and use of the hydro-conveyor shall be selected based on the screening production in the specific plant of installation.
- The hydro conveyor shall be design for continuous operation.
- The hydro-conveyor shall only utilise plant wash water from the final effluent streams which can contain up to 30 mg/l solids and chlorinated. Therefore, it is expected as part of this contract to screen the washwater before being used in this system by means on strainers. A secondary alternative, the hydro-conveyor medium can be the degritter wastewater supplied by a submersible pump. The use of the secondary medium shall be by-pass on solid sensitive inline equipment. The plant washwater for the hydro-conveyor shall be temporarily stored in a suitably sized tank, acting as a retention tank. This storage facility shall ensure adequate supply of wash water based on the required flowrate is achieve for a reasonable time of at least 8 hours.
- The hydro-conveyor shall be of a U-trough design i.e. straight sides and a curved bottom (flat bottom conveyor will not be acceptable) with a minimum radius of 200mm installed at an inclination that will allow the ease of flow of the screenings into the wash/screw compactor hopper unit.
- The top of the U-trough shall be covered (if Specified by the Project Specification) with sectional hinged access covers and opening handles installed at least on 1 metre intervals and on bends. The bends of the hydro-conveyor shall be long radius bends in order to avoid blockages.
- The hydro-conveyor shall have collection hoppers that will allow the screenings from the discharge chute of the screen to be dropped at the centre of the hydro-conveyor. The hydro conveyor hopper and the washer compactor receiver shall overlap to ensure no spillage.
- The detailed design of the hydro conveyor will be prepared by the contractor including the support legs which shall be submitted to the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative for approval prior to manufacture. A typical layout of the hydro conveyor indicated on the tender drawings with regards to

the screening equipment and channel arrangement.

- The hydro conveyor shall be designed to handle the maximum loading screening and wash water loading selected base on the plant specific screen production rate and the no. of screening inlet/collection points
- The Wash water for the bar screens and washer/compactors will be supplied via the wash water pumps specified in the project specification. The wash water pressure shall have minimum pressure of 4 bar with a minimum injection flowrate that is be sized based on the screening feed requirements and any other variable required for effective operation of the conveyor. The injection flowrate shall be specified in the Project specification.
- The wash water supply shall have one main inlet at the beginning of the hydro-conveyor with a minimum diameter of 32mm. Higher diameters will be selected based on the loading conditions. There shall be an isolation ball valve on the wash water supply line prior to the inlet to the conveyor.
- At each screenings inlet or collection point there shall be spray nozzles directed such that they are able to wash away the screenings. Furthermore, there shall be additional spray nozzles on bends. Before each spray nozzles, there shall be a manual isolation valve.
- The hydro conveyor will incorporate an electric actuated “plug” for isolating the opening in the first (duty) washer compactor unit so that screenings can be transported onto the second (standby) washer compactor.
- The design of the water channel into the washer compactor shall be such that the flow of water is minimised by provision of screens and separation before the compactor i.e. perforated section before the washer compactor.
- There shall be an elevated platform along one side of the conveyor to allow access for operation and maintenance.
- The conveyor trough shall be sufficiently designed and supported to allow an operator to stand-on it.

M01.10.3.2. Covered Hydro conveyors Material of Construction

Covered Hydro conveyors components shall be constructed of the material specified in the following Table 10-2 below with a minimum thickness of 4.5mm.:

Table 10-2 Covered Hydro type conveyor Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Hydro-Conveyor Covers	Clear Plastic (UV Protected)
Collection Hoppers and Trough	304 L Stainless Steel
Opening Handles	304 L Stainless Steel
Support Structures	304 L Stainless Steel
Wash Water & Drainage Pipework	304 L Stainless Steel

M01.11 SCREW WASHER COMPACTOR

M01.11.1 General

A screw washer compactor shall be included if specified in the Project Specification to wash organics out of the screenings and to remove excess liquid from the screenings collected. The screenings removed from the screens shall be transported by a conveyor system to the compactor. After being washed and dewatered the screenings shall be discharge into receiving bin for the disposal thereof. The wash water from the washer compactor shall be routed to the inlet channel upstream of the screens via a suitably sized drainpipe. The screw compactor and bin shall be located within a bunded area in which spillage from the equipment shall be collected and returned to the inlet channel upstream of the screens.

Where specified in the project specification, the contractor shall supply the trolley and the hand / or electrically operated winches for handling of the bin.

The compactor shall accommodate feed from a number of conveyed sources.

M01.11.2 Design Parameters

The screw compactor shall consist of a washing zone, drainage zone, an inlet zone, a conveying zone and a compacting zone.

The design of the screw compactor shall be such that the extruded product shall have a moisture reduction of 70% minimum, a weight reduction of at least 65% and a volume reduction of no less than 70%. The screw compactor frame shall be manufactured from 304 L stainless steel.

The screenings shall enter the inlet hopper where it is washed and then transported and compressed by the screw and discharged. As the screenings are compressed, the liquid drains out of the holes in the bottom of the pan and discharges back into the inlet channel upstream of the screens.

Provision for bi-directional rotation of the screw compactor shall be made in order to remove any blockages that may occur. Access to the operation of this feature shall be by means of a key switch located locally in the field. A separate panel shall be provided to accommodate the relevant field control equipment. The materials used for the manufacturing of this field station shall conform to the requirements of the E03: Particular Specification for Isolator Push Button.

A high-pressure wash water spray system to wash the screenings shall be provided at the inlet Zone.

Inlet Zone

The inlet zone shall be designed to suit an inlet chute. The inlet chute shall have a minimum area of 0.4 m^2.

Drainage Zone

The drainage zone at the feed end of the compactor permits the drainage of free water. The drainage zone shall be a minimum length of 200 mm.

Conveying zone

As the screw rotates it conveys screenings along the length of the conveying zone up to the compacting zone. As the screw rotates the material, gravity and the surface friction react to force the water from the screenings. The conveying zone shall be a sized according to the specific plant layout and positioning of the collection skip.

Compacting Zone

The resulting compacted plug of screenings is forced out of the discharge. The compacting zone shall have a minimum length of 500 mm.

M01.11.3 **Helical Shaft Screws**

The screw shall have a helical flight and shall have a minimum of 6 flights per linear meter. The shaft screws shall be designed to withstand the subjected torsional forces imposed during the operation thereof. Lower bearings shall be enclosed in a watertight assembly suitable for submerged operation in grit service. The bearing shall have an L-10 rating life of 100 000 hours while operating at maximum load. Internal bearing parts shall be completely sealed from outside contamination

The helical screw flights shall have easily replaceable bearing shoes on the leading edge which shall support the screw through the trough and keep drain holes clean. The bearings shall be designed to withstand the thrust forces imposed. The screw shall operate at a maximum of 10 rpm.

A relatively low friction liner around the inside peripheral section of the U-trough shall be installed and secured. This shall be made from a minimum 10 mm UHDPE liner, alternative material offers shall be accepted provided it is of similar of better properties to the specified, alternative offer shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

M01.11.4 **Trough**

The washing trough shall be totally enclosed to prevent spillage and contain odours. Hinged inspection covers (where applicable) shall however be provided for inspection and removal of objects if required.

M01.11.5 **Drive Unit**

The compactor-drive unit shall be mounted at the bottom of the inclined screw trough and shall be enclosed. The compactor shall be directly driven by an electric motor coupled to a shaft mounted gearbox. Refer to particular specification M08: Mechanical Gearboxes and refer to particular specification E01: for a detailed specification for Electric Motors.

M01.11.6 **Screw Wash Compactor Material of Construction**

Screw Wash Compactor components shall be constructed of the material specified in Table 11-1 below :

Table 11-1 Covered Hydro type conveyor Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Screw compactor frame	304 L stainless steel
Helical Shaft Screws	carbon steel
U-trough	304 L stainless steel
U-trough liner,	UHDPE
Support Structures	304 L stainless steel
Wash Water and Drainage Pipework	304 L stainless steel

M01.12 FASTENERS

Nuts, bolts, studs and washers for incorporation in the Works shall conform to the requirement of the appropriate approved standard.

Bolts shall be of such standard length that a minimum of two to four complete threads shall protrude beyond the nut when in the fully tightened condition. The same shall applies to stud units. Mating surfaces shall be adequately protected against corrosion whilst awaiting assembly of the faces and bolting, all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All high tensile bolts and studs used in the Works shall bear the letter HTS stamped or engraved on the end. Washers shall be provided under all bolt heads and nuts. The threads of bolts and studs shall be lubricated before assembly with a lubricating substance subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration arrangements shall be provided where necessary and shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

Stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers shall be in accordance with SANS 1700 A70 and the grade of stainless steel shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Hot Dip Galvanised fasteners shall comply with the requirements of SANS 121. High strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, nuts, load indicator washers and washers shall subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and shall be hot dip galvanised. High strength friction grip bolts shall be tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the tension shall be re-checked not less than 3 hours after first tightening and then the bolts shall be retightened to the initial load all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All stainless-steel bolts, nuts and washers in contact with a dissimilar material shall be provided with isolating (non-metallic) washers and sleeves (insolating kit) where appropriate to prevent galvanic corrosion, unless otherwise specified in the project specification. The selection of the non-metallic washers shall consider the normal operating conditions of the installation. The bed plates and machinery shall be provided with means of adjustment for line and level to maintain the items of Plant in correct alignment during grouting. Packers used for adjustment shall be of non-corrosive material to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Holding down bolts which are to be tightened after grouting shall be provided with bond breakers where they pass through the grout.

Where there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt and nut does not exceed half of the yield stress of the bolt material under all conditions. The shear value of high strength friction grip bolts shall be reduced in proportion to the reduced tensile stress compared with the normal design stress.

No tapped holes in mild steel shall be allowed. Where tapped holes are unavoidable, this shall be done into stainless steel. Where bolts and nuts are required to be removed and re-assembled on a regular basis, these shall be of stainless steel. Metal coatings and other treatments applied to fasteners shall be carried out in a manner which will not cause hydrogen embrittlement of the parent material

M01.13 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended should be kept by the water treatment plant for maintenance of the equipment. Spares which the Client decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately, and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

For special tools being used on offered equipment. Tenderers shall submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of special spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M01.14 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE

The Defects Liability period shall be a period of at least 12 months calculated from the Completion as defined in the Contract Document.

However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Employer's Agent or Representative reserves the right to extend the Defects Liability Period in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of at least 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification.

M01.15 CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to G02 - Particular Specification for Corrosion protection.

M01.16 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M01.17 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

M01.17.1 General

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project. The Contractor's Quality Management System shall be in accordance with industry standard. The Contractor shall implement a comprehensive Quality Control programme and accept full responsibility for the quality of his workmanship and material used, irrespective of any quality surveillance that may be carried out by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. In keeping with the basic principles Quality Management System, the Contractor and Subcontractor(s) shall:

- Be responsible for compliance with all the requirements of the Specification in every respect;
- Carry out all inspections and tests called for in the Specification in the presence of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The cost of these inspections and tests shall be carried out at the sole expense and under the responsibility of the Contractor;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for manufacture for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during manufacturing process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during manufacture, cleaning and preparation for application as well as

necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;

- Draft a Quality Control Plan for corrosion protection for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during corrosion protection process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during corrosion protection as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for installation for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during installation process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during installation as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance; and
- Draft Quality Control Plans for any other construction process as may be required for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during the execution of the process indicating all the intended stages of testing as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance.

The Quality Control Plans will not be compromised once approved and shall always be adhered to. The Contractor shall operate approved quality assurance and control programmes in the Supplier's and Manufacturer's premises and on Site in order to verify that the Works comply with this Section. Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for approval, quality plans describing the procedures, standards of acceptance, hold point inspections, routine and type tests to be carried out for each component both during manufacture and on Site.

Although it shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the Works conform to the Specification, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be entitled to inspect, examine and test the materials, workmanship and performance of every item of Plant. The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will notify the Contractor which tests or inspections, detailed in the quality plan, they will attend.

Approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative of materials, workmanship, etc., during manufacture or at Site will not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to comply with all the requirements of the Contract.

All instruments and appliances necessary for the complete inspection and testing shall be provided by the Contractor. Calibration certificates for instruments shall be produced to the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative for review prior to the commencement of any tests and, if required by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative, instruments shall be re-calibrated at the Contractor's own account before commencement of the tests.

In general, Quality Management System should be bench marked in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M01.17.2 **Material Tests**

The Manufacturer's material test data and the Contractor's quality records shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Reasonable samples of the cleaning and coating materials to be used may be taken for testing.

Rejection of the samples shall place a hold on the use of the materials of the same batch number and any components that have already been cleaned/coated with rejected material shall be re-cleaned and coated.

M01.17.3 **Type Tests**

Where the Contractor offers Plant selected from the standard range of products from a specialist manufacturer, type tests in accordance with a recognised international standard are required on one unit of each type to prove satisfactory design and quality of manufacture of that Plant.

The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative may waive the requirement for type tests if they are satisfied that tests have previously been performed on identical Plant. The Contractor shall submit the data and results with their Quality Plan in sufficient time to allow for repeat tests without delaying the Works should the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative not approve the evidence submitted.

The above cost should be built into the supply of the equipment as per the project specification.

M01.17.4 **Manufacture**

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Employer's Agent or Representative opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Employer's Agent or Representative during design and manufacture per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M01.17.5 **Installation**

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Employer's Agent or Representative shall be afforded every opportunity to certain stages of completion of the installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site activities at the Employer's Agent or Representative's discretion.

M01.18 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

M01.18.1 **Works Testing**

All Equipment shall be subject to a Factory Acceptance Test (FAT) by the Manufacturer and witness by Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative at the Manufacturer's premises before despatch. All performance test results shall be made available to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

Equipment may only be despatch from factory once all relevant "hold points" on QCP's have been signed off by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and/or the Approved Inspection Authority (AIA) in accordance with approved quality control plan.

M01.18.2 **Before Commissioning**

- Check for correct lubrications levels in all rotating equipment including gearboxes and that motor bearings are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torque down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked and witnessed by the Employer's Agent or Employer's representative.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M01.18.3 **During Commissioning**

The commissioning stages, shall include but not limited to the following checks:

- Ensure all axillary components of the equipment and the peripheral instrumentation such as level, flow or pressure switches are functional
- Measure the screenings removed from by the screen
- Measure the volume of screenings in the raw sewage downstream of the screens. These shall correspond to the size of the Screenfield spacing.

M01.18.4 **Before expiry of the Defects Liability Period**

The Employer requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect together with the Employer's Agent or Representative for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing within 14 days after the inspection to the Employer's Agent.

M01.18.5 **Substandard Quality Control**

All material, certification and records of the Contractor shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

This shall include the checking and testing of the Plant at the Works and on Site, installation and pre-acceptance testing. If any deviation is found, additional testing and quality surveillance shall be carried out at the Contractor's own costs until approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

If the additional testing confirms inaccurate quality control by the Contractor on an item of Plant, all work shall be stopped on that item of Plant and shall only proceed after remedial action in the quality control system has been implemented.

M01.18.6 **Access for Surveillance**

For the purpose of carrying out quality surveillance, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be granted access to any part of the Contractor's premises relevant to the work being carried out, at any reasonable time.

M01.19 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE

Training shall be provided by the Contractor (or specialist equipment suppliers) based on the supplied and approved operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals for all supplied equipment. This training shall be provided to the Operations and Mechanical including other support discipline staff of the Employer along with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives. The duration of the training period shall be advised by the Contractor and agreed with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives.

The training structure for the equipment and/or system should include both the theory and practical components of the equipment derived from the O&M manuals.

The preparation of the O&M manuals shall be based on the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Particular specification for Commissioning and Operation.

M01.20 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY

The Contractor shall hand over to the Employer' Agent or Employer's Representative four sets of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant. A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

(a) Brief description of the plant and installation.

(b) Concise operating instructions including start-up, operating, shutdown and troubleshooting procedures.

(c) Routine maintenance instruction this shall include failure mode analysis and preventative strategies.

(d) Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.

(e) Detailed information on equipment.

(f) Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.

(g) Schematic Diagram and Drawings

(h) Risk, Health and Safety Assessment with proposed control measures.

M01.21 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar types of equipment are required, these units shall be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied shall be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M01.22 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. 's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, he shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, they shall submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. . Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from their responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M01.23 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for required equipment unless otherwise specified in the detail/project specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with such required equipment shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for equipment and specified as such in the detail /project specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

M01.23.1 General

The following items shall be included in the rates:

(a) Supply of all design and pre-manufacture documentation and obtaining approval thereof;
(b) Procurement/manufacture of required equipment with associated equipment items and delivery to Site;
(c) Installation of complete required equipment with associated equipment items and testing;
(d) Services required during period of initial use before handover to the Employer.
(e) Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery; installation and testing; and commissioning and trail operation of the equipment. A further training requirement shall be allowed for as specified in the scheduled items.

M01.23.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery to site with documentation	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, inspections, quality control, quality assurance, factory acceptance testing, corrosion protection, packing, delivery to site including transportation costs and offloading on site including any cranage requirements. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M01.23.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment

Item	**Unit**
Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified on Site including the provision of all labour, supervision, instruments, equipment, transport, on-site quality assurance and quality control, inspection and testing (including attendance at tests witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative), materials and Temporary Works necessary to completely install, test and commission and render fully operational equipment.

The rate shall also include the cost of the installation of all auxiliary equipment not

specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified until taken over by the Employer; the putting into service of the complete installation; remedial work and any other work as specified and necessary.

The rate shall also include for all preliminary testing and the provision of testing equipment therefore including all disruptions to installation caused by such testing.

Payment will only be effected after full compliance of the equipment items with this Section and associated documentation has been approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

M01.23.4 Trial Operations

Item	**Unit**
Trial Operations	No

This specification allows for a number of calendar days within which the system Trial Operation can be completed after completion of commissioning process. The Contractor shall programme and price for providing full technical and operational support during trail operation.

M01.23.5 Employer's Operator Training

Item	**Unit**
Training	No

Payment for Training of the Employer's Operational Staff will be made under this Section as set out in project specification or agreed with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The lump sum shall be inclusive of all costs associated with the training programme and on-site training of personnel.

M01.23.6 Spares Equipment

Item	**Unit**
Spares	No

The cost of spares, considered to be necessary by the Contractor other than spares required by the Employer, delivered to Site and handed over will be paid as a lump sum. A Spare Part Schedule subject to approval by the Employer's Agent/ Employer's representative shall be submited before procurement of spares.

The actual lump sum to be paid shall be based on the unit rates priced in the Bill of Quantity for the actual spares ordered and supplied and the Employer is entitled to purchase all, some or none of the items listed. A provisional sum will be allocated in the Bill of Quantity for the complete list of spare parts as listed by the Contractor.The rate tendered shall provide for the manufacture, supply, delivery to Site and handing over of the spares ordered and shall include permanent packing for long term storage. The spares shall be manufactured at the same time as the installed items.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M03: MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT FOR PRIMARY SEDIMENTATION TANKS (PST)

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: Particular Specification – M03: MECHANICAL PRIMARY SEDIMENTATION TANKS

JW Reference: ???

Document Ref. No: M03

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Mechanical Engineer (Hatch)	Mbongiseni Mahlangu, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Reviewed	Project Manager (Hatch)	Johan Prinsloo, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Approved	JW Best Practice Manager	Rendani Davhana	13/06/2022	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-09-17	5	J Prinsloo	Detailed Review
2013-10-23	4	J Ritchie	Minor updates and re-issued
2012-07-30	3	T Wellard	General review
2010-02-16	2	J Ritchie	General review
2009-05-12	1		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M03 MECHANICAL PRIMARY SEDIMENTATION TANKS

CONTENTS

M03.1 SCOPE 5

M03.2 INTERPRETATIONS 5
M03.2.1 Definitions 5
M03.2.2 Abbreviations 5
M03.2.3 Standards 7
M03.2.4 Other Particular Specifications 8

M03.3 DESIGN OF PRIMARY SEDIMENTATION TANKS 8
M03.3.1 General Design Parameters 8
M03.3.2 Specific Design Parameters 8
M03.3.3 Welds and Fasteners 9
M03.3.4 Sludge 9

M03.4 SEDIMENTATION TANK 9
M03.4.1 Sedimentation Tank Parameters 9
M03.4.2 Baffled Inlet 10
M03.4.3 Inlet Pipe 10
M03.4.4 Access Bridge Parameters 10
M03.4.5 Protection 11
M03.4.6 Motor 11
M03.4.7 Gearboxes 11
M03.4.8 Wheels 11
M03.4.9 Drive Train 12

M03.5 SCRAPER MECHANISM 12
M03.5.1 General 12
M03.5.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters 12
M03.5.3 Scrapers 12
M03.5.4 Structural Units 13

M03.6 DESLUDGING PIPE 13
M03.6.1 De-sludging Valves 13
M03.6.2 Sludge Hopper 13
M03.6.3 Flow Meter 14

M03.7 SCUM REMOVAL MECHANISM 14
M03.7.1 General 14
M03.7.2 Scum Board 14
M03.7.3 Scum Skimmer Plate 14
M03.7.4 Scum Box 14
M03.7.5 Scum Discharge pipe 15

M03.8 OVERFLOW WEIR 15

M03.9 PIPEWORK 15

M03.10 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION 15

M03.11 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS 16

M03.12 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE 16

M03.13 GENERAL FASTENERS 16

M03.14 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION 17

M03.15 COLOUR CODES 17

M03.16 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 17
M03.16.1 Manufacture 17
M03.16.2 Material Tests 18
M03.16.3 Type Tests 19
M03.16.4 Manufacture 19
M03.16.5 Installation 19

M03.17 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE 19
M03.17.1 Works' testing 19
M03.17.2 Before commissioning 19
M03.17.3 Prior to Filling of the Tanks 20
M03.17.4 During Commissioning 20
M03.17.5 After filling of the Tanks 20
M03.17.6 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period 20

M03.18 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE 20

M03.19 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY 20

M03.20 INTERCHANGEABILITY 21

M03.21 DRAWINGS 21

M03.22 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 21
M03.22.1 General 21
M03.22.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation 22
M03.22.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment 22
M03.22.4 Trial Operations 22
M03.22.5 Employer's Operator Training 23
M03.22.6 Spares Equipment 23

M03.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, off-loading on site, installation, test and commissioning of Primary Sedimentation Tanks scraper mechanisms, scum boxes, scum boards and weirs. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with Project Specification and other relevant Particular Specification.

M03.2 INTERPRETATIONS

This specification shall be interpreted as follows:

- For the Employer design components, it shall be regarded as a specification.
- For the Contractor design components obligations, it shall be regarded as an Employer's requirements.

M03.2.1 Definitions

For the purposes of this Specification the following definitions shall apply:-

(a) "**Manufacture**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, fabrication and assembly, any specified corrosion protection measures and any off-site inspection or testing of materials or parts.

(b) "**Supply**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, manufacture and fabrication, any specified corrosion protection measures and all required off-site inspection or testing.

(c) "**Installation**" includes, as applicable, all handling and transport from storage, erection and aligning of Works.

(d) "**Factory Acceptance Test (FAT)**" shall refer to all tests done on Plant or Plant items at the factory to ensure its functionality.

M03.2.2 Abbreviations

For the purpose of this Specification the following abbreviation shall apply:-

°C	: Temperature in degrees Celsius
A	: Current
AC	: Alternating Current
AGMA	: American Gear Manufactures Association
ANSI	: American National Standards Institute
API	: American Petroleum Institute
ASCE	: American Society of Civil Employer's Agents
ASME	: American Society of Mechanical Employer's Agents
ASTM	: American Society for Testing and Materials
BFP	: Belt Filter Press
BS	: British Standards Institution
BSPT	: British Standard pipe thread
CAD	: Computer Aided Drawing
CAM	: Computer Aided Manufacturing
CFD	: Computation Fluid Dynamics
CIP	: Cleaning in Place
COC	: Certificate of Conformance
D	: Diameter
DB	: Air Dry Bulb temperature
dB(A)	: Sound pressure level, "A" weighed in decibels
DCS	: Distributed Control System

DFT : Dry Film Thickness
DIN : Deutsch Industry Normen
DN : Nominal diameter
DO : Dissolved Oxygen
DP : Differential Pressure
Eff. : Filter efficiency in %
EPDM : Ethylene Propylène Diène Monomer
ERW : Electrical resistance weld
ETP : Effluent Treatment Plant
FA : Flange adaptor
FAT : Factory Acceptance Tests
FBE : Flanged both ends
FOE : Flanged one end
FW : Field weld
HDPE : High Density Polyethylene
ID : Inside diameter
ISO : International Organisation for Standardization
JW : Johannesburg Water
ℓ/s : Flow in litres per second
LV : Low Voltage
m : Distance in metre
m.a.s.l : Metres above (mean) sea level
m/s : Air speed in metres per second
MCC : Motor Control Centre
mm : Dimension in millimetres
MPVC : Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes
MV : Medium Voltage
N+1 : N units in operation + 1 installed spare
Nm3/hr : Normal cubic meters per hour
O&M : Operation and Maintenance
OD : Outside diameter
OHS : Occupational Health and Safety
Pa : Pressure in Pascals
PBE : Plain both ends
PE : Plain end
PN : Nominal pressure (Rating)
PPE : Personal Protective Equipment
PQP : Project Quality Plan
PSV : Pressure Safety Valve
QCP : Quality Control Panel
RFA : Restrained flange adaptor
rpm : Rotational speed in revolutions per minute
SAECC : South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
SANS : South African National Standards
SAT : Site Acceptance Tests
SAW : Submerged arc weld
SCADA : Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SIS : Swedish Institute of Standards
SOC : Slip-on coupling
SS : Soft Starters
SS : Soft Starters
SS : Stainless Steel

SST	: Secondary Settling Tank
STP	: Standard Temperature and Pressure (i.e. T = 20°C, P = 101, 3 kPa).
t	: Wall thickness of pipes
TDS	: Total Dissolved Solids
uPVC	: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
VSD	: Variable Speed Drive
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WP (B)	: Weld preparation (Butt)

M03.2.3 Standards

All design standards for the primary sedimentation tanks shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
PD 5304:2014	:	Guidance on safe use of machinery (British Standards Institution)
SANS9606-1:	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS ISO1312-1:2018	:	Rolling bearings. Accessories for sleeve type linear ball bearings. Boundary dimensions, geometrical product specifications (GPS) and tolerances for series 1 and 3
SANS 10162-1	:	The structural use of steel Part1: Limit-states design of hot-rolled steelwork
SANS 10162-2	:	The structural use of steel Part1: Limit-states design of cold-formed steelwork
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 15614-1	:	Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials - Welding procedure test Part 1: Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-1	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10104	:	Hand railing and balustrading (safety aspects)
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Employer's Agent or Representative Drawing Part 1: General principles Employer's Agent or Representative Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 1550-1	:	Motor vehicle tires and rims - Dimensions and loads Part 1: General
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless-steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless-steel fasteners-Nuts

M03.2.4 Other Particular Specifications

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

M17: Particular Specification for Actuator equipment

M20: Particular Specification for Valves

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Volume 1: Automation and Control Design Standards SCADA

Volume 6: Automation and Control Design Standards Cabling

Volume 8: Automation and Control Design Standards Flow Measurement

Volume 9: Automation and Control Design Standards Level Measurement

M03.3 DESIGN OF PRIMARY SEDIMENTATION TANKS

M03.3.1 General Design Parameters

Primary Sedimentation Tank equipment shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:-

- To ensure reasonable standards of engineering in design, materials selection and construction processes
- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,
- The minimum availability of the equipment shall be 99 %
- The offered equipment shall be support in forms of spares by the original equipment manufacturer for at least 15 years in alignment with the specified life expectation of 15 years from project installation.
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 15 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes.
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum that represent the value for money in both the initial purchase and subsequent running costs,
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety such as the Occupational Health & Safety Act , 1993 and Regulations as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise. Maximum of 75 dBA measured at 1 metre from operating equipment.
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the latest editions of published statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M03.3.2 Specific Design Parameters

Screened, de-gritted sewage shall be distributed to the primary sedimentation tanks for sludge accumulation. The objective of the primary sedimentation tanks is to remove readily settled suspended solids and scum from the screened and degritted wastewater, reducing the amount of suspended solids content in the wastewater and the organic load on the downstream biological treatment processes.

The primary sedimentation tanks shall be downstream of the head of works and flow divider, but upstream of the balancing (flow equalisation) tanks.

There shall be no less than two settling tanks per bio-reactor. The influent flow divider is to provide equal flow distribution and isolation as required.

The mechanisms of the Primary Settling Tank shall be designed to operate at the most extreme loadings and be capable of restarting once stopped. Safe access to components subjected to wear such as gearboxes, motors, bearings, driving wheels, centre bearing etc, shall been provided as part of design for purpose of maintenance and process.

The scum collection box and the rotational speed of the bridge shall allow for a descumming rate of 1000 m^2/hr for a 35 m diameter tank, which shall increase or decrease in proportion to the classifier surface area for other tank dimensions

Design Loads:

- Typical thickened primary sludge concentration is 1-4 % TS
- Maximum thickened primary sludge concentration is 8-10% TS
- It is desirable to withdraw 1 - 2% sludge to allow proper screening through a 6 mm sludge screen without capturing a large amount of organics with the screenings.
- Hydraulic Flow rate ≤ 1.2m^3/m^2/hr
- Peak flow shall be determined by the wastewater collection system peak factor shall be ≤ 2.5m^3/m^2/hr

M03.3.3 Welds and Fasteners

All welds are to be in accordance with SANS15614-1. All submerged fasteners shall be 316 SS and mating flanges shall be sealed against the ingress of any crevice corrosion by means of a sealant suitable for underwater conditions and approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All area where there is a direct contact between dissimilar metals. An insulation material shall be used to appropriately prevent any corrosion.

M03.3.4 Sludge

The sludge is a non-Newtonian pseudoplastic thixotropic fluid. The mechanism and drive train design should take account of the rheological properties of the fluid.

M03.4 SEDIMENTATION TANK

M03.4.1 Sedimentation Tank Parameters

The mechanical equipment to be supplied under this Contract shall be installed, tested and commissioned on concrete structures, constructed to accommodate specific mechanical equipment for process functionality, to the dimensions indicated on the construction detail drawings and / or as site confirmation on the completed concrete structure.

The tank shall be circular with a conical bottom tank, a maximum diameter of 35 m and a minimum side water depth (SWD) of 4.0 m. The peripheral wall shall be finished to 1 m above the finished terrace level. The floor of the tank shall be sloped, vertical to the horizontal 1:6 (approximately 10° slope), to assist the sludge being scraped to a central collection hopper for withdrawal. The overflow launder width shall be 600mm (minimum).

M03.4.2 Baffled Inlet

A baffled inlet with centre feed will enter the tank vertically from the bottom and shall be constructed in reinforced concrete that will form the pivot point for the bridge. The diameter of the inlet baffle shall be between 0.15 and 0.2 times that of the tank diameter with a depth of 0.3 of the SWD.

M03.4.3 Inlet Pipe

The inlet pipe within the inlet baffle shall have a minimum diameter of 750 mm unless otherwise specified in the construction drawings and shall be manufactured from 304 stainless steel. The inlet pipe shall be supplied and installed as part of primary sedimentation tank structural work.

M03.4.4 Access Bridge Parameters

The rotating access bridge shall be manufactured in 304L SS and shall cover full diameter of the tank. The bridge will be supported by a hinged bearing on the inlet structure and by a driven wheeled support on the perimeter wall of the tank (peripheral drive). 304L stainless steel ladder with the necessary handrails shall be rigidly fixed to the outer end of the bridge for access purposes.

- Designed Load: 2500N per m^2 of walkway area
- Walkway: no less than 750 mm wide, 304L SS
- Chequer plate or Open grid: 304L SS with clamps.
- Hand and knee rails: 304L SS on both sides of walkway
- Kicker plates: 100 x 4,5mm 304L SS attached to both sides of the bridge

The bridge shall be designed to resist any torsion imposed by the scraper mechanism without excessive deflection.

The bridge shall furthermore be designed with sufficient camber to completely cancel the deflection which will be produced by the dead load of the complete bridge with the scraper mechanism attached the latter unsubmerged.

There shall be an access ladder, preferably with a spring loaded design at the carrier-end of the bridge which extends into the PST launder channel. This ladder shall be retractable in order for it to be above the water level when not in use. The ladder shall not interfere or serves as an obstruction for the rotating bridge. It shall be manufactured from robust corrosion-resistant material such as 304L stainless steel.

The access ladder dimensions shall be as a minimum:

- 20mm diameter rungs with 250mm spacing between them.
- The maximum width shall be 500mm
- The distance between the floor level (T.O.C) and the ladder shall be at least 100mm.

M03.4.4.1 Walkway

The walkway shall be assembled by welding joints should a chequer plate be used

The rotating bridge walkway should extend beyond the full diameter of the tank to allow safe and easy access by personnel but not more than the edge of the overflow channel.

M03.4.4.2 Centre Bearing

The hinged bearing and shall be designed as to withstand the maximum design load of the bridge. Roller bearings shall be used to pivot the bridge. The bearings shall be water resistant and shall be interchangeable with existing installation of bearings on site. Bearing lubricating point shall be provided reference to accessibility and safety

consideration.

M03.4.5 Protection

Suitable protection shall be provided for in the event of an obstruction causing the bridge operation to be interrupted. The protection provided shall interrupt the operation of the bridge thereby preventing damage to the motor and wheels of the bridge.

The protection device shall be of an Intelligent Motor Protection Relay type with built in phase angle protection and torque limit protection shall also be provided as minimum. All malfunction of the bridge drive unit shall be reflected on the Works SCADA.

M03.4.6 Motor

The bridge motor shall be provided with power from a slip ring system mounted in the centre of the tank along the centre bearing. The slip ring shall be provided with a corrosion resistant or UV resistant which is one piece and having a minimum protection of IP65. The slipring shall be adequately supported and accessible from the walkway for maintenance and/or installation.

The cables to the slip ring shall be bottom entry from the bottom of the tank which are sleeved in a plastic tube of a minimum 80NB. The sleeve tube shall not be bent less than a radius of 600mm (unless otherwise stated in the Project specification) and shall extend over the top water level of the tank towards the walkway by at least 300mm.

The motor shall be connected to a speed reducer giving a peripheral speed of approximately 2 to 3 meters per minute. The minimum rating of the motor shall be 0.75 kW. Refer to Particular Specification E01: for a detailed specification for the Electric Motors. The bridge will be operated by a double drive unit. The motor shall be supplied with standard shaft and flange connection which shall be fitted on any applicable gearbox.

M03.4.7 Gearboxes

Refer to Particular Specification M08: Volume M08 for a detailed specification for the gearbox.

M03.4.8 Wheels

At least two 125 mm wide polyurethane tyred wheels must be used for the bridge. The wheels must be accurately aligned so that the plane of rotation is normal to a line drawn through the pivot of the wheel and the centre point about which the bridge rotates, so as to minimise wear of the tyres.

The driving wheels shall be fitted with a 304L stainless steel protective cover, which shall be fixed to the end of the rotating bridge and provided with a front mounted adjustable guard that will push foreign objects off the wall and to the outside thereof. Wheel guards shall be easily detachable and not form part of the supporting structure. The wheel guard shall be designed with both a steel and rubber material combination. The portion of the rubber material shall allow access for routine maintenance on components of the wheel. The maintenance of the wheel shall be both easy and safe to the personnel.

The underside of the rotating bridge and the underside of the backing plates for the rubber scrapers shall have sufficient clearance to prevent any touching between metal and concrete when the tyres are worn down. The spacing of the wheels shall be such as to give adequate lateral stability to the bridge under all operating conditions.

All lubricating points on the driving mechanisms and wheels shall be accessible and such that no grease is deposited on the concrete surface on which the wheels run.

M03.4.9 Drive Train

The design of the drive train shall be such that no slippage occurs, under the maximum design load or during wet weather under 1, 5 x normal operating load, between the driving wheel and the riding surface that will consist of steel trowelled concrete.

M03.5 SCRAPER MECHANISM

M03.5.1 General

Where possible all adjusters shall be above the water level. A detailed drawing of the proposed mechanism shall accompany the Tender.

M03.5.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters

The scraper mechanism for the Primary Sedimentation Tank shall consist of a scraper blade assembly with multiple scrapper blades of length sufficiently designed, arranged in a volute pattern equivalent to a continuous spiral blade. The scrapper shall provide a scrapping action for the full diameter of the tank towards the centre column with the sludge collection hopper. The scrapers shall be fitted to an underwater support system manufactured from 304L stainless steel, which shall be suspended from the overhead rotating bridge. No underwater bearings shall be permitted. The scraper mechanism and the bridge shall form one rigid unit on the side of the pivot point with an allowance of at least 30 mm vertical adjustment in the level of the floor scraper.

M03.5.3 Scrapers

The scrapers shall be of Echelon type fitted with synthetic rubber squeegees shaped to fit snugly on the floor. The installation arrangement of the squeegees shall be installed such that they do not overload the drive unit or cause it to trip under overload frequently. The overall height of the scraper shall be at least 300 mm, and the scrapers shall overlap by at least 10% of the scrapper blade length and shall ensure sludge is scraped constantly into the hopper at any bridge position. The scrappers at centre sludge hopper shall extend into the hopper by at least 50mm. Each scrapper shall be maintained without dismantling the entire scrapper system from the bridge structure.

The shape of the squeegees shall be such that at any point they will fit the curvature of the conical floor of the basin. Care must be taken to minimise the wear on the squeegees but no supporting wheels shall be considered.

M03.5.3.1 Squeegees

The squeegees are to be fitted to the scrappers by means of a back plate. The squeegees are to be secured 50 mm from the bottom of the scraper by means of a bolted connection. The bolt shall pass from the back plate, through the squeegees to the scrapper. The squeegees have a minimum thickness of 20mm manufactured from an elastomer with a minimum hardness of 80 shore A unless otherwise specified in the project specification.

M03.5.3.2 Back Plates

The back plates shall be manufactured from 304 stainless steel and shall be angled more than 60° to the radius. The back plates shall have a minimum thickness of 4.5 mm. The underside of the back plates shall be such that at any point it will fit the curvature of the conical floor of the basin.

M03.5.4 Structural Units

The cross-braced structural units suspending the scrapers from the bridge shall be

sufficiently sturdy to keep the scrapers in their relative positions without the metal back plates coming into contact with the floor. The structural units shall be manufactured from 304 SS.

The contractor shall be responsible for the estimated loading on the structure and the torque calculations required to design his equipment under specified maximum loads and shall utilise a factor of safety of not less than 1,5 in the selection of the drive and structural design components.

M03.6 DESLUDGING PIPE

The de-sludging pipe shall have a minimum diameter of 200 mm and shall have a compressed air purge connection and a blank flange 200 mm above the maximum water level in the tanks, as to remove any blockages in the pipe. The de-sludging pipes shall be provided with long radii bends in order to limit potential of any blockages occurring within the pipes. The number of bends in the pipe shall be kept at bare minimum as necessitated by the best pipe route chosen with consideration to gas built-up and blockages. No reducers on the sludge draw-off pipe shall be allowed. The pipeline design shall be subject to approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative.

M03.6.1 De-sludging Valves

Intermittent sludge removal shall be due to the differential hydraulic head controlled by an electric actuator; refer to "*Particular Specification M17: Actuator equipment for detail on actuators*", rising spindle knife gate valves shall be installed on the de-sludging pipework to control the flow of the de-sludging pipe. A differential hydrostatic head condition shall be initiated at predetermined time intervals (typically once per hour) by a timer controlled electrically operated actuated knife gate valve. This timer control shall take into account the rotating speed of the bridge structure to complete one revolution. The frequency and duration of the valve opening shall be timer controlled by a Programmable Logic Controller (PLC) which shall be supplied and installed as part of the scope, not installed by others.

The de-sludging valve shall be positioned to ensure effective de-sludging using a recommended design hydrostatic head of 3.0m (minimum), and further for refurbishment a hydrostatic head of 2 m shall be assumed to available to drive the desludging operation.

The sludge knife gate valves shall be constructed from 304 SS.

M03.6.2 Sludge Hopper

The sludge hopper shall have a minimum depth of 1.5m with a side slope of 60°. The diameter of the sludge hopper shall be based on 0.12 to 0.15 times the tank diameter.

M03.6.3 Flow Meter

Clamp-on or Magnetic Flow Meter . Measured as a possible and accessible common pipe from all PSTs. . Should a magnetic flow meter be offered to be used, a pipework bypass shall be allowed for. The full details of the flow measuring instrumentation shall be referred to in the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Control and Instrumentation Specification – Volume 8 for flow measurement.

M03.7 SCUM REMOVAL MECHANISM

M03.7.1 General

Where possible all adjusters shall be above the water level. A detailed drawing of the

proposed mechanism shall submitted during Tender stage as part of returnable documents. The tank shall be de-scummed on each rotation of the scraper bridge.

M03.7.2 Scum Board

The scum board shall be constructed from 304L SS plate with a minimum dimension of 450 mm deep, at least 3 mm thick and 300 mm below the surface water level shall be provided along the perimeter of the overflow weir at a distance of not less than 300 mm from the inside face of the tank and supported by 304 stainless steel brackets adjustable in a horizontal direction.

M03.7.3 Scum Skimmer Plate

A scum skimmer plate shall be provided at least 3 mm thick 304 stainless steel and 150 mm deep to skim the water surface area within the scum board (including the stilling chamber) and a scum box hopper shall be provided. The scum skimmer shall be set at an angle to the bridge and supported at short intervals to prevent buckling. The part of the scum skimmer passing over the hopper shall be pivoted and shall be arranged in such a way that it will lift clear of the hopper. The skimmer plate will be fixed to the support structure by welds.

M03.7.4 Scum Box

The scum box opening shall measure at least 1200 mm in a radial direction and 500 mm in the direction parallel to the overflow weir and shall be made from 304 SS plate 4.5 mm thick. It shall be equipped with a gently sloping beach, sloping from a height of 300 mm to a height of 500 mm, with a length of 500 mm and a width of 1150 mm. The scum is then deposited in the collection trough which slopes towards the scum discharged pipe. The hopper shall be supported on the side wall of the tank and shall have sufficient cross bracing to ensure rigidity.

A 304L stainless steel projecting striker arm shall activate a 304 L stainless steel valve, which shall open for a period of between 20 – 40 seconds during the period that the scraper arm is above the hopper. The valve shall preferably consist of a weighted bung capable of shutting off the discharge pipe.

The projecting striker arm shall be activated by an adjustable 304L SS striker plate connected to the rotating bridge. The striker plate is to have sufficient adjustment in order to adjust the de-scumming time between 20 and 40 secs.

The scum box shall have a positive hydraulic scum removal action and shall be positioned facing the prevailing wind. The direction shall be specific to the works of installation.

M03.7.5 Scum Discharge pipe

The scum discharge pipe from the hopper shall have a diameter of at least 200 mm and manufactured from 6 mm thick 304L stainless steel. It shall slope towards the scum discharge scum valve chamber. A knife gate valve with internals constructed from stainless steel shall be installed on the discharge pipeline for the purpose of additional scum discharge control and management. For safety consideration with reference to the bridge movement, there shall be no protruding items on the bridge structure or from the scum discharge chamber in order to avoid any injuries from the personnel.

M03.8 OVERFLOW WEIR

A V-notched single overflow weir manufactured of 4,5 mm 304 stainless steel plate, 200 mm deep shall be provided and installed on the inside of the concrete wall of the launder. The overflow weir is to be attached to the wall of the tank by means of bolts.

The installation of the V-notched weir shall ensure that the effluent discharges freely and evenly around the whole circumference of the tank without leakage through the joint between the weir and the wall or the joints between weir sections. Tenderers shall allow in their process for sealing against "off the shutter" concrete finish and between ends of weir sections with an approved material such as closed cell expanded neoprene. Holes in the weir plate shall be slotted to permit adjustment.

M03.9 PIPEWORK

The following supply items shall be supplied and installed as part of primary sedimentation tank structural work:

- The inlet under the floor and inside the inlet structure of the tank
- The sludge draw-off pipe
- The effluent pipework

The pipework shall be manufactured from 304L stainless steel. Refer to Particular Specification M21: for detail on pipework. The contractor under this Contract must, however, supply and install the scum discharge pipe and valve up to the scum discharge manhole inside the scum valve chamber adjacent to the tank, which will be built as part of primary sedimentation tank structural work.

M03.10 Material Of Construction

The equipment unit components shall be constructed using the critical material specified in the table below:

COMPONENT	**MATERIAL**
Wet Fasteners	316 stainless steel
Pipework	316 stainless steel
Rotating access bridge	304L stainless steel
Steel ladders	304L stainless steel
Centre bearing base plate structure	3CR12
Carriage wheels	polyurethane tyred wheels
Protective covers	3CR12
Scrapper support structures	304L stainless steel
Squeegees	synthetic rubber
Scrapper back-plate	304L stainless steel
Scum box system incl. baffle plates and brackets	304L stainless steel
Overflow weir	304L stainless steel
Scum and sludge pipework	304L stainless steel
All other accessories shall be of manufacturer's standard coated material.	

M03.11 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which it is recommended should be kept by Johannesburg Water for maintenance of the plant. Spares which the Management decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately, and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

For special tools being used on offered equipment. Tenderers must submit a provisional price (requested in the Bill of Quantity) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M03.12 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE

The Defects Liability period shall be a minimum period of 12 months calculated from the Completion of the Works as defined in the Contract Document. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Employer's Agent or Representative reserves the right to extend the Defects Liability Period in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of at least 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification

M03.13 GENERAL FASTENERS

Nuts, bolts, studs and washers for incorporation in the Works shall conform to the requirement of the appropriate approved standard.

Weir plates and scum baffles shall be attached to the tank using 316 stainless steel anchors set in holes drilled by the Contractor under this Contract. Bolts shall be of such standard length that a minimum of two to four complete threads shall protrude beyond the nut when in the fully tightened condition. The same shall applies to stud units. Mating surfaces shall be adequately protected against corrosion whilst awaiting assembly of the faces and bolting, all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All high tensile bolts and studs used in the Works shall bear the letter HTS stamped or engraved on the end.

Washers shall be provided under all bolt heads and nuts. The threads of bolts and studs shall be lubricated before assembly with a lubricating substance subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration arrangements shall be provided where necessary and shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

Stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers shall be in accordance with SANS 1700 A70 and the grade of stainless steel shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Hot Dip Galvanised fasteners shall comply with the requirements of SANS 121. High strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, nuts, load indicator washers and washers shall subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and shall be hot dip galvanised. High strength friction grip bolts shall be tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the tension shall be re-checked not less than 3 hours after first tightening and then the bolts shall be retightened to the initial load all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All stainless steel holding down bolts, nuts and washers in contact with a dissimilar material shall be provided with isolating washers and sleeves (insolating kit) where appropriate to prevent galvanic corrosion, unless otherwise specified in the project specification. The bed plates and machinery shall be provided with means of adjustment for line and level to maintain the items of Plant in correct alignment during grouting. Packers used for adjustment shall be of non-corrosive material to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Holding down bolts which are to be tightened after grouting shall be provided with bond breakers where they pass through the grout.

Where there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt and nut does not exceed half of the yield stress of the bolt material under all conditions. The shear value of high strength friction grip bolts shall be reduced in proportion to the reduced tensile stress compared with the normal design stress.

No tapped holes in mild steel shall be allowed. Where tapped holes are unavoidable, this shall be done into stainless steel.

Where bolts and nuts are required to be removed and re-assembled on a regular basis, these shall be of stainless steel.

Metal coatings and other treatments applied to fasteners shall be carried out in a manner which will not cause hydrogen embrittlement of the parent material.

M03.14 Metal Preparation And Corrosion Protection

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M03.15 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M03.16 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project.

M03.16.1 Manufacture

The Contractor's Quality Management System shall be in accordance with industry standard.

The Contractor shall implement a comprehensive Quality Control programme and accept full responsibility for the quality of his workmanship and material used, irrespective of any quality surveillance that may be carried out by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

In keeping with the basic principles Quality Management System, the Contractor and Subcontractor(s) shall:

- Be responsible for compliance with all the requirements of the Specification in every respect;
- Carry out all inspections and tests called for in the Specification in the presence of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The cost of these inspections and tests shall be carried out at the sole expense and under the responsibility of the Contractor;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for manufacture for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during manufacturing process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during manufacture, cleaning and preparation for application as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for corrosion protection for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during corrosion protection process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during corrosion protection as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for installation for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during installation process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during installation as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance; and
- Draft Quality Control Plans for any other construction process as may be required for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with

the approved Quality Plan during the execution of the process indicating all the intended stages of testing as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance.

The Quality Control Plans will not be compromised once approved and shall be adhered to at all times. The Contractor shall operate approved quality assurance and control programmes in the Supplier's and Manufacturer's premises and on Site in order to verify that the Works comply with this Section. Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for approval, quality plans describing the procedures, standards of acceptance, hold point inspections, routine and type tests to be carried out for each component both during manufacture and on Site.

Although it shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the Works conform to the Specification, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be entitled to inspect, examine and test the materials, workmanship and performance of every item of Plant. The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will notify the Contractor which tests or inspections, detailed in the quality plan, he will attend.

Approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative of materials, workmanship, etc., during manufacture or at Site will not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to comply with all the requirements of the Contract.

All instruments and appliances necessary for the complete inspection and testing shall be provided by the Contractor. Calibration certificates for instruments shall be produced to the Employer's Agent or Representative for review prior to the commencement of any tests and, if required by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative, instruments shall be re-calibrated at the Contractor's own account before commencement of the tests.

M03.16.2 Material Tests

The Manufacturer's material test data and the Contractor's quality records shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Reasonable samples of the cleaning and coating materials to be used may be taken for testing.

Rejection of the samples shall place a hold on the use of the materials of the same batch number and any components that have already been cleaned/coated with rejected material shall be re-cleaned and coated.

M03.16.3 Type Tests

Where the Contractor offers Plant selected from the standard range of products from a specialist manufacturer, type tests in accordance with a recognised international standard are required on one unit of each type to prove satisfactory design and quality of manufacture of that Plant.

The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative may waive the requirement for type tests if he is satisfied that tests have previously been performed on identical Plant. The Contractor shall submit the data and results with his Quality Plan in sufficient time to allow for repeat tests without delaying the Works should the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative not approve the evidence submitted

M03.16.4 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project

Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Employer's Agent or Representative opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Employer's Agent or Representative during design and manufacture per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M03.16.5 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Employer's Agent shall be requested to attend certain stages of completion of installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site inspections at the Employer's Agent's discretion.

M03.17 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

M03.17.1 Works' testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All performance test results shall be made available to the Employer's Agent or Representative for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

In the case of gearboxes, they shall be subject to testing under operating conditions for at least 12 hours on the test bed. All results shall be available for inspection

M03.17.2 Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked, and the results shall be available for inspection by the Employer's Agent or Representative.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M03.17.3 Prior to Filling of the Tanks

M03.17.3.1 Driving Wheels

During the above tests the concrete surface under the driving wheels shall be thoroughly wetted.

M03.17.4 During Commissioning

- Ensure all equipment lubrication are sufficient and all control and safety switches are functional
- Ensure all equipment are secured and in correct positions.

M03.17.5 After filling of the Tanks

M03.17.5.1 Weirs

That there is even distribution of flow over the weirs without any bypassing of the weir.

M03.17.5.2 Scum Removal

That there is positive removal of scum.

M03.17.6 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Employer's Agent or Representative requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing

M03.18 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE

Training shall be provided by the Contractor (or specialist equipment suppliers) based on the supplied and approved operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals for all supplied equipment. This training shall be provided to the Operations and Mechanical including other support discipline staff of the Employer along with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives. The duration of the training period shall be advised by the Contractor and agreed with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives.

The training structure for the equipment and/or system should include both the theory and practical components of the equipment derived from the O&M manuals.

The preparation of the O&M manuals shall be based on the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Particular specification for Commissioning and Operation.

M03.19 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY

The Contractor shall hand over to the Employer' Agent or Employer's Representative four sets (x2 hard copies and x2 electronic copies on non-locked USB) of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant. A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

- Brief description of the plant and installation.
- Concise operating instructions including start-up, operating, shutdown and troubleshooting procedures.
- Routine maintenance instruction this shall include failure mode analysis and preventative strategies.
- Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.
- Detailed information on equipment.
- Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.
- Schematic Diagram and Drawings
- Risk, Health and Safety Assessment with proposed control measures.

M03.20 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar types of equipment are required, these units shall be

identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied shall be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M03.21 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. 's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, they shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, they shall submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. . Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from their responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M03.22 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for required equipment unless otherwise specified in the detail/project specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with such required equipment shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for equipment and specified as such in the detail /project specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

M03.22.1 General

The following items shall, inter alia, be included in the rates:

- Supply of all design and pre-manufacture documentation and obtaining approval thereof;
- Procurement/manufacture of required equipment with associated equipment items and delivery to Site;
- Installation of complete required equipment with associated equipment items and testing; and
- Services required during period of initial use before handover to the Employer.

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery; installation and testing; and commissioning and trail operation of the equipment.

M03.22.2 **Supply and delivery to site with documentation**

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery to site with documentation	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, inspections, quality control, quality assurance, factory acceptance testing, corrosion protection, packing, delivery to site including transportation costs and offloading on site including any cranage requirements. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M03.22.3 **Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment**

Item	**Unit**
Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment.....	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified on Site including the provision of all labour, supervision, instruments, equipment, transport, on-site quality assurance and quality control, inspection and testing (including attendance at tests witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative), materials and Temporary Works necessary to completely install, test and commission and render fully operational surface aeration equipment.

The rate shall also include the cost of the installation of all auxiliary equipment not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified until taken over by the Employer; the putting into service of the complete installation; remedial work and any other work as specified and necessary.

The rate shall also include for all preliminary testing and the provision of testing equipment therefore including all disruptions to installation caused by such testing.

Payment will only be effected after full compliance of the equipment items with this Section and associated documentation has been approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

The Contractor shall include in the Tendered rate for straining of the gearbox oil after 600 hours of initial operation. The Contractor shall furnish the Employer's Agent with a report recording any irregularities when cleaning the sieves after straining.

M03.22.4 **Trial Operations**

Item	**Unit**
Trial Operations.....	No

This specification allows for a number of calendar days within which the system Trial Operation can be completed after completion of commissioning process. The Contractor shall programme and price for providing full technical and operational support during trail operation.

M03.22.5 **Employer's Operator Training**

Item	**Unit**
Training	No

Payment for Training of the Employer's Operational Staff will be made under this Section as set out in project specification or agreed with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The lump sum shall be inclusive of all costs associated with the training programme and on-site training of personnel.

M03.22.6 **Spares Equipment**

Item	**Unit**
Spares	No

The cost of spares, considered to be necessary by the Contractor other than spares required by the Employer, delivered to Site and handed over will be paid as a lump sum. A Spare Part Schedule subject to approval by the Employer's Agent/ Employer's representative shall be submited before procurement of spares.

The actual lump sum to be paid shall be based on the unit rates priced in the Bill of Quantity for the actual spares ordered and supplied and the Employer is entitled to purchase all, some or none of the items listed. A provisional sum will be allocated in the Bill of Quantity for the complete list of spare parts as listed by the Contractor.The rate tendered shall provide for the manufacture, supply, delivery to Site and handing over of the spares ordered and shall include permanent packing for long term storage. The spares shall be manufactured at the same time as the installed items

----------**END**----------

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M04: MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT FOR THE BALANCING TANK

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5 September 2021

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: Particular Specification – M04: MECHANICAL BALANCING TANK EQUIPMENT

JW Reference: ???

Document Ref. No: M04

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Mechanical Engineer (Hatch)	Mbongiseni Mahlangu, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Reviewed	Project Manager (Hatch)	Johan Prinsloo, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Approved	JW Best Practice Manager	Rendani Davhana	13/06/2022	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2021-09-16	5	J. Prinsloo	Detail review
2013-10-23	4	J Ritchie	Minor updates and re-issued
2012-07-30	3	J Ritchie	General update and re-issue
2010-02-12	2	J Ritchie	General update and review
2009-05-12	1		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M04: MECHANICAL EQUIPMENT FOR THE BALANCING TANKS

CONTENTS

M04.1 SCOPE ..... - 5 -

M04.2 INTERPRETATIONS ..... - 5 -
M04.2.1 Definitions ..... - 5 -
M04.2.2 Abbreviations ..... - 5 -
M04.2.3 Standards ..... - 7 -
M04.2.4 Other Particular Specification ..... - 8 -

M04.3 DESIGN OF BALANCING TANKS EQUIPMENT ..... - 8 -
M04.3.1 General Design Parameters ..... - 8 -

M04.4 BALANCING TANKS ..... - 9 -
M04.4.1 Specific Design Parameters ..... - 9 -
M04.4.2 Tank Parameters ..... - 10 -
M04.4.3 Inlet Pipe ..... - 10 -
M04.4.4 Outlet Pipe/Channel ..... - 10 -
M04.4.5 Access Parameters ..... - 10 -
M04.4.6 Welds and Fasteners ..... - 11 -

M04.5 MIXING MECHANISM ..... - 11 -

M04.6 BALANCING TANK CONTROLS ..... - 11 -

M04.7 VALVES ..... - 12 -

M04.8 PIPEWORK ..... - 12 -

M04.9 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION ..... - 12 -

M04.10 CORROSION PROTECTION ..... - 12 -

M04.11 COLOUR CODES ..... - 12 -

M04.12 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS AND SPECIAL TOOLS ..... - 12 -

M04.13 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE ..... - 13 -

M04.14 GENERAL FASTENERS ..... - 13 -

M04.15 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE (QA) ..... - 14 -
M04.15.1 Manufacture ..... - 14 -
M04.15.2 Material Tests ..... - 15 -
M04.15.3 Type Tests ..... - 16 -

M04.16 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE ..... - 16 -
M04.16.1 Works testing ..... - 16 -
M04.16.2 Before commissioning ..... - 16 -
M04.16.3 During Commissioning ..... - 16 -
M04.16.4 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period ..... - 16 -

M04.17 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE ..... - 17 -

M04.18 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY ..... - 17 -

M01.1 INTERCHANGEABILITY ..... - 17 -

M04.19 DRAWINGS ..... - 18 -

M04.20 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT ..... - 18 -
M04.20.1 General ..... - 18 -
M04.20.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation ..... - 18 -
M04.20.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment ..... - 19 -
M04.20.4 Trail Operations ..... - 19 -
M04.20.5 Operator Equipment Training ..... - 20 -
M04.20.6 Spares ..... - 20 -

M04.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, off-loading on site, installation, test and commissioning of complete Balancing Tanks. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification and other Particular Specification.

M04.2 INTERPRETATIONS

This specification shall be interpreted as follows:

- For the Employer design components, it shall be regarded as a specification.
- For the Contractor design components obligations, it shall be regarded as an Employer's requirements.

M04.2.1 Definitions

For the purposes of this Specification the following definitions shall apply:-

(a) "**Manufacture**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, fabrication and assembly, any specified corrosion protection measures and any off-site inspection or testing of materials or parts.

(b) "**Supply**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, manufacture and fabrication, any specified corrosion protection measures and all required off-site inspection or testing.

(c) "**Installation**" includes, as applicable, all handling and transport from storage, erection and aligning of Works.

(d) "**Factory Acceptance Test (FAT)**" shall refer to all tests done on Plant or Plant items at the factory to ensure its functionality

M04.2.2 Abbreviations

For the purpose of this Specification the following abbreviation shall apply:-

°C	: Temperature in degrees Celsius
A	: Current
AC	: Alternating Current
AGMA	: American Gear Manufactures Association
ANSI	: American National Standards Institute
API	: American Petroleum Institute
ASCE	: American Society of Civil Employer's Agents
ASME	: American Society of Mechanical Employer's Agents
ASTM	: American Society for Testing and Materials
BFP	: Belt Filter Press
BS	: British Standards Institution
BSPT	: British Standard pipe thread
CAD	: Computer Aided Drawing
CAM	: Computer Aided Manufacturing
CFD	: Computation Fluid Dynamics
CIP	: Cleaning in Place

COC : Certificate of Conformance
D : Diameter
DB : Air Dry Bulb temperature
dB(A) : Sound pressure level, “A” weighed in decibels
DCS : Distributed Control System
DFT : Dry Film Thickness
DIN : Deutsch Industry Normen
DN : Nominal diameter
DO : Dissolved Oxygen
DP : Differential Pressure
Eff. : Filter efficiency in %
EPDM : Ethylene Propylène Diène Monomer
ERW : Electrical resistance weld
ETP : Effluent Treatment Plant
FA : Flange adaptor
FAT : Factory Acceptance Tests
FBE : Flanged both ends
FOE : Flanged one end
FW : Field weld
HDPE : High Density Polyethylene
ID : Inside diameter
ISO : International Organisation for Standardization
JW : Johannesburg Water
ℓ/s : Flow in litres per second
LV : Low Voltage
m : Distance in metre
m.a.s.l : Metres above (mean) sea level
m/s : Air speed in metres per second
MCC : Motor Control Centre
mm : Dimension in millimetres
MPVC : Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes
MV : Medium Voltage
N+1 : N units in operation + 1 installed spare
Nm3/hr : Normal cubic meters per hour
O&M : Operation and Maintenance
OD : Outside diameter
OHS : Occupational Health and Safety
Pa : Pressure in Pascals
PBE : Plain both ends
PE : Plain end
PN : Nominal pressure (Rating)
PPE : Personal Protective Equipment
PQP : Project Quality Plan
PSV : Pressure Safety Valve
QCP : Quality Control Panel
RFA : Restrained flange adaptor
rpm : Rotational speed in revolutions per minute
SAECC : South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
SANS : South African National Standards

SAT	: Site Acceptance Tests
SAW	: Submerged arc weld
SCADA	: Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SIS	: Swedish Institute of Standards
SOC	: Slip-on coupling
SS	: Soft Starters
SS	: Soft Starters
SS	: Stainless Steel
SST	: Secondary Settling Tank
STP	: Standard Temperature and Pressure (i.e. T = 20°C, P = 101, 3 kPa).
t	: Wall thickness of pipes
TDS	: Total Dissolved Solids
uPVC	: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
VSD	: Variable Speed Drive
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WP (B)	: Weld preparation (Butt)

M04.2.3 Standards

All design standards for the degritter equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
PD 5304:2014	:	Guidance on safe use of machinery (British Standards Institution)
SANS9606-1:	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS ISO1312-1:2018	:	Rolling bearings. Accessories for sleeve type linear ball bearings. Boundary dimensions, geometrical product specifications (GPS) and tolerances for series 1 and 3 (British Standards Institution)
SANS 10162-1	:	The structural use of steel Part1: Limit-states design of hot-rolled steelwork
SANS 10162-2	:	The structural use of steel Part1: Limit-states design of cold-formed steelwork
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 15614-1	:	Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials - Welding procedure test Part 1: Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-1	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10104	:	Hand railing and balustrading (safety aspects)

SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawings Part 1: General principles and Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 1550-1	:	Motor vehicle tires and rims - Dimensions and loads Part 1: General
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts

M04.2.4 Other Particular Specification

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M05: Particular Specification for Anaerobic & Anoxic Mixing Equipment

M20: Particular Specification for Valves

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Volume 8: Automation and Control Design Standards Flow Measurement

Volume 9: Automation and Control Design Standards Level Measurement

M04.3 DESIGN OF BALANCING TANKS EQUIPMENT

M04.3.1 General Design Parameters

The balancing tank equipment shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:

- To ensure reasonable standards of engineering in design, materials selection and construction processes
- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,
- The minimum availability of the equipment shall be 99 %
- The offered equipment shall be support in forms of spares by the original equipment manufacturer for at least 15 years in alignment with the specified life expectation of 15 years from project installation.
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 15 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature

changes.

- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum that represent the value for money in both the initial purchase and subsequent running costs,
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety such as the Occupational Health & Safety Act , 1993 and Regulations as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise. Maximum of 75 dBA measured at 1 metre from operating equipment.
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the latest editions of published statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M04.4 BALANCING TANKS

M04.4.1 Specific Design Parameters

The objective for the balancing tanks is to remove the diurnal wastewater flow and load variations and to achieve a constant or nearly constant flow and load rates to the biological reactor.

Provision shall be made for the allowance of dead storage as well as the accumulation of debris and grit equal to 5-10% of the live storage based on the tank dimensions.

Mixing of the tank contents shall occur in order to maintain the suspended solids in suspension. A de-scumming facility is to be provided to effectively removed scum and to prevent it from entering the mainstream treatment process.

Each Biological Reactor train shall have its own equalization tank.

Pre-treatment requirements

Pre-treatment requirements for flow equalization shall include screening, grit removal and primary sedimentation. Equalisation basins shall be located downstream of pre-treatment facilities (screens, grit chambers and primary sedimentation).

Equalization tanks can be designed either as in-line or side-line tanks. In-line tanks are designed for the entire flow to pass through the tanks and results in significant flow and concentration dampening.

Side-line tank arrangements contain only the flow exceeding the average daily flow. In-line tanks shall be preferred to side-line tanks but shall be based on the site topography.

Flow

Flow division within the tank shall be ensured by the use of splitter boxes and overflow weirs. The tank shall not overflow or empty under normal operating conditions or under low conditions, which shall result in the settled solids being scoured out of the tank. The tank shall have a high overflow level.

The tank shall have an energy dissipater on the inlet of the tank to operate when the tank level is low.

The mechanical equipment to be supplied under this Contract shall be installed, tested and commissioned on concrete structures, constructed by others, to the dimensions indicated on the construction detail drawings.

M04.4.2 Tank Parameters

The tank shall have a plug flow with a sloped floor configuration, vertical to the horizontal 1:2, in order to prevent sludge from accumulating on the floor bottom.

The tank shall be rectangular in shape and dimensioned to contain the required liquid volume as indicated on the civil construction drawings. The aerial footprint and depth shall be site specific. The balancing tanks shall be supplied and installed under civil / structural scope of works..

M04.4.3 Inlet Pipe

There shall be an energy dissipater on the inlet which shall be used when the tank wastewater level is low. The diameter of the inlet pipe shall be as per the civil construction drawings and shall be manufactured with 304L stainless steel and shall be supplied and installed under civil / structural scope of works.

M04.4.4 Outlet Pipe/Channel

Control of the outlet flow shall be automated. The outlet pipe diameter shall be as per the civil construction drawings and shall be manufactured with 304L stainless steel and shall be supplied and installed under civil / structural scope of works.

.

M04.4.5 Access Parameters

The fixed access platform shall be manufactured in BS8007 reinforced concrete and shall have a length and width as indicated on the civil construction drawings, the platform width shall be determined with reference to the design equipment to be installed on the platform for the purpose of maintenance easy access and installation. A 304L stainless steel ladder with the necessary handrails shall be rigidly fixed to the outer end of the bridge for access purposes.

- Hand and kneerails shall be 304L stainless steel on all sides of walkway

M04.4.5.1 Walkway

The walkway shall be wide enough to remove the mixer gearbox for repair, the walkway design shall be done in consideration of moving gearboxes and motors with mobile A-frame for minimum of 1.5m. The joints for the hand railing shall be bolted to the bridge.

The A-frame lifting equipment shall be supplied under this specification along with the balancing tank mixing equipment. The design shall be subject to the approval by the Employer's Agent or Representative. The details of the A-frame shall be referred to under the Johannesburg Water (SCO) Ltd – Lifting Equipment specification.

M04.4.6 Welds and Fasteners

All welds shall be in accordance with SANS 15614-1. All submerged fasteners shall be 316 SS and mating flanges shall be sealed against the ingress of any crevice corrosion by means of a sealant suitable for underwater conditions and approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. .

M04.5 MIXING MECHANISM

The mixing energy flow density shall be in the range of 4-5 W/m^3 with the tank full to the top water level (TWL). The mixer drive unit can be either single or two speed motor driven as specified in the Project specification. The design of a two speed motor shall be used to retain the design mixing energy density at an optimum drive, unit efficiency as the tank storage volume (or level) fluctuates seasonally and diurnal .. Refer to particular specification M05: Anaerobic and Anoxic Mixing Equipment for the mixer design specification.

Note – Mixers for balancing tanks do not require the top axial flow paddles all other details outlined in the particular specification M05 is applicable.

Provisions such as low level shutoffs and supports for the mixers shall be provided when the basin is drained.

M04.6 BALANCING TANK CONTROLS

Flow metering shall be done on both the inlet and outlets to the tank. The discharge flows shall be measured by a mag flow meter with a feedback control to an electrically actuated knife gate control valve, which shall be modulated to provide a constant discharge from the tank, irrespective of the wastewater level in the tank.

Refer to the Automation and Control Design Standards Flow Measurement and Level Measurement.

Ultrasonic level monitors shall be used to monitor the wastewater levels in the tank and to control the mixers.

The drive units shall be PLC controlled and hardwired to the level meters for the tank. The Contractor shall ensure that they are aware and must consider all requirements

as stated in the Control and Operational Philosophy for the specific plant under construction, to align all selected equipment with this specification. This shall be provided as part of the project specification.

M04.7 VALVES

The wetted parts of the isolating and control valves shall be manufactured from 304 SS. Refer to Particular Specification M20: Valves for a detailed specification on valves.

M04.8 PIPEWORK

The following shall be supplied and installed as part of the structural work and as detailed in the project scope of works:-

- The inlet pipe work
- The outlet pipe work/channel

The pipe work shall be manufactured from 304L stainless steel. Refer to particular specification M21: Pipework for a detailed specification on pipework.

M04.9 Material Of Construction

The equipment unit components shall be constructed using the critical material specified in the table below:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL
Wet Fasteners	316 stainless steel
Pipework	316 stainless steel
Steel access ladders and handrails	304L stainless steel
Protective covers	3CR12
Overflow weir	304L stainless steel
All other accessories shall be of manufacturer's standard coated material.	

M04.10 CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M04.11 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes

M04.12 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS AND SPECIAL TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended to be kept by the Works for maintenance of the plant. Spares

which the Client decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately, and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

For special tools being used on offered equipment. Tenderers must submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M04.13 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE

The Defects Liability period shall be a period of 12 months at least calculated from the Completion of Works as defined in the Contract Document. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. reserves the right to extend the Defects Liability Period in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of at least 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification.

M04.14 GENERAL FASTENERS

Nuts, bolts, studs and washers for incorporation in the Works shall conform to the requirement of the appropriate approved standard.

Weir plates and scum baffles shall be attached to the tank using 316 stainless steel anchors set in holes drilled by the Contractor under this Contract. Bolts shall be of such standard length that a minimum of two to four complete threads shall protrude beyond the nut when in the fully tightened condition. The same shall applies to stud units. Mating surfaces shall be adequately protected against corrosion whilst awaiting assembly of the faces and bolting, all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All high tensile bolts and studs used in the Works shall bear the letter HTS stamped or engraved on the end.

Washers shall be provided under all bolt heads and nuts. The threads of bolts and studs shall be lubricated before assembly with a lubricating substance subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration arrangements shall be provided where necessary and shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

Stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers shall be in accordance with SANS 1700 A70 and the grade of stainless steel shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Hot Dip Galvanised fasteners shall comply with the requirements of SANS 121. High strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, nuts, load indicator washers and washers shall subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and shall be hot dip galvanised. High strength friction grip bolts shall be tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations

and the tension shall be re-checked not less than 3 hours after first tightening and then the bolts shall be retightened to the initial load all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All stainless steel holding down bolts, nuts and washers in contact with a dissimilar material shall be provided with isolating washers and sleeves (insolating kit) where appropriate to prevent galvanic corrosion, unless otherwise specified in the project specification. The bed plates and machinery shall be provided with means of adjustment for line and level to maintain the items of Plant in correct alignment during grouting. Packers used for adjustment shall be of non-corrosive material to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Holding down bolts which are to be tightened after grouting shall be provided with bond breakers where they pass through the grout.

Where there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt and nut does not exceed half of the yield stress of the bolt material under all conditions. The shear value of high strength friction grip bolts shall be reduced in proportion to the reduced tensile stress compared with the normal design stress.

No tapped holes in mild steel shall be allowed. Where tapped holes are unavoidable, this shall be done into stainless steel.

Where bolts and nuts are required to be removed and re-assembled on a regular basis, these shall be of stainless steel.

Metal coatings and other treatments applied to fasteners shall be carried out in a manner which will not cause hydrogen embrittlement of the parent material.

M04.15 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE (QA)

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project.

M04.15.1 Manufacture

The Contractor's Quality Management System shall be in accordance with industry standard.

The Contractor shall implement a comprehensive Quality Control programme and accept full responsibility for the quality of his workmanship and material used, irrespective of any quality surveillance that may be carried out by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

In keeping with the basic principles Quality Management System, the Contractor and Subcontractor(s) shall:

- Be responsible for compliance with all the requirements of the Specification in every
- respect;
- Carry out all inspections and tests called for in the Specification in the presence of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The cost of these inspections

and tests shall be carried out at the sole expense and under the responsibility of the Contractor;

- Draft a Quality Control Plan for manufacture for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during manufacturing process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during manufacture, cleaning and preparation for application as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for corrosion protection for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during corrosion protection process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during corrosion protection as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for installation for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during installation process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during installation as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance; and
- Draft Quality Control Plans for any other construction process as may be required for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during the execution of the process indicating all the intended stages of testing as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance.

The Quality Control Plans will not be compromised once approved and shall be adhered to at all times. The Contractor shall operate approved quality assurance and control programmes in the Supplier's and Manufacturer's premises and on Site in order to verify that the Works comply with this Section. Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for approval, quality plans describing the procedures, standards of acceptance, hold point inspections, routine and type tests to be carried out for each component both during manufacture and on Site.

Although it shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the Works conform to the Specification, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be entitled to inspect, examine and test the materials, workmanship and performance of every item of Plant. The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will notify the Contractor which tests or inspections, detailed in the quality plan, he will attend.

Approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative of materials, workmanship, etc., during manufacture or at Site will not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to comply with all the requirements of the Contract.

All instruments and appliances necessary for the complete inspection and testing shall be provided by the Contractor. Calibration certificates for instruments shall be produced to the Employer's Agent or Representative for review prior to the commencement of any tests and, if required by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative, instruments shall be re-calibrated at the Contractor's own account before commencement of the tests.

M04.15.2 Material Tests

The Manufacturer's material test data and the Contractor's quality records shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Reasonable samples of the cleaning and coating materials to be used may be taken for testing.

Rejection of the samples shall place a hold on the use of the materials of the same batch number and any components that have already been cleaned/coated with rejected material shall be re-cleaned and coated.

M04.15.3 Type Tests

Where the Contractor offers Plant selected from the standard range of products from a specialist manufacturer, type tests in accordance with a recognised international standard are required on one unit of each type to prove satisfactory design and quality of manufacture of that Plant.

The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative may waive the requirement for type tests if he is satisfied that tests have previously been performed on identical Plant. The Contractor shall submit the data and results with his Quality Plan in sufficient time to allow for repeat tests without delaying the Works should the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative not approve the evidence submitted

M04.16 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

M04.16.1 Works testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All performance test results shall be made available to the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

The gearbox and motor assemblies, they shall be subject to testing under operating conditions for at least 12 hours on the test bed. All results shall be available for inspection. All gearbox and motor assemblies shall be individually tested prior to dispatch to site.

M04.16.2 Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torque down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked and the results shall be available for inspection by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. .
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M04.16.3 During Commissioning

- Ensure all mixer gearbox oil flow or pressure switches are functional

M04.16.4 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing to the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. within 14 days after the inspection.

M04.17 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE

Training shall be provided by the Contractor (or specialist equipment suppliers) based on the supplied and approved operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals for all supplied equipment. This training shall be provided to the Operations and Mechanical including other support discipline staff of the Employer along with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives. The duration of the training period shall be advised by the Contractor and agreed with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives.

The training structure for the equipment and/or system should include both the theory and practical components of the equipment derived from the O&M manuals.

The preparation of the O&M manuals shall be based on the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Particular specification for Commissioning and Operation.

M04.18 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY

The Contractor shall hand over to the Employer' Agent or Employer's Representative four sets (x2 hard copies and x2 electronic copies on non-locked USB) of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant. A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

- Brief description of the plant and installation.
- Concise operating instructions including start-up, operating, shutdown and troubleshooting procedures.
- Routine maintenance instruction this shall include failure mode analysis and preventative strategies.
- Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.
- Detailed information on equipment.
- Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.
- Schematic Diagram and Drawings
- Risk, Health and Safety Assessment with proposed control measures.

M01.1 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar types of equipment are required, these units shall be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied shall be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M04.19 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. 's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, they shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, they shall submit a detailed working drawings to be approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. .Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from their responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M04.20 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Separate payment will be made for belt filter press for equipment unless otherwise specified in the detail specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with such belt filter press shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for belt filter press and specified as such in the detail specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

M04.20.1 **General**

The following items shall, inter alia, be included in the rates:

a) Supply of all design and pre-manufacture documentation and obtaining approval thereof;
b) Procurement/manufacture of aeration equipment with associated equipment items and delivery to Site;
c) Installation of complete aeration equipment with associated equipment items and testing;
d) Services required during period of initial before handover to the Employer.

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery; installation and testing; and commissioning and trail operation of the equipment.

M04.20.2 **Supply and delivery to site with documentation**

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery to site with documentation	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, inspections, quality control, quality assurance, factory acceptance testing, corrosion protection, packing, delivery to site and offloading on site. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M04.20.3 **Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment**

Item	**Unit**
Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified on Site including the provision of all labour, supervision, instruments, equipment, transport, on-site quality assurance and quality control, inspection and testing (including attendance at tests witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative), materials and Temporary Works necessary to completely install, pre-commission and set to work the complete equipment.

The rate shall also include the cost of the installation of all auxiliary equipment not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified until taken over by the Employer; the putting into service of the complete installation; remedial work and any other work as specified and necessary.

The rate shall also include for all preliminary testing and the provision of testing equipment therefore including all disruptions to installation caused by such testing.

Payment will only be effected after full compliance of the equipment items with this Section and associated documentation has been approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative

The Contractor shall include in the Tendered rate for straining of the gearbox oil after 600 hours of initial operation. The Contractor shall furnish the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative with a report recording any irregularities when cleaning the sieves after straining.

M04.20.4 **Trail Operations**

Item	**Unit**
Trail Operations	No

This specification allows for a number of calendar days within which the system Trial Operation can be completed after completion of commissioning process. The

Contractor shall programme and price for providing full technical and operational support during trail operation.

M04.20.5 **Operator Equipment Training**

Item	**Unit**
Training	No

Payment for Training of Operational Staff will be made under this Section as set out in project specification or agreed with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The lump sum shall be inclusive of all costs associated with the training programme and on-site training of personnel.

M04.20.6 **Spares**

Item	**Unit**
Spares	No

The cost of spares, considered to be necessary by the Contractor other than spares required by the Employer, delivered to Site and handed over will be paid as a lump sum. A Spare Part Schedule subject to approval by the Employer's Agent/ Employer's representative shall be submited before procurement of spares.

The actual lump sum to be paid shall be based on the unit rates priced in the Bill of Quantity for the actual spares ordered and supplied and the Employer is entitled to purchase all, some or none of the items listed. A provisional sum will be allocated in the Bill of Quantity for the complete list of spare parts as listed by the Contractor.

The rate tendered shall provide for the manufacture, supply, delivery to Site and handing over of the spares ordered and shall include permanent packing for long term storage. The spares shall be manufactured at the same time as the installed items

----------**END**----------

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M05: MECHANICAL ANAEROBIC AND ANOXIC MIXING EQUIPMENT

Rev	Date	Description	Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership	Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water
4	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	Review and update	T Wellard	
2	2010-02-15	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: MO5: MECHANICAL ANAEROBIC AND ANOXIC MIXING EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M05.1 SCOPE 2

M05.2 INTERPRETATIONS 2
M05.2.1 Abbreviations 2
M05.2.2 Standards 2
M05.2.3 General Requirements 3

M05.3 DESIGN OF MIXING EQUIPMENT 3
M05.3.1 General Design Parameters 3
M05.3.2 Specific Mixer Design Parameters 3

M05.4 MIXER TURBINE DESIGN 4
M05.4.1 Impellor Design Parameters 4
M05.4.2 Mixer Impellor Material 4
M05.4.3 Mixer Shaft 4
M05.4.4 Fasteners 5

M05.5 GEARBOX ASSEMBLIES 5

M05.6 MIXER BASE PLATE 5

M05.7 MIXER MOTORS 5

M05.8 CORROSION PROTECTION 5

M05.9 COLOUR CODES 5

M05.10 MIXER PERFORMANCE 6

M05.11 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE (QA) 6
M05.11.1 Manufacture 6
M05.11.2 Installation 6
M05.11.3 Performance Testing 6
M05.11.4 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period 7

M05.12 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 7

M05.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of mechanical mixing equipment for anaerobic and anoxic compartments within a biological reactor at a wastewater treatment works.

M05.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M05.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M05.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the mixing equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400: 1990	:	National Building Regulations
BS 5304: 1988	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9606 - 1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS 292 Part 1: 1987	:	Dimensions of ball bearings, cylindrical and spherical roller bearings
SANS 10044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders working where weld procedure approval is not required.
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts
SANS 1034: 1975	:	Grey iron castings

M05.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M08: Volume M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

E01: Volume E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M05.3 DESIGN OF MIXING EQUIPMENT

M05.3.1 General Design Parameters

Equipment shall be designed:

- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs.
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 12 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site.
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes.
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum.
- To facilitate inter-changeability of units and/or sub-parts throughout the Contract works with regard to new equipment and equipment and/or sub-parts currently being used on the existing JW Wastewater Treatment Works.
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise. Maximum of 84dBA measured at 1 metre from operating equipment.
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution.
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the statutory codes and legislation.
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M05.3.2 Specific Mixer Design Parameters

All mixing equipment shall be surface mounted. Mixing equipment shall be designed to operate satisfactory under the atmospheric, ambient and other conditions specified in the Project Specifications. The approximate compartment volumes shall be detailed in the Project Specification.

Mixed liquor may have a maximum suspended solids concentration of approximately 6 kg/m^3 and shall be continuously mixed. The sludge Design Sludge Volume Index (DSVI) will be between 80 and 240 ml/gm under normal operating conditions.

Power input and the flow pattern shall be such as to minimise vortex formation and surface turbulence and any undue oxygenation.

The rotational design speed of the mixer shall not exceed 25 r/min.

Mixed liquor shall contain limited amounts of rags and fibrous material and the turbine blades shall be designed to prevent the build-up of this material on them.

In the event of a power outage, the mixers shall be capable of re-suspending all settled solids throughout the basin and the scouring velocity shall be a maximum as close to the floor as possible.

Different materials of construction shall be isolated from each other to prevent corrosion due to galvanic reaction.

Periodic stopping and restarting of the mixers units shall be accounted for in the mixer design and this should not be detrimental to the operation of the mixers units supplied.

The direction of rotation of the mixer turbine impellers shall be as specified in the project specific specification.

M05.4 MIXER TURBINE DESIGN

M05.4.1 Impellor Design Parameters

Mixer turbines shall be of a duel impellor arrangement ensuring maximum mixing efficiency, consisting of a radial flow type impellor (flat back curved blade or retreating type) design to assist in centering the unit and promote self cleaning, positioned suitably from the basin bottom creating the necessary radial mixing flow pattern. The axial flow type impellor shall be designed to prevent the undue accumulation of rags and debris material around the shaft at the liquid surface level. The axial flow impellor shall be installed at a distance of at least twice the impellor diameter below the liquid surface but shall be not less than 800mm.

The mixing energy required for the radial flow type impellor shall be 4-5 W/m^3 whilst the axial flow impellor shall impart a maximum of 0.5 W/m^3 mixing energy. Mixing energy shall be defined as the actual power imparted into the mixed liquor via the turbine by the motor and gearbox assembly.

The tip speed of the radial flow impellor shall not exceed 2,5m/s

The shape of the mixer blades shall be such as to prevent surface movement, aeration of the mixed liquor and shear forces exerted on the surrounding liquid. An anti vortex baffle or disc shall be incorporated in the turbine design to eliminate this condition. Tenderer's considering addition anti vortex baffles shall be required to indicate the requirement in their offer to achieve the desired mixing efficiency without any aeration. Full details shall be included in their tender. Any additional costs therefore shall be deemed to be included in their tender pricing schedules.

Note: where the mixer is specified in the project specific specification to be installed in a balancing tank then the top axial flow type impellor is not required and only the bottom radial flow shall be supplied.

M05.4.2 Mixer Impellor Material

The mixer blades shall be manufactured from 304 L stainless steel plate with a minimum thickness of 6 mm.

M05.4.3 Mixer Shaft

The shaft diameter shall be sufficient to prevent whipping or deflecting of the mixer shaft if rags and fibrous material collect on the shaft or blades. The shafts and bearings design shall allow for the out of balance forces that result from mixer operation at the Works. The shaft shall run at below critical speed and shall be able to operate at all liquid levels that may arise in the reactor.

Mixer shafts shall preferably be tubular to withstand all forces set up by the turbines and shall be manufactured in LDX 2101 Duplex Stainless Steel and shall be structurally sound to prevent instability due to rag build-up.

The mixer shaft shall be flanged at both ends and designed to prevent any eccentricity when installed in the field. Fitted machine bolts are preferred to join the shafts to the flanges and marking of the respective positions for installation shall be noted during manufacture. Special attention shall be paid to the alignment of gear output shaft, drive shaft and mixer impeller. Flanges shall be machined only after all welding has been completed.

The mixer assembly shall be statically balanced during manufacture and checked after installation for perceptible vibration or undue swaying under operating conditions.

M05.4.4 Fasteners

All under water fasteners shall be 316 SS and mating flanges shall be sealed against the ingress of any crevice corrosion by means of a sealant suitable for underwater conditions.

M05.5 GEARBOX ASSEMBLIES

Refer to Particular Specification M08: Volume M08: Gearboxes for a detailed specification on gearboxes.

M05.6 MIXER BASE PLATE

A robust HD galvanized base plate shall be provided to fix the drive unit securely to the existing mounting platform using hot dip galvanized or 316 SS (chemical type) foundation bolts. The Contractor shall include for all necessary civil preparation work required on the existing platforms, drilling, core drilling for foundation bolt holes and spindles and grouting of bolts and base plates into position.

The Contractor shall also repair all non re-useable pockets and holes at the mixer positions to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

The base plate shall elevate the mixer assembly to facilitate the draining of oil from the gearbox.

M05.7 MIXER MOTORS

Motors shall be vertical flange mounted. The electrical motors shall be coupled to the gearboxes by means of a pin type flexible coupling. The input power of the mixer, when measured at the mixer shaft shall not be less than 5 W/m^3. Weather hoods shall be fitted to all motors to prevent ingress of rain into the motor.

For a detailed specification for the electrical motors required refer to Particular Specification E01: Volume E01: Electric Motor.

M05.8 CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M05.9 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall conform to Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M05.10 MIXER PERFORMANCE

Information shall be supplied in the Tender of where and when such equipment has been previously installed. The Tenderer shall also indicate in his tender what mass, torque, radial load, bending moment, AGMA rating and mechanical power and thermal ratings are involved.

The performance of the mixers will be evaluated by checking that no sludge build-up occurs in any part of the reactor and that there is no air entrainment or vortexing taking place within each zone of influence of each mixer supplied under this Contract.

M05.11 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE (QA)

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project.

M05.11.1 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Engineer during design and manufacture per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M05.11.2 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Engineer shall be requested to attend certain stages of completion of installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site inspections at the Engineer's discretion.

M05.11.3 Performance Testing

Works testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All performance test results shall be made available to the Engineer for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

In the case of gearboxes, they shall be subject to testing under operating conditions for at least 12 hours on the test bed. All results shall be available for inspection.

Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked and the results shall be available for inspection by the Engineer.
- Check correct submergence of each turbine and adjust on the jacking bolts.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

After Initial Commissioning

- Ensure all oil pumps and flow or pressure switches are functional.
- Check for correct operation of mixer rotation, speed, vibration and noise.
- Note vibration readings.
- Note amperage drawn by each assembly.
- Visual check of excess vortexing at each mixer
- Check gearbox oil temperature after 6 hours of operation and take corrective action as required.

M05.11.4 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Engineer requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing.

M05.12 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery and installation / commissioning of the equipment.

The Contractor shall include in the Tendered rate for straining of the gearbox oil after 600 hours of initial operation. The Contractor shall furnish the Engineer with a report recording any irregularities when cleaning the sieves after straining.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M06: MECHANICAL SURFACE AERATION EQUIPMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5

October 2021

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: Particular Specification – M06: MECHANICAL SURFACE AERATION EQUIPMENT

JW Reference: ???

Document Ref. No: M06

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Mechanical Engineer (Hatch)	Mbongiseni Mahlangu, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Reviewed	Project Manager (Hatch)	Johan Prinsloo, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Approved	JW Best Practice Manager	Rendani Davhana	13/06/2022	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2021-10-11	5	J Prinsloo	Detailed Review
2013-10-23	4	J Ritchie	Minor updates and re-issued
2012-07-30	3	T Wellard	General review
2010-02-16	2	J Ritchie	General review
2009-05-12	1		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M06: MECHANICAL SURFACE AERATION EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M06.1 SCOPE ..... - 4 -

M06.2 INTERPRETATIONS ..... - 4 -
M06.2.1 Definitions ..... - 4 -
M06.2.2 Abbreviations and Material Symbols ..... - 4 -
M06.2.3 Standards ..... - 6 -
M06.2.4 Other Particular Specifications ..... - 7 -

M06.3 DESIGN OF AERATION EQUIPMENT ..... - 7 -
M06.3.1 General Design Parameters ..... - 7 -
M06.3.2 Specific Aerator Design Parameters ..... - 7 -

M06.4 AERATOR TURBINE DESIGN ..... - 9 -
M06.4.1 Turbine Design Parameters ..... - 9 -
M06.4.2 Turbine Material of Construction ..... - 10 -
M06.4.3 Aerator Turbine Shaft ..... - 10 -

M06.5 FASTENERS ..... - 10 -

M06.6 GEARBOX ASSEMBLIES ..... - 11 -

M06.7 AERATOR BASE PLATE AND JACKING BOLTS ..... - 11 -

M06.8 AERATOR MOTORS ..... - 12 -

M06.1 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION ..... - 12 -

M06.2 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION ..... - 12 -

M06.3 COLOUR CODES ..... - 12 -

M06.4 AERATION EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE ..... - 13 -

M06.5 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS AND SPECIAL TOOLS ..... - 13 -

M06.6 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE ..... - 13 -

M06.7 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE ..... - 13 -
M06.7.1 General ..... - 13 -
M06.7.2 Material Tests ..... - 15 -
M06.7.3 Type Tests ..... - 15 -
M06.7.4 Performance Testing ..... - 15 -
M06.7.5 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period ..... - 16 -
M06.7.6 In-situ Oxygenation Efficiency Determination ..... - 16 -
M06.7.7 Steady State Oxygenation Capacity Determination ..... - 17 -
M06.7.8 Quality Control Records ..... - 18 -
M06.7.9 Substandard Quality Control ..... - 18 -
M06.7.10 Access for Surveillance ..... - 18 -
M06.7.11 Manufacture ..... - 18 -
M06.7.12 Installation ..... - 19 -

M06.8 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE ..... - 19 -

M06.9 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY ..... - 19 -

M06.10 DRAWINGS ..... - 19 -

M06.11 INTERCHANGEABILITY ..... - 20 -

M06.12 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT ..... - 20 -
M06.12.1 General ..... - 20 -
M06.12.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation ..... - 20 -
M06.12.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Surface Aeration Equipment ..... - 20 -
M06.12.4 Trial Operations ..... - 21 -
M06.12.5 Employer's Operator Training ..... - 21 -
M06.12.6 Spares Equipment ..... - 21 -

M06.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, off-loading on site, installation, testing and commissioning of mechanical surface aeration equipment for aerobic compartments within a biological reactor of a wastewater treatment works. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification and other relevant Particular Specifications.

M06.2 INTERPRETATIONS

This specification shall be interpreted as follows:

- For the Employer design components, it shall be regarded as a specification.
- For the Contractor design components obligations, it shall be regarded as an Employer's requirements.

M06.2.1 Definitions

For the purpose of this Specification the following definitions apply:

a) "**Manufacture**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, fabrication and assembly, any specified corrosion protection measures and any off-site inspection or testing of materials or parts.
b) "**Supply**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, manufacture and fabrication, any specified corrosion protection measures and all required off-site inspection or testing.
c) "**Installation**" includes, as applicable, all handling and transport from storage, erection and aligning of Works.
d) "**Factory Acceptance Test (FAT)**" shall refer to all tests done on Plant or Plant items at the factory to ensure its functionality

M06.2.2 Abbreviations and Material Symbols

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply: -

°C	: Temperature in degrees Celsius
A	: Current
AC	: Alternating Current
AGMA	: American Gear Manufactures Association
ANSI	: American National Standards Institute
API	: American Petroleum Institute
ASCE	: American Society of Civil Engineers
ASME	: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	: American Society for Testing and Materials
BFP	: Belt Filter Press
BS	: British Standards Institution
BSPT	: British Standard pipe thread
CAD	: Computer Aided Drawing
CAM	: Computer Aided Manufacturing
CIP	: Cleaning in Place
COC	: Certificate of Conformance
D	: Diameter
DB	: Air Dry Bulb temperature
dB(A)	: Sound pressure level, "A" weighed in decibels
DCS	: Distributed Control System
DFT	: Dry Film Thickness

DIN : Deutsch Industry Normen
DN : Nominal diameter
DO : Dissolved Oxygen
DP : Differential Pressure
Eff. : Filter efficiency in %
EPDM : Ethylene Propylène Diène Monomer
ERW : Electrical resistance weld
ETP : Effluent Treatment Plant
FA : Flange adaptor
FAT : Factory Acceptance Tests
FBE : Flanged both ends
FOE : Flanged one end
FW : Field weld
HDPE : High Density Polyethylene
ID : Inside diameter
ISO : International Organisation for Standardization
JW : Johannesburg Water
ℓ/s : Flow in litres per second
LV : Low Voltage
m : Distance in metre
m.a.s.l : Metres above (mean) sea level
m/s : Air speed in metres per second
MCC : Motor Control Centre
mm : Dimension in millimetres
MPVC : Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes
MV : Medium Voltage
N+1 : N units in operation + 1 installed spare
Nm3/hr : Normal cubic meters per hour
O&M : Operation and Maintenance
OD : Outside diameter
OHS : Occupational Health and Safety
Pa : Pressure in Pascals
PBE : Plain both ends
PE : Plain end
PN : Nominal pressure (Rating)
PPE : Personal Protective Equipment
PQP : Project Quality Plan
PSV : Pressure Safety Valve
QCP : Quality Control Panel
RFA : Restrained flange adaptor
rpm : Rotational speed in revolutions per minute
SAECC : South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
SANS : South African National Standards
SAT : Site Acceptance Tests
SAW : Submerged arc weld
SCADA : Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SIS : Swedish Institute of Standards
SOC : Slip-on coupling
SS : Soft Starters
SS : Soft Starters
SS : Stainless Steel
SST : Secondary Settling Tank

STP	: Standard Temperature and Pressure (i.e. T = 20°C, P = 101, 3 kPa).
t	: Wall thickness of pipes
TDS	: Total Dissolved Solids
uPVC	: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
VSD	: Variable Speed Drive
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WP (B)	: Weld preparation (Butt)

M06.2.3 Standards

All design standards for the aeration equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications: -

SANS 10400: 1990	:	National Building Regulations
PD 5304:2014	:	Guidance on safe use of machinery
SANS9606-1	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS ISO1312-1:2018	:	Rolling bearings. Accessories for sleeve type linear ball bearings. Boundary dimensions, geometrical product specifications (GPS) and tolerances for series 1 and 3
SANS 15614-1	:	Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials - Welding procedure test Part 1: Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts
SANS 1034: 2012	:	Grey iron castings
SANS 719	:	Electric welded low carbon steel pipes for aqueous fluids (large bore)
SANS 50025	:	Hot rolled products of structural steels
SANS 1476	:	Fabricated flanged steel pipework
ISO 8501-1	:	Preparation of steel substrate before application of paints and related products

M06.2.4 Other Particular Specifications

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications: -

M08: Volume M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

E01: Volume E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Volume 1: Automation and Control Design Standards SCADA

Volume 6: Automation and Control Design Standards Cabling

Volume 9: Automation and Control Design Standards Level Measurement

Volume 12: Automation and Control Design Standards Dissolved Oxygen Measurement

M06.3 DESIGN OF AERATION EQUIPMENT

M06.3.1 General Design Parameters

Aeration equipment shall be designed such that the following requirements are met: -

- To ensure reasonable standards of engineering in design, materials selection and construction processes;
- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs;
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation and an acceptable life expectation under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site;
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes;
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum that represent the value for money in both the initial purchase and subsequent running costs;
- To facilitate inter-changeability of units and/or sub-parts throughout the Contract works with regard to new equipment and equipment and/or sub-parts currently being used on the existing JW Wastewater Treatment Works;
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise. Maximum of 75dBA measured at 1 metre from operating equipment;
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety such as the Occupational Health & Safety Act, 1993 and Regulations as well as the prevention of water and air pollution;
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the latest editions of published statutory codes and legislation;
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions;
- The minimum availability of the equipment shall be99 %;
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 15 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site; and
- The offered equipment shall be support in forms of spares by the original equipment manufacturer for at least 15 years in alignment with the specified life expectancy from project installation.

M06.3.2 Specific Aerator Design Parameters

Aerator assembly (motor, gearbox and turbine) shall be suitably mounted on concrete

supported bridge/steel platform and fixed using holding down or jacking bolts to ensure sufficient support, accurate level adjustment and to minimise vibration. The assembly shall allow for level adjustment and removal of motor/gearbox without removing the turbine from the tank. Grouting material for the hold-down bolts shall be approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative before application on site.

The aerator assembly shall be designed such that it is capable of achieving constant efficiency for specified life expectancy of the aerator with a design oxygen transfer capacity for the aerators of 1.8 – 3.5 kg O_2/kWh (as shaft to water) under standard conditions at sea level.

The aerator assembly shall be designed to accommodate immersion depth variation without the risk of power tripping and the actual efficiencies shall be used in determining aerator sizes.

Any claimed efficiencies of better than 2.0 kg O_2/kWh shall be supported by factual records of operation and test certificate with detail of test conditions (temperature, altitude, dissolved oxygen and the drive detail); the test certificate shall be verified by industry recognised third party inspector.

The maximum aerator turbine designed tip speed shall be 5 m/s. Variations in the tip speed of ± 5% shall be subject to the approval of Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

The aerator turbine operating speed shall typically be in the order of that specified in the following table.

Table showing approximate turbine operating speeds

Installed Motor Power	Turbine Operating Speed
110 kW	26 rpm
90 kW	33 rpm
75 kW	36 rpm
55 kW	40 rpm
45 kW	43 rpm
30 kW	48 rpm
22 kW	57 rpm
18.5 kW	63 rpm
15 kW	75 rpm

Variation in the submergence due to flow variations within the reactor basin under operating conditions shall be accommodated in the design of the aerator unit, i.e. the minimum and maximum basin operating levels. Details of the proposed aerators (as well as aerator power demand and oxygenation versus depth of immersion curves) shall be provided with the tender. The maximum operating level of each individual sized aerator shall not vary by more than 5 mm measured between any two (2)

adjacent aerators units.

The aeration turbines shall preferably be of the axial flow design and preference shall be given to Turbines that have a proven record of continuous operations under South African conditions or similar conditions.

Tenderers shall indicate the pumping capacity of the offered aerator turbine units specified as required in the relevant technical data sheets.

Where necessary vortex formation shall be prevented by anti-vortex baffles, which shall be included in the tendered rates for the particular aerator. Details of materials and construction shall be submitted with the tender.

All submerged welds shall be of full penetration and continuous and in accordance with SANS 15614-1 or latest relevant specification.

The Contract requires unsteady state test certificates to be submitted with the submission of the Tender, or tests shall be conducted by an approved laboratory under this section of the Contract and the Tender shall include in the Tender Price for such testing. Should acceptable oxygenation transfer test certificates not be included in the tender submission, this may render the submission invalid and shall be liable to rejection.

Failure to pass the stated tests shall result in unsteady state tests to be conducted by an approved laboratory in-situ. The costs of these tests as well as the remedial action to be taken to conform to the specifications shall be for the Contractor's account.

The control of the aeration shall be affected by means of a PLC control, switching aerators on or off in response to signals received from Dissolved Oxygen probes (DO). The aerators offered shall be able to withstand the frequent on/off switching (limited to 6 starts per hour). The relevant control instrumentation shall be supplied under this contract. In addition to DO control, timer control should also be provided.

The direction of rotation of the aerator turbines shall be as specified in the project particular specification / tender drawings.

M06.4 AERATOR TURBINE DESIGN

M06.4.1 Turbine Design Parameters

Floating aerator turbine/ shaft combinations will be preferred to assist in countering the mass of the turbine assembly.

The aerator turbine shall consist of a central hub with a number of robust vertical blades attached and supported below a circular support plate. Each blade shall be designed to encourage a high pumping flow rate of mixed liquor with minimum resistance.

The turbine shall be designed such that no cavitation takes place during operation. The impeller shall be non-clogging and shall be statically balanced prior to assembly with the drive shaft.

The complete turbine assembly shall be subjected to static balancing witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative during manufacture and before commissioning on site. A methodology shall be submitted by the Tenderer to accomplish this balancing to the satisfaction of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative before commencing with manufacturing and installation. Vibrations in operation are to be kept below the maximum vibration level as specified by the supplier of the aerator drive unit. and it will be the Contractors responsibility to check

torsional vibration for each aerator assembly, both theoretically and in-situ. The Contractor shall provide baseline vibration records for all new aerator installation as part of commissioning records.

The blades shall be welded to the underside of a disc. The materials used in the construction should have the following minimum thickness: -

- The horizontal discs shall be manufactured from a minimum material thickness of 12.5 mm.
- Turbine blade construction shall be a minimum of 8 mm.

Dimensional tolerances of the turbines shall be within 2 mm in all directions during manufacture.

It is considered imperative that complete mixing of the contents within the compartment shall take place. The Tenderer shall offer draught tubes or other devices to ensure the whole contents of the aeration basin is mixed without sludge deposition in the corners of the reactor compartment if considered necessary for the particular impeller offered.

A methodology of demonstrating this mixing efficiency shall accompany each Tender and the measuring methodology is subject to approval by Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

M06.4.2 Turbine Material of Construction

The turbine shall be manufactured from mild steel epoxy coated to the minimum thickness specified of 350 microns. The turbine coating application shall comply with requirements of particular specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M06.4.3 Aerator Turbine Shaft

The aerator shaft shall be tubular and shall be flange bolted to both the impeller and the rigid coupling of the gearbox output shaft. The turbine shaft shall be rated for at least double the expected maximum torque.

Critical speed calculations of the shaft shall be provided with the tender. The selected shaft shall have a critical speed greater than four times the operational speed.

Shafts shall be manufactured from Schedule 80 mild steel or equivalent seamless heavy wall tubing and flanges shall be employed to connect the turbine and the gearbox output half coupling. A half coupling shall be shrunk onto the output shaft spigot of the gearbox and secured by a bolted keep plate within the coupling itself. Machine bolted flanged connections or spigot recesses shall be employed to accurately align the turbine assembly and the shafts. Flanges are to be welded to the shafts and machined square afterwards.

The shaft shall be epoxy coated to a minimum thickness of 0.35 mm after manufacture. The shaft coating shall comply with the requirements of Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M06.5 FASTENERS

Nuts, bolts, studs and washers for incorporation in the Works shall conform to the requirement of the appropriate approved standard.

Bolts shall be of such standard length that a minimum of two to four complete threads shall protrude beyond the nut when in the fully tightened condition. The same shall applies to stud units. Mating surfaces shall be adequately protected against corrosion

whilst awaiting assembly of the faces and bolting, all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All high tensile bolts and studs used in the Works shall bear the letter HTS stamped or engraved on the end.

Washers shall be provided under all bolt heads and nuts. The threads of bolts and studs shall be lubricated before assembly with a lubricating substance subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration arrangements shall be provided where necessary and shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

Stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers shall be in accordance with SANS 1700 A70 and the grade of stainless steel shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Hot Dip Galvanised fasteners shall comply with the requirements of SANS 121. High strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, nuts, load indicator washers and washers shall subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and shall be hot dip galvanised. High strength friction grip bolts shall be tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the tension shall be re-checked not less than 3 hours after first tightening and then the bolts shall be retightened to the initial load all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All stainless steel holding down bolts, nuts and washers in contact with a dissimilar material shall be provided with isolating washers and sleeves (insolating kit) where appropriate to prevent galvanic corrosion, unless otherwise specified in the project specification. The bed plates and machinery shall be provided with means of adjustment for line and level to maintain the items of Plant in correct alignment during grouting. Packers used for adjustment shall be of non-corrosive material to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Holding down bolts which are to be tightened after grouting shall be provided with bond breakers where they pass through the grout.

Where there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt and nut does not exceed half of the yield stress of the bolt material under all conditions. The shear value of high strength friction grip bolts shall be reduced in proportion to the reduced tensile stress compared with the normal design stress.

No tapped holes in mild steel shall be allowed. Where tapped holes are unavoidable, this shall be done into stainless steel.

Where bolts and nuts are required to be removed and re-assembled on a regular basis, these shall be of stainless steel.

Metal coatings and other treatments applied to fasteners shall be carried out in a manner which will not cause hydrogen embrittlement of the parent material.

M06.6 GEARBOX ASSEMBLIES

Each aerator shall be direct coupled to a suitable designed gearbox for vertical application and directly driven by a motor via a flexible coupling. Refer to Particular Specification M08: Gearboxes for a detailed specification on gearboxes.

M06.7 AERATOR BASE PLATE AND JACKING BOLTS

The gearbox support arrangement shall comprise a substantially designed and fabricated support base plate bolted to the gearbox and the whole assembly shall be

carried on steel jacking bolts with individual adjustment for the aerator turbine submergence height. Support fabrications are to be HDG galvanized mild steel. The adjustment bolts shall cater for a total of 100mm vertical adjustment (+50 / -50mm) from the normal operating setting. The maximum permissible deflection of the jacking bolts under load shall be limited to their length divided by 180. High total vertical adjustment that results in an excessive length of jacking bolts is to be avoided.

It is essential that the base plate be robust and manufactured with stiffening to avoid any distortion of the support under operating conditions.

No shimming between the gearbox and base plate shall be allowed.

The base plate shall sufficiently elevate the surface aerator assembly to facilitate the periodic draining of oil from the gearbox drain valve. The baseplate shall further facilitate the inspection of the surface aerator and shaft coupling without lifting the gearbox from the mounting position above the platform floor.

M06.8 AERATOR MOTORS

The electric motors shall be coupled to the gearboxes by means of a pin type flexible coupling.

The size of the aerators and aerator gearboxes shall be based on standard electric motor sizes and shall be rated to absorb the total mechanical power delivered by the standard electric motor. The power available for aeration at the motor shaft shall be de-rated to 90% of motor rated power, i.e. an allowance of 10% shall be made for additional losses in the electrical motor at full load.

For a detailed specification for the electrical motors required refer to Particular Specification E01: Electric Motors.

M06.1 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION

The equipment unit components shall be constructed using the critical material specified in the table below:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL
Aerator Turbine	Epoxy coated mild steel
Aerator Turbine shaft	Epoxy coated mild steel
Aerator Base Plate	hot dip galvanized mild steel
Fasteners or Jacking bolts	316 stainless steel
All other accessories shall be of the manufacturer's standard, industry approved, and corrosion protected.	

M06.2 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to the G02: Corrosion Protection.

M06.3 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M06.4 AERATION EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE

The complete turbine assembly shall be subjected to static balancing witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative during manufacture and before final onsite installation. A methodology shall be submitted by the Tenderer to accomplish the offered aeration equipment performance to the satisfaction of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Vibrations in operation are to be kept to a minimum and it will be the Contractors responsibility to check this torsional vibration for each aerator assembly, both theoretically and in-situ.

M06.5 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS AND SPECIAL TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended to be kept by the water treatment plant for maintenance of the plant. Spares which the Client decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately, and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

For special tools being used on offered equipment. Tenderers must submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M06.6 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE

The Defects Liability period shall be a minimum period of 12 months calculated from the date stated in the Completion Certificate. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representatives reserves the right to extend the Defects Liability Period in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of at least 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification

M06.7 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

M06.7.1 General

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project.

The Contractor's Quality Management System shall be in accordance with industry standard.

The Contractor shall implement a comprehensive Quality Control programme and accept full responsibility for the quality of his workmanship and material used, irrespective of any quality surveillance that may be carried out by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

In keeping with the basic principles Quality Management System, the Contractor and Subcontractor(s) shall:

- Be responsible for compliance with all the requirements of the Specification in

every respect;

- Carry out all inspections and tests called for in the Specification in the presence of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The cost of these inspections and tests shall be carried out at the sole expense and under the responsibility of the Contractor;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for manufacture for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during manufacturing process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during manufacture, cleaning and preparation for application as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for corrosion protection for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during corrosion protection process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during corrosion protection as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for installation for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during installation process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during installation as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance; and
- Draft Quality Control Plans for any other construction process as may be required for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during the execution of the process indicating all the intended stages of testing as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance.

The Quality Control Plans will not be compromised once approved and shall be adhered to at all times. The Contractor shall operate approved quality assurance and control programmes in the Supplier's and Manufacturer's premises and on Site in order to verify that the Works comply with this Section. Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for approval, quality plans describing the procedures, standards of acceptance, hold point inspections, routine and type tests to be carried out for each component both during manufacture and on Site.

Although it shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the Works conform to the Specification, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be entitled to inspect, examine and test the materials, workmanship and performance of every item of Plant. The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will notify the Contractor which tests or inspections, detailed in the quality plan, he will attend.

Approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative of materials, workmanship, etc., during manufacture or at Site will not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to comply with all the requirements of the Contract.

All instruments and appliances necessary for the complete inspection and testing shall be provided by the Contractor. Calibration certificates for instruments shall be produced to the Engineer for review prior to the commencement of any tests and, if required by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative, instruments shall be re-calibrated at the Contractor's own account before commencement of the tests.

In general, Quality Management System should be bench marked in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M06.7.2 Material Tests

The Manufacturer's material test data and the Contractor's quality records shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Reasonable samples of the cleaning and coating materials to be used may be taken for testing.

Rejection of the samples shall place a hold on the use of the materials of the same batch number and any components that have already been cleaned/coated with rejected material shall be re-cleaned and coated.

M06.7.3 Type Tests

Where the Contractor offers Plant selected from the standard range of products from a specialist manufacturer, type tests in accordance with a recognised international standard are required on one unit of each type to prove satisfactory design and quality of manufacture of that Plant.

The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative may waive the requirement for type tests if he is satisfied that tests have previously been performed on identical Plant. The Contractor shall submit the data and results with his Quality Plan in sufficient time to allow for repeat tests without delaying the Works should the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative not approve the evidence submitted.

M06.7.4 Performance Testing

Works Testing

All Equipment shall be subject to a Factory Acceptance Test (FAT) by the Manufacturer and witness by Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative at the Manufacturer's premises before despatch. All performance test results shall be made available to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

In the case of gearboxes, they shall be subject to testing under operating conditions for at least 12 hours on the test bed. All results shall be available for inspection.

Equipment may only be despatch from factory once all relevant "hold points" on QCP's have been signed off by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and/or the Approved Inspection Authority (AIA) in accordance with approved quality control plan.

Before Commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked, and the results shall be available for inspection by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.
- Check correct submergence of each turbine and adjust on the jacking bolts.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this project.

During Commissioning

- Ensure all oil pumps and flow or pressure switches are functional
- Check for correct operation of aerator rotation, speed, vibration and noise.
- Check and record vibration readings.
- Note amperage drawn by each assembly.

- In-situ Oxygenation Efficiency Tests to determine the oxygen transfer efficiency of each aerator as well as the total oxygen transferred.

M06.7.5 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Contractor has an obligation to visit the site every quarter with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing.

M06.7.6 In-situ Oxygenation Efficiency Determination

Each aerator assembly shall be tested in order to verify the performance and oxygen transfer efficiency by means of the Steady State or in situ testing into mixed liquor under normal operating conditions. An item has been included in the Schedule of Prices for this work by the Successful Tenderer.

Procedure for Steady State Testing

It is imperative that the successful Tenderer employ a recognised testing authority to perform any efficiency testing that may be required under this section of the Contract, and this will be subject to approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

The Alpha and Beta correction factors shall be verified in a laboratory capable of determining these figures for use under this test.

In the aeration of activated sludge mixed liquor, at a certain temperature at T degree Centigrade, there is a dynamic steady state condition, at a certain oxygen concentration C, the driving force Cs – C becomes such that the rate which oxygen is introduced is equal to the rate at which it is utilised by the bacteria within the aerated reactor.

This relationship can be represented by the following equation: -

In equation (1), r and C can be determined, and Cs (TO can be obtained from equation (2), so that the value of K (T) can be calculated. Its value at 20ºC can be obtained by the use of the following relationship: -

- K(T) = K(20) x 1,02 (T-20)
- K(20) = K(T) x 1,02 (20-T)
- OC = K(20) x C1s (20) x V x 10-3 kg/hr

Where: -

- K(20) x C1s (20) saturation concentration of oxygen in mixed liquor containing 1 000 mg/l dissolved solids, at 20ºC and 760 mm pressure (mg/l)
- V 9,02 mg/l volume of mixed liquor in basin under consideration (m^3)
- OC oxygen capacity

Test Requirements

The actual test procedure shall be proposed by the Contractor but shall be approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative before it is implemented if different from above.

Nevertheless, the following points shall be incorporated in the test procedure: -

- The Contractor shall provide four dissolved oxygen meters of approved make, all standardized and calibrated in accordance with the instructions supplied by the manufacturers

- The Contractor shall provide all meters, etc required for conducting the oxygen uptake rate tests
- The position of the DO probes shall be to the satisfaction of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative
- The Contractor shall provide all meters required to measure the power consumption of the aerators during the steady oxygenation capacity test
- At least three consecutive tests shall be conducted
- The Contractor shall provide all meters, required for determination of the alpha and beta factors to enable the in-situ oxygenation efficiencies to be related to Standard Conditions.

M06.7.7 Steady State Oxygenation Capacity Determination

In the aeration of activated sludge mixed liquor, at a temperature of T°C, the following relationship holds: -

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = K(T) \times (C_S(T) - C) - r$$

Where

$\frac{dC}{dt}$ = rate of change of oxygen concentration (mg/l/h)

K (T) = oxygen transfer co-efficient in mixed liquor at T°C (h1)

Cs (T) = saturation concentration of oxygen in mixed liquor at T°C and at the ambient barometric pressure (mg/l)

C = actual concentration of oxygen in the mixed liquor (mg/l)

r = oxygen update rate of the mixed liquor (mg/l/hr)

If it is assumed that, under normal conditions, as state of equilibrium exists in the system, then: -

$$\frac{dC}{dt} = 0$$

and $K(T) \times (C_S(T) - C) = r$

$$\text{i.e. } K(T) = \frac{r}{C_S(T) - C} \quad (1)$$

The value of C (T) to be used in equation (1) is calculated from the following relationship: -

$$C_S(T) \quad \frac{468 - 2{,}65S}{31{,}6 + T} \times \frac{P - Pw}{760 - Pw} \quad (2)$$

Where: -

Cs(T) = saturation concentration of oxygen in mixed liquor at T°C and P mm [pressure (mg/l)

S = dissolved solids in mixed liquor (parts per 1000)

T = temperature of mixed liquor (ºC)

P = barometric pressure (635 mm 1-1g)

Pw = saturation vapour pressure of water at TºC (mm 11g)

M06.7.8 Quality Control Records

Accurate and detailed quality control records shall be kept by the Contractor for all stages of the work.

All the quality control records shall be available for inspection by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

The collection of record documents for each item of Plant shall be collated and bound in a logical manner and retained by the Contractor as proof of quality achieved. These shall be available on demand for quality control and part payment releases.

The records shall be neatly filed and handed over to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. on completion of the work in the form of a Data Pack together with all relevant material and test certificates. Only after the Data Pack has been approved and signed off by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. shall Plant be dispatched to Site.

M06.7.9 Substandard Quality Control

All material, certification and records of the Contractor shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

This shall include the checking and testing of the Plant at the Works and on Site, installation and pre-acceptance testing. If any deviation is found, additional testing and quality

surveillance shall be carried out at the Contractor's own costs until approved by the

Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

If the additional testing confirms inaccurate quality control by the Contractor on an item of Plant, all work shall be stopped on that item of Plant and shall only proceed after remedial action in the quality control system has been implemented.

M06.7.10 Access for Surveillance

For the purpose of carrying out quality surveillance, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be granted access to any part of the Contractor's premises relevant to the work being carried out, at any reasonable time.

M06.7.11 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Employer's Agent or Representative opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Employer's Agent or

Representative during design and manufacture per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M06.7.12 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Employer's Agent or Representative shall be afforded every opportunity to certain stages of completion of the installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site activities at the Employer's Agent or Representative's discretion

M06.8 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE

Training shall be provided by the Contractor (or specialist equipment suppliers) based on the supplied and approved operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals for all supplied equipment. This training shall be provided to the Operations and Mechanical including other support discipline staff of the Employer along with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives. The duration of the training period shall be advised by the Contractor and agreed with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives.

The training structure for the equipment and/or system should include both the theory and practical components of the equipment derived from the O&M manuals.

The preparation of the O&M manuals shall be based on the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Particular specification for Commissioning and Operation.

M06.9 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY

The Contractor shall hand over to the Employer' Agent or Employer's Representative four sets (x2 hard copies and x2 electronic copies on non-locked USB) of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant. A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

- Brief description of the plant and installation.
- Concise operating instructions including start-up, operating, shutdown and troubleshooting procedures.
- Routine maintenance instruction this shall include failure mode analysis and preventative strategies.
- Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.
- Detailed information on equipment.
- Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.
- Schematic Diagram and Drawings
- Risk, Health and Safety Assessment with proposed control measures.

M06.10 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. 's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, they shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, he will submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. . Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M06.11 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar types of equipment are required, these units will be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied will be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M06.12 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for required equipment unless otherwise specified in the detail/project specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with such required equipment shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for equipment and specified as such in the detail /project specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

M06.12.1 General

The following items shall, inter alia, be included in the rates:

- Supply of all design and pre-manufacture documentation and obtaining approval thereof;
- Procurement/manufacture of required equipment with associated equipment items and delivery to Site;
- Installation of complete required equipment with associated equipment items and testing;
- Services required during period of initial use before handover to the Employer.

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery; installation and testing; and commissioning and trail operation of the equipment.

M06.12.2 **Supply and delivery to site with documentation**

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery to site with documentation	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, inspections, quality control, quality assurance, factory acceptance testing, corrosion protection, packing, delivery to site including transportation costs and offloading on site including any cranage requirements. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M06.12.3 **Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Surface Aeration Equipment**

Item	**Unit**

Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment .....No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified on Site including the provision of all labour, supervision, instruments, equipment, transport, on-site quality assurance and quality control, inspection and testing (including attendance at tests witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative), materials and Temporary Works necessary to completely install, test and commission and render fully operational surface aeration equipment.

The rate shall also include the cost of the installation of all auxiliary equipment not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified until taken over by the Employer; the putting into service of the complete installation; remedial work and any other work as specified and necessary.

The rate shall also include for all preliminary testing and the provision of testing equipment therefore including all disruptions to installation caused by such testing.

Payment will only be effected after full compliance of the equipment items with this Section and associated documentation has been approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

After 600 hours of initial operation the Contractor shall take an oil sample from every aerator gearbox and send it to an approved lab for analyses and submit the results to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Depending on the lab test results the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will instruct the Contractor to take the required actions.

M06.12.4 **Trial Operations**

Item	**Unit**
Trial Operations	No

This specification allows for a number of calendar days within which the system Trial Operation can be completed after completion of commissioning process. The Contractor shall programme and price for providing full technical and operational support during trail operation.

M06.12.5 **Employer's Operator Training**

Item	**Unit**
Training	No

Payment for Training of the Employer's Operational Staff will be made under this Section as set out in project specification or agreed with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The lump sum shall be inclusive of all costs associated with the training programme and on-site training of personnel.

M06.12.6 **Spares Equipment**

Item	**Unit**

Spares.....No

The cost of spares, considered to be necessary by the Contractor other than spares required by the Employer, delivered to Site and handed over will be paid as a lump sum. A Spare Part Schedule subject to approval by the Employer's Agent/ Employer's representative shall be submited before procurement of spares.

The actual lump sum to be paid shall be based on the unit rates priced in the Bill of Quantity for the actual spares ordered and supplied and the Employer is entitled to purchase all, some or none of the items listed. A provisional sum will be allocated in the Bill of Quantity for the complete list of spare parts as listed by the Contractor.The rate tendered shall provide for the manufacture, supply, delivery to Site and handing over of the spares ordered and shall include permanent packing for long term storage. The spares shall be manufactured at the same time as the installed items.

----------**END**----------

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M07: MECHANICAL AXIAL FLOW PUMPING EQUIPMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5

October 2021

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: Particular Specification – M07: MECHANICAL AXIAL FLOW PUMPING EQUIPMENT

JW Reference: ???

Document Ref. No: M07

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Mechanical Engineer (Hatch)	Mbongiseni Mahlangu, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Reviewed	Project Manager (Hatch)	Johan Prinsloo, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Approved	JW Best Practice Manager	Rendani Davhana	13/06/2022	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2021-10-11	5	J Prinsloo	Detailed Review
2013-10-23	4	J Ritchie	Minor updates and re-issued
2012-07-30	3	T Wellard	General review
2010-02-16	2	J Ritchie	General review
2009-05-12	1		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M07: MECHANICAL AXIAL FLOW PUMPING EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M07.1 SCOPE 3

M07.2 INTERPRETATIONS 3
M07.2.1 Definitions 3
M07.2.2 Abbreviations 3
M07.2.3 Standards 5
M07.2.4 Other Particular Specification 6

M07.3 DESIGN OF AXIAL FLOW PUMPING EQUIPMENT 6
M07.3.1 General Design Parameters 6
M07.3.2 Specific Performance Design Parameters 7
M07.3.3 Pump Performance Data 7

M07.4 AXIAL FLOW PUMP DESIGN 8
M07.4.1 Support frame and baseplate 8
M07.4.2 Impeller Shaft 8
M07.4.3 Impeller Blades 8
M07.4.5 Throat Tube 9
M07.4.6 Bearings 9

M07.5 FASTENERS 9

M07.6 COLOUR CODING 10

M07.7 CORROSION PROTECTION 10

M07.8 MOTOR AND DRIVE 11

M07.9 FLAP GATES 11

M07.10 LIFTING EQUIPMENT 11

M07.11 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION 12

M07.12 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS 12

M07.13 INSTALLATION 12

M07.14 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE 13

M07.15 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 13
M07.15.1 Material Tests 14
M07.15.2 Type Tests 14
M07.15.3 Substandard Quality Control 14
M07.15.4 Access for Surveillance 15
M07.15.5 Manufacture 15
M07.15.6 Installation 15

M07.16 EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE TESTING 15
M07.16.1 Works testing 15
M07.16.2 Before commissioning 15
M07.16.3 During Commissioning 16
M07.16.4 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period 16

M07.17 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE 16

M07.18 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY 16

M07.19 DRAWINGS 17

M07.20 INTERCHANGEABILITY 17

M07.21 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 17
M07.21.1 General 17
M07.21.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation 18
M07.21.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment 18
M07.21.4 Trial Operations 19
M07.21.5 Employer's Operator Training 19
M07.21.6 Spares Equipment 19

M07.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, off-loading on site, installation, testing and commissioning of mechanical type axial flow pumping equipment for the (a) and (b) recycles within the biological reactor unit process of a wastewater treatment works. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with that of the Project Specification and all relevant other Particular Specifications.

M07.2 INTERPRETATIONS

This specification shall be interpreted as follows:

- For the Employer design components, it shall be regarded as a specification.
- For the Contractor design components obligations, it shall be regarded as an Employer's requirements

M07.2.1 Definitions

For the purpose of this Specification the following definitions apply:

(a) "**Manufacture**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, fabrication and assembly, any specified corrosion protection measures and any off-site inspection or testing of materials or parts.

(b) "**Supply**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, manufacture and fabrication, any specified corrosion protection measures and all required off-site inspection or testing.

(c) "**Installation**" includes, as applicable, all handling and transport from storage, erection and aligning of Works.

(d) "**Factory Acceptance Test (FAT)**" shall refer to all tests done on Plant or Plant items at the factory to ensure its functionality.

(e) "**Pump Unit**" shall refer to the pump, motor, power transmission elements, support structures (e.g. baseplates, frame, etc), shaft, impeller, throat tube and auxiliary equipment.

(f) "**Drive Unit**" shall refer to the motor, power transmission elements (V-belts & Pulley), support structures (e.g. baseplates, frame, etc) and auxiliary equipment.

(g) "**Impellor Assembly**" shall refer to the designed and constructed unit to achieve the required duty flow and head comprising of as a minimum vane and/or hub with mounting details to the drive shaft.

M07.2.2 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply: -

°C	: Temperature in degrees Celsius
A	: Ampere
AC	: Alternating Current
AGMA	: American Gear Manufactures Association

ANSI	: American National Standards Institute
API	: American Petroleum Institute
ASCE	: American Society of Civil Engineers
ASME	: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	: American Society for Testing and Materials
BEP	: Best Efficiency Point
BS	: British Standards Institution
BSPT	: British Standard pipe thread
CAD	: Computer Aided Drawing
CAM	: Computer Aided Manufacturing
CIP	: Cleaning in Place
COC	: Certificate of Conformance
D	: Diameter
dB(A)	: Sound pressure level, “A” weighed in decibels
DCS	: Distributed Control System
DFT	: Dry Film Thickness
DIN	: Deutsch Industry Normen
DN	: Nominal diameter
DP	: Differential Pressure
Eff.	: Filter efficiency in %
EPDM	: Ethylene Propylène Diène Monomer
ERW	: Electrical resistance weld
ETP	: Effluent Treatment Plant
FA	: Flange adaptor
FAT	: Factory Acceptance Tests
FBE	: Flanged both ends
FOE	: Flanged one end
FW	: Field weld
HDPE	: High Density Polyethylene
HoW	: Head of Works
ID	: Inside diameter
ISO	: International Organisation for Standardization
JW	: Johannesburg Water
ℓ/s	: Flow in litres per second
LV	: Low Voltage
m	: Distance in metre
m.a.s.l	: Metres above (mean) sea level
m/s	: Speed in metres per second
MCC	: Motor Control Centre
mm	: Dimension in millimetres
MPVC	: Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes
MV	: Medium Voltage
N+1	: No of units in operation + 1 installed spare
Nm^3/hr	: Normal cubic meters per hour
O&M	: Operation and Maintenance
OD	: Outside diameter
OEM	: Original equipment Manufacturer
OHS	: Occupational Health and Safety
Pa	: Pressure in Pascals
PBE	: Plain both ends

PE	: Plain end
PN	: Nominal pressure (Rating)
PPE	: Personal Protective Equipment
PQP	: Project Quality Plan
PSV	: Pressure Safety Valve
QCP	: Quality Control Plan
RFA	: Restrained flange adaptor
rpm	: Rotational speed in revolutions per minute
SAECC	: South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
SANS	: South African National Standards
SAT	: Site Acceptance Tests
SAW	: Submerged arc weld
SCADA	: Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SIS	: Swedish Institute of Standards
SOC	: Slip-on coupling
SS	: Stainless Steel
STP	: Standard Temperature and Pressure (i.e. T = 20°C, P = 101, 3 kPa).
w.t	: Wall thickness of pipes
TDS	: Total Dissolved Solids
uPVC	: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
VSD	: Variable Speed Drive
WP (B)	: Weld preparation (Butt)

M07.2.3 Standards

All design standards for the axial flow pumping equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications: -

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
PD 5304:2014	:	Guidance on safe use of machinery
SANS9606-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS ISO1312-1:2018	:	Rolling bearings. Accessories for sleeve type linear ball bearings. Boundary dimensions, geometrical product specifications (GPS) and tolerances for series 1 and 3
SANS 15614-1	:	Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials - Welding procedure test Part 1: Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs

SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts
BS 3790	:	Specification for belt drives - Endless wedge belts, endless V-belts, banded wedge belts, banded V-belts and their corresponding pulleys

M07.2.4 Other Particular Specification

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M08: Volume M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes
E01: Volume E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors
G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes
G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection
Volume 1: Automation and Control Design Standards SCADA
Volume 9: Automation and Control Design Standards Level Measurement
Volume 6: Automation and Control Design Standards Cabling

M07.3 DESIGN OF AXIAL FLOW PUMPING EQUIPMENT

M07.3.1 General Design Parameters

Axial flow pumping equipment shall be designed such that the following requirements are met: -

- To ensure reasonable standards of engineering in design, materials selection and construction processes;
- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs;
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 15 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site;
- The offered equipment shall be support in forms of spares by the original equipment manufacturer for at least 15 years in alignment with the specified life expectation of 15 years from project installation;
- The minimum availability of the equipment shall be 99 %;
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature change;
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum that represent the value for money in both the initial purchase and subsequent running costs;
- To facilitate inter-changeability of units and/or sub-parts throughout the operational life of the new equipment against the existing equipment and/or sub-parts currently being used on the existing JW Wastewater Treatment Works;
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise. Maximum of 75dBA measured at 1 metre from operating equipment;
- To comply with the legal requirements such as the Occupational Health & Safety Act, 1993 and Regulation's requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution;
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the latest editions of the published statutory codes and legislation; and

- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M07.3.2 Specific Performance Design Parameters

The 'A' and 'B' -recycle pumping equipment shall be of the axial flow type capable of pumping large volumes of mixed liquor at relatively low resistance - (Head). The pumping duty requirements for each pumping set shall be 2 x average design flow for each 'A' Recycle in Aerobic Zone to Anoxic Zone and 1 x average design flow for each 'B' Recycle Anoxic Zone to Pre-anoxic Zone unless specified otherwise.

A–recycle stream design shall be based on the minimum of two duty pumps with one standby pumps, and B recycle stream design shall be based on duty and standby installation. The preferable pump drive system for both pumps shall be V-Belt drive with robust pulley installation.

Where gearbox driven units are offered, supporting technical records of reliability operation on similar environmental conditions shall be provided. All alternatives shall be subject to approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative.

The design of the axial flow blades shall be such as to eliminate the undue accumulation of rags and debris material around the impellors and the shaft while the efficiency of the pump is optimised.

The design of the inlet throat tube, propeller blades, flap non-return valves etc shall be such that the there is no air entrainment in the recycled liquor.

Provision shall be made for the recycle pump flow rate to be adjustable between the preferred operating region of 70% - 120% of the BEP. Adjustability in the flow rate shall be accomplished by means of varying the pitch angle of the blades manually or by means of a v-belt driven pulley arrangement.

The components of the axial pump shall be rotating impeller, separate throat tube and the drive shaft. A surface mounted cantilever type design for the drive unit shall be offered to eliminate liquid media submerged bearings supporting the driven shaft of the pump unless otherwise specified in the project specification based on the location and design of the reactor tank(s).

Different types of metals shall be isolated from one another to prevent corrosion due to galvanic reaction. Refer to section M07.5 in this document for a detailed specification.

M07.3.3 Pump Performance Data

Detailed performance curves for the pump type shall be provided at the time of tendering. The curve(s) shall indicate the following:

- Head (metres) vs. flow (litres/second) - The curve shall extend from 0% to 120% of the selected BEP based on the duty flow
- Power absorbed in kW - The curve shall extend from 0% to 120% of the selected BEP based on the duty flow
- Pump efficiency – The curve shall extend from 0% to 120% of the selected BEP based on the duty flow range.
- The Net Positive Suction Head curves required by the pumps at the specified flow rate operating envelope. The selected pump NPSH_available shall always be greater (including the safety margins) than NPSH_required at all potential operating points. The tenderer shall indicate the relevant safety margin that

needs to be maintained.

- The efficiency curve shall be flat over a wide range in order to provide efficient working at various pump operating conditions.

M07.4 AXIAL FLOW PUMP DESIGN

M07.4.1 Support frame and baseplate

The pump support frame and cover plate shall be designed to house the upper and lower non-submerged bearing assemblies. The cover plate shall be easily removable to allow for bearing maintenance and/or replacement,. Greasing point shall be extended to the surface of the cover plate to enable greasing without removal of the cover plate The base frames shall be mounted to a robust platform with due consideration to corrosion and operational forces.

The support frame shall have enough bracing and member selection to withstand the bending and axial loads imposed by the drive motor and transmission elements. The minimum structural support plate thickness shall be 8 mm and the fillet welds shall be 5 mm calculated based on the thickness of the thicker material in accordance with AWS D1.1 specification unless otherwise specified in the Project Specification.

M07.4.2 Impeller Shaft

The impeller shaft shall be suitable designed to transmit the imposed torque loads induced by the impeller and withstand all bending and axial cantilevered loads imposed by installed drive motor and ancillaries for all operational conditions. The impeller shaft shall be of a single unison or two-part configuration type. The shafts must be installed and secured on a truly vertical position.

For the two-part type of shaft, the shaft assembly shall be made of a top shaft which will be above the coping level of the pump chamber and the bottom shaft which is submerged. Both shafts shall be assembled by a precision rigid standard flanged coupling unless otherwise specified in the Project specification.

The design for both upper and lower shaft assembly shall be such that it will be able to run well outside the main critical speed without experiencing excessive vibration.

M07.4.3 Impeller Blades

The impellor design and vanes numbers shall be selected on the optimised calculated specific speed and the specific speed selected shall not exceed 1500 rpm The impeller blades shall be of a well proven swept back design selected to achieve the required head and flow characteristics. The impeller blades shall be mounted and secured to the lower end of the shaft. Alternative offers of the impellor blades design and mounting to the drive shaft will be subjected to the approval of the Employer's Agent or representative.

M07.4.4 Balancing

The blade assembly shall be subjected to static and dynamic balancing as part of manufacturing process before despatch for final onsite installation. Vibrations in operation shall be kept to a minimum and it will be the Contractors responsibility to check this torsional vibration for each pump set assembly, in-situ.

The impeller shall have a maximum vibration velocity of 2.5 mm/s at specified conditions as per ISO 10816-7 Category 1, Zone A application. Static balancing alone

is not acceptable as there is no qualitative measurement of the remaining amount of unbalance left in the assembly and does not confront the basic definition of checking unbalance against a known standard.

M07.4.5 Throat Tube

A suitable designed throat tube shall be designed and provided in-line with the flow profile that will give an optimised pumping efficiency along with the impeller assembly. The throat tube inlet and outlet openings must be incorporated to ensure smooth entry and exit flow conditions respectively. This item shall be fixed and grouted into the exiting civil structure.

The Tenderer in their design shall ensure that the Blade tip clearance does not result in the throat tube or the blades to be damaged during the normal operation of the pump. The Blade tip clearance between the propeller and the throat tube must ensure that a minimum of liquid slip takes place thus maintaining maximum efficiency. Therefore, the Blade tip clearance shall be same around the throat tube and shall not exceed 1% of the impeller diameter.

M07.4.6 Bearings

All bearings shall be designed or selected for a life of at least 100 000 hours at an (L 10) rating. Bearings for the output shaft shall be designed to withstand bending, up thrust, down pull and radial loads imposed by the pump blades. The installation of the bearings shall be of the plumber's block type selected with reference to counter the loadings and shall be secured onto the supporting frame. Tenderers shall indicate what these forces are and how these shall be accommodated.

Calculations shall be submitted with the Tender. Failure to do so may render the Tender invalid. The bearings shall carry all axial and radial loads and accommodate any thermal expansion. Bearings should be sealed against the ingress of liquid and must be selected for a L10 life in excess of 100 000 hours.

For ease of lubrication all bearing grease pipes must be piped to grease nipples on the outer cover of the pump support frame.

M07.5 FASTENERS

Nuts, bolts, studs and washers for incorporation in the Works shall conform to the requirement of the appropriate approved standard.

Bolts shall be of such standard length that a minimum of two to four complete threads shall protrude beyond the nut when in the fully tightened condition. The same shall applies to stud units. Mating surfaces shall be adequately protected against corrosion whilst awaiting assembly of the faces and bolting, all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All high tensile bolts and studs used in the Works shall bear the letter HTS stamped or engraved on the end.

Washers shall be provided under all bolt heads and nuts. The threads of bolts and studs shall be lubricated before assembly with a lubricating substance subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration arrangements shall be provided where necessary and shall

be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

Stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers shall be in accordance with SANS 1700 A70, and the grade of stainless steel shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Hot Dip Galvanized fasteners shall comply with the requirements of SANS 121. High strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, nuts, load indicator washers and washers shall subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and shall be hot dip galvanized. High strength friction grip bolts shall be tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the tension shall be re-checked not less than 3 hours after first tightening and then the bolts shall be retightened to the initial load all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All stainless steel holding down bolts, nuts and washers in contact with a dissimilar material shall be provided with isolating washers and sleeves (insolating kit) where appropriate to prevent galvanic corrosion, unless otherwise specified in the project specification. The bed plates and machinery shall be provided with means of adjustment for line and level to maintain the items of Plant in correct alignment during grouting. Packers used for adjustment shall be of non-corrosive material to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Holding down bolts which are to be tightened after grouting shall be provided with bond breakers where they pass through the grout.

Where there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt and nut does not exceed half of the yield stress of the bolt material under all conditions. The shear value of high strength friction grip bolts shall be reduced in proportion to the reduced tensile stress compared with the normal design stress.

No tapped holes in mild steel shall be allowed. Where tapped holes are unavoidable, this shall be done into stainless steel.

Where bolts and nuts are required to be removed and re-assembled on a regular basis, these shall be of stainless steel.

Metal coatings and other treatments applied to fasteners shall be carried out in a manner which will not cause hydrogen embrittlement of the parent material.

M07.6 COLOUR CODING

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Coding.

M07.7 CORROSION PROTECTION

All mild steel members shall be prepared and coated in accordance with Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

The corrosion protection of Stainless-steel welds shall entail pickling and passivating in accordance with Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M07.8 MOTOR AND DRIVE

Belt driven pumps are preferable to gearbox driven pumps.

The belt drives should comply with BS 3790; Specification for belt drives - Endless wedge belts, endless V-belts, banded wedge belts, banded V-belts and their corresponding pulleys. The upper end of the drive assembly i.e. the section of the drive unit above the coping level from the baseplate must be fitted with an adjustable tensioning support bracket for mounting the drive motor on a vertical up facing direction the input shaft with the motor foot side mounted on the support bracket. This arrangement shall make provision for adjustment of the "V" belt tension and allow for changing pulleys without difficulty and shall fit to the standards motor and the pump shaft. All rotating elements shall be provided with adequate protecting covers or guarding to cater for all probable pulley sizes in-line with the speed or flowrate adjustments guaranteed by the Tenderer as specified in M07.3.2.

The guards must be solid plate and domed to avoid water ponding and contamination of the "V" belts and upper bearing, whilst allowing adequate air cooling for belts. The guard shall be design with provision for visual inspection without the removal of the guard cover.

A suitable standard High efficiency fixed speed rated motor must be provided and the motor power transmitted to the shaft by adequately rated "V" belts. Should one belt break, the remaining belt(s) must be capable of transmitting the required power without overloading the motor or causing unwarranted failures.

The electrical motor supplied shall conform to the Particular Specification E01: Electrical Motors. The motor must be rated at least 20% above the maximum absorbed power and must be weatherproofed for unprotected / outdoors conditions

M07.9 FLAP GATES

Each pump chamber delivery port shall be fitted with a non-return flap gate to prevent the flow from the duty pump flowing back through the standby unit delivery port.

The gates shall be mounted in a suitable support frame correctly sized to suite the delivery port detailed. The flap gate shall be bolted over the opening onto the concrete wall surface. The frame shall be sealed against the concrete with a durable and approved material.

A gate with robust hinges along the upper edge must be suspended from the frame and swing closed under no flow conditions with minimal pressure differential. The hinge design must allow the gate to seat squarely on the seat in the frame. Adequately sized Stainless Steel mounting bolts shall be used to fix the frame in position.

M07.10 LIFTING EQUIPMENT

if not specified in the project specification, there axial pumps shall be supplied under the same contract with a lifting crawl beam installed over the centre of the pumps. The minimum safe working load shall be 1000 kg. The lifting equipment shall be design and manufactured from corrosion protect structural steel. The details of such lifting equipment shall be referred to in the particular specification for lifting equipment.

M07.11 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION

The pump unit components shall be constructed of the material specified in the Table below:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Pump support frame	Hot Dipped Galvanised Mild steel
Support frame covers for bearing and V-belt pulley elements	Mild steel epoxy coated
Throat tube	304L stainless steel
Pump impeller	304L stainless steel
Pump shaft	304L stainless steel
Belt drive pulleys	Cast Iron
Crawl beam	Hot dipped Galvanized Structural steel
Base frame	Hot dipped Galvanized Mild steel
Hold down bolts	316 stainless steel
Non-return flap gate and frame	304L stainless steel
All other accessories shall be of the manufacturer's standard, industry approved, and corrosion protected.	

M07.12 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended to be kept by the water treatment plant for maintenance of the plant. Spares which the Client decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately, and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

For special tools being used on offered equipment. Tenderers must submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M07.13 INSTALLATION

The pump shall be placed on a mounted base which shall be suitable for bolting to the concrete plate form floor above the pump chamber. The grout thickness shall be between 30-50mm by means of a non-shrink grout between the base plate and the concrete surface.

The pump shaft must be concentric in the throat of the draught tube after installation, alignment of the shaft to the throat tube shall be tested and confirmed before permanent throat tube installation purpose of minimising damage to the bearings and coating (where applicable).

M07.14 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE

The Defects Liability period shall be a minimum period of 12 months calculated from the date stated in the Completion Certificate. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representatives reserves the right to extend the Defects Liability Period in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of at least 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification.

M07.15 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project. The Contractor's Quality Management System shall be in accordance with industry standard. The Contractor shall implement a comprehensive Quality Control programme and accept full responsibility for the quality of his workmanship and material used, irrespective of any quality surveillance that may be carried out by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. In keeping with the basic principles Quality Management System, the Contractor and Subcontractor(s) shall:

- Be responsible for compliance with all the requirements of the Specification in every respect;
- Carry out all inspections and tests called for in the Specification in the presence of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The cost of these inspections and tests shall be carried out at the sole expense and under the responsibility of the Contractor;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for manufacture for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during manufacturing process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during manufacture, cleaning and preparation for application as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for corrosion protection for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during corrosion protection process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during corrosion protection as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for installation for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during installation process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during installation as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance; and
- Draft Quality Control Plans for any other construction process as may be required for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during the execution of the process indicating all the intended stages of testing as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance.

The Quality Control Plans will not be compromised once approved and shall always be adhered to. The Contractor shall operate approved quality assurance and control programmes in the Supplier's and Manufacturer's premises and on Site in order to verify that the Works comply with this Section. Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for approval, quality plans describing the procedures, standards of

acceptance, hold point inspections, routine and type tests to be carried out for each component both during manufacture and on Site.

Although it shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the Works conform to the Specification, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be entitled to inspect, examine and test the materials, workmanship and performance of every item of Plant. The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will notify the Contractor which tests or inspections, detailed in the quality plan, he will attend.

Approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative of materials, workmanship, etc., during manufacture or at Site will not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to comply with all the requirements of the Contract.

All instruments and appliances necessary for the complete inspection and testing shall be provided by the Contractor. Calibration certificates for instruments shall be produced to the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative for review prior to the commencement of any tests and, if required by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative, instruments shall be re-calibrated at the Contractor's own account before commencement of the tests.

In general, Quality Management System should be bench marked in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M07.15.1 Material Tests

The Manufacturer's material test data and the Contractor's quality records shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Reasonable samples of the cleaning and coating materials to be used may be taken for testing.

Rejection of the samples shall place a hold on the use of the materials of the same batch number and any components that have already been cleaned/coated with rejected material shall be re-cleaned and coated.

M07.15.2 Type Tests

Where the Contractor offers Plant selected from the standard range of products from a specialist manufacturer, type tests in accordance with a recognised international standard are required on one unit of each type to prove satisfactory design and quality of manufacture of that Plant.

The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative may waive the requirement for type tests if he is satisfied that tests have previously been performed on identical Plant. The Contractor shall submit the data and results with his Quality Plan in sufficient time to allow for repeat tests without delaying the Works should the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative not approve the evidence submitted.

M07.15.3 Substandard Quality Control

All material, certification and records of the Contractor shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

This shall include the checking and testing of the Plant at the Works and on Site, installation and pre-acceptance testing. If any deviation is found, additional testing and quality surveillance shall be carried out at the Contractor's own costs until approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

If the additional testing confirms inaccurate quality control by the Contractor on an item of Plant, all work shall be stopped on that item of Plant and shall only proceed after remedial action in the quality control system has been implemented.

M07.15.4 Access for Surveillance

For the purpose of carrying out quality surveillance, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be granted access to any part of the Contractor's premises relevant to the work being carried out, at any reasonable time.

M07.15.5 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.
The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Employer's Agent or Representative opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.
All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Employer's Agent or Representative during design and manufacture per these QCP's.
In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M07.15.6 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Employer's Agent or Representative shall be afforded every opportunity to certain stages of completion of the installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site activities at the Employer's Agent or Representative's discretion.

M07.16 EQUIPMENT PERFORMANCE TESTING

M07.16.1 Works testing

All Equipment shall be subject to a Factory Acceptance Test (FAT) by the Manufacturer and witness by Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative at the Manufacturer's premises before despatch. All performance test results shall be made available to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

Equipment may only be despatch from factory once all relevant "hold points" on QCP's have been signed off by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and/or the Approved Inspection Authority (AIA) in accordance with approved quality control plan

M07.16.2 Before commissioning

- Check that all bearings are greased and secured properly.
- Check that there is no debris in the throat;
- Manually turn the impeller and shaft to confirm that it can turns freely.
- Check the centre distance between the pulleys and ensure that the pulleys are level.
- Ensure that the belts are correctly tensioned with an approved instrument and adjust as recommended by the V-belt manufacturer and ensure that the pulleys

locked into position.

- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly with the allowable protruding threads of 2-4 threads.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly i.e. motor, drive shaft and impellor shall be checked, witnessed and the results shall be made available for inspection by the Employer's Agent or Representative.
- Check with the Employer's Agent or Representative that the correct clearance within the installation tolerance of the throat tube is maintained.
- The electrical installation, functions and control shall be checked by a competent inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.
- Check the motor rotation and confirm with reference to process and instrumentation drawing.
- Check the electrical motor overload settings.

M07.16.3 During Commissioning

- Ensure all lubrication levels are sufficient. Check and record for baseline purposes for correct measurement of the impeller rotational speed, vibration and noise.
- Note amperage drawn by each pump assembly.
- Measure the flow delivered and head achieved by each pump

M07.16.4 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Employer's Agent or Representative requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing within 14 days after the inspection to the Employer's Agent.

M07.17 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE

Training shall be provided by the Contractor (or specialist equipment suppliers) based on the supplied and approved operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals for all supplied equipment. This training shall be provided to the Operations and Mechanical including other support discipline staff of the Employer along with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives. The duration of the training period shall be advised by the Contractor and agreed with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives.

The training structure for the equipment and/or system should include both the theory and practical components of the equipment derived from the O&M manuals.

The preparation of the O&M manuals shall be based on the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Particular specification for Commissioning and Operation.

M07.18 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY

The Contractor shall hand over to the Employer' Agent or Employer's Representative four sets (x2 hard copies and x2 electronic copies on non-locked USB) of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant. A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

- Brief description of the plant and installation.
- Concise operating instructions including start-up, operating, shutdown and troubleshooting procedures.
- Routine maintenance instruction this shall include failure mode analysis and preventative strategies.
- Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.
- Detailed information on equipment.
- Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.
- Schematic Diagram and Drawings
- Risk, Health and Safety Assessment with proposed control measures.

M07.19 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. 's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, they shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, he will submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M07.20 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar types of equipment are required, these units will be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied will be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M07.21 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for required equipment unless otherwise specified in the detail/project specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with such required equipment shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for equipment and specified as such in the detail /project specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

M07.21.1 General

The following items shall be included in the rates:

- Supply of all design and pre-manufacture documentation and obtaining approval thereof;
- Procurement/manufacture of required equipment with associated equipment items and delivery to Site;

- Installation of complete required equipment with associated equipment items and testing;
- Services required during period of initial use before handover to the Employer.

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery; installation and testing; and commissioning and trail operation of the equipment. A further training requirement shall be allowed for as specified in the scheduled items.

M07.21.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery to site with documentation	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, inspections, quality control, quality assurance, factory acceptance testing, corrosion protection, packing, delivery to site including transportation costs and offloading on site including any cranage requirements. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M07.21.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment

Item	**Unit**
Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified on Site including the provision of all labour, supervision, instruments, equipment, transport, on-site quality assurance and quality control, inspection and testing (including attendance at tests witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative), materials and Temporary Works necessary to completely install, test and commission and render fully operational surface aeration equipment.

The rate shall also include the cost of the installation of all auxiliary equipment not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified until taken over by the Employer; the putting into service of the complete installation; remedial work and any other work as specified and necessary.

The rate shall also include for all preliminary testing and the provision of testing equipment therefore including all disruptions to installation caused by such testing.

Payment will only be effected after full compliance of the equipment items with this Section and associated documentation has been approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

M07.21.4 Trial Operations

Item	Unit
Trial Operations	No

This specification allows for a number of calendar days within which the system Trial Operation can be completed after completion of commissioning process. The Contractor shall programme and price for providing full technical and operational support during trail operation.

M07.21.5 Employer's Operator Training

Item	Unit
Training	No

Payment for Training of the Employer's Operational Staff will be made under this Section as set out in project specification or agreed with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The lump sum shall be inclusive of all costs associated with the training programme and on-site training of personnel.

M07.21.6 Spares Equipment

Item	Unit
Spares	No

The cost of spares, considered to be necessary by the Contractor other than spares required by the Employer, delivered to Site and handed over will be paid as a lump sum. A Spare Part Schedule subject to approval by the Employer's Agent/ Employer's representative shall be submited before procurement of spares.

The actual lump sum to be paid shall be based on the unit rates priced in the Bill of Quantity for the actual spares ordered and supplied and the Employer is entitled to purchase all, some or none of the items listed. A provisional sum will be allocated in the Bill of Quantity for the complete list of spare parts as listed by the Contractor.The rate tendered shall provide for the manufacture, supply, delivery to Site and handing over of the spares ordered and shall include permanent packing for long term storage. The spares shall be manufactured at the same time as the installed items.

----------END----------

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M08: MECHANICAL GEARBOXES

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5 October 2021

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: Particular Specification – M08: MECHANICAL GEARBOXES

JW Reference: ???

Document Ref. No: M08

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Mechanical Engineer (Hatch)	Mbongiseni Mahlangu, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Reviewed	Project Manager (Hatch)	Johan Prinsloo, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Approved	JW Best Practice Manager	Rendani Davhana	13/06/2022	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2021-10-11	5	J Prinsloo	Detailed Review
2013-10-23	4	J Ritchie	Minor updates and re-issued
2012-07-30	3	T Wellard	General review
2010-02-15	2	J Ritchie	General review
2009-05-12	1		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M08: MECHANICAL GEARBOXES

CONTENTS

M08.1 SCOPE 4

M08.2 INTERPRETATIONS 4
M08.2.1 Definitions 4
M08.2.2 Abbreviations 4
M08.2.3 Standards 6
M08.2.4 Other Particular Specifications 6

M08.3 GENERAL DESIGN PARAMETERS 7

M08.4 SPECIFIC DESIGN PARAMETERS 8
M08.4.1 Gears 9
M08.4.2 Service Factor 9
M08.4.3 Bearings 9
M08.4.4 Lubrication 10
M08.4.5 Gearbox / Motor Coupling 10
M08.4.6 V-belt 10
M08.4.7 Flexible Couplings 10
M08.4.8 Housing 11
M08.4.9 Shaft 11

M08.5 FASTENERS 11

M08.6 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION 13

M08.7 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS 13

M08.8 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE 13

M08.9 CORROSION PROTECTION 13

M08.10 COLOUR CODES 14

M08.11 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 14
M08.11.1 General 14
M08.11.2 Material Tests 15
M08.11.3 Type of Tests 15
M08.11.4 Quality Control Records 15
M08.11.5 Substandard Quality Control 16
M08.11.6 Access for Surveillance 16
M08.11.7 Manufacture 16
M08.11.8 Installation 16

M08.12 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE 17
M08.12.1 Works testing: 17
M08.12.2 Before commissioning 17
M08.12.3 During Commissioning 17

M08.13 BEFORE EXPIRY OF THE DEFECTS LIABILITY PERIOD 17

M08.14 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE 17

M08.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY 18

M08.16 DRAWINGS 18

M08.17 INTERCHANGEABILITY 18

M08.18 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 19
M08.18.1 General 19
M08.18.2 Supply and Delivery to site with Documentation 19
M08.18.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Gearbox Equipment 19
M08.18.4 Trial Operations 20
M08.18.5 Employer's Operator Training 20
M08.18.6 Spares 20

M08.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, off-loading installation, test and commissioning of complete Gearboxes. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification and other relevant Particular Specifications.

M08.2 INTERPRETATIONS

This specification shall be interpreted as follows:

- For the Employer design components, it shall be regarded as a specification.
- For the Contractor design components obligations, it shall be regarded as an Employer's requirements.

M08.2.1 Definitions

For the purpose of this Specification the following definitions are used:

a) "**Manufacture**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, fabrication and assembly, any specified corrosion protection measures and any off-site inspection or testing of materials or parts.

b) "**Supply**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, manufacture and fabrication, any specified corrosion protection measures and all required off-site inspection or testing.

c) "**Installation**" includes, as applicable, all handling and transport from storage, erection and aligning of Works.

d) "**Factory Acceptance Test (FAT)**" shall refer to all tests done on Plant or Plant items at the factory to ensure its functionality

M08.2.2 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply: -

°C	: Temperature in degrees Celsius
A	: Current
AC	: Alternating Current
AGMA	: American Gear Manufactures Association
ANSI	: American National Standards Institute
API	: American Petroleum Institute
ASCE	: American Society of Civil Engineers
ASME	: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	: American Society for Testing and Materials
BFP	: Belt Filter Press
BS	: British Standards Institution
BSPT	: British Standard pipe thread
CAD	: Computer Aided Drawing
CAM	: Computer Aided Manufacturing
CIP	: Cleaning in Place
COC	: Certificate of Conformance
D	: Diameter
DB	: Air Dry Bulb temperature
dB(A)	: Sound pressure level, "A" weighed in decibels
DCS	: Distributed Control System
DFT	: Dry Film Thickness

DIN	: Deutsch Industry Normen
DN	: Nominal diameter
DO	: Dissolved Oxygen
DP	: Differential Pressure
Eff.	: Filter efficiency in %
EPDM	: Ethylene Propylène Diène Monomer
ERW	: Electrical resistance weld
ETP	: Effluent Treatment Plant
FA	: Flange adaptor
FAT	: Factory Acceptance Tests
FBE	: Flanged both ends
FOE	: Flanged one end
FW	: Field weld
HDPE	: High Density Polyethylene
ID	: Inside diameter
ISO	: International Organisation for Standardization
JW	: Johannesburg Water
ℓ/s	: Flow in litres per second
LV	: Low Voltage
m	: Distance in metre
m.a.s.l	: Metres above (mean) sea level
m/s	: Air speed in metres per second
MCC	: Motor Control Centre
mm	: Dimension in millimetres
MPVC	: Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes
MV	: Medium Voltage
N+1	: N units in operation + 1 installed spare
Nm3/hr	: Normal cubic meters per hour
O&M	: Operation and Maintenance
OD	: Outside diameter
OHS	: Occupational Health and Safety
Pa	: Pressure in Pascals
PBE	: Plain both ends
PE	: Plain end
PN	: Nominal pressure (Rating)
PPE	: Personal Protective Equipment
PQP	: Project Quality Plan
PSV	: Pressure Safety Valve
QCP	: Quality Control Panel
RFA	: Restrained flange adaptor
rpm	: Rotational speed in revolutions per minute
SAECC	: South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
SANS	: South African National Standards
SAT	: Site Acceptance Tests
SAW	: Submerged arc weld
SCADA	: Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SIS	: Swedish Institute of Standards
SOC	: Slip-on coupling
SS	: Soft Starters
SS	: Soft Starters
SS	: Stainless Steel
SST	: Secondary Settling Tank

STP	: Standard Temperature and Pressure (i.e. T = 20°C, P = 101, 3 kPa).
t	: Wall thickness of pipes
TDS	: Total Dissolved Solids
uPVC	: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
VSD	: Variable Speed Drive
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WB	: Air Wet Bulb temperature
WP (B)	: Weld preparation (Butt)\

M08.2.3 Standards

All design standards for the mechanical gearboxes shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications: -

PD 5304:2014	:	Guidance on safe use of machinery
SANS9606-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS ISO1312-1:2018	:	Rolling bearings. Accessories for sleeve type linear ball bearings. Boundary dimensions, geometrical product specifications (GPS) and tolerances for series 1 and 3
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 15614-1	:	Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials - Welding procedure test Part 1: Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts
ISO 281	:	Rolling bearings -- Dynamic load ratings and rating life
BS 4999-141	:	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for standard dimensions
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surface

M08.2.4 Other Particular Specifications

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications: -

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M01: Particular Specification for Screening Equipment

M02: Particular Specification for Degritter Equipment

M03: Particular Specification for Primary Tanks

M05: Particular Specification for Sludge and Wastewater Mixing Equipment

M05: Particular Specification for Surface Aerator Equipment

M09: Particular Specification for Archimedean Screw Pumps

M10: Particular Specification for Secondary Clarifier Tanks

M15: Particular Specification for Filter Belt Press Equipment

M16: Particular Specification for Conveyor Equipment

M17: Particular Specification for Actuators

M20: Particular Specification for Valves

M34: Particular Specification for Sluice Gates, Adjustable Weirs

M36: Particular Specification for Diffused Aeration Equipment

Volume 1: Automation and Control Design Standards SCADA

Volume 6: Automation and Control Design Standards Cabling

Volume 8: Automation and Control Design Standards Flow Measurement

Volume 9: Automation and Control Design Standards Level Measurement

Volume 11: Automation and Control Design Standards Temperature Measurement

Volume 23: Automation and Control Design Standards Pressure Measurement

M08.3 GENERAL DESIGN PARAMETERS

The gearbox or speed reducer equipment shall be designed such that the following requirements are met: -

- To ensure reasonable standards of engineering in design, materials selection and construction processes: -
- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs;
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 15 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site;
- The offered equipment shall be support in forms of spares by the original equipment manufacturer for at least 15 years in alignment with the specified life expectation of 15 years from project installation,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes;
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum that represent the value for money in both the initial purchase and subsequent running costs;
- To facilitate inter-changeability of units and/or sub-parts throughout the Contract works with regard to new equipment and equipment and/or sub-parts currently being used on the existing JW Wastewater Treatment Works;
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise. Maximum of 75dBA measured at 1 metre from operating equipment;
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety such as the Occupational Health & Safety Act, 1993 and Regulations as well as the prevention of water and air pollution;
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the latest editions of the published statutory codes and legislation;

- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions; and
- The minimum availability of the equipment shall be 99 %.

M08.4 SPECIFIC DESIGN PARAMETERS

The Tenderer shall submit with their Tender a catalogue of the make of gearbox offered and indicate how the selection of gearboxes was made.

Unless otherwise stated, the gearboxes shall be directly mounted to the motor. The gears shall be helical gears which are used in applications with high speeds, large power transmission and low noise levels.

Gear drives shall be sized to ensure that the running load peak does not exceed the endurance limits of the components.

Gearboxes shall have an efficiency of not less than 96% on two stage reduction and 95% on three stage reduction.

Simple cooling may be by convection from the gearbox casings but without assistance from cooling fins or fans. Adequate other cooling means shall be provided as applicable. The exterior of the gearbox shall be free from dust or moisture traps. Access for inspection purposes shall be allowed for in the design of the gearbox casing. Maintenance free oil lock seals on the high speed shafts shall be a standard design feature.

The tenderer shall provide with his tender all information on oil circulation for gearboxes that incorporate the use of oil circulating pump.

A stainless-steel ball valve and extension drainpipe and plug shall be provided to facilitate oil changes by the maintenance staff. The termination of this drain shall be accessible from the operating platform. The drain provision shall be a rigid design with due consideration to handling, installation and maintenance activities. The baseplate shall be design such that the driving shaft is accessible for inspection, while at the same time allow access to the drainage pipe, without decommissioning and dismantling the gearbox from the transmission assembly.

Where the lubrication system requires the use of an oil pump then the circulation system will be fitted with an oil flow detection system/ device such as an oil flow switch in order to ensure gear protection when operational by detecting any no flow or low flow conditions which shall further be monitored on the works SCADA system. The oil flow detection system shall be capable of switching off the drive unit in the least time as recommended by the original gearbox Manufacturer.

The bearing span shall be suitably selected for vertical gearbox application and shall promote shaft support for the intended application. Rigid lateral load distribution shall be by means of a standardized pinioned arrangement reducing noise and vibration.

A rigid half coupling shall be shrunk onto the output shaft of the gearbox and shall be secured by an additional keep plate and bolted connection in a recognised manner.

Substantial eye bolts shall be provided for all reasonable lifting purposes.

The gearboxes shall carry the manufacturer's identification details together with the rated shaft speeds, rated shaft torque, output power and maximum ambient operating temperature.

The gearboxes shall conform to the relevant British Standards and AGMA ratings with respect to the following requirements:

(a) The design ambient temperature shall be 45°C unless otherwise specified in the project specification.

(b) The noise at 100% of the full output power and 45°C ambient shall not exceed 75 dBA as measured 1 m in distance from the equipment.

(c) The gearing shall give double the life of the bearings when subjected to similar loadings.

The design of the gearbox shall be such that the following calculation shall be adhered to: -

$$\frac{\text{Actual Radial Load}}{\text{Permissible Actual Radial}} + \frac{\text{Actual Axial Load}}{\text{Permissible Axial Load}} \text{ shall be} \leq 1{,}0$$

Calculations shall be submitted. Failure to do so may render the Tender invalid.

M08.4.1 Gears

The gears shall be high efficiency case hardened helical gears and rated in accordance with the AGMA Code of Practice 420.04 for continuous operation.

Semi-hardened and subsequently machined gears will not be accepted.

M08.4.2 Service Factor

The minimum service factors indicated in the table below shall be based upon the installed power unless otherwise specified in the project specification: -

Process Units	**Service Factor**
Rotating Bridges: Sedimentation & Clarifier Tanks	1.5
Rotating Scraper System: WAS Thickeners, Primary Sedimentation & Fermentation Tanks	1.75
Aerators	2.25
Mixers	2
Screw & Plunger Pumps	2.25
Centrifugal and Positive displacement Pumps	2
Turbo Centrifugal Blowers	2.25
Dosing Pumps	2
Mechanical Screens	2
General speed reducing applications	2

M08.4.3 Bearings

Roller bearings shall be used throughout. Taper roller bearings shall be used to sustain radial and thrust loads. Bearings shall be designed for a design life in excess of the indicated hours in the table below, in accordance with ISO.281. Bearings for the output shaft shall be designed to withstand bending, up thrust, down pull and radial loads imposed by the equipment being driven. Tenderers shall indicate what

these forces are and how these shall be accommodated.

The Contractor shall ensure the lubricant used for the initial filling and specified in the maintenance manual, is adequate for prolonged operation in ambient temperatures of up to 45°C without overheating.

Process Units	Design Life	Operation
Rotating Bridges: Sedimentation & Clarifier Tanks	L10 for 100 000	Continuous
Rotating Scraper System: WAS Thickeners, Primary Sedimentation & Fermentation Tanks	L10 for 100 000	Continuous
Aerators	L10for 100 000	Continuous
Mixers	L10 for 100 000	Continuous
Screw & Plunger Pumps	L10 for 100 000	Continuous
Centrifugal and Positive displacement Pumps	L10 for 100 000	Continuous
Dosing Pumps	L10 for 100 000	Continuous
Mechanical Screens	L10 for 100 000	Continuous

M08.4.4 Lubrication

The gearboxes shall be constructed with a dry well for the low speed shaft bearing to avoid complete drainage of oil in the event of an oil seal failure. Provision to monitor the oil level must be provided. The bearing shall be grease lubricated with the greasing point easily accessible, where greasing point are not accessible due to gear orientation / auxiliaries attached to the gearbox, stainless steel extension pipes shall be used to ensure that points are accessible, the position of the extended grease lubrication points shall be subject to approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative. A stainless-steel ball valve and extension drainpipe and plug shall be provided to facilitate oil changes by the maintenance staff. The termination of this drain shall be accessible from the operating platform.

M08.4.5 Gearbox / Motor Coupling

The coupling shall be fully rated to transmit the motor full load power and tested to prove static and dynamic balance. The coupling shall accommodate small axial, lateral and angular misalignments without imposing undue stresses on the shaft and bearings. All coupling shall be suitable for standard motor IEC dimensioning (universal gearbox connection). The coupling shall be enclosed in a stationery solid-plate guard to the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative satisfaction.

M08.4.6 V-belt

V-belts shall be designed to withstand the high tension and high-power drives, shall be long wearing, tough and trouble free. The V-belt cover shall be oil, heat and ozone resistant in order to protect the inner components. The compression section shall provide excellent gripping action and a high coefficient of friction but shall also allow an initial start-up clutching action in order to eliminate power spikes and excessive bearing loading. The moulded cogs shall provide optimum flexibility with minimal build-up of heat.

M08.4.7 Flexible Couplings

Flexible couplings consist of two types: gear type and multiple disc/diaphragm type. The gear type uses gear teeth to make them flexible and is either grease lubricated,

or oil lubricated depending upon their size. Diaphragm couplings do not require any form of lubrication and the flexibility is created by a series of multiple discs or a diaphragm made of spring steel and flexes as the shaft rotate.

Misalignment of the coupling is to be prevented by proper alignment of the coupling by means of a taper gauge or set of feeler gauges and a straight edge or dial indicator. Two types of misalignments are encountered by flexible couplings: Angular misalignment and parallel misalignment. Any adjustment to correct the misalignment in one direction may affect the other direction and both the angular and parallel alignment shall be checked after each adjustment.

A periodic check of the coupling alignment shall be performed as recommended by the Original Equipment Manufacturer during commissioning, testing and trail operation as specified in the project specification.

M08.4.8 Housing

The gearbox shall be manufactured of high strength cast iron which enables the gearbox to be used in harsh environments. The gearbox housing design shall incorporate a breathing plug and means of checking oil level.

All gearbox with a mass more than 25kg shall have lifting hooks or eyes integrally cast on the housing. All gearbox with a mass greater than 100 kg shall either have two removable eye bolts of the required strength securely attached to the valve body or lifting eyes forming an integral part of the valve body to facilitate easy handling during transport and installation

The breather plug shall be designed to effectively prevent pressure build-up inside the gearbox and also prevent dust and moisture ingress. Breather unit allowing continued oil spillage due to the overfilling of the gearbox shall not be accepted.

Oil level sight glasses (fully protected and UV resistant) shall be provided with levels marked for running and filling minimum and maximum positions respectively. These shall be arranged for easy viewing and shall take into account the angle of the gearbox mounting to ensure that the correct oil level in the gearbox is always visible. The filler cap and drain plug must be easily accessible without the need to remove any other part of the gearbox or connected equipment such as motor and belt drive covers & pulleys to get access to it. All gearboxes with motor of 110kW and above shall be provided with oil level protection. The design and installation configuration of the level protection shall be submitted to the Employer's Agent or Representative for review and acceptance.

M08.4.9 Shaft

The Input and output shafts shall be of sufficient dimension in order to avoid excessive torsional or bending stresses and deflection. The driven equipment (e.g. impeller) shall be secured to the shaft in such a way that it can be readily removed without any damage to the equipment or the shaft.

The shafts shall be protected by replaceable sleeves manufactured from non-corrosive material. The shaft shall be manufactured from stainless steel.

M08.5 FASTENERS

Nuts, bolts, studs and washers for incorporation in the Works shall conform to the requirement of the appropriate approved standard.

Bolts shall be of such standard length that a minimum of two to four complete threads

shall protrude beyond the nut when in the fully tightened condition. The same shall applies to stud units. Mating surfaces shall be adequately protected against corrosion whilst awaiting assembly of the faces and bolting, all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All high tensile bolts and studs used in the Works shall bear the letter HTS stamped or engraved on the end.

Washers shall be provided under all bolt heads and nuts. The threads of bolts and studs shall be lubricated before assembly with a lubricating substance subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration arrangements shall be provided where necessary and shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

Stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers shall be in accordance with SANS 1700 A70, and the grade of stainless steel shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Hot Dip Galvanised fasteners shall comply with the requirements of SANS 121.High strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, nuts, load indicator washers and washers shall subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and shall be hot dip galvanised. High strength friction grip bolts shall be tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the tension shall be re-checked not less than 3 hours after first tightening and then the bolts shall be retightened to the initial load all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All stainless steel holding down bolts, nuts and washers in contact with a dissimilar material shall be of stainless steel and provided with isolating washers and sleeves (insolating kit) where appropriate to prevent galvanic corrosion, unless otherwise specified in the project specification. The bed plates and machinery shall be provided with means of adjustment for line and level to maintain the items of Plant in correct alignment during grouting. Packers used for adjustment shall be of non-corrosive material to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Holding down bolts which are to be tightened after grouting shall be provided with bond breakers where they pass through the grout.

Where there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt and nut does not exceed half of the yield stress of the bolt material under all conditions. The shear value of high strength friction grip bolts shall be reduced in proportion to the reduced tensile stress compared with the normal design stress.

No tapped holes in mild steel shall be allowed. Where tapped holes are unavoidable, this shall be done into stainless steel.

Where bolts and nuts are required to be removed and re-assembled on a regular basis, these shall be of stainless steel.

Metal coatings and other treatments applied to fasteners shall be carried out in a manner which will not cause hydrogen embrittlement of the parent material.

M08.6 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION

The equipment unit components shall be constructed using the critical material specified in the table below:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL
Gears	High cast iron to BS 1542 Class 220 or an equivalent standard.
Pinions	AGMA 390.02 class 12.
Housing	Epoxy coated high strength cast iron
Input and output shaft	Stainless steel or similar approved
Oil drainpipe (external to the housing)	304L stainless steel
Oil level sight glass	UV and chemical resistant glass
Base Plate	Hot dip galvanized mild steel
Fasteners	316 stainless steel
All other accessories shall be of the manufacturer's standard, industry approved, and corrosion protected.	

M08.7 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which it is recommended should be kept by Johannesburg Water for maintenance of the plant. Spares which the Management decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately, and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

Tenderers must submit a provisional price (if requested in the Bill of Quantities) for a complete set of special spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M08.8 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE

The Contractor shall guarantee the output and efficiency of all equipment, which guarantees shall be binding under the Contract. Where guaranteed performance is specified, certified test curves shall be drawn from the test data obtained from the purchased equipment and shall include efficiency (%), power consumption (kW), speed in rpm and speed/torque (rpm/kNm).

The Defects liability period shall extend over a period of 12 months calculated from the Completion as defined in the Contract Document. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative reserves the right to extend the Defects Liability Period in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of not more than 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification.

M08.9 CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M08.10 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M08.11 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

M08.11.1 General

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project.

The Contractor's Quality Management System shall be in accordance with industry standard.

The Contractor shall implement a comprehensive Quality Control programme and accept full responsibility for the quality of his workmanship and material used, irrespective of any quality surveillance that may be carried out by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

In keeping with the basic principles Quality Management System, the Contractor and Subcontractor(s) shall:

- Be responsible for compliance with all the requirements of the Specification in every respect;
- Carry out all inspections and tests called for in the Specification in the presence of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The cost of these inspections and tests shall be carried out at the sole expense and under the responsibility of the Contractor;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for manufacture for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during manufacturing process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during manufacture, cleaning and preparation for application as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for corrosion protection for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during corrosion protection process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during corrosion protection as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for installation for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during installation process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during installation as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance; and
- Draft Quality Control Plans for any other construction process as may be required for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during the execution of the process indicating all the intended stages of testing as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance.

The Quality Control Plans will not be compromised once approved and shall be adhered to at all times. The Contractor shall operate approved quality assurance and control programmes in the Supplier's and Manufacturer's premises and on Site in order to verify that the Works comply with this Section. Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for approval, quality plans describing the procedures,

standards of acceptance, hold point inspections, routine and type tests to be carried out for each component both during manufacture and on Site.

Although it shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the Works conform to the Specification, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be entitled to inspect, examine and test the materials, workmanship and performance of every item of Plant. The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will notify the Contractor which tests or inspections, detailed in the quality plan, he will attend.

Approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative of materials, workmanship, etc., during manufacture or at Site will not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to comply with all the requirements of the Contract.

All instruments and appliances necessary for the complete inspection and testing shall be provided by the Contractor. Calibration certificates for instruments shall be produced to the Engineer for review prior to the commencement of any tests and, if required by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative, instruments shall be re-calibrated at the Contractor's own account before commencement of the tests.

In general, Quality Management System should be bench marked in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M08.11.2 Material Tests

The Manufacturer's material test data and the Contractor's quality records shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Reasonable samples of the cleaning and coating materials to be used may be taken for testing.

Rejection of the samples shall place a hold on the use of the materials of the same batch number and any components that have already been cleaned/coated with rejected material shall be re-cleaned and coated.

M08.11.3 Type of Tests

Where the Contractor offers Plant selected from the standard range of products from a specialist manufacturer, type tests in accordance with a recognised international standard are required on one unit of each type to prove satisfactory design and quality of manufacture of that Plant.

The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative may waive the requirement for type tests if he is satisfied that tests have previously been performed on identical Plant. The Contractor shall submit the data and results with his Quality Plan in sufficient time to allow for repeat tests without delaying the Works should the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative not approve the evidence submitted.

M08.11.4 Quality Control Records

Accurate and detailed quality control records shall be kept by the Contractor for all stages of the work.

All the quality control records shall be available for inspection by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

The collection of record documents for each item of Plant shall be collated and bound in a logical manner and retained by the Contractor as proof of quality achieved. These shall be available on demand for quality control and part payment releases.

The records shall be neatly filed and handed over to the Employer's Agent /

Employer' Representative. on completion of the work in the form of a Data Pack together with all relevant material and test certificates. Only after the Data Pack has been approved and signed off by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. shall Plant be dispatched to Site.

M08.11.5 Substandard Quality Control

All material, certification and records of the Contractor shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

This shall include the checking and testing of the Plant at the Works and on Site, installation and pre-acceptance testing. If any deviation is found, additional testing and quality surveillance shall be carried out at the Contractor's own costs until approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

If the additional testing confirms inaccurate quality control by the Contractor on an item of Plant, all work shall be stopped on that item of Plant and shall only proceed after remedial action in the quality control system has been implemented.

M08.11.6 Access for Surveillance

For the purpose of carrying out quality surveillance, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be granted access to any part of the Contractor's premises relevant to the work being carried out, at any reasonable time.

M08.11.7 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Employer's Agent or Representative opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Employer's Agent or Representative during design and manufacture per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M08.11.8 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Employer's Agent or Representative shall be afforded every opportunity to certain stages of completion of the installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site activities at the Employer's Agent or Representative's discretion.

M08.12 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

M08.12.1 Works testing:

All Equipment shall be subject to a Factory Acceptance Test (FAT) by the Manufacturer and witness by Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative at the Manufacturer's premises before despatch. All performance test results shall be made available to the Employer's Agent/ Employer's Representative for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

Gearboxes shall be subject to testing using the selected project motors for at least 12 hours before dispatch to site. All results shall be available for inspection.

Equipment may only be despatch from factory once all relevant "hold points" on QCP's have been signed off by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and/or the Approved Inspection Authority (AIA) in accordance with approved quality control plan.

M08.12.2 Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- Ensure the output shaft is rotating in the correct direction.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked, and the results shall be available for inspection by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M08.12.3 During Commissioning

- Ensure all oil pumps. Temperature, level, flow or pressure switches are functional
- Vibration testing and benchmarking.
- Ensure that there no oil leaks or visible damages to the gearbox housing.

M08.13 BEFORE EXPIRY OF THE DEFECTS LIABILITY PERIOD

The Contractor has an obligation to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing within 14 days.

Should the first oil change (based on the original equipment manufacturers recommendation) occurs before the issuing of the certificate of completion of the gearbox equipment to the Employer. The Contractor must carry out the first oil change in each gearbox. The drained oil shall be sieved and inspected for any contamination in the oil. In the event of any unusual contamination, (metal deposits etc) the Contractor, will take the necessary steps, to investigate the cause, and where required to replace and or repair the gearbox (s) at no cost to the employer.

M08.14 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE

Training shall be provided by the Contractor (or specialist equipment suppliers) based on the supplied and approved operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals for all supplied equipment. This training shall be provided to the Operations and Mechanical including other support discipline staff of the Employer along with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives. The duration of the training period shall be advised by the Contractor and agreed with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives.

The training structure for the equipment and/or system should include both the theory and practical components of the equipment derived from the O&M manuals.

The preparation of the O&M manuals shall be based on the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Particular specification for Commissioning and Operation.

M08.15 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY

The Contractor shall hand over to the Employer' Agent or Employer's Representative four sets (x2 hard copies and x2 electronic copies on non-locked USB) of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant. A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

- Brief description of the plant and installation.
- Concise operating instructions including start-up, operating, shutdown and troubleshooting procedures.
- Routine maintenance instruction this shall include failure mode analysis and preventative strategies.
- Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.
- Detailed information on equipment.
- Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.
- Schematic Diagram and Drawings
- Risk, Health and Safety Assessment with proposed control measures.

M08.16 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. 's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, they shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, he will submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. . Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M08.17 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar types of equipment are required, these units will be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied will be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M08.18 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for gearboxes unless otherwise specified in the detail specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with the gearboxes shall deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for gearboxes and specified as such in the detail specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

M08.18.1 General

The following items shall, inter alia, be included in the rates:

- Supply of all design and pre-manufacture documentation and obtaining approval thereof;
- Procurement/manufacture of gearbox equipment with associated items and delivery to Site;
- Installation of gearbox equipment with associated items and testing;
- Services required during period of initial use before handover to the Employer.

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery; installation and testing; and commissioning and trail operation of the equipment.

M08.18.2 **Supply and Delivery to site with Documentation**

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery to site with documentation	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, inspections, quality control, quality assurance, factory acceptance testing, corrosion protection, packing, delivery to site including transportation costs and offloading on site including any cranage requirements. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned. Tender rate shall include any external oil filters, flow and pressure in their offer.

M08.18.3 **Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Gearbox Equipment**

Item	**Unit**
Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Gearbox Equipment	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified on Site including the provision of all labour, supervision, instruments, equipment, transport, on-site quality assurance and quality control, inspection and testing (including attendance at tests witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative), materials and Temporary Works necessary to completely install, test and commission and render fully operational gearbox equipment.

The rate shall also include the cost of the installation of all auxiliary equipment not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified until taken over by the Employer; the putting

into service of the complete installation; remedial work and any other work as specified and necessary.

The rate shall also include for all preliminary testing and the provision of testing equipment therefore including all disruptions to installation caused by such testing.

Payment will only be effected after full compliance of the equipment items with this Section and associated documentation has been approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative

The Contractor shall include in the Tendered rate for straining of the gearbox oil after 600 hours of initial operation. The Contractor shall furnish the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative with a report recording any irregularities when cleaning the sieves after straining.

M08.18.4 **Trial Operations**

Item	**Unit**
Trial Operations	No

This specification allows for a number of calendar days within which the system Trial Operation can be completed after completion of commissioning process. The Contractor shall programme and price for providing full technical and operational support during trail operation.

M08.18.5 **Employer's Operator Training**

Item	**Unit**
Training	No

Payment for Training of the Employer's Operational Staff will be made under this Section as set out in project specification or agreed with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The lump sum shall be inclusive of all costs associated with the training programme and on-site training of personnel.

M08.18.6 **Spares**

Item	**Unit**
Spares	No

The cost of spares, considered to be necessary by the Contractor other than spares required by the Employer, delivered to Site and handed over will be paid as a lump sum. A Spare Part Schedule subject to approval by the Employer's Agent/ Employer's representative shall be submited before procurement of spares.

The actual lump sum to be paid shall be based on the unit rates priced in the Bill of Quantity for the actual spares ordered and supplied and the Employer is entitled to purchase all, some or none of the items listed. A provisional sum will be allocated in the Bill of Quantity for the complete list of spare parts as listed by the Contractor.

The rate tendered shall provide for the manufacture, supply, delivery to Site and handing over of the spares ordered and shall include permanent packing for long term storage. The spares shall be manufactured at the same time as the installed items.

----------**END**----------

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.
BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION
M09: MECHANICAL ARCHIMEDEAN SCREW PUMPS EQUIPMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5 October 2021

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title:	**Particular Specification – M09: MECHANICAL ARCHIMEDEAN SCREW PUMPS EQUIPMENT**
JW Reference:	**???**
Document Ref. No:	**M09**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	Mechanical Engineer (Hatch)	Mbongiseni Mahlangu, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Reviewed	Project Manager (Hatch)	Johan Prinsloo, Pr Eng.	01.06.2022	
Approved	JW Best Practice Manager	Rendani Davhana	13/06/2022	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2021-10-11	5	J Prinsloo	Detailed Review
2013-10-23	4	J Ritchie	Minor updates and re-issued
2012-07-30	3	T Wellard	General review
2010-02-16	2	J Ritchie	General review
2009-05-12	1		Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M09: MECHANICAL ARCHIMEDEAN SCREW PUMPS EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M09.1 SCOPE....3

M09.2 INTERPRETATIONS....3
M09.2.1 Definitions....3
M09.2.2 Abbreviations....3
M09.2.3 Standards....5
M09.2.4 Other Particular Specification....6

M09.3 GENERAL DESIGN PARAMETERS....6

M09.4 SPECIFIC DESIGN PARAMETERS....7
M09.4.1 Torque Tubes....8
M09.4.2 Flights....8
M09.4.3 Screw Assembly....9
M09.4.4 Welds....9
M09.4.5 Stub shafts....9
M09.4.6 Bearings....10
M09.4.7 Gearboxes....12
M09.4.8 Electric Motors....12
M09.4.9 Screw Troughs (if not installed on a screed concrete trough)....12
M09.4.10 Side Profiles....13
M09.4.11 Screw Pump Covers....13
M09.4.12 Lifting....13

M09.5 FASTENERS....13

M09.6 METAL PREPARATION AND PROTECTION....14

M09.7 COLOUR CODING....14

M09.8 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION....15

M09.9 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS....16

M09.10 VIBRATION AND NOISE....16

M09.11 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE....16

M09.12 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE....16
M09.12.1 Material Tests....18
M09.12.2 Type Tests....18
M09.12.3 Substandard Quality Control....18
M09.12.4 Access for Surveillance....18
M09.12.5 Manufacture....18
M09.12.6 Installation....19

M09.13 PERFORMANCE TESTING....19
M09.13.1 Works testing....19
M09.13.2 Before commissioning....19
M09.13.3 During Commissioning....19

M09.14 BEFORE EXPIRY OF THE DEFECTS LIABILITY PERIOD....19

M09.15 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE....20

M09.16 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY....20

M09.17 DRAWINGS 20

M09.18 INTERCHANGEABILITY 21

M09.19 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 21
M09.19.1 General 21
M09.19.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation 21
M09.19.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment 22
M09.19.4 Trial Operations 22
M09.19.5 Employer's Operator Training 22
M09.19.6 Spares and Tools 23

M09.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, deliver, off-loading on-site, installation, testing and commissioning of mechanical Archimedean screw pumps and related equipment installed within a concrete trough structure at a wastewater treatment works. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with that of the Project Specification and other referenced particular specification.

M09.2 INTERPRETATIONS

This specification shall be interpreted as follows:

- For the Employer design components, it shall be regarded as a specification.
- For the Contractor design components obligations, it shall be regarded as an Employer's requirements.

M09.2.1 Definitions

For the purpose of this Specification the following definitions apply:

(a) "**Manufacture**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, fabrication and assembly, any specified corrosion protection measures and any off-site inspection or testing of materials or parts.
(b) "**Supply**" includes, as applicable, the purchase of materials or goods, manufacture and fabrication, any specified corrosion protection measures and all required off-site inspection or testing.
(c) "**Installation**" includes, as applicable, all handling and transport from storage, erection and aligning of Works.
(d) "**Factory Acceptance Test (FAT)**" shall refer to all tests done on Plant or Plant items at the factory to ensure its functionality.
(e) "**Screw Pump Unit**" shall refer to the pump, motor, power transmission elements, support structures (e.g. baseplates, frame, etc), shaft, impeller, throat tube and auxiliary equipment.
(f) "**Drive Unit**" shall refer to the motor, power transmission elements (e.g. V-belts & Pulley), support structures (e.g. baseplates, frame, etc) and auxiliary equipment.
(g) "**Fill Point**" shall refer to the average hydraulic invert level of the incoming flow at which the screw pump unit will lift the liquid from to the chute point.
(h) "**Chute Point**" shall refer to the invert level of the of the screw pump discharge point.
(i) "**Touch Point**" shall refer to the invert level of the lowest point of the sump from which the screw pump is lifting the from.

M09.2.2 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply: -

°C	: Temperature in degrees Celsius
A	: Ampere
AC	: Alternating Current
AGMA	: American Gear Manufactures Association
ANSI	: American National Standards Institute

API	: American Petroleum Institute
ASCE	: American Society of Civil Engineers
ASME	: American Society of Mechanical Engineers
ASTM	: American Society for Testing and Materials
BEP	: Best Efficiency Point
BS	: British Standards Institution
BSPT	: British Standard pipe thread
CAD	: Computer Aided Drawing
CAM	: Computer Aided Manufacturing
CIP	: Cleaning in Place
COC	: Certificate of Conformance
D	: Diameter
dB(A)	: Sound pressure level, “A” weighed in decibels
DCS	: Distributed Control System
DFT	: Dry Film Thickness
DIN	: Deutsch Industry Normen
DN	: Nominal diameter
DP	: Differential Pressure
Eff.	: Filter efficiency in %
EPDM	: Ethylene Propylène Diène Monomer
ERW	: Electrical resistance weld
ETP	: Effluent Treatment Plant
FA	: Flange adaptor
FAT	: Factory Acceptance Tests
FBE	: Flanged both ends
FOE	: Flanged one end
FW	: Field weld
HDPE	: High Density Polyethylene
HoW	: Head of Works
ID	: Inside diameter
ISO	: International Organisation for Standardization
JW	: Johannesburg Water
ℓ/s	: Flow in litres per second
LV	: Low Voltage
m	: Distance in metre
m.a.s.l	: Metres above (mean) sea level
m/s	: Speed in metres per second
MCC	: Motor Control Centre
mm	: Dimension in millimetres
MPVC	: Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes
MV	: Medium Voltage
N+1	: No of units in operation + 1 installed spare
Nm^3/hr	: Normal cubic meters per hour
O&M	: Operation and Maintenance
OD	: Outside diameter
OEM	: Original equipment Manufacturer
OHS	: Occupational Health and Safety
Pa	: Pressure in Pascals
PBE	: Plain both ends
PE	: Plain end
PN	: Nominal pressure (Rating)

PPE	: Personal Protective Equipment
PQP	: Project Quality Plan
PSV	: Pressure Safety Valve
QCP	: Quality Control Plan
RFA	: Restrained flange adaptor
rpm	: Rotational speed in revolutions per minute
SAECC	: South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
SANS	: South African National Standards
SAT	: Site Acceptance Tests
SAW	: Submerged arc weld
SCADA	: Supervisory Control and Data Acquisition
SIS	: Swedish Institute of Standards
SOC	: Slip-on coupling
SS	: Stainless Steel
STP	: Standard Temperature and Pressure (i.e. T = 20°C, P = 101, 3 kPa).
w.t.	: Wall thickness of pipes
TDS	: Total Dissolved Solids
uPVC	: Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
VSD	: Variable Speed Drive
WP (B)	: Weld preparation (Butt)

M09.2.3 Standards

All design standards for the Archimedean screw pumps shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

PD 5304:2014	: Guidance on safe use of machinery (British Standards)
SANS9606-1: 1994	: Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS ISO1312-1:2018	: Rolling bearings. Accessories for sleeve type linear ball bearings. Boundary dimensions, geometrical product specifications (GPS) and tolerances for series 1 and 3
SANS 10162-4	: Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 15614-1	: Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials - Welding procedure test Part 1: Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys
BE EN 15614-1:2017	: Specification and qualification of welding procedures for metallic materials. Welding procedure test. Arc and gas welding of steels and arc welding of nickel and nickel alloys
BS EN ISO 18286:2010	: Hot-rolled stainless-steel plates. Tolerances on dimensions and shape
SANS 10064	: The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10111-2-1	: Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1

SANS 10341	: Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	: Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	: Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts

M09.2.4 Other Particular Specification

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications: -

M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Volume 1: Automation and Control Design Standards SCADA

Volume 6: Automation and Control Design Standards Cabling

Volume 8: Automation and Control Design Standards Flow Measurement

Volume 9: Automation and Control Design Standards Level Measurement

M09.3 GENERAL DESIGN PARAMETERS

Archimedean flow pumping equipment shall be designed such that the following requirements are met: -

- To ensure reasonable standards of engineering in design, materials selection and construction processes;
- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs;
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 15 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site;
- The offered equipment shall be support in forms of spares by the original equipment manufacturer for at least 15 years in alignment with the specified life expectation of 15 years from project installation;
- The minimum availability of the equipment shall be 99 %;
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes;
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum that represent the value for money in both the initial purchase and subsequent running costs;
- To facilitate inter-changeability of units and/or sub-parts throughout the operational life of the new equipment against the existing equipment and/or sub-parts currently being used on the existing JW Wastewater Treatment Works;
- To operate without undue vibration and excessive noise. Maximum of 75dBA measured at 1 metre from operating equipment;
- To comply with the legal requirements such as the Occupational Health &

Safety Act, 1993 and Regulation's requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution;

- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the latest editions of the published statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M09.4 SPECIFIC DESIGN PARAMETERS

The screw pump design shall be robust design and operate continuously, impact free at an optimised low speed to minimised wear with capability to handle contaminated feasible flow specific to the site installation. The pump capacity shall be design with a factor of 1.2 times the average design flow specified for process requirements. This shall then be the specified pump capacity requirement.

The screw pump's diameter and the number of flights shall be based on the specific capacity of the pump. The required screw pump configuration,, capacity and lift shall be as specified in the Project Specification. The screw pump shall be designed such that the screw inclination for the lift head specified is between 30° and 40° from the horizontal, the selected level position shall be based on optimum performance and best efficiency point . The performance shall then be achieved with a screw diameter and the rotational speed optimally selected. The design of the screw pump shall take into consideration maximum operational rotational speed which cannot be exceeded to avoid the liquid being pumped by the screw pump from being thrown out of the trough

The screw pump size i.e. diameter, pitch length and number of flights shall be selected and designed to allow the pump to optimally operate between 30% to 110% of the specified flow capacity i.e. the first top flight from the lower end of the screw pump shall align horizontally with the fill point as specified in the project specification.

The selection of the pump shall ensure optimal and higher efficiency operation between 50% to 100% of the required capacity. Furthermore, the BEP of the pump should at least be between 80% and 100% of the required capacity. Preference shall be given to pumps with the efficiency of 65% and more with the pump operating at the fill point.

Detailed performance curves for the pump type shall be provided at the time of tendering. The curve(s) shall indicate the following:

- Head (metres) vs. flow (litres/second) - The curve shall extend from 0% to 120% of the selected BEP based on the duty flow
- Power absorbed in kW - The curve shall extend from 0% to 120% of the selected BEP based on the duty flow
- Pump efficiency – The curve shall extend from 0% to 120% of the selected BEP based on the duty flow range.
- The efficiency curve shall be flat over a wide range in order to provide efficient working at various pump operating conditions.
- On the same performance curve, there shall be indication of the corresponding level showing at least 3no. of points including and between the touch and fill point of the suction sump.

The screw pump equipment to be installed shall include but not limited to helical screw shaft, motor, mechanical overload release couplings, gearbox, anti-reverse rotation devices, flexible final couplings, top and bottom bearings with housing, bed-plates, splash plates, lubrication equipment and all fasteners and anchor bolts.

The rotating screw assembly shall consist of a centre tube seam welded by the tube-manufacturer with cold formed helices fillet-welded all around thereto and stub shaft housings on both ends of the tube. All parts shall be of ample dimensions and strength to minimize any resultant deflection and properly machined and assembled to ensure perfectly free running. The span length of the flights shall be to specific fill point and the chute point of the screw trough, but the torque tube shall extend over these point in order to optimise the length of the stub shafts to the lower and upper bearing supports.

The screw pumps shall be designed taking into account the specified fill point in the sump. The design of the screw pump shall ensure that the tendency for the rotating assembly of the pump to float be taken into consideration when selecting bearing, other components and the overall design of the screw pump assembly.

Lifting provision shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative

M09.4.1 Torque Tubes

The upper and lower ends of the torque tubes shall be equipped with internal watertight bulkheads, inboard of standard flanges. The torque tube shall be air pressure tested to a minimum test pressure of 400 kPa to assure there are no leaks. The maximum design stress shall not exceed 20 MPa and the allowable stress for the material grade offered and a minimum factor of safety of 3 shall be used against all structural and dynamic failure loads. All welds between the torque tube segments and at the torque tube end flanges shall be full penetration welds with the minimum weld size calculated based on the thickness of the thicker material. The end plates shall be provided with tapped boltholes and indexes to fit the standard dimension flange of the shaft extensions. The shaft extensions shall consist of a standard dimension flange with index to fit the tube end plate and matching bolts.

A solid upper drive shaft and a lower stub shaft shall be fastened to the upper and lower end of the spiral screw with high strength bolts respectively. The material of the centre tube and helices shall be structural steel to BSEN ISO 18286.

M09.4.2 Flights

Flights shall be helical shaped and continuously welded to the torque tube on both sides of the flight. The screw shall be statically balanced and shall be manufactured in a lathe machine in which the flights shall be machined to a true radius. Preferable flights shall be of composite material with 100mm of the flight tip constructed from high corrosive resistance material. The number of the flights shall be optimally with reference to the functional dimensions of the trough and screw for the correct selection of the pump capacity and rotation speed.

Helices shall be evenly spaced and accurately shaped to a cylindrical shape. The helices at the leading ends of the screw shall be reinforced. The spiral screw shall be

designed for minimum deflection. The deflection shall not exceed L (span length, mm)/2500 of the bearing centre distance when calculated as a simple horizontal beam uniformly loaded with a dead load of the screw and 100% of the liquid capacity along the span of the screw pump. The clearance between the outer radius of the flights and the trough shall be bigger than the maximum allowable deflection in order to prevent damage of the flights during operation while keeping the backflow to a minimum.

M09.4.3 Screw Assembly

Primary and secondary stresses in the screw assembly shall be calculated in accordance with BS 153: Part 3B and the design and fabrication shall be in accordance with BS 153: Part 4.

The design life of the screw assembly shall be assessed in accordance with Code of Practice for Fatigue – BS 5400: Part 10.

Stress calculations shall not include any allowance that might be claimed by the attachment of the helices to the centre tube or to buoyancy when the screw is lifting fluid.

M09.4.4 Welds

The submerged arc welding process (SAW) shall be used with the exception of the attachment of the helices, with approval testing of welding procedures in compliance with BS EN ISO 15614-1 or SANS 15614-1.

Longitudinal and circumferential welds only shall be made to the centre tube except for the attachment of helices, which shall be by a continuous fillet weld interrupted where it intersects centre tube welds.

Circumferential welds shall not occur at a greater distance than 20% from the extremities of the finished tube and preferably at the lower end only when joining tubes.

All longitudinal and circumferential welds shall be non-destructive tested (NDT) with the method appropriate for the size and environmental conditions subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative. The method of NDT selected shall guarantee the weld integrity based on the weld test used in the WPS & PQR approved for the specified weld and material. This shall as a minimum guarantee that the following defects are easily detected; lack of fusion, porosity, undercut and mechanical damage.

M09.4.5 Stub shafts

The stub shafts at both ends of the centre tube shall affect a gradual reduction in diameter. The stub shafts shall be steel forgings to BS 970: Part 1 and the fastenings to the housings shall not under any circumstances be subject to cyclical stressing.

The stub shaft shall be readily removable from the housing prior to transport and readily replaceable at Site. The fixing arrangements i.e. flanges to the torque tube for stub shafts shall be air and watertight.

M09.4.6 Bearings

M09.4.6.1 Bottom Bearing

The bottom bearing design shall be of continuous immersion in wastewater with provision for self-alignment and allowance for axial movement of the shafts. The bearing shall be designed for a life of at least 200 000 hours at an (L10) rating. Bearings for the lower stub shaft shall be designed to withstand bending, down pull, thermal expansion and radial loads imposed by the screw pump under 100% loading.

Bottom bearing can be provided as seal for life bearing or continuous lubricated bearing. Continuous lubricated bottom bearing shall be preferable grease lubricated. Selection and design of screw pump bottom bearing shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative.

Rotating parts shall be suitable for connection to a system that enables continuous remote monitoring of the bearing.

NB: A complete bottom bearing shall be provided as a spare for each size and type of screw pump installation unless otherwise specified in the project specification.

M09.4.6.2 Bottom Bearing Housing

The bottom bearing housing and mounting support shall be designed to withstand radial forces only including upward forces due to buoyancy during static sump level conditions. The bottom bearing shall be completely protected by a stationary shroud to prevent material such as rags, ropes, cables and other debris contained in the wastewater being pumped from becoming wrapped around its rotating parts. The bearing shall be split on its horizontal centre line together with the renewable bush feather keyed bearing shell to facilitate inspection without disturbance of the stub shaft or the need to support the screw.

The lower bearing housing shall be designed for water resistance and shall not contain less than two lip seals. The lip seals shall be protected from abrasive materials by a seal cover.

Seals shall be split and readily changed without the disturbance of the stub shafts or the need to support the screw.

The bottom of the bearing housing shall be fitted with an inspection cover or shrouds and the shroud shall be constructed from two halves to facilitate easy removal from the bearing assembly without disassembling the lower stub shaft. Each halve shroud part may not exceed 25 kg in weight. late

Each half of the bottom bearing shells shall be spirally grooved such that rotation of the journal assists the passage of lubricant through the bearing surfaces.

The design of the bearing housing and shells shall provide for repositioning the bottom shell to the top position and vice versa when wear has taken place.

The bottom bearing housing shall preferably be pivoted, and foot mounted so as to facilitate self-alignment in all axes to the deflection of the screw pump under any

pumping condition or when the screw pump is running dry. Provision shall be made to take into account the resultant force on the screw pump due to the higher water level mentioned above.

M09.4.6.3 Lubrication

The continuous lubrication of bottom bearings shall be through an external automatic lubrication system by means of a light grease or oil system pressurised by an electric motor driven plunger pump or oil hydraulic reservoir in the form of a power pack. If the former is chosen, the grease shall return to a suitable removable receptacle located on a bracket fixed to the external sump wall or, if the latter, a return pipe shall be provided to return oil to the reservoir via a suitable inclined 'in-line' filter.

The lubricant shall be piped to the bottom bearing via a high-pressure tube housed in a pipe duct down the side of the trough behind the splash plate or cast into the concrete structure.

Hard wiring provision shall be made for priming the system (30 second for oil or 60 seconds for light grease) prior to start-up of the screw pump as part of operational philosophy of the system. An adjustable pressure relief valve shall be provided for either system together with a pressure gauge and pressure switch.

An external stationary shroud shall be provided to prevent detritus affecting the bearing or lubrication pipes during operation.

M09.4.6.4 Top Bearing

The top bearing shall be designed to accommodate the entire thrust including upward forces due to buoyancy of the rotating parts of the screw together with a proportion of the radial forces. The thrust shall be transferred from the shaft to the bearing by means of a suitable thrust ring or lock nuts designed not to fail under the thrust load imposed of the dead load of the screw assembly and the live load from the liquid being pumped. A "circlip" arrangement will not be acceptable. The bearing shall be grease lubricated with a Stauffer "tell-tale" (or equivalent) lubricator accessible from the machinery room and shall have seals on both ends. It shall be possible to easily dismantle and replace this bearing without removing the stub shaft.

The top bearing shall be foot mounted on a rigid support frame which allows ease of installation and alignment of the screw pump unit, which shall also seal the opening in the motor room wall.

Bearings shall be designed for a L10 life in excess of 200 000 hours. The Contractor shall submit proof of the required bearing rating.

The opening through which the shaft pass through the bearing housing shall be sealed off from the outside. This shall be achieved as minimum by using a combination of double lip seal between the rotating shaft and housing, an enclosure disc screwed onto the housing and finally a v-ring clipped on the exposed rotating shaft.

M09.4.7 Gearboxes

Each screw pump shall be directly coupled to a suitable gearbox through a flexible coupling with the gearbox in line and driven by a motor through a mechanical overload release coupling or V-Belts. It shall be noted that the gearbox will be mounted at an angle as the same plane of the screw torque tube or upper bearing and must be designed accordingly. The gearbox shall be provided with an anti-reverse rotation clutch or backstop device to prevent reverse rotation.

Refer to Particular Specification M08: Mechanical Gearboxes for a detailed specification for gearboxes.

M09.4.7.1 Gearbox/Motor Coupling

The coupling between motor and gearbox shall be of the mechanical overload release type with manual resetting facility or preferably a flexible correctly tensioned V-belt pulley arrangement type coupling. The incorporation of a shear pin will not be acceptable. The coupling shall instantaneously protect the motor and gearbox should the screw suddenly become arrested in rotation. The coupling shall be fully rated to transmit the motor full load power and tested to prove the above features together with static and dynamic balance.

M09.4.7.2 Gearbox and Motor Mounting

The gearbox shall be mounted directly to a purpose designed concrete plinth. The motor shall be provided with slide rails, which shall be mounted to the above plinth or in a compact unit frame mounted on the top side of the gearbox.

M09.4.8 Electric Motors

The screw pump shall be driven by a high efficiency fixed speed electric motor. Refer to Particular Specification E01: Electric Motors for a detailed specification for Electric motors.

Starting characteristics of motors shall be suitable for the equipment offered. These shall also include the motor phase protection, overloading, etc as specified in the project specification.

Bearings shall be adequate to withstand continuous operation when supporting the rotor shaft inclined at the angle specified in the Project Specific Specification or in-line with the installation assembly of the screw pump. Bearings shall be sealed or self-lubricated, provided with a readily accessible filter and clearly visible oil level indicator.

M09.4.9 Screw Troughs (if not installed on a screed concrete trough)

A steel trough liner or a concrete casting mould shall be designed and constructed in line with the selected Screw Pump required, the trough design shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent / Employer's Representative. The Contractor shall be responsible for the final alignment of the trough to provide the correct clearances, and for the supervision of the formation of the trough.

The trough shall extend between the pump inlet sump and the discharge channel without distortion.

The trough shall be so shaped as to avoid 'wedges' between screws and sidewalls and to provide for the return of any excess liquid or solids without interference with screw pump rotation. Unless otherwise specified, the trough width between the side walls shall be at least the diameter of the screw pump plus 400mm.

The trough shall preferably have its profile shaped by means of the screw itself, after installation, in order to ensure minimise clearance and maximize efficiency for the specific screw pump.

M09.4.10 Side Profiles

In order to contain the pumped liquid on the high-water level side of the screw axis, caused by the rotation of the pump, special side profiles shall be fitted. The profiles shall be fixed to the concrete trough and the channel sidewall using high strength stainless steel fixing bolts, to maintain a small clearance around approximately 230º of the screw circumference.

M09.4.11 Screw Pump Covers

Where specified in the project specification, the sump screw shall be supplied with clear, UV resistant and removable covers. Along with this, access stars shall be incorporated in the civil design to allow access on both sides of the screw pump.

M09.4.12 Lifting

if not specified in the project specification, there screw pump unit assembly shall be supplied under the same contract with a lifting crawl beam installed over the center of the pumps and on the bottom bearing section. The minimum safe working load shall be 1000 kg or as per the heaviest equipment assembly whichever is greater. The lifting equipment shall be design and manufactured from corrosion protect structural steel. The details of such lifting equipment shall be referred to in the particular specification for lifting equipment or as specified in the project specification.

All equipment greater than 25kg shall have lifting eyes integrally incorporated in their housing to allow safe and accessible lifting of the equipment installed.

M09.5 FASTENERS

Nuts, bolts, studs and washers for incorporation in the Works shall conform to the requirement of the appropriate approved standard.

Bolts shall be of such standard length that a minimum of two to four complete threads shall protrude beyond the nut when in the fully tightened condition. The same shall applies to stud units. Mating surfaces shall be adequately protected against corrosion whilst awaiting assembly of the faces and bolting, all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All high tensile bolts and studs used in the Works shall bear the letter HTS stamped or engraved on the end.

Washers shall be provided under all bolt heads and nuts. The threads of bolts and studs shall be lubricated before assembly with a lubricating substance subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Washers, locking devices and anti-vibration arrangements shall be provided where necessary and shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

Stainless steel bolts, nuts and washers shall be in accordance with SANS 1700 A70, and the grade of stainless steel shall be subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Hot Dip Galvanized fasteners shall comply with the requirements of SANS 121. High strength friction grip (HSFG) bolts, nuts, load indicator washers and washers shall subject to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative and shall be hot dip galvanized. High strength friction grip bolts shall be tightened in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and the tension shall be re-checked not less than 3 hours after first tightening and then the bolts shall be retightened to the initial load all to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative.

All stainless steel holding down bolts, nuts and washers in contact with a dissimilar material shall be provided with isolating washers and sleeves (insolating kit) where appropriate to prevent galvanic corrosion, unless otherwise specified in the project specification. The bed plates and machinery shall be provided with means of adjustment for line and level to maintain the items of Plant in correct alignment during grouting. Packers used for adjustment shall be of non-corrosive material to the approval of the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. Holding down bolts which are to be tightened after grouting shall be provided with bond breakers where they pass through the grout.

Where there is a risk of corrosion, bolts and studs shall be designed so that the maximum stress in the bolt and nut does not exceed half of the yield stress of the bolt material under all conditions. The shear value of high strength friction grip bolts shall be reduced in proportion to the reduced tensile stress compared with the normal design stress.

No tapped holes in mild steel shall be allowed. Where tapped holes are unavoidable, this shall be done into stainless steel.

Where bolts and nuts are required to be removed and re-assembled on a regular basis, these shall be of stainless steel.

Metal coatings and other treatments applied to fasteners shall be carried out in a manner which will not cause hydrogen embrittlement of the parent material

M09.6 METAL PREPARATION AND PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M09.7 COLOUR CODING

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Coding.

M09.8 MATERIAL OF CONSTRUCTION

The pump unit components shall be constructed of the material specified in the Table below:

Material Specifications:

COMPONENT	MATERIAL TYPE
Torque tube(s)	Mild steel epoxy coated NB. Use as a minimum a composition coating with a Zincrich primer for application with high sand content.
Helices or Flights	Mild steel epoxy coated NB. Use as a minimum a composition coating with a Zincrich primer for application with high sand content.
Helices or Flights Tips (100mm)	304L Stainless Steel
Connecting flanges to torque tube	Mild steel epoxy coated
Stub shaft	Mild steel to BS 970 grade and epoxy coated
Bearing housing	Epoxy coated Cast iron
Support frames for both upper and lower bearing	304L stainless steel
Bearing bushes	Phosphor bronze
Bearing lubricant tubes	304 L Stainless Steel
Gearbox and Motor support frame	Hot Dipped Galvanised Mild steel
Support frame covers for shaft coupling and V-belt pulley elements	Mild steel epoxy coated
Screw trough	304L stainless steel
Belt drive pulleys	Cast Iron
Hold down bolts and fasteners	316 stainless steel
Side profile and support (Splash Plate)	304L stainless steel
Screw Pump Covers	Clear UV resistant Plastic.
Access platforms	GRP with stainless steel clips.
All other accessories shall be of the manufacturer's standard, industry approved, and corrosion protected.	

M09.9 RECOMMENDED SPARES AND SPECIAL TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended and shall be kept by the works maintenance facility. Spares which the Client decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately, and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

Tenderers shall submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of special spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M09.10 VIBRATION AND NOISE

The screw pump as well as the motors will comply with the requirements of BS EN60034 part 9 and 14. The Contractor shall carry out vibration tests as requested by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative in compliant with the specified vibration standard. The noise level shall not exceed 75 dBA measured at 1m from the pump.

The vibration velocity measurements for fixed speed pumps shall be taken within the 0-100% of the operating envelope. The Root Mean Square (RMS) vibration velocity levels generated by the pump unit during testing shall not exceed 4.2 mm/s or the maximum recommend level by the OEM, but the standard value shall be whichever is less.

The Contractor will also be requested by the Employer's Agent or Representative to measure and confirm the vibration velocity once the screw pump unit is installed more specifically at the lower and upper bearings.

M09.11 GUARANTEE OF PERFORMANCE

The Defects Liability period shall extend over a period of 12 months calculated from the Completion as defined in the Contract Document. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Employer's Agent or Representative reserves the right to extend the Defects Liability Period in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of at least 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification.

M09.12 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project. The Contractor's Quality Management System shall be in accordance with industry standard. The Contractor shall implement a comprehensive Quality Control programme and accept full responsibility for the quality of his workmanship and material used, irrespective of any quality surveillance that may be carried out by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. In keeping with the basic principles Quality Management System, the Contractor and Subcontractor(s) shall:

- Be responsible for compliance with all the requirements of the Specification in every respect;
- Carry out all inspections and tests called for in the Specification in the presence of the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The cost of these inspections and tests shall be carried out at the sole expense and under the responsibility of the Contractor;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for manufacture for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during manufacturing process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during manufacture, cleaning and preparation for application as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for corrosion protection for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during corrosion protection process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during corrosion protection as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance;
- Draft a Quality Control Plan for installation for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during installation process of all components indicating all the intended stages of testing during installation as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance; and
- Draft Quality Control Plans for any other construction process as may be required for approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative and comply with the approved Quality Plan during the execution of the process indicating all the intended stages of testing as well as necessary hold points for independent quality surveillance.

The Quality Control Plans will not be compromised once approved and shall always be adhered to. The Contractor shall operate approved quality assurance and control programmes in the Supplier's and Manufacturer's premises and on Site in order to verify that the Works comply with this Section. Prior to the commencement of any work, the Contractor shall prepare and submit to the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative for approval, quality plans describing the procedures, standards of acceptance, hold point inspections, routine and type tests to be carried out for each component both during manufacture and on Site.

Although it shall remain the responsibility of the Contractor to ensure that the Works conform to the Specification, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be entitled to inspect, examine and test the materials, workmanship and performance of every item of Plant. The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative will notify the Contractor which tests or inspections, detailed in the quality plan, he will attend.

Approval by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative of materials, workmanship, etc., during manufacture or at Site will not relieve the Contractor of his obligations to comply with all the requirements of the Contract.

All instruments and appliances necessary for the complete inspection and testing shall be provided by the Contractor. Calibration certificates for instruments shall be produced to the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative for review prior to the commencement of any tests and, if required by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative, instruments shall be re-calibrated at the Contractor's own account before commencement of the tests.

In general, Quality Management System should be bench marked in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M09.12.1 Material Tests

The Manufacturer's material test data and the Contractor's quality records shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. Reasonable samples of the cleaning and coating materials to be used may be taken for testing.

Rejection of the samples shall place a hold on the use of the materials of the same batch number and any components that have already been cleaned/coated with rejected material shall be re-cleaned and coated.

M09.12.2 Type Tests

Where the Contractor offers Plant selected from the standard range of products from a specialist manufacturer, type tests in accordance with a recognised international standard are required on one unit of each type to prove satisfactory design and quality of manufacture of that Plant.

The Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative may waive the requirement for type tests if he is satisfied that tests have previously been performed on identical Plant. The Contractor shall submit the data and results with his Quality Plan in sufficient time to allow for repeat tests without delaying the Works should the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative not approve the evidence submitted.

M09.12.3 Substandard Quality Control

All material, certification and records of the Contractor shall be subject to examination by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

This shall include the checking and testing of the Plant at the Works and on Site, installation and pre-acceptance testing. If any deviation is found, additional testing and quality surveillance shall be carried out at the Contractor's own costs until approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

If the additional testing confirms inaccurate quality control by the Contractor on an item of Plant, all work shall be stopped on that item of Plant and shall only proceed after remedial action in the quality control system has been implemented.

M09.12.4 Access for Surveillance

For the purpose of carrying out quality surveillance, the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative shall be granted access to any part of the Contractor's premises relevant to the work being carried out, at any reasonable time.

M09.12.5 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Employer's Agent or Representative opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Employer's Agent or Representative during design and manufacture per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M09.12.6 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Employer's Agent or Representative shall be afforded every opportunity to certain stages of completion of the installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site activities at the Employer's Agent or Representative's discretion.

M09.13 PERFORMANCE TESTING

M09.13.1 Works testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All test (including static and dynamic balancing) results shall be made available to the Employer's Agent or Representative for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

M09.13.2 Before commissioning

- Check that all bearings are lubricated properly.
- Ensure that the belts are correctly tensioned.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked, witnessed by and the results shall be available for inspection by the Employer's Agent or Representative.
- Check that the correct clearance tolerance within the throat tube prevails.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M09.13.3 During Commissioning

- Ensure all lubrication pumps and flow or pressure switches are functional
- Check for correct operation of rotation, speed, vibration and noise.
- Note amperage drawn by each assembly.
- Measure the flow delivered by each pump

M09.14 BEFORE EXPIRY OF THE DEFECTS LIABILITY PERIOD

The Contractor has an obligation to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing within 14 days from the date of the inspection.

M09.15 EQUIPMENT TRAINING PROCEDURE

Training shall be provided by the Contractor (or specialist equipment suppliers) based on the supplied and approved operation and maintenance (O&M) manuals for all supplied equipment. This training shall be provided to the Operations and Mechanical including other support discipline staff of the Employer along with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives. The duration of the training period shall be advised by the Contractor and agreed with the Employer's Agent and/or Representatives.

The training structure for the equipment and/or system should include both the theory and practical components of the equipment derived from the O&M manuals.

The preparation of the O&M manuals shall be based on the Johannesburg Water (SOC) Particular specification for Commissioning and Operation.

M09.16 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL SUMMARY

The Contractor shall hand over to the Employer' Agent or Employer's Representative four sets (x2 hard copies and x2 electronic copies on non-locked USB) of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant. A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

- Brief description of the plant and installation.
- Concise operating instructions including start-up, operating, shutdown and troubleshooting procedures.
- Routine maintenance instruction this shall include failure mode analysis and preventative strategies.
- Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.
- Detailed information on equipment.
- Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.
- Schematic Diagram and Drawings
- Risk, Health and Safety Assessment with proposed control measures.

M09.17 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. 's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, they shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, he will submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Employer's Agent or Employer's Representative. . Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M09.18 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar types of equipment are required, these units will be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied will be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M09.19 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

No separate payment will be made for required equipment unless otherwise specified in the detail/project specifications. All direct and indirect costs associated with such required equipment shall be deemed to be included in the rates tendered for the equipment.

Where separate payment is required for equipment and specified as such in the detail /project specifications, the following payment items shall be applicable:

M09.19.1 General

The following items shall be included in the rates:

- Supply of all design and pre-manufacture documentation and obtaining approval thereof;
- Procurement/manufacture of required equipment with associated equipment items and delivery to Site;
- Installation of complete required equipment with associated equipment items and testing;
- Services required during period of initial use before handover to the Employer.

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery; installation and testing; and commissioning and trail operation of the equipment. A further training requirement shall be allowed for as specified in the scheduled items.

M09.19.2 Supply and delivery to site with documentation

Item	**Unit**
Supply and delivery to site with documentation	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, inspections, quality control, quality assurance, factory acceptance testing, corrosion protection, packing, delivery to site including transportation costs and offloading on site including any cranage requirements. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M09.19.3 Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment

Item	Unit
Installation, Testing and Commissioning of the Equipment	No

The tendered rates shall include for full compensation of all costs incurred in installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified on Site including the provision of all labour, supervision, instruments, equipment, transport, on-site quality assurance and quality control, inspection and testing (including attendance at tests witnessed by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative), materials and Temporary Works necessary to completely install, test and commission and render fully operational surface aeration equipment.

The rate shall also include the cost of the installation of all auxiliary equipment not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified until taken over by the Employer; the putting into service of the complete installation; remedial work and any other work as specified and necessary.

The rate shall also include for all preliminary testing and the provision of testing equipment therefore including all disruptions to installation caused by such testing.

Payment will only be effected after full compliance of the equipment items with this Section and associated documentation has been approved by the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative.

M09.19.4 Trial Operations

Item	Unit
Trial Operations	No

This specification allows for a number of calendar days within which the system Trial Operation can be completed after completion of commissioning process. The Contractor shall programme and price for providing full technical and operational support during trail operation.

M09.19.5 Employer's Operator Training

Item	Unit
Training	No

Payment for Training of the Employer's Operational Staff will be made under this Section as set out in project specification or agreed with the Employer's Agent / Employer' Representative. The lump sum shall be inclusive of all costs associated with the training programme and on-site training of personnel.

M09.19.6 Spares and Tools

Item	**Unit**
Spares and Tools.....	No

The cost of spares, considered to be necessary by the Contractor other than spares required by the Employer, delivered to Site and handed over will be paid as a lump sum. A Spare Part Schedule subject to approval by the Employer's Agent/ Employer's representative shall be submited before procurement of spares.

The actual lump sum to be paid shall be based on the unit rates priced in the Bill of Quantity for the actual spares ordered and supplied and the Employer is entitled to purchase all, some or none of the items listed. A provisional sum will be allocated in the Bill of Quantity for the complete list of spare parts as listed by the Contractor.The rate tendered shall provide for the manufacture, supply, delivery to Site and handing over of the spares ordered and shall include permanent packing for long term storage. The spares shall be manufactured at the same time as the installed items.

----------**END**----------

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M10: MECHANICAL SECONDARY CLARIFIER TANKS EQUIPMENT

4	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	General Update	AR Wellard	
2	2010-03-07	General Review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M10: MECHANICAL SECONDARY CLARIFIER TANKS EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M10.1 SCOPE 3

M10.2 INTERPRETATIONS 3
M10.2.1 Abbreviations 3
M10.2.2 Standards 3
M10.2.3 General Requirements 4

M10.3 DESIGN OF CLARIFIERS 4
M10.3.1 General Design Parameters 4
M10.3.2 Specific Design Requirements 4

M10.4 CLARIFIER 5
M10.4.1 Clarifier Parameters 5
M10.4.2 Inlet Arrangements to Clarifiers 5
M10.4.3 Access Bridge Parameters 6
M10.4.4 Motor 7
M10.4.5 Gearbox 7
M10.4.6 Gearbox / Motor Coupling 7
M10.4.7 Protection 7
M10.4.8 Wheels 7
M10.4.9 Drive Train 7

M10.5 SCRAPER MECHANISM 8
M10.5.1 General 8
M10.5.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters 8
M10.5.3 Scrapers 8
M10.5.4 Back Plates 8
M10.5.5 Structural Units 8

M10.6 DESLUDGING PIPE (SUPPLIED BY OTHERS) 8
M10.6.1 De-sludging Valves (supplied by others) 9

M10.7 SCUM REMOVAL MECHANISM 9
M10.7.1 General 9
M10.7.2 Scum Board 9
M10.7.3 Scum Skimmer Plate 9
M10.7.4 Stamford Baffle 9
M10.7.5 Scum Box 9
M10.7.6 Scum Discharge Pipe 10

M10.8 OVERFLOW WEIR 10

M10.9 PIPEWORK 10

M10.10 SPARES AND TOOLS 10

M10.11 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE 11

M10.12 BOLTS 11

M10.13 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION 11

M10.14 COLOUR CODES 11

M10.15 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 11
M10.15.1 Manufacture 11
M10.15.2 Installation 11

M10.16 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE 12
M10.16.1 Prior to Filling of the Tanks 12
M10.16.2 After filling of the Tanks 12
M10.16.3 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period 12

M10.17 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 12

M10.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of Secondary Clarifiers. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with that of the Project Specification.

M10.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M10.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M10.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the secondary clarifier tanks shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS 292 Part 1: 1987	:	Dimensions of ball bearings, cylindrical and spherical roller bearings
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 1044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders working where weld procedure approval is not required.
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-4	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10104	:	Hand railing and balustrading (safety aspects)
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10332	:	Homologation of tyres
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines

SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts

M10.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

M17: Particular Specification for Actuator equipment

M20: Particular Specification for Valves

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Volume 8: Flow Measurement

M10.3 DESIGN OF CLARIFIERS

M10.3.1 General Design Parameters

Secondary Clarifiers shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:-

- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 12 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes.
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum,
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M10.3.2 Specific Design Requirements

The objective of the clarifier tanks is to separate the biological solids in the mixed liquor from the treated effluent and to thicken the residual biological sludge for recycling to the BNR reactor. The clarifiers are to be downstream of the Biological reactors and upstream of the disinfection Contact tank.

There shall be no less than two tanks per reactor. The mechanisms of the thickeners shall be designed to operate at the most extreme loadings and be capable of restarting once stopped.

Design Loads:

- The worst case Diluted Sludge Volume Index (DSVI) = 135 ml/gm
- Mixed Liquid Suspended Solids (MLSS) in summer = 3000 mg/l
- Mixed Liquid Suspended Solids (MLSS) in winter = 5000 mg/l.
- Typical return activated sludge concentration is between 6000 to 15000 mg/l
- The maximum return activated sludge return is 20000 to 30000 mg/l
- Solid flux in summer is 50 kg TS/m^2/day

- Solid Flux in winter it is 65 kg TS/m^2/day
- The Average Hydraulic Loading rate: 0.6m^3/m^2/hr
- The Peak Hydraulic Loading rate: 0.8m^3/m^2/hr

Easy access to components subjected to wear such as gearboxes, bearings, driving wheels etc, is required.

Welds and fasteners

All stainless steel metals are to be welded together unless otherwise stipulated. All welds are to be in accordance with SANS 10044. All submerged fasteners shall be 316 SS and mating flanges shall be sealed against the ingress of any crevice corrosion by means of a sealant suitable for underwater conditions and approved by the Engineer.

M10.4 CLARIFIER

M10.4.1 Clarifier Parameters

The equipment to be supplied under this contract shall be installed, tested and commissioned on concrete structures, constructed by others, to the dimensions indicated on the construction detail drawings.

The tank shall be circular with a conical bottom tank and a side water depth (SWD) of a minimum of 4,0 m unless indicated differently on the construction drawings. The peripheral wall shall be finished to 1 m above the finished terrace level. The floor of the tank shall be sloped, vertical to the horizontal 1:6, to assist the sludge being scrapped to a central collection hopper for withdrawal.

The diameter of the tank shall be as shown specified in Project Specific Specification or on the drawings.

M10.4.2 Inlet Arrangements to Clarifiers

M10.4.2.1 Centre Column

The centre column shall be designed to serve as the inlet to the clarifier tanks and a support structure for the centre pivot of the bridge. The centre column shall enter the tank vertically from the bottom and shall be constructed in reinforced concrete that shall form a pivot for the bridge, by a Civil Contractor.

The inlet effluent pipe shall enter the clarifier from the bottom, shall fit within the centre column and shall be manufactured from 304 L SS with a diameter of 800 mm and minimum wall thickness of 6 mm unless otherwise specified in the Project Specific Specification or drawings. The centre column shall form the flocculation baffle at a distance of 0.5 – 0.6 times the SWD from the top of the clarifier. The top of the inlet pipe shall be closed and suitably protrude above the liquid level to horizontally support the bridge structure. The inlet pipe shall be supplied and installed by the Civil contractor.

M10.4.2.2 Influent Well

An influent well with a minimum diameter measuring at least 0.14 times that of the clarifier diameter shall be installed. The depth shall be at least 0.33 times that of the side wall depth (SWD). The well shall protrude 500 mm above the maximum liquid level within the tank.

At least six hinged gate openings with a width to depth ratio of 2:1, positioned at the top, in the side wall of the influent well shall be provided for influent discharge. The opening angle between the gate and influent well wall shall be 30°. The direction in which the hinged gates

open shall oppose the direction of rotation of the bridge supporting the floor scrapping mechanism. The well and gate openings shall be manufactured from minimum thickness 4,5 mm 304 L stainless steel sheet metal. The influent well shall be suitably supported and secured from the inlet pipe work.

The Tenderer shall be responsible for the design and detailing of all members, support members, gussets, plates and stiffeners of the inlet arrangement as described above. A detailed drawing of the proposed mechanism shall accompany the Tender show all member sizes designed for.

M10.4.2.3 Flocculation Baffle

The diameter of the flocculation baffle shall be between 0.15 and 0.2 times that of the tank diameter with a depth of 0.5 - 0.6 of the SWD.

The flocculation baffle shall have a double baffle design in order to increase the mixing intensity and retention in time. The retention time shall be 10-20 minutes at nominal design flow. The mixing intensity selected to achieve bio-flocculation of Mixed Liquid Suspended Solids shall be in the range of G = 30 - 70/ sec.

The flocculation baffle shall be manufactured in concrete (by others) unless specified otherwise in the Project Specific Specification.

However the inlet dissipation “ears” shall be supplied as part of the mechanical scope of work and be manufactured from 304 stainless steel.

M10.4.3 Access Bridge Parameters

The rotating access bridge shall be manufactured in 3CR12 and shall cover at least three quarters. The bridge shall be supported by a hinged bearing on the inlet structure and by driven wheeled support on the perimeter wall of the tank (peripheral drive). A 3CR12 ladder with the necessary handrails shall be rigidly fixed by means of welds to the outer end of the bridge for access purposes.

- Designed Load: 2500N per m^2 of walkway area
- Walkway: no less than 750 mm wide, 3CR12 stainless steel
- Open Grating: 3CR12
- Hand and kneerails: 3CR12 on both sides of walkway
- Kicker plates: 100 x 4,5mm 3CR12 attached to both sides of the bridge

The bridge shall be designed to resist any torsion imposed by the scraper mechanism without excessive deflection.

The bridge shall furthermore be designed with sufficient camber to completely cancel the deflection which will be produced by the dead load of the complete bridge with the scraper mechanism attached, the latter unsubmerged.

M10.4.3.1 Walkway

The walkway shall be assembled by welding joints. The joints for the handrailing and walkway shall be welded after installation of the bridge.

M10.4.3.2 Fasteners

The hinged bearing and base plate structure shall be manufactured from 3CR12 and shall be designed as to withstand the maximum design load of the bridge. Roller bearings shall be used to pivot the bridge. The bearings are to be water resistant.

M10.4.4 Motor

The bridge shall be driven by a slip ring electric motor through a speed reducer giving a peripheral speed of approximately 2 to 3 meters per minute. The minimum rating of the motor shall be 0.75 kW. Refer to Particular Specification E01: for a detailed specification for the Electric Motors.

M10.4.5 Gearbox

Refer to Particular Specification M08: for a detailed specification for the gearbox.

M10.4.6 Gearbox / Motor Coupling

The coupling shall be fully rated to transmit the motor full load power and tested to prove the above features together with static and dynamic balance. The motor shall be coupled to the gearbox input shaft with a flexible coupling.

M10.4.7 Protection

Suitable protection shall be provided for in the event of an obstruction causing the bridge operation to be interrupted. The protection provided shall interrupt the operation of the bridge thereby preventing damage to the motor and wheels of the bridge.

The protection device shall be of an Intelligent Motor Protection Relay type with built in phase angle protection. As a backup device a torque overload coupling with a limit switch shall be provided. The limit switch must have at least one SPDT contact or one normally open and one normally closed contact capable of switching at least 500mA at 230 Volts AC

It is a requirement of this specification that this malfunction in operation be reflected on the works SCADA system.

M10.4.8 Wheels

At least two 125 mm wide polyurethane tyred wheels must be used for the bridge. The wheels are to be secured to the bridge by means of welds. The wheels must be accurately aligned so that the plane of rotation is normal to a line drawn through the pivot of the wheel and the centre point about which the bridge rotates, so as to minimise wear of the tyres.

The driving wheels shall be fitted with a 3CR12 protective cover, which shall be fitted to the end of the bridge, and provided with a front mounted adjustable guard that will push foreign objects off the wall and to the outside thereof. Wheel guards shall be easily detachable and not form part of the supporting structure.

The underside of the rotating bridge and the underside of the backing plates for the rubber scrapers shall have sufficient clearance to prevent any touching between metal and concrete when the tyres are worn down. The spacing of the wheels shall be such as to give adequate lateral stability to the bridge under all operating conditions. All lubricating points on the driving mechanisms and wheels shall be accessible and such that no grease is deposited on the concrete surface on which the wheels run.

M10.4.9 Drive Train

The design of the drive train shall be such that no slippage occurs, under the maximum design load or during wet weather under 1, 5 x normal operating load, between the driving wheel and the riding surface that will consist of steel trowelled concrete.

M10.5 SCRAPER MECHANISM

M10.5.1 General

No underwater bearings shall be permitted. Where possible all adjusters shall be above the water level. A detailed drawing of the proposal mechanism shall accompany the Tender.

M10.5.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters

The scraper mechanism for the Clarifier shall consist of full diameter of the tank to scrape the entire floor area. The scrapers shall be fitted to an underwater support system manufactured from 304L stainless steel, which shall be suspended from the overhead rotating bridge.

The scraper mechanism and the bridge shall form one rigid unit on the side of the pivot point with an allowance of at least 30 mm vertical adjustment in the level of the floor scraper.

M10.5.3 Scrapers

The scrapers shall be of spiral ('C' formation) type and shall be fitted with synthetic rubber squeegees shaped to fit snugly on the floor. The shape of the squeegees shall be such that at any point it will fit the curvature of the conical floor of the basin. Care must be taken to minimise the wear on the squeegees but no supporting wheels shall be considered

The overall height of the scraper shall be at least 300 mm, and the scrapers shall overlap by at least 10%. Near the central column the scrapers shall form a spiral in order that the sludge is scraped constantly into the hopper at any bridge position.

M10.5.3.1 Fasteners

The squeegees are to be fitted to the scrapers by means of a back plate. The squeegees are to be secured 50 mm from the bottom by means of a bolted connection. The bolt shall pass from the back plate, through the squeegees to the scraper. The squeegees back plate shall be 50 mm in height and have a minimum thickness of 4,5 mm. Refer to PAE 3.2 for weld specifications.

M10.5.4 Back Plates

The back plates shall be angled more than 60° to the radius, and be manufactured from 304 stainless steel with a minimum thickness of 6 mm.

The underside of the backplates shall be such that at any point it will fit the curvature of the conical floor of the basin. Care must be taken to minimise the wear on the squeegees but no supporting wheels shall be considered.

M10.5.5 Structural Units

The cross-braced structural units suspending the scrapers from the bridge shall be sufficiently sturdy to keep the scrapers in their relative positions without the metal back plates coming into contact with the floor. The structural units are to be manufactured from 304 stainless steel.

The contractor shall be responsible for the estimated loading on the structure and the torque calculations required to design his equipment under specified maximum loads and shall utilise a factor of safety of not less than 1,5 in the selection of the drive and structural design components.

M10.6 DESLUDGING PIPE (SUPPLIED BY OTHERS)

The de-sludging pipe is to have a compressed air purge connection and a blank flange 200 mm

above the maximum water level in the tanks, as to remove any blockages in the pipe. The de-sludging pipes shall be provided with long radii bends in order to limit potential blockages occurring within the pipes. The number of bends in the pipe is to be kept to a minimum and there are to be no reducers on the sludge draw-off pipe. The de-sludging pipe shall slope towards the scum removal pipe, joining up with it.

M10.6.1 De-sludging Valves (supplied by others)

Continuous sludge removal shall be due to the differential hydraulic head (1.5m miniumum) controlled by a manually operated underflow knife gate valve.

The knife gate valves are to be manufactured from 304 SS.

M10.7 SCUM REMOVAL MECHANISM

M10.7.1 General

Where possible all adjusters shall be above water level. The tank shall be de-scummed on each rotation of the scraper bridge.

A detailed drawing of the proposed mechanism shall accompany the Tender.

M10.7.2 Scum Board

A manufactured scum board of 3CR12 plate with a minimal dimension of 450 mm deep, 300 mm below surface water level shall be provided along the perimeter of the overflow weir at a distance of 300 mm from the weir and supported by 304 stainless steel brackets.

M10.7.3 Scum Skimmer Plate

A scum skimmer plate shall be provided at least 3 mm thick of 304 stainless steel and 150 mm deep to skim the water surface area within the scum baffle (including the stilling chamber) and a scum receiving hopper shall be provided. The scum skimmer shall be set at an angle to the bridge and supported at short intervals to prevent buckling. The part of the scum skimmer passing over the hopper shall be pivoted and shall be arranged in such a way that it will lift clear of the hopper. The skimmer plate will be fixed to the support structure by welds.

M10.7.4 Stamford Baffle

The horizontal width of the baffle shall be calculated based upon the following:

Width = 460 + 17*(clarifier diameter in metres)

The maximum horizontal width of the baffle shall be less than or equal to 1200 mm and the baffle shall be installed at an angle of 45°. The baffle shall be manufactured from 304 stainless steel.

M10.7.5 Scum Box

The scum box opening shall measure at least 1200 mm in a radial direction and 500 mm in the direction parallel to the overflow weir and shall be made from 3CR12 plate 4,5 mm thick. It shall be equipped with a gently sloping beach, sloping from a height of 300 mm to a height of 500 mm, with a length of 500 mm and a width of 1150 mm. The scum is then deposited in the collection trough which slopes towards the scum discharged pipe. The hopper shall be supported on the side wall of the tank and shall have sufficient cross bracing to ensure rigidity.

A 3CR12 projecting striker arm shall activate a 304 L stainless steel valve, which shall open for

a period of between 20 – 40 seconds during the period that the scraper arm is above the hopper. The valve shall preferably consist of a weighted bung capable of shutting off the discharge pipe.

A manual scum pipeline valve shall also be required.

The scum box shall have a positive hydraulic scum removal action and shall be positioned facing the prevailing wind. The direction shall be specific to the works of installation.

M10.7.6 Scum Discharge Pipe

The scum discharge pipe from the hopper shall have a diameter of at least 200 mm be and manufactured from 6 mm thick 304L stainless steel. It shall slope towards the scum discharge manhole.

M10.8 OVERFLOW WEIR

A V - notched single overflow weir manufactured of 4,5 mm 3CR12 plate 200 mm deep shall be provided and installed on the outside of the internal concrete wall of the launder. The overflow weir is to be attached to the wall of the tank by means of bolts.

The installation of the V-notched shall ensure that the effluent discharges freely and evenly around the whole circumference of the tank without leakage through the joint between the weir and the wall or the joints between weir sections. Tenderers shall allow in their process for sealing against “off the shutter” concrete finish and between ends of weir sections with an approved material such as closed cell expanded neoprene. Holes in the weir plate shall be slotted to permit adjustment.

Effluent Launder and launder Covers

To minimise algae growth the maximum width of the launder shall be 450 mm.

Where specified in the project specific specification the tenderer shall include for effluent launder covers. The covers are to be manufactured from GRP and any supports shall be manufactured from 304 stainless steel. The launder section cover over the outlet pipe in the launder shall be either removable or hinged to facilitate inspection of the outlet pipe. The final design shall be approved by the Engineer prior to manufacture.

M10.9 PIPEWORK

The following supply items will be supplied and installed by others:

(1) The inlet under the floor and inside the inlet structure of the tank

(2) The sludge draw-off pipe

(3) The effluent pipework

The contractor under this Contract must, however, supply and install the scum discharge pipe up to the scum discharge manhole adjacent to the tank, which will be built by the Civil Engineer.

M10.10 SPARES AND TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which it is recommended should be kept by the Water treatment Plant for maintenance of the plant. Spares which the Management decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the

rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

A full range of spares must be kept locally for not less than 15 years.

Tenderers must submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M10.11 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE

The period of maintenance will extend over a period of 12 months calculated from the Completion as defined in the Appendix. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Engineer reserves the right to extend the Period of Maintenance in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of not more than 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification

M10.12 BOLTS

Weir plates and scum baffles shall be attached to the tank using 316 stainless steel anchors set in holes drilled by the Contractor under this Contract.

M10.13 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M10.14 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M10.15 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

QM shall be categorised as ‘critical and major’ for this section of the Project.

M10.15.1 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Engineer during design and manufacture per these QCP’s.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M10.15.2 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Engineer shall be requested to attend certain stages of completion of installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and

to witness the Contractor's site inspections at the Engineer's discretion.

M10.16 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

Works testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All performance test results shall be made available to the Engineer for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked and the results shall be available for inspection by the Engineer.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M10.16.1 Prior to Filling of the Tanks

M10.16.1.1 Driving Wheels

During the above tests the concrete surface under the driving wheels shall be thoroughly wetted.

After Initial Commissioning

- Ensure all oil pumps and flow or pressure switches are functional

M10.16.2 After filling of the Tanks

M10.16.2.1 Weirs

The even distribution of flow over the weirs. Absence of by-passing.

M10.16.2.2 Scum removal

Positive removal of scum

M10.16.3 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Engineer requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing

M10.17 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commission as well as per installation point. The respective tender rates shall cover all costs from supply to commission of each degritter system but excluding the electrical power supply and electrical cable connection.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to

enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M11: MECHANICAL FERMENTATION TANKS

4	2013-10-23	Minot updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	General review	T Wellard	
2	2010-02-15	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M11: MECHANICAL FERMENTATION TANKS

CONTENTS

M11.1 SCOPE 3

M11.2 INTERPRETATIONS 3
M11.2.1 Abbreviations 3
M11.2.2 Standards 3
M11.2.3 General Requirements 4

M11.3 DESIGN OF FERMENTATION TANKS 4
M11.3.1 General Design Parameters 4
M11.3.2 Specific Design Parameters 4

M11.4 PRIMARY SLUDGE SCREENING 5

M11.5 FERMENTATION TANK 5
M11.5.1 Fermentation Tank Parameters 5
M11.5.2 Inlet Pipe 5
M11.5.3 Access Bridge Parameters 5
M11.5.4 Walkway 5
M11.5.5 Fasteners 5

M11.6 SCRAPER MECHANISM 6
M11.6.1 General 6
M11.6.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters 6
M11.6.3 Support Frames 6
M11.6.4 Scrapers 6

M11.7 DRIVE CAGE 6
M11.7.1 Motor 6
M11.7.2 Gearboxes 7
M11.7.3 Motor/Gearbox coupling 7
M11.7.4 Protection 7

M11.8 PICKET FENCE 7

M11.9 DESLUDGING PIPES (SUPPLIED BY OTHERS) 7
M11.9.1 Desludging Valves (supplied by others) 7

M11.10 OVERFLOW WEIR 8

M11.11 FLOW METERS 8

M11.12 PIPEWORK 8

M11.13 SPARES AND TOOLS 8

M11.14 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE 8

M11.15 BOLTS 9

M11.16 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION 9

M11.17 COLOUR CODES 9

M11.18 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 9
M11.18.1 Manufacture 9
M11.18.2 Installation 9

M11.19 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE 9
M11.19.1 Works testing 9

M11.19.2 Before commissioning 9
M11.19.3 After Initial Commissioning 10
M11.19.4 After filling of the Tanks 10
M11.19.5 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period 10

M11.20 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 10

M11.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of the mechanical equipment for Fermentation Tanks. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with that of the Project Specification.

M11.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M11.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M11.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the fermentation tank shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS 292 Part 1: 1987	:	Dimensions of ball bearings, cylindrical and spherical roller bearings
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 10044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders Working where weld procedure approval is not required.
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-4	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10104	:	Hand railing and balustrading (safety aspects)
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts

M11.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M01: Particular Specification for Mechanical Screens

M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

M12: Particular Specification for Elutriation Pumps

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Volume 8: Automation and Control Design Standards Flow Measurement

M11.3 DESIGN OF FERMENTATION TANKS

M11.3.1 General Design Parameters

Fermentation Tanks shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:-

- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 12 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes.
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum,
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M11.3.2 Specific Design Parameters

The objective of the fermentation tank is to ferment primary sludge and to maximise the production of Volatile Fatty Acids (VFA), specifically acetate and propionate. The goal is to convert 8-15% of the volatile solids to Volatile Fatty Acids (VFA). The fermenter and associated structures are to have special surface protection for acidic environments.

The fermenters are to be feed on a continuous or semi-continuous basis. The fermented sludge shall overflow back into the equalisation tank/biological reactor. For small plants two fermenters are required and four fermenters for large plants.

Design Loads:

- The primary sludge target consistency is 1.0 to 2.5% with regular (hourly) withdrawal from the primary sedimentation tanks.
- The primary sludge flow is based on the peak week (maximum 7 days running average) influent Total Suspended Solids (TSS) concentration.
- Sludge retention time must be flexible and operation time shall range from 2-6 days.
- The sludge fermenter is operated in an acidic environment, with a typical pH in the range of

5.2 - 5.8.

- The Hydraulic Design Loading is 90 kg/m^2/day

M11.4 PRIMARY SLUDGE SCREENING

Primary sludge screening (3mm) may be required, depending on the main stream screening process. Sludge will be screened before sludge enters the fermentation tanks.

The screening of sludge occurs in order to remove large suspended or floating solids from raw wastewater to prevent subsequent plugging of pipes or damage to pumps. Refer to particular specification M37: Volume M37 for a detailed specification for Mechanical Sludge Screens.

M11.5 FERMENTATION TANK

M11.5.1 Fermentation Tank Parameters

The mechanical equipment to be supplied under this Contract shall be installed, tested and commissioned on concrete structures, constructed by others, to the dimensions indicated on the construction detail drawings.

The tank shall be circular with a conical bottom and a side water depth (SWD) of a maximum of 5 m unless indicated differently on the construction drawings. The peripheral wall shall be finished to 1 m above the finished terrace level. The floor of the tank shall be sloped, vertical to the horizontal 1:6, to assist the fine sludge being scrapped to a central collection hopper for withdrawal. The diameter of the tank shall be as shown on the civil construction drawings.

M11.5.2 Inlet Pipe

The inlet pipe shall have a minimum diameter of 350 mm unless specified otherwise in the Project Specific Specification or drawings and shall be manufactured with 304L SS, supplied and installed by the Civil Contractor.

M11.5.3 Access Bridge Parameters

A fixed access bridge shall be manufactured in 3CR12 and shall cover half the tank diameter. A 3CR12 ladder with the necessary handrails shall be rigidly fixed to the outer end of the bridge for access purposes.

- Designed Load: 2500N per square meter of walkway area
- Walkway: no less than 750 mm wide, 3CR12 stainless steel
- Open Grating: 3CR12
- Hand and knee rails: 3CR12 on both sides of walkway
- Kicker plates: 100 x 4.5mm 3CR12 attached to both sides of the bridge

The bridge shall be supported at the perimeter tank wall and by the centre support column.

M11.5.4 Walkway

The walkway shall be assembled by welding joints. The joints for the hand railing and walkway shall be welded after installation of the bridge.

M11.5.5 Fasteners

The torque drive shaft shall be connected to the gearbox/motor system by means of a bearing.

The gearbox/motor system shall be secured to the bridge by means of bolts.

M11.6 SCRAPER MECHANISM

M11.6.1 General

Where possible all adjusters shall be above the water level. A detailed drawing of the proposed mechanism shall accompany the Tender.

M11.6.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters

The scraper mechanism shall scrape the full diameter of the tank. The scrapers shall be fitted to a centre 304L SS torque drive shaft and two 304L SS support frames. The support frames shall be joined together at the centre of the tank and supported by linking the frames to a centre drive torque cage.

No underwater bearings shall be permitted.

M11.6.3 Support Frames

The support frames are to be at least 6 mm in thickness. Support for the scrapers shall be of suitable angle or tubular construction and shall be of sufficient strength to withstand the loads imposed by the scrapers when moving in sludge that has reached a concentration of 6%.

The support structure shall be rigid in design and shall be fixed to a 304L SS centre drive torque cage, suspended from the drive unit output shaft or from a bearing on the bridge in a rigid manner.

M11.6.4 Scrapers

The scrapers shall be of Echelon type fitted with synthetic rubber squeegees shaped to fit snugly on the floor. The shape of the squeegees shall be such that at any point they will fit the curvature of the conical floor of the basin. Care must be taken to minimise the wear on the squeegees but no supporting wheels shall be considered

The overall height of the scraper shall be at least 300 mm, and the scrapers shall overlap by at least 10%.

M11.6.4.1 Fasteners

The squeegees are to be fitted to the scrapers by means of a back plate. The squeegees are to be secured 50 mm from the bottom of the scraper by means of a bolted connection. The bolt shall pass from the back plate, through the squeegees to the scraper. The squeegees back plate shall be 50 mm in height and have a minimum thickness of 4.5 mm.

M11.7 DRIVE CAGE

The 304L SS drive torque cage shall be required to transmit the power from the motor to the scraper mechanisms. The cage must be able to handle the transmission of torque imposed by the scraper mechanism without excessive deflection, thrust and the overhung moment due to hydraulic forces. The cage must also be designed stiff enough to limit vibration and deflection.

M11.7.1 Motor

The drive shaft shall be driven by a central, geared electric motor, secured to the bridge, through a speed reducer. Refer to Particular Specification E01: for a detailed specification for

the electric motors.

M11.7.2 Gearboxes

Refer to M08: Mechanical Specification for Gearboxes.

M11.7.3 Motor/Gearbox coupling

The coupling shall be fully rated to transmit the motor full load power and shall be tested to prove the above features together with static and dynamic balance. The motor shall be coupled to the gearbox input shaft with a direct flexible coupling.

M11.7.4 Protection

Suitable protection shall be provided for in the event of an obstruction causing the scraper operation to be interrupted. The protection provided shall interrupt the operation of the scraper thereby preventing damage to the motor and gearbox.

The protection device shall be of an Intelligent Motor Protection Relay type with built in phase angle protection. As a backup device a torque overload coupling with a limit switch shall be provided. The limit switch must have at least one SPDT contact or one normally open and one normally closed contact capable of switching at least 500mA at 230 Volts AC.

It is a requirement of this specification that this malfunction in operation be reflected on the works SCADA system.

M11.8 PICKET FENCE

The picket fence shall be the full diameter of the tank. A row of 304L SS angle members spaced equally along the scraper radius shall be installed to create a picket fence attached to each of the scraper support frames. The members must be spaced at least 300 mm apart and must be of a length so that the free ends terminate approximately 500 mm below SWD.

Angle iron members forming the picket fence must be sufficiently rigid to withstand the loads imparted by movement through sludge without distortion when the concentration is 6%. The angles must be attached to the scraper support frame using a bolted bracket that allows the removal of individual members from the framework.

Angles must be fitted with the apex of the angle facing away from the direction of movement.

M11.9 DESLUDGING PIPES (SUPPLIED BY OTHERS)

The desludging pipe shall have a treated effluent purge connection and a blank flange 200 mm above the maximum water level in the tank, as to remove any blockages in the pipe. The desludging pipe shall be provided with long radii bends in order to limit potential of any blockages occurring within the pipes. The number of bends in the pipe is to be kept to a minimum and there are to be no reducers on the sludge draw-off pipe.

The desludging pipe shall have a minimum diameter of 200 mm, exit the tank from the bottom into a sludge sump where it shall be pumped to the Digesters.

M11.9.1 Desludging Valves (supplied by others)

The actuated rising spindle knife gate shall be installed on the desludging pipe work to control the flow of the desludging pipe. The frequency and duration of the valve opening shall be time controlled. This will be controlled by a Programmable Logic Controller (PLC) which shall be supplied and installed by others.

The knife gates with wetted parts shall be manufactured in 304 SS.

M11.10 OVERFLOW WEIR

A straight overflow weir made of 4,5 mm 304L SS plate 200 mm deep, shall be provided and installed on the outside of the internal concrete wall of the cantilever launder. The overflow weir shall be attached to the tank wall by means of 316 SS bolts.

After installation the effluent shall discharge freely and evenly around the whole circumference of the tank without leakage through the joint between the weir and the wall or the joints between weir sections.

Tenderers shall allow in their process for sealing against “off the shutter” concrete finish and between ends of weir sections with an approved material such as closed cell expanded neoprene. Holes in the weir plate shall be slotted to permit adjustment.

M11.11 FLOW METERS

Flow meters shall be installed as specified and shall conform to the requirements of the Automation and Control Design Standard Volume 8: Flow Measurement.

M11.12 PIPEWORK

The following shall be supplied and installed by others:-

(1) The inlet under the floor and inside the inlet structure of the tank

(2) The sludge draw-off pipe

(3) The effluent pipe work

M11.13 SPARES AND TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended to be kept by the water treatment plant for maintenance of the plant.

Spares which the Client decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

A full range of spares must be kept available for no less than 15 years.

Tenderers must submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M11.14 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE

The period of maintenance will extend over a period of 12 months calculated from the Completion as defined in the Appendix. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Engineer reserves the right to extend the Period of Maintenance in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of not more than 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification

M11.15 BOLTS

Weir plates and steady bearings shall be attached to the tank using 316 SS anchors set in holes drilled by the Contractor under this Contract.

M11.16 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M11.17 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M11.18 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project.

M11.18.1 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Engineer opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Engineer during design and manufacture as per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M11.18.2 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Engineer shall be afforded every opportunity to certain stages of completion of the installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site activities at the Engineer's discretion.

M11.19 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

M11.19.1 Works testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All performance test results shall be made available to the Engineer for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

M11.19.2 Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked and the results shall be

available for inspection by the Engineer.

- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M11.19.3 After Initial Commissioning

- Ensure all oil pumps and flow or pressure switches are functional

M11.19.4 After filling of the Tanks

Weirs

The even distribution of flow over the weirs and the absence of bypassing are to be ensured after commissioning.

M11.19.5 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Engineer requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing.

M11.20 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, civil preparation, coring and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commission as well as per installation point.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M13: MECHANICAL SLUDGE THICKENER TANK EQUIPMENT

4	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-05	General Review	T Wellard	
2	2010-02-15	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION: M13: MECHANICAL WASTE ACTIVATED SLUDGE THICKENER TANKS EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M13.1 SCOPE 2
M13.2 INTERPRETATIONS 2
M13.2.1 Abbreviations 2
M13.2.2 Standards 2
M13.2.3 General Requirements 3
M13.3 DESIGN OF WASTE ACTIVATED SLUDGE THICKENER TANKS 3
M13.3.1 General Design Parameters 3
M13.3.2 Specific Design Parameters 3
M13.3.3 Operational Requirements 4
M13.3.4 Welds and Fasteners 4
M13.4 WASTE SLUDGE SCREENING 4
M13.5 WASTE ACTIVATED SLUDGE THICKENER TANK 4
M13.5.1 Waste Activated Sludge Thickener Tank Parameters 4
M13.5.2 Inlet Pipe 4
M13.5.3 Centre Column 5
M13.5.4 Drive Train 5
M13.5.5 Access Bridge Parameters 5
M13.6 SCRAPER MECHANISM 5
M13.6.1 General 5
M13.6.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters 5
M13.6.3 Support Frames 5
M13.6.4 Scrapers 6
M13.7 PICKET FENCE 6
M13.8 SLUDGE REMOVAL PIPE (SUPPLIED BY OTHERS) 6
M13.8.1 Sludge Hopper 6
M13.9 OVERFLOW WEIR 6
M13.10 PIPEWORK 7
M13.11 SPARES AND TOOLS 7
M13.12 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE 7
M13.13 BOLTS 7
M13.14 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION 7
M13.15 COLOUR CODES 8
M13.16 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 8
M13.16.1 Manufacture 8
M13.16.2 Installation 8
M13.17 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE 8
M13.17.1 Prior to Filling of the Tanks 8
M13.17.2 After filling of the Tanks 9
M13.17.3 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period 9
M13.18 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 9

M13.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of the mechanical equipment for Sludge Thickener tanks. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification.

M13.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M13.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M13.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the WAS thickener tanks shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS 292 Part 1: 1987	:	Dimensions of ball bearings, cylindrical and spherical roller bearings
SANS 10162-1	:	The structural use of steel Part1: Limit-states design of hot-rolled steelwork
SANS 10162-2	:	The structural use of steel Part1: Limit-states design of cold-formed steelwork
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 10044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders working where weld procedure approval is not required.
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-4	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10104	:	Hand railing and balustrading (safety aspects)
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General Principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 10332	:	Homologation of tyres
SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines

SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts

M13.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M01: Particular Specification for Mechanical Screens

M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

M20: Particular Specification for Valves

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M13.3 DESIGN OF WASTE ACTIVATED SLUDGE THICKENER TANKS

M13.3.1 General Design Parameters

Waste Sludge Thickener Tanks shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:-

- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation for an acceptable life expectation of 12 years under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes.
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum,
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M13.3.2 Specific Design Parameters

The mainstream BNR treatment process generates two waste sludge streams:

- The primary sludge which is typically fermented to generate Volatile Fatty Acids (VFA)
- Waste activated sludge

The aim of the sludge thickening tanks is to thicken the waste sludge or the individual waste sludges before the anaerobic digestion or aerobic digestion process.

The design waste sludge flows and loads are based on:

- 50% wastewater flows and loads to define the average sludge loading rates
- 95% wastewater flows and loads to define the peak sludge loading rates

Design Loads:

Type of Sludge	Loading Rates (kg TS/m2/day)	
	Average Loading	Peak Loading
Waste activated sludge (WAS)	30	45
WAS and primary sludge	75	110
WAS and fermented primary sludge	60	90
Primary sludge	90	135

M13.3.3 Operational Requirements

Before thickening the sludge must be screened and properly blended and mixed. The thickened sludge must be withdrawn on a continuous basis for large thickeners and intermittently for small thickeners. Overflow must return to the head of works or to the primary clarifiers.

M13.3.4 Welds and Fasteners

All stainless steel metals are welded together unless otherwise stipulated. All welds are to be in accordance with SANS 10044. All submerged fasteners shall be 316 SS and mating flanges shall be sealed against the ingress of any crevice corrosion by means of a sealant suitable for underwater conditions and approved by the Engineer.

M13.4 WASTE SLUDGE SCREENING

Waste sludge screening may be required, depending on the main stream screening process. The primary sludge screening process will occur before the sludge enters the waste sludge thickener tanks. Refer to particular specification M37: for a detailed specification for Sludge Screens.

M13.5 WASTE ACTIVATED SLUDGE THICKENER TANK

M13.5.1 Waste Activated Sludge Thickener Tank Parameters

The mechanical equipment to be supplied under this Contract shall be installed, tested and commissioned on concrete structures, constructed by others, to the dimensions indicated on the construction detail drawings.

The tank shall be circular with a conical bottom and a side water depth (SWD) of a 5m, unless indicated differently on the construction drawings. The peripheral wall shall be finished to 1 m above the finished terrace level. The floor of the tank shall be sloped, vertical to the horizontal 1:6, to assist the sludge being scrapped to a central collection hopper for withdrawal. The diameter of the tank shall be as shown on the civil construction drawings.

The scraper and picket fence shall be driven via a centre mounted gearbox assembly.

M13.5.2 Inlet Pipe

The inlet pipe shall have a minimum diameter as specified in the Project Specific Specification or as shown on the drawings and shall be manufactured with 304 SS, supplied and installed by the Civil Contractor.

M13.5.3 Centre Column

The inlet pipe shall have a minimum diameter of 350 mm unless specified otherwise in the Project Specific Specification or drawings and shall be manufactured with 304L SS, supplied and installed by the Civil Contractor.

M13.5.4 Drive Train

The design of the centre drive train shall be such that no slippage occurs, under the maximum design load. Refer to Particular Specification E01: for a detailed specification for electric motors.

M13.5.5 Access Bridge Parameters

The access bridge shall be manufactured in 3CR12 and shall cover half the tank diameter. A 3CR12 ladder with the necessary handrails shall be rigidly fixed by means of welds to the outer end of the bridge for access purposes.

- Designed Load: 2500N per square meter of walkway area
- Walkway: no less than 750 mm wide, 3CR12 stainless steel
- Open Grating: 3CR12
- Hand and kneerails: 3CR12 on both sides of walkway
- Kicker plates: 100 x 4,5mm 3CR12 attached to both sides of the bridge

The bridge shall be supported at the perimeter tank and by the centre support column.

M13.5.5.1 Walkway

The walkway shall be assembled by welding joints. The joints for the handrailing and walkway shall be welded after installation of the bridge.

M13.5.5.2 Fasteners

The torque drive shaft shall be connected to the gearbox/motor system by means of an upper bearing. The gearbox/motor system shall be secured to the bridge by means of bolts.

M13.6 SCRAPER MECHANISM

M13.6.1 General

Where possible all adjusters shall be above the water level. A detailed drawing of the proposed mechanism shall accompany the Tender.

M13.6.2 Scraper Mechanism Parameters

The scraper mechanism shall scrape the full diameter of the tank. The scrapers shall be fitted to a centre 304 SS drive cage by means of two 304 SS support frames. The support frames shall be joined together at the centre of the tank and supported vertically by linking the frames to a centre drive torque cage.

No underwater bearings shall be permitted.

M13.6.3 Support Frames

The scraper frames are to be at least 6 mm in thickness. Support for the scrapers must be of suitable angle or tubular construction and must be of sufficient strength to withstand the loads imposed by the scrapers when moving in sludge that has reached a thickness of 8%.

The support structure shall be rigid in design and shall be fixed to a centre drive torque cage suspended from the drive unit output shaft or from a bearing on the bridge in a rigid manner. A third support arm is to be connected horizontally between the support arms, and to the centre drive cage by means of a tie bar spar, to provide extra support.

M13.6.4 Scrapers

The scrapers shall be of Echelon type fitted with synthetic rubber squeegees shaped to fit snugly on the floor. The shape of the squeegees shall be such that at any point they will fit the curvature of the conical floor of the basin. Care must be taken to minimise the wear on the squeegees but no supporting wheels shall be considered

The overall height of the scraper shall be at least 300 mm, and the scrapers shall overlap by at least 10%.

M13.6.4.1 Fasteners

The squeegees are to be fitted to the scrapers by means of a back plate. The squeegees are to be secured 50 mm from the bottom of the scraper by means of a bolted connection. The bolt shall pass from the back plate, through the squeegees to the scraper. The squeegees back plate shall be 50 mm in height and have a minimum thickness of 4.5 mm.

M13.7 PICKET FENCE

A row of 304L SS angle members spaced equally along the scraper radius shall be installed to create a picket fence attached to each of the scraper support frames. The members must be spaced at no more than 300 mm and must be of a length so that the free ends terminate approximately 500 mm below SWD.

Angle iron members forming the picket fence must be sufficiently rigid to withstand the loads imparted by movement through sludge without distortion when the concentration is 6%. The angles must be attached to the scraper support frame using a bolted bracket that allows the removal of individual members from the framework.

Angles must be fitted with the apex of the angle facing away from the direction of movement.

M13.8 SLUDGE REMOVAL PIPE (SUPPLIED BY OTHERS)

The sludge removal pipe shall have a treated effluent purge connection and a blank flange 200 mm above the maximum water level in the tanks, as to remove any blockages in the pipe. The sludge removal pipes shall be provided with long radii bends in order to limit potential of any blockages occurring within the pipes. The number of bends in the pipe is to be kept to a minimum and there are to be no reducers on the sludge draw-off pipe.

The method of sludge draw off (hydrostatic or directly coupled pumps) will be as specified in the project specific specification.

M13.8.1 Sludge Hopper

The sludge hopper shall be a minimum depth of 1.5m and shall have a side slope of 60°. The diameter of the hopper shall be based on 0.15 – 0.2 x Diameter of the tank.

M13.9 OVERFLOW WEIR

An overflow weir manufactured of 4.5 mm 304L SS plate 200 mm deep shall be provided and installed on the inside of the concrete wall of the launder. The overflow weir shall be attached to

the wall of the tank by means of bolts and shall have no V-notches.

The installation of the flat weir shall ensure that the effluent discharges freely and evenly around the whole circumference of the tank without leakage through the joints between the weir and the wall or the joints between weir sections.

Tenderers shall allow in their process for sealing against “off the shutter” concrete finish and between ends of weir sections with an approved material such as closed cell expanded neoprene. Holes in the weir plate shall be slotted to permit adjustment.

M13.10 PIPEWORK

The following supply items shall be supplied and installed by others:

- The inlet under the floor and inside the inlet structure of the tank
- The sludge draw-off pipe
- The effluent pipe work

The pipes shall be manufactured from 304 SS. The contractor under this Contract must, however, supply and install the scum discharge pipe up to the scum discharge manhole adjacent to the tank, which will be built by the Civil Contractor.

M13.11 SPARES AND TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended should be kept by the water treatment plant for maintenance of the plant. Spares which the Client decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

A full range of spares shall be kept available for not less than 15 years.

Tenderers must submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M13.12 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE

The period of maintenance will extend over a period of 12 months calculated from the Completion as defined in the Appendix.

However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Engineer reserves the right to extend the Period of Maintenance in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of not more than 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification.

M13.13 BOLTS

Weir plates and steady bearings shall be attached to the tank using 316 stainless steel anchors set in holes drilled by the Contractor under this Contract.

M13.14 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M13.15 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Coding.

M13.16 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

QM shall be categorised as 'critical and major' for this section of the Project.

M13.16.1 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the manufacturing process, indicating held points to allow the Engineer opportunities to evaluate the equipment for compliance to this specification.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Engineer during design and manufacture as per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M13.16.2 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Engineer shall be afforded every opportunity to certain stages of completion of the installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site activities at the Engineer's discretion.

M13.17 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

Works testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All performance test results shall be made available to the Engineer for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

In the case of gearboxes, they shall be subject to testing under operating conditions for at least 12 hours on the test bed. All results shall be available for inspection

Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked and the results shall be available for inspection by the Engineer.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

M13.17.1 Prior to Filling of the Tanks

After Initial Commissioning

- Ensure all oil pumps and flow or pressure switches are functional

M13.17.2 After filling of the Tanks

M13.17.2.1 Weirs

The even distribution of flow over the weirs and the absence of bypassing are to be ensured after commissioning.

M13.17.3 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Engineer requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing

M13.18 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commission as well as per installation point. The respective tender rates shall cover all costs from supply to commission of each WAS thickener.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M17: MECHANICAL ACTUATOR EQUIPMENT

4	2013/10/23	Control updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	General update and re-issue	J Ritchie	
2	2010-02-16	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M17: MECHANICAL ACTUATOR EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M17.1 SCOPE 1

M17.2 INTERPRETATIONS 2
M17.2.1 Abbreviations 2
M17.2.2 Standards 2
M17.2.3 General Requirements 2

M17.3 DESIGN OF ACTUATORS 2
M17.3.1 General Design Parameters 2

M17.4 ACTUATORS 3
M17.4.1 Design Parameters 3
M17.4.2 Life Tests 3
M17.4.3 Actuator Housing 4
M17.4.4 Gearing 4
M17.4.5 Actuator Mounting and Setting 4

M17.5 ACTUATOR CONTROLS 4
M17.5.1 Integral Motor Starters 5
M17.5.2 Integral Pushbutton starters 5
M17.5.3 Position Indicators 5
M17.5.4 Programming 6
M17.5.5 Internal Wiring 6
M17.5.6 External Wiring Connection 6
M17.5.7 Interfacing for External Wiring must be provided as Follows 6

M17.6 MANUAL OVER-RIDE 7

M17.7 ELECTRIC MOTOR 7
M17.7.1 Heater 7
M17.7.2 Output Drive 7
M17.7.3 Motor Housing 7

M17.8 POWER SUPPLY 7
M17.8.1 Transformers 8

M17.9 SPARES AND TOOLS 8

M17.10 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE 8

M17.11 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION 8

M17.12 COLOUR CODES 8

M17.13 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE 8
M17.13.1 Manufacture 9
M17.13.2 Installation 9

M17.14 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE 9
M17.14.1 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period 9

M17.15 OPERATION MANUALS 9

M17.16 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 10

M17.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test

and commissioning of actuators. The Particular Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification.

M17.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M17.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association
IEC	:	International Electrotechnical Commission

M17.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the actuators shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS 292 Part 1: 1987	:	Dimensions of ball bearings, cylindrical and Spherical roller bearings
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 10044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders working where weld procedure approval is not required.

M17.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M17.3 DESIGN OF ACTUATORS

M17.3.1 General Design Parameters

Actuators shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:-

- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,

- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation and an acceptable life expectation under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes.
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum,
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M17.4 ACTUATORS

M17.4.1 Design Parameters

Actuators shall be designed for a minimum maintenance free life of 10 000 open/close/open cycles, assuming the maximum seating torque at the end of each stroke.

The running torque shall be designed for the specific conditions of the Gate/Valve, with a minimum safety factor of 1.0 for clean water and wastewater of the maximum unseating/seating torque during each stroke.

The torque charts supplied by the manufacturer shall provide values for the unseating torque, the run torque and the open torque.

The available torque transmitted through an electric actuator to the valve output shaft, shall be rated to include the safety factor (25% for water treatment and 75% for wastewater treatment of the maximum unseating torque) in addition to the maximum torque required to fully open or close the gate/valve under the maximum working pressures and prevailing flow conditions.

The maximum output speed for the actuators shall be 90 rpm.

Operation

Actuators shall have a function to hold the gate/valve in any fixed position for a given amount of time. All gates/valves shall be capable of being opened and closed under unbalanced pressure equal to the nominal pressure.

Performance

The actuator must be self-locking so that the actuator stays in its last position. The self-locking feature must stay active if the actuator is changed into handwheel mode. The actuator must be able to be fitted in mounting orientations.

The Contractor shall submit drawings and/or calculations used for specifying the gate/valve torque at tendering stage. All actuators shall be complete with provision for manual operation.

M17.4.2 Life Tests

Actuators shall be stalled against a solid object 25 times in order to prove durability.

The standard life test is based on 25 000 open/close/open cycles at 75% rated torque rising to 100% at each end of travel. 10% of actuators installed shall be subjected to these tests.

M17.4.3 Actuator Housing

The actuator shall be enclosed in a double sealed, water tight enclosure and shall afford the protection to IP68. All the joints shall be O-ring protected. Provision shall be made for a weep hole to release any seepage water from the gate/valve in order to protect the gearbox/actuator from contamination.

M17.4.4 Gearing

All gearing shall be lubricated and designed to withstand the full stall torque of the motor. The actuator shall be directly mounted on the gearbox. The gearing shaft bearings, torque limiting clutch mechanism and limit switches shall be enclosed and adequately lubricated. A seal shall be provided on the input shaft of the gearbox to prevent water from entering the gearbox.

M17.4.4.1 *Lubrication*

The gearbox lubricants shall be such that the gearbox can be mounted at any angle without any lubricant leaking from the gearbox enclosure. The gears shall be fully covered with lubricant in order to prevent corrosion.

M17.4.5 Actuator Mounting and Setting

Actuators shall be mounted directly onto the gate/valve body or gearbox. Should a particular application require an adaptation device, any such device shall be a specific proprietary design for a particular type of gate/valve. A comprehensive design of any such adaptation shall be submitted to the Engineer for approval.

The attachment of the actuator to the gate/valve body shall be such that the actuator may be detached without disturbing the valve position.

The gate/valve manufacturer shall ensure that there is no visible movement of the actuator on the mounting adaptor or gate/valve body when the actuator is in operation.

M17.5 ACTUATOR CONTROLS

The actuator controls shall be housed in such a way as to prevent breathing and condensation build-up. One plug and socket connection shall be used for the connections between the actuator and control housing for easy access and removal.

The control housing shall be designed so that it can rotate against the actuator in 90 degree steps or can be mounted remotely from the actuator.

All actuators shall have the following controls:

- Programmable signal relays
- Non-intrusive settings with wireless programming interface for connecting programming device or all settings done in a non-intrusive manner i.e. all settings must be possible without opening or removing covers.
- Monitoring and diagnostics of faults displayed on a LCD display.
- Logging of operating data.
- Integral Motor Starts
- Integral Pushbutton starters:
  Local/off/remote selector switch
  Open/stop/close pushbutton station
- Reversing starters
- Control transformer
- Phase discriminator
- Monitor relay

- Position Indicators
- Limit switches
- Torque Switches

All digital signals for PLC monitoring and controls must be via potential free contacts capable of switching at least 500 mAmps at 230 Volts A.C.

M17.5.1 Integral Motor Starters

Integral or remote mounted actuators and control stations will be acceptable.

The reversing contactor starter shall be mechanically and electrically interlocked and rated appropriately to the motor size and suitably for 50 starts per hour.

M17.5.2 Integral Pushbutton starters

A pad-lockable local control station with a selector switch for PLC/Manual control (provided by others) shall be part of the control for all actuated valves or penstocks.

In Manual control the actuator shall be controlled by external open/close pushbuttons.

The contacts for this control are voltage-free.

M17.5.3 Position Indicators

Actuators shall be fitted with a mechanical continuous indicator showing gate/valve opening position. The scale of the position indicator shall clearly indicate the opening and closing position as well as the degree of opening in mid-position of the gate/valve. Installation of an electronic current feedback must be possible. They shall be driven by a gearing selected in a way that at least 83% of the possible travel is used. The feedback drive must be fully assembled by the actuator manufacturer.

M17.5.3.1 Limit Switches

The actuator shall have two limit switches which shall be directly geared to the output shaft of the actuator without any slippage clutch device. One limit switch shall be for the open end position and the other limit switch for the close end position.

The limit and torque switches shall be independent of one another. The limit switches shall be set up to trip the actuator before the actuator torque limit switches are activated.

The limit switches shall be adjustable, allowing adjustment to the travelling gate/valve shaft. Adjustment of the limit switches must be possible without opening or removing covers.

The addition of switches must be possible without opening the lubricated main gear case. The limit switches must be driven by a self-lubricated counter gear drive designed for high repeatability and easy adjustment.

Limit Switch Housing

The limit switch housing shall be manufactured from non-corrosive material. No plastic parts shall be used for the drive mechanism for torque and limit switches as well as for the position indicator.

M17.5.3.2 Torque Switches

The actuator shall contain two torque switches, one at each end of travel. The torque switches shall be designed to trip when the gate/valve load exceeds the torque setting. The torque

switches shall be calibrated in Nm for easy reading and resetting.

Adjustment of the torque switches must be possible without opening or removing covers.

M17.5.4 Programming

Within the control it shall be possible to program the function of the end position switching, i.e. torque switch or limit switch dependent. It must also be possible to program the control for the opening and closing directions independent of each other.

Actuators shall be local and remote electrically operated. All torque and turn settings as well as configurations shall be effected using a hand held a non-intrusive infra red setting tool.

M17.5.5 Internal Wiring

All internal connections within the integral control and between the different boards should be made by plug and socket connections except for motor power cables. All plugs and sockets shall be sized differently in order to prevent confusion.

M17.5.6 External Wiring Connection

The external wiring connection shall be done by one plug and socket for all control and motor wires. Provisions shall be made for three cable entries, one for the motor cable, one for the control cable and one for the possible feedback signal. All conduit entries shall have standard metric screw threads.

The compartment into which the cables are terminated shall be sealed from the balance of the actuator so that in the event of leakage through the cable glands no damage will occur to the actuator.

Cable entries shall be sealed against the ingress of water by means of tapped steel plugs. The use of plastic plugs for this purpose is not acceptable.

M17.5.7 Interfacing for External Wiring must be provided as Follows

a) For all on/off, open/close, circulate/by pass (i.e. all non-modulating valves) the following interfacing must be provided:
    - Potential free N/O contacts for:
        - Opened position
        - Closed position
        - Remote selection
    - Digital Inputs from an external source for:
        - Open
        - Close
        - Manual selection

b) For all modulating valves, the following interfacing must be provided:
    - Potential free N/O contacts for:
        - Opened position
        - Closed position
        - Remote selection
    - Digital Inputs from an external source for:
        - Open
        - Close
        - Manual selection. If this “Manual” selection is made, the digital “Open” and “Close” inputs must control the valve operation and the analogue input for position control must have no effect and must not interfere with the digital inputs.

- An active 4 – 20 mA output from the valve, to be supplied to an external load of max 500Ω. This output from the valve is for position indication.
- Input of 4 – 20 mA from an external source for position control.

M17.6 MANUAL OVER-RIDE

The actuator shall have a manual over-ride hand wheel. All valves shall be capable of being opened or closed under unbalanced pressure equal to the nominal pressure. The effort required to open or close the gates/valves under unbalanced pressure shall not exceed 90 N. The maximum time for any valve or penstock to be manually turned to the fully open or close position shall be 5 minutes or not more than 600 turns on the hand wheels.

The manual operation shall be via power gearing in order to minimise the required rim pull and to facilitate the change over from the motor to manual operation. A seized or inoperable motor shall not prevent manual operation.

M17.7 ELECTRIC MOTOR

Modulating actuators shall be designed for up to 1200 starts per hour and non-modulating actuators for up to 60 starts per hour.

The actuator shall be fitted with a low inertia high torque electric motor. The electric motor shall have a minimum duty rating of four consecutive complete cycles or a continuous operation of 15 minutes, whichever is more onerous.

The motors shall be time rated IEC 34 at a nominal motor load and at least 33% of maximum valve torque for 15 min. The motors shall be protected by thermostats embedded in the motor windings, one for each phase which shall have a facility for being overridden for emergency shutting off of the gate/valve.

Each electric motor shall be fitted with a suitable reduction gearing design to unseat the gate/valve under 75% of the test pressure and to operate the valve while the water flowing through the gate/valve reaches velocities of up to 5 m/s.

Refer to Particular Specification E01: Electric Motors for a detailed specification for Electric motors.

M17.7.1 Heater

A self-regulating anti-condensation heater shall be provided in the motor housing.

M17.7.2 Output Drive

The output drive shall be in accordance to ISO 5210. The output drive shall be separate from the main actuator housing in order to remove the complete actuator from the gate/valve while the gate/valve is kept in position by the output drive of the actuator.

M17.7.3 Motor Housing

The electric motor shall be totally enclosed in one non-ventilated, insulating cast iron casing.

M17.8 POWER SUPPLY

The actuator shall be designed to operate from a 400V three-phase or 230V single phase 50Hz A.C power supply. The actuator shall be capable of operating at the rated duty with a 15%

variation of the applied voltage measured at the actuator.

The actuator shall be provided with necessary auxiliary equipment to provide low voltage power required by its control circuits.

M17.8.1 Transformers

Each actuator shall have its own power supply. Easily replaceable fuses shall protect the primary and secondary windings. Two separate coil chambers shall separate the primary and secondary side of the transformer. The power supply shall incorporate a phase discriminator as to prevent the incorrect direction of travel as well as a phase failure device to ensure no actuator operation when the incoming phase fails.

The power supply shall be rated for the supply of starter coils, the heater integral to the actuator and for signals of voltage-free contact from the remote control of the actuator. The signal from the phase discriminator and phase failure devise shall be separated from the other controls by an opto-coppler in order to avoid any noise from the incoming lines being transmitted into the logic.

M17.9 SPARES AND TOOLS

The Tenderer must submit on the appropriate schedule a priced list of spare parts which is recommended should be kept by the water treatment plant for maintenance of the plant.

Spares which the Management decides to order must be manufactured simultaneously with the rest of the equipment and be subject to the same tests for dimensions, tolerances, strength, etc. All spares must be packed separately and the cases appropriately marked. All spares must be new and unused.

A full range of spares must be kept locally for not less than 15 years.

Tenderers must submit a provisional price (where applicable) for a complete set of spanners, keys and tools required for the operation, adjustment and overhaul of the plant supplied. All spanners, keys and tools shall be new and unused.

M17.10 PROOF OF MAINTENANCE

The period of maintenance will extend over a period of 12 months calculated from the date of the handover Certificate. However, should a portion or all of the plant and equipment fail / or require rectification during this period, the Engineer reserves the right to extend the Period of Maintenance in respect of such portion or all of the plant and equipment for a further period of not more than 12 months calculated from the date of Commissioning of such plant and equipment after rectification

M17.11 METAL PREPARATION AND CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M17.12 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Codes.

M17.13 QUALITY MANAGEMENT (QM) AND QUALITY ASSURANCE

QM shall be categorised as ‘critical and major’ for this section of the Project.

M17.13.1 Manufacture

Tenderers shall submit with their tender a detailed Project Quality Plan, stating how they control the flow of paperwork from commencement of the Project through final handover to the Client, a sample of their Quality Control Plan, (QCP) and Project Quality Plan, (PQP) both during the course of the Project, manufacture and finally, installation.

All items of equipment shall be subject to inspections by the Engineer during design and manufacture per these QCP's.

In general, it is anticipated that this Project shall be in accordance with the relevant ISO 9000 requirements.

M17.13.2 Installation

The successful Tenderer shall submit a QCP covering all aspects of the installation of each item of equipment to be installed under this Project. The Engineer shall be requested to attend certain stages of completion of installation to ascertain compliance with the Specifications and to witness the Contractor's site inspections at the Engineer's discretion.

M17.14 SYSTEM PERFORMANCE

Works testing

Each item of equipment shall be subject to inspection and testing prior to despatch from the works. All performance test results shall be made available to the Engineer for verification or when the QCP's require intervention or hold points for inspection.

In the case of gearboxes, they shall be subject to testing under operating conditions for at least 12 hours on the test bed. All results shall be available for inspection

Before commissioning

- Check for correct oil level in gearboxes and that motors are greased properly.
- Ensure all HD bolts are torqued down correctly.
- The alignment and levelling of each assembly shall be checked and the results shall be available for inspection by the Engineer.
- The electrical functions and control shall be checked by a responsible inspector prior to attempting to start any motor on this Project.

After Initial Commissioning

- Ensure all oil pumps and flow or pressure switches are functional
- Ensure that the equipment is operating smoothly and that all limit switches are operating.

M17.14.1 Before Expiry of the Defects Liability Period

The Engineer requires the Contractor to visit the site every quarter to inspect for the correct operation of the installed equipment. A report after each visit shall be submitted in writing

M17.15 OPERATION MANUALS

The Contractor must compile and provide copies of a complete operation and maintenance manual for the equipment provided. The manual shall contain comprehensive information as set out hereafter.

- A complete recommended spares list
- A lubrication and maintenance schedule showing all maintenance and lubrication operations, their recommended frequency and the grades of lubricant required

- A maintenance brochure describing all maintenance, adjustment and replacement procedures
- All dismantling and reassembly procedures
- Maintenance procedure for corrosion protection painting systems
- The Contractor shall amplify and amend such drafts until the Engineer is satisfied that they will fulfil the purpose of ensuring that the Employer's staff is adequately instructed to operate and maintain the works. Once the drafts have been approved by the Engineer, the Contractor shall prepare suitably bound copies and deliver them to the Engineer.

The manuals shall be drawn up in English.

M17.16 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commission as well as per installation point.

The respective tender rates shall cover all costs from supply to commission of each actuator but excluding the electrical power supply and electrical cable connection.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M18: MECHANICAL CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

4	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	General review	Y Pillay	
2	2010-02-16	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M18: MECHANICAL CENTRIFUGAL PUMPS

CONTENTS

M18.1 SCOPE ..... - 3 -

M18.2 INTERPRETATIONS ..... - 3 -
M18.2.1 Abbreviations ..... - 3 -
M18.2.2 Standards ..... - 3 -
M18.2.3 General Requirements ..... - 4 -

M18.3 PUMPS ..... - 4 -
M18.3.1 Design Parameters ..... - 4 -
M18.3.2 Pump Casing ..... - 5 -
M18.3.3 Pump Impeller ..... - 6 -
M18.3.4 Pump Shaft ..... - 7 -
M18.3.5 Shaft Coupling ..... - 7 -

M18.4 BEARINGS ..... - 7 -
M18.4.1 Bearing Housing ..... - 7 -
M18.4.2 Lubrication ..... - 7 -

M18.5 GLANDS AND SEALS ..... - 8 -

M18.6 VENT COCKS ..... - 8 -

M18.7 BASE PLATE ..... - 8 -

M18.8 DRIVE UNIT ..... - 8 -
M18.8.1 Gearbox / Motor Coupling ..... - 8 -

M18.9 GEARBOX ..... - 9 -

M18.10 MONITORING DEVICES ..... - 9 -

M18.11 PRESSURE GAUGES ..... - 9 -

M18.12 TEMPERATURE DETECTORS ..... - 9 -

M18.13 NO-FLOW PROTECTION ..... - 9 -

M18.14 INDICATOR ON AUTOMATIC AIR VENT ..... - 9 -

M18.15 GLAND LEAKAGE ..... - 9 -

M18.16 PIPEWORK ..... - 9 -

M18.17 HOLDING DOWN BOLTS ..... - 10 -

M18.18 VIBRATION AND NOISE ..... - 10 -

M18.19 CORROSION PROTECTION ..... - 10 -

M18.20 DESIGNATION AND INFORMATION PLATES ..... - 10 -

M18.21 INTERCHANGEABILITY ..... - 10 -

M18.22 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS ..... - 10 -

M18.23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL ..... - 10 -

M18.24 DRAWINGS ..... - 11 -

M18.25 INSTALLATION ..... - 11 -

M18.26 INSPECTION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING ..... - 11 -
M18.26.1 Testing by Manufacturer ..... - 11 -
M18.26.2 Witnessed Testing ..... - 11 -
M18.26.3 Testing by an Independent Facility ..... - 12 -
M18.26.4 Failure to Pass Performance Test ..... - 12 -
M18.26.5 Commissioning ..... - 13 -
M18.26.6 Tests at the Site of the Works ..... - 13 -

M18.27 COLOUR CODES ..... - 13 -

M18.28 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT ..... - 14 -

M18.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of Centrifugal Pumps. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with that of the Project Specification.

M18.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M18.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M18.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the centrifugal pumps shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS 292 Part 1: 1987	:	Dimensions of ball bearings, cylindrical and spherical roller bearings
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 1044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders working where weld procedure approval is not required.
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-4	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10104	:	Hand railing and balustrading (safety aspects)
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1

SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts
BS EN ISO 14847:1999	:	Rotary positive displacement pumps. Technical requirements
BS EN 734:1995	:	Pumps and pump units for liquids. Common safety requirements
BS EN 12162:2001	:	Liquid pumps. Safety requirements. Procedure for hydrostatic testing
BS EN 60041:1995	:	Field acceptance tests to determine the hydraulic performance of hydraulic turbines, storage pumps and pump-turbines.
BS EN 60994:1993	:	Guide for field measurement of vibrations and pulsations in hydraulic machines (turbines, storage pumps and pump-turbines)
BS EN 22858:1993	:	End-suction centrifugal pumps (rating 16 bar). Designation, nominal duty point and dimensions
BS EN 23661:1993	:	End-suction centrifugal pumps. Baseplate and installation dimensions
BS EN 733:1995	:	End-suction centrifugal pumps, rating with 10 bar with bearing bracket. Nominal duty point, main dimensions, designation system
SANS 1123	:	Pipe Flanges
ISO 281	:	Rolling bearings -- Dynamic load ratings and rating life
BS 4999	:	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for standard dimensions
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surface
BS 5316 Part 2	:	Pump test codes

M18.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M08: Particular Specification for Gearboxes

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Automation and Control Design Standards Volume 8: Flow Measurement

Automation and Control Design Standards Volume 11: Temperature Measurement

M18.3 PUMPS

M18.3.1 Design Parameters

Centrifugal pumps shall have stable non-overloading characteristics and the shaft speed shall not exceed 1500 rpm.

The pumps shall be of the highest quality and shall be suitable for continuous operation over long periods with a minimum amount of maintenance at high-sustained efficiency.

In all applications, with exception of clear water pumps, non-clogging impellers must be used. Pumps shall be designed as to remove the impeller cover without moving the pump, pipe work or motor. Each pump shall have a drip tray with a 20 mm diameter galvanised drain pipe to the nearest drainage point.

The pump design shall make adequate provision for the balancing of residual axial thrust. Pumps shall be supplied complete with suction and delivery pressure gauges complete with air-bleed and isolating cocks, shaft couplings and guards, gland leakage piping, base plates, foundation bolts and other necessary equipment.

Detailed performance curves for the pump type shall be provided at the time of tendering.

The curves shall indicate the following:

- Head (metres) vs. flow (litres/second) - 0% to 120% duty flow
- Power absorbed in kW - 50% to 120% of duty flow
- Pump efficiency – 0% to 120% duty flow
- Net positive suction head curves required by the pumps at the specified flow rate.

The efficiency curve shall be flat over a wide range in order to provide efficient working at various pump operating conditions.

Pumps shall be able to operate without cavitation over a full range as specified without throttling. Pumps are required to operate continuously at an ambient temperature of 40°C.

The following quantities shall be guaranteed by the Contractor:

- Minimum flow rate of the pump at the specified total head.
- Maximum power demand at the specified total head.
- Minimum efficiency at the specified total head.
- Maximum net positive suction head required by the pump at the specified flow rate.

Multiple Units

Unless specified arrangements incorporating multiple units coupled in series in order to achieve the duty specified for each complete pump set shall only be offered as an alternative.

The mechanical equipment to be supplied under this Contract shall be installed, tested and commissioned on concrete structures, constructed by others, to the dimensions indicated on the construction detail drawings.

M18.3.2 Pump Casing

The pump casings shall be manufactured from cast iron or cast steel depending on the stresses corresponding to the required test pressures. Unless otherwise stated the dimensions and drilling of the suction and discharge flanges shall be SANS 1123 to the design pressures as specified but with a minimum of 10 Bar.

The pressure rating of the flanges shall at least be equal to the maximum static pressure plus the pump shut-off pressure.

Casings shall be designed for not less than the following working pressures or 1.5 times the actual working total discharge pressure, whichever is the greater.

Horizontal Split casing	:	1000 kPa
End Suction type	:	1000 kPa
Vertical Split Casing	:	600 kPa
Multistage	:	1.5 times working pressure.

End suction pumps

End suction pumps are arranged with a central suction connection and a tangential discharge connection. Both these connections shall be suitably flanged.

The casings shall be split at right angles to the shaft to enable the easy withdrawal of the impeller assembly. The volute casing shall be preferably a separate casing from the pump bearing and base assembly, but bolted and spigoted thereto.

For end suction pumps of more than 5.5l/s and not more than 70 l/s capacity, the casing shall be arranged to have a removable casing cover on the motor side so that the pump may be dismantled without disturbing the suction or delivery piping.

Horizontally split casings

These shall be double entry type casings, which are split on the axial centreline. The suction and delivery branches must be cast integral with the part of the pump incorporating the pump base.

The other half of the casing must be easily removable for an internal examination of the pump without the necessity of disturbing either the suction or delivery pipe work or rotating assembly.

The casing shall be fitted with suitable renewable corrosion resisting wearing rings and bushes in all positions where fine clearances require to be maintained. Wearing rings shall be made of high quality bronze or stainless steel.

All casings must be fitted with ceramic or stainless steel neck rings where fine clearances must be maintained between stationary and moving parts, to suit the fluid pumped.

Semi-concentric back pull-out design casings

The pump casing shall be semi-concentric back pull-out design, with the first half of the circumference after the pump outlet being cylindrical. The remaining circumference shall spiral outwards towards the flanged centreline discharge. The casing shall be manufactured from cast iron.

All casings shall be provided with the following tapping's as a minimum requirement:-

- One suction pressure gauge tapping
- One discharge pressure gauge tapping
- One bleeder cock tapping
- One filling point tapping
- Suitable tapping or, where possible, internal drilling to provide water for the glands.

All casings shall be heavily ribbed and strengthened as necessary to resist hydraulic forces, and internal passages shall be smoothly finished to minimize hydraulic forces.

M18.3.3 Pump Impeller

Each impeller after machining and dressing shall be independently statically balanced and the

complete rotating assembly with coupling shall be dynamically balanced.

All impellers shall be of a non over loading design.

Impellers shall be securely keyed and fixed to the shaft by means of suitable shaft nuts and locking sleeves.

All bolting devices must be securely locked so that they cannot accidentally come loose. Bolting devices shall be made of corrosion resistant materials.

M18.3.4 Pump Shaft

The pump shafts shall be of sufficient dimension in order to avoid excessive torsional or bending stresses and deflection.

The pump shaft shall be designed so that the critical speed of the rotating assembly is well above the maximum pump operating speed.

The impeller shall be secured to the shaft in such a way that it can be readily removed without any damage to the impeller and the shaft.

The shafts shall be protected by replaceable sleeves manufactured from non-corrosive material. The shaft shall be manufactured from stainless steel.

M18.3.5 Shaft Coupling

The pump and motor shall be connected by a flexible coupling in such a way as to prevent them from uncoupling regardless of which way the impeller may be rotating.

The coupling shall accommodate small axial, lateral and angular misalignments without imposing undue stresses on the shaft and bearings. The coupling shall be enclosed in a stationery solid-plate guard to the Engineers satisfaction.

M18.4 BEARINGS

All bearings shall be suitable for shaft rotation in both directions. All bearings shall be designed for a life of at least 100 000 hours at an (L10) rating. Bearings for the output shaft shall be designed to withstand bending, up thrust, down pull, thermal expansion and radial loads imposed by the impeller.

The rotating assembly shall be positively located in the axial direction and thrust bearings will therefore be required.

For ease of lubrication all bearing grease pipes must be piped to grease nipples on the outer cover of the pump support frame.

M18.4.1 Bearing Housing

The bearing housing shall be manufactured from cast iron and shall be oil bath lubricated. Oil level sight glasses shall be provided with level markers for running and filling minimum and maximum positions respectively. These shall be arranged for easy viewing and shall take into account the angle of mounting.

The bearing housing and motor stool design shall provide accurate, self-aligning mounting for the flanged electric motor.

M18.4.2 Lubrication

In the case where oil lubrication is required, adequate provision shall be made for the cooling of

the oil. The bearings shall be required to operate at temperatures no higher than 60°C.

Oil reservoirs of sufficient capacity shall be fitted with easily accessible oil level indicators, which are to be clearly marked in order to indicate the oil standing and running levels.

M18.5 GLANDS AND SEALS

Low pressure glands of the stuffing box pattern shall allow repacking without having to dismantle the pump.

If mechanical seals are offered they shall be manufactured from 316 SS to prevent the pump from leaking and shall be cartridge-type seals with O-rings and silicon carbide or tungsten carbide faces.

The cartridge seal shall be pre-assembled and pre-tested, requiring no adjustments and settings from the installer. Any springs required to push the seal faces together shall be shielded from the fluid that is to be pumped. The cartridge shall include a heat treated sleeve and an iron seal gland.

Full details of the seals and glands indicating the materials, finishes, clearances etc. shall be submitted with the Tender.

A spare mechanical seal for each size and type shall be supplied.

M18.6 VENT COCKS

Vent cocks shall be fitted at all high points to the pump casing. These cocks shall be adequately sized in order to allow the trapped air to be released freely.

An automatic air vent shall be fitted to each pump casing if specified. This device shall be suitable for the remote operation of an indicator to show the open and closed positions of the air vent.

M18.7 BASE PLATE

The base plate of the pump and motor shall be rigid. The pump and motor shall be situated on the upper face of each base plate, which shall be machined flat and smooth to ensure that the pump and motor are bedded properly without the use of spacers.

The pump/motor base plate shall be completely aligned prior to grouting and provision shall be made to grout within the base plate itself to facilitate vibration-free operation.

Base plates which have a mass greater than 200 kg shall have two jacking bolts at right angles with a lock nut at every corner of the unit.

M18.8 DRIVE UNIT

The pump shall be driven by a fixed electric speed motor and a speed reducer. Refer to Particular Specification E01: Electric Motors for a detailed specification for Electric motors.

M18.8.1 Gearbox / Motor Coupling

The coupling shall be fully rated to transmit the motor full load power and tested to prove the above features together with static and dynamic balance. The motor shall be coupled to the gearbox input shaft with either a V-belt or a flexible coupling. V-belts and couplings are to be provided with protective cover guards.

M18.9 GEARBOX

Refer to M08: Volume M08: Mechanical Specification for Gearboxes.

M18.10 MONITORING DEVICES

Full detail of all monitoring devices offered must be submitted with the Tender.

M18.11 PRESSURE GAUGES

Pressure gauges shall be fitted with an isolating cock, shall be vibration and shock resistant and shall be calibrated to read with an accuracy of ±1% of the indicated pressure. Three 20mm minimum diameter ball valves shall be employed to zero the gauge, to isolate it and to vent to atmosphere. A chemical seal shall be used to insulate the gauge from the media being measured.

The faceplate diameters of the pressure gauges shall be at least 100 mm. The gauges shall indicate the water pressure in kilopascal and shall have a range of a maximum of 50% higher than the normal maximum working pressure. All gauge glass must conform to internationally recognized standards. These standards include DIN 7081, BS 3463 and JIS B 8211.

A calibration certificate is to be provided with each pressure gauge.

M18.12 TEMPERATURE DETECTORS

If required oil lubricated bearings and glands offered shall be fitted with temperature detectors. The temperature detectors shall be PT100 – RTD's

If grease lubricated bearings are offered, the Tenderer will indicate in his Tender if temperature detectors can in fact be used. If temperature detectors are not feasible, an alternative means of monitoring bearings must be offered.

M18.13 NO-FLOW PROTECTION

(a) Each pump shall be protected against no flow by a flow meter installed in the discharge line from the pump.

M18.14 INDICATOR ON AUTOMATIC AIR VENT

If an automatic air vent is required for the pump casing, it shall be fitted with an indicator to indicate the open and closed positions of the air vent. The air vent shall be suitable for remote operation and air vent control shall be mounted on the control panel inside the pump station.

M18.15 GLAND LEAKAGE

If a gland leakage device is required in order to monitor the gland leakage it shall be supplied and fitted with adjustable alarm contacts designed to close when gland leakage rises to a pre-set value.

M18.16 PIPEWORK

All suction and delivery pipes shall be connected to the pump casing by means of flexible connections. All flexible connections shall be installed as close to the pump's casings as possible, and in any event, shall be between the suction valve and the pump casing and delivery non-return valve and the pump casing. In all cases the flexible connection shall be in the section of piping of smallest diameter.

Double Victaulic joint are generally preferred for flexible connections, but approved re-enforced rubber bellow units are acceptable for low-pressure services.

All valves and pipework external to the pump casing and separated there from by means of flexible connections shall be securely anchored to prevent movement.

Refer to Particular Specification M21: Volume M21 Pressure Pipework for a detailed specification on pipework.

M18.17 HOLDING DOWN BOLTS

The contractor shall be responsible for the supply of all necessary holding down bolts for the machines supplied by him/her. The holding down bolts shall be manufactured from 316 SS.

All bolts necessary for assembling all equipment shall be supplied by the contractor.

M18.18 VIBRATION AND NOISE

The pumps as well as the motors will comply with the requirements of BS 4999. The Contractor may be requested by the Engineer to carry out vibration tests. The noise level shall not exceed 85 dBA at 1m.

M18.19 CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M18.20 DESIGNATION AND INFORMATION PLATES

Each pump shall be supplied with an information plate secured to the pump casing in a visible position indelibly marked with the following details:-

- Maker's name, pump type and serial number
- Year of manufacture
- Rated duty of pump in litres per second
- Head in metres at rated duty
- Pump speed in r/min
- Mass of completely assembled pump in kilogram

M18.21 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar pump units are required, these units will be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied will be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M18.22 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS

The Tenderer must submit details of spare parts recommended to be kept in store by the Employer with his Tender.

The detail will include a full description of the parts, part identification, number required, guaranteed delivery time and total price delivered to Site.

M18.23 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL

The Contractor shall hand over to the Engineer four sets of the Operation and Maintenance

Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final take-over of the plant.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

(a) Brief description of the plant and installation.

(b) Concise operating instructions.

(c) Routine maintenance instruction.

(d) Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.

(e) Detailed information on equipment.

(f) Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.

M18.24 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Engineer's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, he shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, he will submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Engineer. Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M18.25 INSTALLATION

The pump and motor shall be aligned to within ± 0.025 mm full indicator movement on dial gauge, regardless of the coupling type. After the pump and motor feet are tightened down, ad pipework erected and tightened, both angular and parallel alignment shall be checked and recorded at each quarter revolution. These readings shall be submitted to the Engineer and is a prerequisite for handover.

Upon completion, dowel pins shall be fitted to facilitate relocation at any future time.

M18.26 INSPECTION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

M18.26.1 Testing by Manufacturer

The Manufacturer will carry out all tests on materials, quality control tests, dimensional checking and routine tests on parts to ensure that the pumps and materials conform to the requirements of the relevant SANS or BS specifications and to this Specification. The Engineer will not necessarily attend these tests but records must be kept and all test results will be made available to the Engineer.

M18.26.2 Witnessed Testing

In addition to the above, a number of performance tests will also be carried out in the testing facility of the supplier before equipment is transported to Site. These tests can be carried out in the workshop of the manufacturer/supplier if it is suitably equipped or another approved test facility.

The Engineer may witness these tests and the Contractor will notify the Engineer two weeks in advance of the date and place at which the equipment may be inspected and tested. When tests and inspections have met the satisfaction of the Engineer a certificate of workshop

acceptance will be issued. These certificates are a prerequisite before payment for "Materials on Site" can be passed. The Engineer's acceptance will in no way relief the Manufacturer of any of his obligations to design, manufacture and supply pumps strictly in accordance with the Specification.

Performance tests shall include:-

(a) Hydraulic tests on the pump casing. The test pressure will be equal to 1½ times the maximum working pressure at the delivery end of the pump. The testing will be done with blank flanges bolted onto the flanges. The pressure will be maintained for at least 15 minutes. No sign of sweating, leaking, undue deformation and stressing or defect of any kind will be evident during the test period.

(b) Tests to prove that the rotating parts are dynamically balanced.

(c) Performance tests on pump and driving unit.

(d) NPSH requirements if called for in the Project Specifications.

A performance test shall be carried out in accordance with BS 5316 Part 2 - Class B tests if specified. Unless otherwise stated, the Contractor will be required to conduct the performance test on the combined pump/motor unit.

If a performance test of the pump and its driving unit is not possible at the manufacturer's works, this shall be stated in the Tender with reasons to allow the Engineer opportunity to make alternative proposals.

M18.26.3 Testing by an Independent Facility

The Employer may require that an independent testing facility or institution such as the South African Bureau of Standards carry out performance tests. A separate item for performance testing will be provided in the Schedule of Quantities to allow for this.

M18.26.4 Failure to Pass Performance Test

Should the pump unit fail the performance test, whether performed at the manufacturer's works or at an independent institution, the Engineer shall authorise any amendments to the plant which may be considered necessary to meet the guaranteed quantities within the permissible tolerances laid down in BS 5316 Part 2 - Class B tests and prove with further test that the equipment conform to the Specification.

All costs involved in the re-testing of pump units will be borne by the Contractor.

Should the pump unit fail to pass the test with more than 5% variation on the actual guaranteed figures; the engineer will reject the pump unit and request the Contractor to replace the unit so rejected.

Should the pump until still fail to pass the test, but the actual figures do not vary by more than 5% from the actual guaranteed figures, the Engineer may :-

(a) Request the Contractor to carry out amendments to ensure the compliance of the unit with the Specification; or

(b) Accept the equipment but impose a penalty for non-compliance on the Contractor. A sum will be calculated based on the additional energy used over the life expectancy of the equipment and this will be deducted from the Contract price for each pump set for every kilowatt by which the gross demand exceeds the guaranteed figure with permissible tolerances.

M18.26.5 Commissioning

On completion of the installation the Contractor will check all items for satisfactory functioning. He will then inform the Engineer of his intension to commission the plant. The Engineer may request control measurements on pump alignment at this stage.

A detailed programme of his proposed commissioning procedures will be submitted not later than two weeks prior to the commissioning date.

After a successful running period of 4 hours (to be witnessed by the Engineer) the Contractor will hand over the installation to the Employer as well as the Operation and Maintenance Manuals. The Completion Certificate will only be issued after the units have been in successful operation for 14 consecutive days and the acceptance tests successfully completed.

During the first 14 days of operation, the Contractor will rectify any problems with the units on Site within 24 hours of being telephonically notified. During the remainder of the maintenance period, the Contractor will, within 14 days of being notified, commence rectifying any possible problems that the Employer may encounter with the equipment supplied under this Contract.

Should the Contractor fail to meet the above requirements, the Employer may appoint others to undertake the necessary repair work at the Contractor's cost.

M18.26.6 Tests at the Site of the Works

The Engineer may require that site tests are performed to verify performance figures guarantee by the Contractor. Flow rate, total head and power input to the pump/motor units shall be determined, as accurate as Site conditions permit, for one or more points on the pump curves close to the specified duty point. The Contractor shall provide suitable instruments with recent calibration certificates.

Should these measured and calculated quantities differ from those guaranteed by more than the tolerances allowed by BS 5316 Part 1 - re-testing of the unit at any testing facility, or the recalibration of the measuring instruments.

Should the subsequent test results still fall outside the allowable tolerances, Clause M18.28.4 shall apply, and call costs shall be borne by the Contractor. In the event of the subsequent test being successful, costs shall be borne by the Employer.

M18.27 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01.

M18.28 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery and installation / commissioning of the equipment.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M20: MECHANICAL VALVES: MANUFACTURE AND SUPPLY

Rev	Date	Description	Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership	Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water
4	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	General review	T Wellard	
2	2010-02-16	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M20: MECHANICAL VALVES: MANUFACTURE AND SUPPLY

CONTENTS

M20.1 SCOPE 3

M20.2 INTERPRETATIONS 3
M20.2.1 Abbreviations 3
M20.2.2 Standards 3
M20.2.3 General Requirements 4

M20.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 4
M20.3.1 Pressure Rating 4
M20.3.2 Wastewater Liquids and chemicals 4
M20.3.3 Guarantee 4
M20.3.4 Operating and Maintenance Manuals 4
M20.3.5 Jointing Material 5
M20.3.6 Contact between Dissimilar Metals 5

M20.4 FABRICATION 5
M20.4.1 General 5

M20.5 BUTTERFLY VALVES 6
M20.5.1 Opening and Closing 6
M20.5.2 Valve Body 6
M20.5.3 Discs 7
M20.5.4 Seats and Seals 7
M20.5.5 Shafts 7
M20.5.6 Bearings 7
M20.5.7 Gearboxes 7

M20.6 AIR RELEASE VALVES 8
M20.6.1 Water works anti-shock and air release 8
M20.6.2 Air Valves (Sewage) 8
M20.6.3 Air Valves (Water Mains) 8
M20.6.4 Special Valves 9

M20.7 GATE VALVES 9
M20.7.1 Wedge Gate Valves 9
M20.7.2 Knife Gate Valves 10
M20.7.3 Resilient Seal Valves 10

M20.8 NEEDLE VALVES 10

M20.9 SPECIAL VALVES 10

M20.10 REFLUX/NON RETURN VALVES 11

M20.11 DIAPHRAGM VALVES 11

M20.12 BALL VALVES 11
M20.12.1 Type BLV1 11
M20.12.2 Type BLV2 12
M20.12.3 Valve Body 12

M20.13 PRESSURE REDUCING VALVE ANGLE/GLOBE PATTERN TYPE 12
M20.13.1 Main Valve 12
M20.13.2 Main Valve Body 12
M20.13.3 Material Specification 13
M20.13.4 Pilot Control System 14
M20.13.5 Material Specification for Pilot Control 14

M20.14 PRESSURE REDUCING VALVE (SINGLE DIAPHRAGM LINER-OPERATED TYPE) 14
M20.14.1 Function 14
M20.14.2 Main Valve 14
M20.14.3 Material Specification 14
M20.14.4 Pilot Control System 15
M20.14.5 Material Specification for Pilot Control 15

M20.15 FLOW LIMITER VALVES 15
M20.15.1 Screwed type limiter valves 15
M20.15.2 Wafer type limiter valves 16

M20.16 VALVE GEARBOXES 17

M20.17 PROTECTION OF VALVES 17

M20.18 TOLERANCES 18

M20.19 COLOUR CODES 18

M20.20 TESTING AND INSPECTION 18
M20.20.1 Testing by Manufacturer 18
M20.20.2 Testing by Independent Body 18
M20.20.3 Inspection 18
M20.20.4 Hydrostatic Testing 18

M20.21 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 18

M20.1 SCOPE

This Specification covers the manufacture, testing and supply of sluice, butterfly, air, gate, reflux, diaphragm, flow limiter and pressure reducing valves for use in pressure pipelines for the conveyance of raw or potable water at ambient temperatures.

M20.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M20.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee

M20.2.2 Standards

For the purposes of this Specification the latest issues of the following standard specifications will apply:-

SANS 1700	:	Fasteners
SANS 135	:	Isometric Bold Screws and Nuts (Lexagon & square/coarse thread free fit series)
SANS 136	:	Isometric Precision Hexagon Head Bolts and Screws and Hexagon Nuts (coarse thread medium fit series)
SANS 144	:	Cast Iron Single-door Reflux Valves
SANS 191	:	Cast Steel Gate Valves
SANS 192	:	Cast Steel Single-door Reflux Valves
SANS 664	:	Cast Iron Gate Valves for Waterworks and heavy Industrial Purposes
SANS 936	:	Cast Iron Spheroidal Graphite Iron Castings
SANS 1431	:	Steel
BS 3100	:	Cast Steel
BS 4504	:	Flange Drilling
BS 5155	:	Cast Iron and Carbon Steel Butterfly Valves
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surfaces
ISO 2441	:	Pipe Line Flanges for General use - Shapes and Dimensions of Pressure Tight Surfaces
SANS 1123	:	Steel Pipe Flanges

M20.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M20.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Satisfactory temporary end cover shall be provided to protect threads, flanges and prepared ends of valves from damage during transportation and handling on site.

Valves shall be so transported, stored and handled as to prevent damage. Valves damaged in any way shall be removed from the site.

The Contractor shall satisfy the Engineer as to the sufficiency of the place of manufacture regarding manufacturing, testing and inspection equipment to ensure that the production of valves is strictly in accordance with this Specification.

M20.3.1 Pressure Rating

The design pressure for the valve is specified in the Tender Document either in/or the Project Specification, Drawings and Schedule of Quantities. The minimum pressure rating for valves shall be 10 Bar. Valves shall be capable of withstanding the applicable test pressure as specified in SABS 664. Test pressure shall be maintained for 5 minutes and the valve bodies shall be watertight in all aspects.

M20.3.2 Wastewater Liquids and chemicals

Various different chemicals are used to treat wastewater. These include:-

- Ferric chloride
- Chlorine
- Polymer (Polyelectrolytes)
- Ammonium bromide

Valves used for the above mentioned chemicals shall be manufactured from highly non-reactive polymer such as Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) and PVC.

Valves which encounter raw wastewater, treated wastewater and sludge shall be manufactured from corrosive resistant material.

M20.3.3 Guarantee

All valves shall be guaranteed against faulty design, materials and workmanship until the end of the maintenance period on the Main Contract. During this period the Contractor shall be required to attend to and rectify any defects, which occur due to faulty design, materials or workmanship at his own cost.

M20.3.4 Operating and Maintenance Manuals

A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each valve type and different valve manufactures shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

M20.3.4.1 Contents

- A copy of the signed factory test certificate shall be bound in with the manual, while the original shall be handed to the Engineer.
- Operating instructions
- Maintenance instructions
- Lubrication instructions
- Spare parts list
- Drawings
- Brochures

M20.3.5 Jointing Material

Jointing material shall comply with SANS 1700. Valves shall be supplied complete with bolts, nuts, washers (2 per bolt) and gaskets for joining up to adjacent mating flanges.

Bolts shall be of stainless steel in all open applications (e.g. in valve chambers, reservoirs, etc.) and galvanised when buried provided the flanges are protected with DENSO mastic and tape. The bolt shall be long enough to allow at least two screw threads to protrude from the nut when the assembly is fully tightened. A washer must be provided both under the bolt head and the nut.

M20.3.6 Contact between Dissimilar Metals

When flanges of dissimilar metals are bolted together, the internal epoxy coating shall cover the contact area of the flange without any break.

Suitable insulation material shall be used between the contact faces of dissimilar metals of which the potential difference exceeds 0,3 V. Where corrodible metal is welded to a corrosion resistant metal, the protection coating specified shall overlap onto the latter by at least 5 mm.

M20.4 FABRICATION

M20.4.1 General

(a) Marking of Valves

The design pressure in Mpa shall be hard stamped on the edge of flanges to valves, to be visible from the top of valves.

(b) By-passes

Where indicated in the Project Specification or the Schedule of Quantities, valves shall be supplied with by-passes. Such by-passes shall be bolted on to the body of the valve and not to the adjoining pipework.

(c) Hand wheels and Direction of Closure

Where valves are required to be supplied with hand wheels, the rims of such hand wheels shall be machined to a smooth finish if specified. Arrows shall be cast on the hand wheels together with the wording "TO OPEN" or "TO CLOSE" - Closing being by the clockwise rotation of the spindle unless otherwise specified.

(d) For cap top valves an aluminium disc of at least 100 mm diameter with the same wording and arrows shall be slipped over the spindle and retained by the cap.

If specified in the Project Specification, valves shall be fitted with indicators representing

the valve status, showing fully open, fully closed and intermediate positions. Such indicators shall be corrosive proof and of robust design.

(e) Flanges

Unless otherwise indicated flanges shall conform, in all respects, to the requirements of SANS 1123 appropriate for the class of valve specified.

Should required sizes fall beyond the range of SANS 1123, flange dimensions shall confirm to the requirements as specified.

The Contractor shall obtain written confirmation of required flange drilling from the Engineer prior to the commencement of manufacture.

Sufficient clearance shall be allowed between the body of the valve and the flange to enable proper tightening of bolts. Tapped holes shall only be allowed in exceptional cases and with the Engineer's written consent.

(f) Information to be Supplied

Complete details of each valve offered must be provided at the time of tendering. This information will include at least the following:-

- Description
- Manufacturer's figure number
- Flange drilling
- Maximum working pressure (in kPa)
- Maximum unbalanced pressure (in kPa)
- Test pressure (in kPa)
- Material of components
- Gearing
- Accessories

M20.5 BUTTERFLY VALVES

Butterfly Valves shall be of the full-bore type and NOT reduced bore type with flanged ends. Valves larger than 200mm shall be fitted with gearboxes.

M20.5.1 Opening and Closing

All valves shall be capable of being opened or closed by hand under an unbalanced pressure equal to the design pressure without any difficulty. The disc shall close with a positive action with no possibility of slamming shut during any stage of the closing operation and the valve shall be capable of operating at any opening without variation of disc position or flutter of the disc.

The direction of the spindle rotation for valve closing shall be clockwise.

M20.5.2 Valve Body

Valve bodies shall be manufactured from cast iron or cast steel depending on test pressures and as specified.

The valve body shall have integral hubs for shaft bearing housings. Valves shall be provided with supporting feet and lifting rings where specified. A flow direction arrow shall either be cast into the body or shall be a brass plate screwed onto the body with brass screws.

M20.5.3 Discs

Discs shall be manufactured from cast iron or cast steel depending on test pressures and as specified. Discs shall be a single casting having a smooth streamlined design to minimize resistance to water flow.

The disc shall be off-set in the body to ensure simultaneous contact around its perimeter and shall have a positive non-slamming closing action.

M20.5.4 Seats and Seals

The profiles of the seats shall be smooth and continuous and shall provide adequate “lead in” for the resilient seal during closure of the disc to prevent excessive seating torque requirements. The seats shall be fixed to the valve body with stainless steel countersunk screws to facilitate replacement.

The seals shall be of the resilient type with non-weathering, non-sticking, long life properties. Seals shall be replaceable and shall be secured to the edge of the disc by means of a retaining ring. Sealing rings and seal retaining rings shall be manufactured from stainless steel.

The design of the seat and seal shall allow replacement thereof without removing the valve from the line.

M20.5.5 Shafts

Valve shafts shall be of high grade stainless steel. Valve shafts shall either be continuous through the disc or of a stub shaft design as described in the Project Specification and will be horizontal to the installed valve position. In the case of the sub-shaft type, each stub shaft shall extend into the disc hub for a distance of at least 1.5 times the shaft diameter.

All keys, dowel pins and taper pins used to attach the shaft to the disc shall be mechanically secured. The shaft shall be so sealed that the only two wetted parts shall be the disc and the seat.

M20.5.6 Bearings

Class 16 (1600 kPa) valves or valves with diameters of 350 mm or bigger shall be fitted with two-way adjustable bearings in order to permit precise disc-to-seat positioning at all times.

Positive bearing retention shall also be provided so that the bearing will not shift under operating conditions. The valve shall be capable of being installed and operated in any position.

The bearings shall be self-lubricating, long lasting sleeve-type bearings shall be fitted in the hubs of the valve body and at least one set of thrust bearings shall be provided.

M20.5.7 Gearboxes

Where it is necessary or where it is specified valves shall be operated via manually operated gearboxes

Gearboxes shall be self-locking and capable of holding the disc in a fixed position for any extended period of time.

Gearboxes shall be geared to be operated against the maximum unbalanced pressure with an effort not exceeding 200 N with each hand on the rim of a standard hand wheel. (Total effort = 400 N).

Gearboxes shall also be fitted with mechanical stops to prevent excessive turning and shall be

provided with replaceable shear pins. One spare shear pin shall be provided with each valve.

All gearboxes shall be equipped with position indicators, adjustable travel stops and indications of the "open" and "closed" positions.

The design of the gearbox shall readily allow for conversion to motorised drive at a later stage if required.

M20.6 AIR RELEASE VALVES

M20.6.1 Water works anti-shock and air release

Air valves shall be manufactured from cast iron or stainless steel depending on the test pressures and the project specification and of the single chamber design with cylindrical solid polymer control floats incorporating anti-shock design during high velocity air discharge.

The orifice plate, internals and body bolts shall be of stainless steel. All components of the valve shall be easily replaceable. All internals made of stainless steel that will be in contact with the fluid shall be lined or coated with a polyurethane paint to prevent cathodic action.

The design of the valve shall be such as to preclude the loss of water or the possibility of the float being blown shut by the passage of air when the accumulation of air in the pipeline is being released.

The valves shall be positive in the action to admit a free and full supply of air when the pipeline is being emptied or when the operating conditions demand.

Valves shall respond to the presence of accumulated air under normal working conditions by discharging it through a small orifice at any pressures within the specified design range.

Valves shall react immediately to pipeline drainage by full opening of the large orifice to allow unrestricted air intake. Valves shall not exhibit leaks or weeping past the large orifice seal at the maximum working pressure.

M20.6.2 Air Valves (Sewage)

Where air valves are required on sewage or industrial effluent pumping mains, they shall be specifically designed for such usage. Ordinary waterworks pattern air valves will not be acceptable.

Air valves shall be installed with an isolating valve on the inlet.

Full details of the air valves offered shall be provided at the time of tendering.

M20.6.3 Air Valves (Water Mains)

The following types of air valves as indicated on the Drawings and/or listed in the Schedule of Quantities are required.-

Type SO : Small orifice, single ball, lever type air valve which permits the escape of air from the pipe under working pressure.

Type LO : Large orifice, single ball air valve which allow air to enter the pipe when the pipe is being emptied and permit air to escape from the pipe when it is being filled.

Type DO : A combined small and large orifice air valve, the small orifice operating as the type SO and the large orifice as type LO above.

The size of the air valve shall be specified on the Drawings or in the Schedule of Quantities by the inlet diameter.

Air valves shall be suitable for the working pressure indicated on the Drawings or stated in the Schedule of Quantities.

All air valves shall be flanged and fitted with an isolating valve on the inlet pipe and a drain cock unless otherwise stated.

The air valves should be so designed that the balls are prevented from sticking.

Cover plates shall allow free discharge or intake of air, but shall prevent the ingress of foreign matter.

Valves shall be drop tight on shut-off and the design of the valve shall prevent balls from sticking.

When discharging large volumes of air at high rates the ball must not be caught up in the escaping air stream and close before all air has been released.

Tenderers shall submit full particulars of the air valves tendered on with the tender.

M20.6.4 Special Valves

All valves other than sluice and air valves shall be classified as special valves. The general requirements, pressure ratings, protective layers, flanges, markings, tests, etc. as specified in this Section will be applicable to the special valves. The particular valve will be further specified in the Project Specification.

M20.7 GATE VALVES

All gate valves shall comply with the requirements of SABS 664 and shall carry the SABS mark. Gate valves shall completely clear the bore of the valve in the fully open position. The direction of closing shall be clearly marked on the bonnet of the valve. Vales shall be drip-tight from zero to maximum working pressure under test conditions.

M20.7.1 Wedge Gate Valves

Valve seat and gate rings shall be manufactured from bronze to BS 1400 LG2.

Valves except flange faces shall be coated externally and internally with self-etching primer followed by one or more coats of fusion bonded epoxy material to give a total film thickness of at least 250 microns all applied in accordance with the manufacturer's specifications.

Valves where specified shall be supplied with fully enclosed, grease-packed, single-train spur gearboxes with a 3:1 or 4:1 ratio as specified.

Where required bronze gate guides and shoes shall be fitted as additional.

Integral mounted by-pass assemblies shall be fitted as additional where required.

M20.7.1.1 Auxiliary Fittings

Wedge gate valves of 300 mm diameter and larger shall be fitted with the following auxiliary fittings:-

- Drain Plugs

300 mm diameter valves and larger shall be supplied with gunmetal drain-plugs screwed into the lowest point of the valve and the valve body shall be suitably drilled and tapped to accept the drain-plug. The plug must be in position when the test pressure is applied.

- Ball Bearing thrust Collars

  300 mm diameter valves and larger shall be fitted with ball-races on the top and bottom of the thrust collars. The ball-races shall be totally enclosed in a grease-packed cover, which shall be sealed to prevent the egress of grease. Provision must be made for lubricating the ball-races and the lubrication arrangement shall allow for re-greasing while the valve is under pressure.

M20.7.2 Knife Gate Valves

The valve body shall be cast iron with soft rubber lining. Spindle and blade are to be manufactured from stainless steel. Valve seals are to be re-packable and reversible made from Nitrile rubber with PTFE scrapers, to withstand solid particles and grit associated with wastewater and sludge.

Hand wheels shall be rising spindle types. Knife gate valves shall be installed vertically at all times.

M20.7.3 Resilient Seal Valves

Resilient Seal valves ensure tight compression sealing without wear and shall be used as isolating valves. Valve bodies shall have unobstructed, pocket-free, bores i.e. no seating protrusions or gate well, with inclined seats and gate guides to eliminate deposits in the valve body.

The spindle seal shall have at least two Nitrile Butadine rubber to DIN 3770 O-rings located in a corrosion-resistant housing and a wiper ring to prevent ingress of dirt. A back seal shall permit replacement of spindle seats under pressure, with the gate in the fully open position.

The cast iron gate shall be fully covered with a Nitrile Butadine rubber sheath fully bonded to the gate by vulcanising.

Valves shall be smooth bore and shall operate without the use of any wedging action, which may scuff or damage the rubberised gate.

Valves shall be coated with a fusion bonded epoxy coating of minimum thickness 200 microns.

M20.8 NEEDLE VALVES

Type NLV1 needle valves of sizes 50 NB and under shall be used for flow control of dilution water. Needle valves shall be manufactured from stainless steel and shall adhere to ASTMA A 351.

The valve shall be hand operated and the ends of the body shall be screwed to BSP.

M20.9 SPECIAL VALVES

All valves used for special operations and conditions shall be carefully selected.

Tenderers are required to submit full details of the valves offered and the final selection shall be subjected to the approval of the Engineer. The valves offered shall not be accepted as substitutes for the standard valves specified.

M20.10 REFLUX/NON RETURN VALVES

Valves used for sewage effluent or sludge shall be self-cleansing at the base of the gate. The interior shall be smooth and free from any projections.

Valve bodies shall be of cast iron or cast steel depending on the test pressures and the project specification.

Valve doors shall be of cast steel or cast iron. Body rings, door rings and spindles shall be manufactured from stainless steel.

The following types of reflux valves as specified shall be supplied:-

(a) Single sloping swing door for sizes up to 400 mm.
(b) Double sloping swing door for sizes larger than 400 mm and up to 800 mm.
(c) Multiple sloping swing doors for sizes larger than 800 mm.

Valve bodies and seals shall be free of pockets that will allow dirt accumulation.

Valve doors shall be designed to prevent fluttering and shall allow rapid but non-slamming closure on reversal of flow. The gate shall swing free in the body and in fully open position shall not obstruct the flow.

Valves shall seal effectively under all operating conditions and the design shall be such that the gate rests against the seat in the absence of flow or of differential pressure without the aid of springs or external counterweights.

Where specified in the Project Specification, valve doors shall be balanced by attaching counterweights and levers, or hydraulic dampers to the extended valve spindle.

Where valves are fitted to buried pipe lines, only hydraulic dampers shall be used.

M20.11 DIAPHRAGM VALVES

The valve is to be able to handle sludge's, rags and grit as expected in waste treatment works. The valve body must be designed to minimise turbulence and give 100% leak tight closure.

The valve must have a smooth bore and minimise wear from abrasion and allow for rodding when sludge's set in the pipeline.

The valve operating mechanism must be sealed from service and atmosphere.

The diaphragm must be manufactured from tough, resilient type natural rubber of sufficient grade to handle abrasives, acids and alkalis as expected in sewage works.

The valve body is to be cast iron with sufficient corrosion and erosion protection to last the useful life of the valve.

M20.12 BALL VALVES

M20.12.1 Type BLV1

This type is used for general purposes for sizes of 50 NB and under. The ball and stem shall be manufactured from 316 SS and the body shall be 304 SS.

The seat and the gland shall be PTFE material. The valve body shall be of the reduced bore type with ends screwed to BSP. The valve shall be lever operated.

M20.12.2 Type BLV2

BLV2 type ball valves are used for sludge lines. The valve shall be short pattern reduced bore type, fully lined with a Polypropylene or fluorocarbon resin liner.

All interior surfaces including the ball, stem and collar shall be lined to ensure that there is no contact between the metallic components and the lined media. The liners shall be securely retained by means of dovetail grooves within the bore and shall extend over the flange faces.

M20.12.3 Valve Body

The body of the valves shall be manufactured from ductile iron and all external bolts, nuts and gland followers shall be grade 316 material.

M20.13 PRESSURE REDUCING VALVE ANGLE/GLOBE PATTERN TYPE

The pressure reducing valve shall maintain a constant downstream pressure regardless of changing flow rate and/or inlet pressure.

M20.13.1 Main Valve

The valve shall be hydraulically operated, pilot-actuated, single or double chamber globe or angle patter. The valve shall consist of three major components: the body, with seat installed; the cover, with bearings installed; and the diaphragm assembly.

The diaphragm assembly shall be the only moving part and shall form a sealed chamber in the upper portion of the valve, separating operating pressure form line pressure.

Packing glands and/or stuffing boxes are not permitted and there shall be no pistons operating the main valve or pilot controls.

M20.13.2 Main Valve Body

The valve body and cover shall be of cast material. Ductile iron is standard and other materials shall be available. No fabrication or welding shall be used in the manufacturing process.

The valve shall contain a resilient, synthetic rubber disc, with a rectangular cross-section contained on three and one-half sides by a disc retainer and forming a tight seal against a single removable seat inset. No O-ring type discs shall be permitted as the seating surface. The disc guide shall be of the contoured type to permit smooth transition of flow and shall hold the disc firmly in place. The disc retainer shall be of a sturdy one-piece design capable of withstanding opening and closing shocks. It must have straight edges and a radius at the top edge to prevent excessive diaphragm wear as the diaphragm flexes across its surface.

M20.13.2.1 Diaphragm

The diaphragm assembly containing a non-magnetic 304 stainless steel stem with sufficient diameter to withstand high hydraulic pressures shall be fully guided at both ends by a bearing in the valve cover an integral bearing in the valve seat. No centre guides shall be permitted. The stem shall be drilled and tapped in the cover and to receive and affix accessories as may be deemed necessary.

The diaphragm assembly shall be the only moving part and shall form a sealed chamber in the upper portion of the valve separating operating pressure from line pressure.

The diaphragm shall consist of nylon fabric bonded with synthetic rubber compatible with the operating fluid. The centre hole for the main valve stem must be sealed by the vulcanised

process or a rubber grommet sealing the centre stem hole from the operating pressure.

The diaphragm must withstand a Mullins Burst Test of a minimum of 4000 kPa per layer of nylon fabric and shall be cycle tested 100 000 times to insure longevity. The diaphragm shall not be used as the seating surface. The diaphragm shall be fully supported in the valve body and cover by machined surfaces which support no less than one-half of the total surface area of the diaphragm in either the fully opened or fully closed position.

M20.13.2.2 Valve Cover

The main valve seat and the stem bearing in the valve cover shall be removable. The cover bearing and seat in 15 mm and smaller size valves shall be threaded into the cover and body. The valve seat in 200 mm and larger size valves shall be retained by flat head machine screws for ease of maintenance. The lower bearing of the valve stem shall be contained concentrically within the seat and shall be exposed to the flow on all sides to avoid deposits.

To insure proper alignment of the valve stem, the valve body and cover shall be machined with a locating lip. No pinned" covers to the valve body shall be permitted. Cover bearing, disc retainer, and seat shall be made of the same material. All necessary repairs and/or modifications other than the replacement of the main valve body shall be possible without removing the valve from the pipeline. Packing glands and/or stuffing boxes shall not be permitted.

M20.13.2.3 Valve Manufacturer

The valve manufacturer shall warrant the valve to be free of defects in material and workmanship for a period of three year from date of shipment, provided the valve is installed and used in accordance with all applicable instructions. Electrical components shall have a one year warranty.

The valve manufacturer shall be able to supply a complete line of equipment from 32 mm through to 600 mm sizes and a complete selection of complementary equipment. The valve manufacturer shall also provide a cavitation chart which shall show flow rate, differential pressure, percentage of valve opening, Cv factor, system velocity and if there will be cavitation damage.

M20.13.3 Material Specification

Valve Size	:	50-300 mm
Main valve body and cover	:	Cast Iron
Main valve trim	:	Stainless steel
End detail	:	SABS 1123 table 1600/3 or 2500/3 as specified
Pressure rating	:	0-50°
Coating	:	Fusion bonded epoxy

Desired options:-

- X43 "y" strainer or equivalent on pilot piping
- Three ball valves on pilot piping, inlet, outlet and line to cover chamber
- 63 mm diameter pressure gauge, glycerine filled, fitted with 10 mm stainless steel ball valve on Tee-piece on inlet and outlet pilot piping.

M20.13.4 Pilot Control System

The pressure reducing pilot control shall be direct-acting, adjustable, spring-loaded, normally open, diaphragm valve designed to permit flow when controlled pressure is less than the spring setting. The pilot control is held open by the force of the compression on the spring above the diaphragm and it closes when the delivery pressure acting on the underside of the diaphragm exceeds the spring setting.

The pilot control system shall include a fixed orifice. No variable orifices shall be permitted. The pilot system shall include opening speed control on all valves 100 mm and smaller.

Three-way pilot controls will not be acceptable if the connection of TECHNOLOG “Autowat” or “Ecowat” controllers is specified.

The pilot control shall have a second downstream sensing port which can be utilised to install a pressure gauge.

A full range of spring settings shall be available in the range of 0 to 3000 kPa.

A direct factory representative shall be made available for the start-up service, inspection and necessary adjustments.

M20.13.5 Material Specification for Pilot Control

Pressure rating	:	1600 kPa or 2500 kPa as specified
Trim	:	Stainless Steel
Tubing and Fittings	:	Brass compression fittings with copper tubing
Adjustment range	:	200 to 2000 kPa or 100 to 500 kPa
Operating fluids	:	Water

M20.14 PRESSURE REDUCING VALVE (SINGLE DIAPHRAGM LINER-OPERATED TYPE)

M20.14.1 Function

The pressure reducing valve shall maintain a constant downstream pressure regardless of changing flow rate and/or inlet pressure.

M20.14.2 Main Valve

The valve shall be hydraulically operated, pilot activated automatic control valve for pressure reducing service. The valve shall consist of two parts: stainless steel body and an elastomeric liner. The valve shall be positioned in line and be controlled via an external pilot control valve.

M20.14.3 Material Specification

Valve Size		:50-300mm
Main valve Body	:	316 Stainless steel
End Detail (50 to 100 mm)	:	Wafer pattern
End Detail (150 to 300mm)	:	SABS 1123 Table 1600/3 or 2500/3 as specified
Pressure rating	:	1600 kPa or 2500 kPa as specified
Temperature range	:	0 to 70°
Liner Material	:	Natural Rubber

Liner retainer	:	316 Stainless Steel
Coating	:	Fusion bonded epoxy

Desired options:-

- X43 “y” strainer or equivalent on pilot piping
- Three ball valves on pilot piping, inlet, outlet and line to cover chamber
- 63 mm diameter pressure gauge, glycerine filled, fitted with 10 mm stainless steel ball valve on Tee-piece on inlet and outlet pilot piping.

M20.14.4 Pilot Control System

The pressure reducing pilot control shall be direct-acting, adjustable, spring-loaded, normally open, diaphragm valve designed to permit flow when controlled pressure is less than the spring setting. The pilot control is held open by the force of the compression on the spring above the diaphragm and it closes when the delivery pressure acting on the underside of the diaphragm exceeds the spring setting. The pilot control system shall include a fixed orifice. No variable orifices shall be permitted. The pilot system shall include opening speed control on all valves 100 mm and smaller.

Three-way pilot controls will not be acceptable if the connection of TECHNOLOG “Autowat” or “Ecowat” controllers is specified.

The pilot control shall have a second downstream sensing port which can be utilised to install a pressure gauge.

A full range of spring settings shall be available in the range of 0 to 3000 kPa.

A direct factory representative shall be made available for the start-up service, inspection and necessary adjustments.

M20.14.5 Material Specification for Pilot Control

Pressure rating	:	1600 kPa or 2500 kPa as specified
Trim	:	Stainless Steel
Tubing and Fittings	:	Brass compression fittings with copper tubing
Adjustment range	:	200 to 2000 kPa or 100 to 500 kPa
Operating fluids	:	Water
Desired Options	:	-

M20.15 FLOW LIMITER VALVES

M20.15.1 Screwed type limiter valves

The limiter valve shall consist of a screwed fitting with a rubber control ring orifice insert, which affects a consistent flow control within ± 10 % of the rated flow for a differential pressure across the valves over a range extending from 100 kPa to 1100 kPa.

The body of the limiter valve shall be made of uPVC plastic and shall female screwed at both ends to B.S.P.

The control rings shall be made of flexible nitrile elastomer rubber and must be able to move on a tapered seat in the body as the flow increases and be replaceable. The valve must be complete with control rings for the specified initial flow, which may be replaced in the future

(post-contract) for the final flow settings. The flow settings for the flow limiter valves are indicated in the Project Specification.

The screwed type limiter valve must be stamped with the flow in litres per minute and with an arrow to indicate the direction of flow.

A flow test must be conducted at the suppliers factory or test facilities, on one sample each of 20 mm, 25 mm and 32 mm flow limiter valve as prepared for use in the contract, over the following differential pressures:

Differential Pressure (kPa)	**Tolerance limit on rated flow**
50	± 50%
100	± 10%
150	± 10%
200	± 10%
300	± 101%
1000	± 10%

The measurement of flow rates must be to the satisfaction of the Engineer. If any one of the samples should fail to provide a flow rate within the tolerances specified, then all valves for installation on the contract must be tested for a selection of pressures on the contract must be tested for a selection of pressures up to the static pressures to be expected at installation sites, all to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

M20.15.2 Wafer type limiter valves

The limiter valves shall consist of a wafer pattern with a rubber control ring orifice insert, which affects a consistent flow control within ± 10% of the rated flow for a differential pressure across the valve over a range extending from the 100 kPa to 110 kPa.

The body of the limiter valve shall be made of uPVC plastic.

The control rings shall be made flexible nitrite elastomer rubber and shall be able to move on a tapered seat in body as the flow increases and be replaceable. The valve shall be complete with control rings for the specified initial flow, which may be replaced in the future (post-contract) for the final flow settings. The flow settings for the flow limiter valves are given in the Project Specification.

The limiter valve must be stamped with the flow in litres per minute and with an arrow to indicate the direction of flow.

A flow test must be conducted at the suppliers factory or test facilities, on one sample each of 50 mm and 80 mm flow limiter valve as prepared for use in the contract, over the following differential pressures:-

Differential Pressure (kPa)	**Tolerance limit on rated flow**
50	± 50%
100	± 10%
150	± 10%
200	± 10%
300	± 101%
1000	± 10%

The measurement of flow rates must be to the satisfaction of the Engineer. If any one of the samples should fail to provide a flow rate within the tolerances specified, then all valves for installation on the contract must be tested for a selection of pressures on the contract must be tested for a selection of pressures up to the static pressures to be expected at installation sites, all to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

M20.16 VALVE GEARBOXES

Gearboxes shall not be an integral part of the main body but shall be separate unit mounted to the body for easy removal. All gears shall be machine cut and fully enclosed and the lubrication shall be of the permanent type.

Positive stops shall be provided to prevent over opening or over closing of the units and visual indication of the point of travel at all positions in the open/close cycle shall be provided.

Torque limiting devices shall be fitted to prevent damage to gears and casings due to over tightening. Design of valves and gearboxes shall be such that leakage from the valve along the shaft cannot enter the gearbox.

M20.17 PROTECTION OF VALVES

M20.17.1.1 Internal Protection

Internal surfaces of valve bodies and discs shall be grit blasted to a Sa ½ of SIS 05 59 00 finish. Successive coats of an approved non-toxic epoxy resin paint suitable for spray application (Copon EP2300 or similar) shall then be applied to give a final dry film thickness of 300 µm. Drying times between successive layers will depend on environmental conditions and will be strictly in accordance with the requirements of the paint manufacturer.

As an alternative to the protection as specified above, the Contractor may be required to use either a solvent-less epoxy paint system or a fusion bonded epoxy powder coating. For fusion-bonded epoxy, a final dry film thickness of 250 µm is required.

Details of the protection required shall be given in the Project Specification.

M20.17.1.2 External Protection

External surfaces of valve bodies and discs shall be grit blasted to a Sa 2½ of SIS 05 59 00 finish. Successive coats of an approved non-toxic epoxy resin paint suitable for spray application (Copon EP2300 or similar) shall then be applied to give a final dry film thickness of 400 µm. Drying times between successive layers will depend on environmental conditions and will be strictly in accordance with the requirements of the paint manufacturer.

Where the specification does not call for an external surface consisting of an epoxy coating, the following shall apply:-

External surfaces of valve bodies shall be wire brushed to a Sa 3 of SIS 05 59 00 standard and painted with one layer zinc chromate primer to SANS 679 Type I (dried film thickness 50 µm). This shall be followed by two alkyd-based undercoats (each coat 25 µm thick) and one alkyd-based enamel finishing coat to SANS 630 Grade I (dried film thickness 25 µm). Final colour shall be as specified by the Engineer.

Machined flanges shall be painted with a protective coating of shellac or similar.

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M20.18 TOLERANCES

The tolerances as specified in the appropriate SANS or BS standards shall apply to this Contract.

M20.19 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01.

M20.20 TESTING AND INSPECTION

M20.20.1 Testing by Manufacturer

The Manufacturer shall carry out all tests to ensure that valve materials conform to the requirements of the relevant SANS or BS Specification. The Engineer shall not necessarily attend these tests but records must be kept and all test results and tests certificates must be provided to the Engineer.

M20.20.2 Testing by Independent Body

The Engineer may appoint an independent recognised body to conduct control tests. The Manufacturer shall provide samples required for such tests free of charge and the independent body in accordance with the relevant SANS or BS Specification shall do sampling.

The cost of such control tests shall be borne by the Employer.

M20.20.3 Inspection

Visual, operational and dimensional inspection of valves as well as inspection of protective coatings shall be carried out by the Engineer and/or the Manufacturer in the Manufacturer's workshop prior to the despatch of valves to site.

The Engineer's inspection will in no way relieve the manufacturer of any of his obligations to design, manufacture and supply valves strictly in accordance with the Specification.

M20.20.4 Hydrostatic Testing

The Engineer shall witness all hydrostatic tests and the Manufacturer shall give at least one week notification to the Engineer of the proposed dates for such tests.

Valve bodies shall be close ended tested to 2 x working pressure. Test pressures shall be maintained for at least 5 minutes and valve bodies shall be water tight in all respects.

Assembled valves shall be open-ended tested to 1.5 x working pressure for material strength and soundness. Valves shall be drop tight over the complete range of pressures from 0 to 1.5 x working pressure.

Each valve shall be supplied with a test certificate certifying that it complies in all respects with the requirements of this Specification.

M20.21 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery and installation / commissioning of the equipment.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M21: MECHANICAL PRESSURE PIPEWORK

4	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	General review	T Wellard	
2	2010-02-16	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M21: MECHANICAL PRESSURE PIPEWORK

CONTENTS

M21.1 SCOPE 3

M21.2 INTERPRETATIONS 3
M21.2.1 Definitions 3
M21.2.2 Abbreviations 3
M21.2.3 Standards 3
M21.2.4 General Requirements 4

M21.3 CLASS DESIGNATION 4

M21.4 MATERIALS 4
M21.4.1 Standards 4
M21.4.2 Steel (Other than Galvanised) 6

M21.5 UPVC PIPES AND FITTINGS 6
M21.5.1 Handling 6

M21.6 HDPE PIPING 7
M21.6.1 Handling 7

M21.7 MILD STEEL 7

M21.8 CAST IRON PIPES 8

M21.9 STAINLESS STEEL PIPES 8

M21.10 3CR12 PIPES 8

M21.11 DUCTILE IRON PIPES 8

M21.12 STEEL PIPES, SPECIALS AND FITTINGS 9
M21.12.1 General 9
M21.12.2 Materials 9
M21.12.3 Types of Protection 9

M21.13 PIPE CONSTRUCTION 9
M21.13.1 General 9
M21.13.2 Marking of Pipes 9

M21.14 WELDED STEEL PIPES 10
M21.14.1 General 10
M21.14.2 Pipe Ends 11
M21.14.3 Handling 11
M21.14.4 Clamps 11
M21.14.5 Welding 11

M21.15 BONDING OF PIPELINE 11

M21.16 BEDDING AND SUPPORTING OF PIPEWORK 12

M21.17 LAYING OF PIPES 12

M21.18 DAMAGED PIPES 13

M21.19 SIGHT RAILS 13

M21.20 STORAGE OF PIPES AND PREFABRICATED SECTIONS 14

M21.21 JOINTING OF PIPES 14

M21.22 COUPLING DIFFERENT TYPES OF PIPING 15
M21.22.1 Making of Openings 15
M21.22.2 Positioning of Valves and Fittings 15
M21.22.3 Thrust Blocks 16

M21.23 CUT PIPES AND PREFABRICATED SECTIONS 17
M21.23.1 Sterilizing of Pipelines 18
M21.23.2 Route Markers 18
M21.23.3 Protective Layers on Pipes and Fittings 18
M21.23.4 Flexible and Flanged Couplings 19

M21.24 COLOUR CODES 19

M21.25 TOLERANCES 19

M21.26 TESTING 20
M21.26.1 Steel Pipes and Pipe Fittings 20
M21.26.2 Non-Destructive Tests 20
M21.26.3 Destructive Tests 21
M21.26.4 Testing and Inspection on Site 21
M21.26.5 Other Pipe Materials 23

M21.27 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 23

M21.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of pipework, pipe items, protective coatings and describes methods for laying and jointing of pipes. The Particular Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification.

M21.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M21.2.1 Definitions

For the purposes of this Specification the following definitions shall apply:-

(a) Cut Lengths

Where this term is used in the Specifications, on the Drawings or in the Schedule of Quantities it shall be taken to mean a pipe of differing length from the standard length for pipes as supplied by the manufacturer.

Cut lengths are required as closure pieces between standard pipe lengths, between the ends of a pipe fitting or between pipe fittings.

(b) Plain End

This term refers to a pipe end that has been cut, machined or finished in a manner suitable for coupling to a pipe with a similar end as specified.

M21.2.2 Abbreviations

For the purpose of this Specification the following abbreviation shall apply:-

ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
API	:	American Petroleum Institute
BS	:	British Standard
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
uPVC	:	Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride
ISO	:	International Standards Organsiation
DIN	:	Deutsches Institut für Normung
HDPE	:	High Density Polyethylene
MPVC	:	Modified Polyvinyl Chloride Pipes

M21.2.3 Standards

All design standards for the pressure pipework shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-4	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section

8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts

SANS 455 : Covered electrodes for the manual arc welding of carbon and carbon manganese steels

DWS 1110 : Construction of pipelines

M21.2.4 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M21.3 CLASS DESIGNATION

Pipe classes indicated on Drawings and in the Specification should have the following meaning:-

Working Pressure (kPa)	Steel Pipes
300	
600	6
900	
1 000	10
1 200	
1 500	
1 600	16
1 800	
2 100	
2 400	
2 500	25

M21.4 MATERIALS

The type, ability and condition of the equipment and material are subject to the Engineer's approval.

Covered electrodes of mild steel or medium high tensile steel for hand welding must comply with SANS 455 and carry the SANS mark.

The Contractor must submit full particulars off all electrodes he intends using to the Engineer. All electrodes must be supplied by the Contractor and the consignment number submitted to the Engineer. Should a different consignment be used on the works, the Engineer may alter the welding procedure.

M21.4.1 Standards

M21.4.1.1 uPVC Pipes

Requirements:-

SANS 966 : uPVC Type I Pressure Pipes and Fittings for Cold Water Services
SANS 967 : Unplasticised poly(vinyl chloride) (PVC-U) soil, waste and vent pipes and pipe fittings
ISO 4422 : Pipes and fittings made of unplasticised poly (vinyl chloride) (PVC-U) for water supply – Specifications
SANS 1123 : Pipe flanges
SANS 791 : unplasticised poly(vinyl chloride) (PVC-U) sewer and drain pipes and pipe fittings
SANS ISO 4427 : Components of Unplasticised Polyvinyl Chloride (uPVC) Pressure

Pipe Systems for potable water

SABS 0112	:	The installation of polyethylene and unplasticised polyvinyl chloride pipes
BS 3505	:	Unplasticised polyvinyl chloride pressure pipes for cold potable water
DIN 8061	:	A1:1991 Unplasticised polyvinyl chloride pipes: General quality requirements and testing
ISO 1167	:	Plastic pipes for the transport of fluids: determination of the resistance to internal pressure.
ISO 1628	:	Plastics determination of viscosity number and limiting viscosity number. Part 2: PVC resins.
ISO 4422	:	Pipes and fittings made of unplasticised polyvinyl chloride for water supply specifications

125 & 140mm sizes are not recommended for uPVC pipes due to the lack of standard fitting.

M21.4.1.2 HDPE

Requirements:-

SANS ISO 4427	:	Black polyethylene pipes for the conveyance of liquids

M21.4.1.3 Mild Steel

Requirements:-

SANS 719 grade B	:	Electric welded low carbon steel pipes for aqueous fluids (large bore)
SANS 62	:	Steel pipe and pipe fittings up to 150 mm nominal bore

M21.4.1.4 Cast Iron

Requirements:-

BS 2035	:	Cast Iron flanged pipes and flanged fittings.
SANS 509	:	Malleable cast iron pipe fittings.
SANS 664	:	Cast Iron gate valves.
SANS 746	:	Cast-iron pipes and pipe fittings for use above ground in drainage installations

M21.4.1.5 Stainless Steel

Requirements:-

SANS 1044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 1044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders working where weld procedure approval is not required.
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural

M21.4.1.6 Ductile Iron

Requirements:-

SANS 1835	:	Ductile iron pipes, fittings, accessories and their joints, for use in high and low pressure systems for potable and foul water
SANS 50545	:	Ductile iron pipes, fittings, accessories and their joints for water pipelines - Requirements and test methods
SANS 50598:1994	:	Ductile iron pipes, fittings, accessories and their joints for sewerage application - Requirements and test methods

M21.4.2 Steel (Other than Galvanised)

M21.4.2.1 Manufacturing Specifications

SANS 62	:	Steel pipe and pipe fittings up to 150 mm nominal bore
SANS 719	:	Electric welded low carbon steel pipes for aqueous fluids
SANS 1123	:	Standard Specification for steel pipe flanges
BS 4504	:	Flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings

M21.4.2.2 Welding Specifications

BS 1965	:	Butt-welding pipe fittings.
BS 2633	:	Metal-arc welding of steel pipe lines and pipe assemblies for carrying fluids.
BS 4504	:	Flanges and bolting for pipes, valves and fittings.
API 5L	:	Specification for line pipe.
API 5LS	:	Specification for spiral-weld line pipe.
API 1104	:	Standard for welding pipe lines and related facilities.

M21.4.2.3 Protective Coatings

SANS 763	:	Hot-dipped (galvanised) zinc coatings.
SANS 0129	:	Code of Practise for plastic tape wrapping of steel pipe lines.
SANS 1117	:	Plastic wrapping for the protection of steel pipe lines.
SANS 1130	:	Glass fibre reinforcing material for pipe wrapping.
SANS 1136	:	Cold applied bitumen primer for steel pipe line protection.
SANS 1137	:	Hot applied bitumen for steel pipe line protection.
SANS 1138	:	Cold applied coal tar primer for steel pipe line protection.
SANS 1139	:	Hot applied coal tar enamel for steel pipe line protection.
SANS 1178	:	The production of lined and coated steel pipes using bitumen or coal tar enamel.
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial surface preparation standards for painting steel surfaces.

M21.5 UPVC PIPES AND FITTINGS

All manufacturers of uPVC and MPVC pipes, fittings and couplings must be quality listed by the South African Bureau of Standards to comply with SABS ISO 9002.

All exposed uPVC piping shall be protected against ultra-violet degradation by the application of two coats of white PVA paint after degreasing.

Where flanged ends are required, the end of the pipe shall be prepared with a solvent welded stub adaptor to accommodate a galvanised steel backing flange.

All sludge and polyelectrolyte pipework shall be uPVC and rated 9 bar pressure and shall adequately supported to prevent sagging.

M21.5.1 Handling

Care shall be taken when handling uPVC pipes to ensure that pipes are not dropped or mishandled. Piping in transit shall be adequately secured using straps to prevent abrasion and surface damage.

During transport, handling and storage, the Contractor shall ensure that the pipes lie on a smooth surface and are not in contact with sharp objects and are not subjected to point or linear loads.

Yield (MPa) at 28° C	Tensile Modulus (GPa) 23°C	Max Temperature	Design Stress (MPa) at 20°C	Minimum Safety factor at 50 years

55	2.7-3.0	60	10,000	2.1

M21.6 HDPE PIPING

Flange couplings shall be kept to a minimum. Where the standard length of pipe is less than the required length, butt weld or flanged connections shall be used.

HDPE stub ends and loose flange connections may be butt welded and the bead formed inside the pipe shall be removed to avoid restrictions and product build-up. All flanges and bolts shall be galvanised.

Pipe work shall be adequately supported depending upon the size and class to prevent pipe sag. Where pipework is exposed directly to the environment, provision shall be made for suitable horizontal expansion joints.

M21.6.1 Handling

Care shall be taken when handling HDPE pipes to ensure that pipes are not dropped or mishandled. Piping in transit shall be adequately secured using straps to prevent abrasion and surface damage.

During transport, handling and storage, the Contractor shall ensure that the pipes lie on a smooth surface and are not in contact with sharp objects and are not subjected to point or linear loads.

The maximum stacking height for class 6-10 pipes shall not exceed 2m. All pipes exhibiting damage shall be rejected.

Yield (MPa) at 28° C	Tensile Modulus (GPa) 23°C	Max Temperature	Design Stress (MPa) at 20°C	Minimum Safety factor at 50 years
20	0.7-0.95	80	5,0	1.3

M21.7 MILD STEEL

All mild steel pipework and fittings other than steam tubing and screwed and socketed pipe, larger than 150 mm diameter shall comply with the requirements of SABS 719 grade B and shall have a minimum wall thickness as follows:

Normal Bore mm	**Min Wall Thickness mm**
Less than 400 mm	4
400-500	5
600-700	6
750-900	8
950-1100	10
1100-1500	12
1600-1800	14

Pipework other than screwed and socketed of sizes up to and including 150 mm nominal bore, shall comply with the requirements of SABS 62. These pipes shall be heavy class with flanged joints and suitable for a minimum working pressure of 1.6 MPa.

All screwed and socketed pipes shall comply with the requirements of SABS 62 Medium class and shall be “hot dip” galvanised. Unless otherwise specified screwed and socketed pipes shall not be used for the conveyance of steam, gas and compressed air. Compressed air pipelines of diameter 25 mm or less may be screwed and socketed.

Plain ends of pipes and fittings shall be protected against damage while being transported from the factory to the site. Details of the proposed protection system shall be submitted by the Engineer for approval.

M21.8 CAST IRON PIPES

All cast iron fittings shall be factory coated internally and externally with one coat bitumen paint to BS 3416 Type II leaving a dried film thickness of not less than 25 µm.

(a) All Exposed pipes and fittings except pipes installed in potable water retaining structures. Method of corrosion protection shall be specified in the project specification.

(b) After installation paint with one further coat as per factory coat.

M21.9 STAINLESS STEEL PIPES

Stainless steel shall be ANSI Type 304L or 316L as stated in the detailed specification. Where no welding is required Type 304 or 316 may be used. Manufacturers test certificates shall be provided for each material and each stainless steel item supplied shall be clearly and permanently marked with the grade of stainless steel and cross referenced to the applicable test certificate.

Welding of stainless steel shall be carried out using welding electrodes most suitable for the material and its applications by reference to the manufacturer's recommendations. Special precautions shall be taken to ensure that the strength and corrosion resistance of the material is not impaired by prolonged heating of the welds. All welds and adjacent areas shall be cleaned and pickled to remove the area of discolouration with a nitric and hydrofluoric acid formulation as recommended by the material suppliers.

After cleaning pickling all areas shall be thoroughly washed with clean water and re-passivated thereafter with a proprietary passivating solution of 10 per cent – 20 per cent nitric acid in aqueous solution recommended by the material suppliers.

M21.10 3CR12 PIPES

Test certificates and marking shall be used for 3CR12 as per stainless steel.

All 3CR12 shall be supplied "passivated" and upon completion of fabrication welds and other areas where the passivating layer has been removed or damaged and are contamination with mild steel or discoloured shall be cleaned and pickled using nitric acid and hydrofluoric acid formulation as recommended by the material suppliers. After cleaning/pickling all areas shall be thoroughly washed with a proprietary passivating solution of 10 per cent – 20 per cent nitric acid in aqueous solution recommended by the material suppliers.

Welding of 3CR12 steel shall be carried out under controlled conditions using stainless steel 309L welding rod or similar approved and recommended by the material suppliers. All welds shall be continuous and crevice free.

Where a fabricator has shops that deal with both carbon steel and stainless/ 3CR12 fabrications these shops are to be totally separated and no grinding wheels, etc., shall be interchanged between shops.

M21.11 DUCTILE IRON PIPES

Ductile iron pipes and fittings shall comply with ISO 2531. The nominal diameters of ductile iron are 80 to 2000mm.

The pressure rating of ductile iron is K9 range, with the nominal pressure of 3200 kPa. A safety factor of 4 times the working pressure shall be used for ductile iron pipes.

An integral rubber ring socket and spigot is used for the jointing. Ductile iron pipes shall have a inner lining of alumina cement mortar.

M21.12 STEEL PIPES, SPECIALS AND FITTINGS

M21.12.1 General

Protective coatings shall be either "factory" implying coating prior to delivery from the factory to Site, or "Site" implying coating on the Site after the item has been installed.

Undercoats shall be coloured differently to ensure complete coverage with each coat.

External protections other than specified in this clause e.g. coal, tar, enamel and proprietary types of tape wrapping shall when called for in the Schedule of Quantities be carried out as specified.

M21.12.2 Materials

Materials used for spun bitumen lining and bitumen fibre glass wrapping of pipes and the method to be followed shall comply with SANS 720.

Epoxy resin paint shall be approved by the Engineer and shall not break down chemically with time or affect the potability or cause discolouration of potable water in any way and the primer used with such paints shall be zinc rich epoxy type compatible with the paint. Bitumen based aluminium paint to be to SANS 802.

Undercoat for alkyd based enamel paint to be to SANS 681 Type II, and colour to match final decorative paint. Alkyd based enamel paint to be to SANS 630 Grade I.

Zinc chromate primer to be to SANS 679 Type I.

Bitumen paint to BS 3416 (Type II where specified).

M21.12.3 Types of Protection

Pipe work and fittings will be protected in accordance with the Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection.

M21.13 PIPE CONSTRUCTION

M21.13.1 General

Pipes shall be tested hydraulically in accordance with SABS 719 and test certificates shall be submitted to the Engineer before the pipes leave the manufacturers workshops.

M21.13.2 Marking of Pipes

The following markings shall be legibly and indelibly marked on each pipe and coupling:-

(a) The name, trade name or registered trade mark of the manufacturer.

(b) The nominal internal diameter.

(c) The class of pipe and colour code (marked at each end).

(d) The wall thickness (for steel pipes).

(e) Length of pipe (if different from the standard length)

(f) Pipe items, specials and valves shall be legibly and indelibly marked with the item number corresponding to the item number given in the Item Lists on the Drawings, or where Item Lists are not provided, the item number in the Schedule of Quantities.

M21.13.2.1 Information to be Supplied:-

The following information shall be made available to the Engineer prior to the award of the Contract:-

(a) Make and types of pipe offered.

(b) The friction loss formula applicable to the types of pipe offered.

(c) Standard pipe length.

(d) Thickness of pipe wall.

(e) Type of coupling and degree of maximum safe deflection permissible with the coupling.

Where the Contract calls for the supply, delivery and laying of the piping, the unit rate tendered for straight pipes shall include for one complete coupling (i.e. including rubber rings, insertion, bolts, etc.) per pipe length and shall include for the protection of the coupling.

Where the Contract calls for the supply and delivery only of the piping, the unit rate tendered for straight pipes shall include for one complete coupling per pipe length together with sufficient material for protecting the coupling.

Where the Contract calls for taking delivery of and laying the piping the unit rate tendered for straight pipes shall include for the labour necessary for protecting the couplings.

M21.14 WELDED STEEL PIPES

M21.14.1 General

Welders must be successfully tested in accordance with SANS 044 Part V by a certificate institution defined by SANS 044 Part V. The Contractor is responsible for the competency certificates of the welders. The Contractor must issue each welder with such equipment so that a welder can identify his joints. A list of identification marks must be kept by the Contractor and made available to the Engineer.

Should two joints of a particular welder not withstand the prescribed test, the welder may not undertake any more welds.

Pipes shall be manufactured by an approved welding process and shall not incorporate more than one longitudinal seam for pipes up to and including 1 000 mm diameter or two longitudinal seams for pipes bigger than 1 000 mm diameter.

Pipe specials shall be manufactured strictly as shown on the Drawings and described in the Documents. Plate thickness shall be such to ensure that the maximum stress shall not be higher than for an uncut pipe in the same pipeline.

The maximum angle between butt-ends of segments for gusseted bends shall be 22½E.

M21.14.2 Pipe Ends

Pipe ends must be thoroughly cleaned of all rust, grease and protection which may affect the quality of the weld. For cut lengths the ends must be bevelled to 30E with the end of the pipe and the roof surface prepared all at the Contractor's own cost. Should laminating, splitting of ends or any other defect occur during welding, the Contractor must cut the defective areas from the pipe.

M21.14.3 Handling

Pipes shall be brought in position in such a manner that damage to the pipes is avoided. Should the pipes have a longitudinal joint, the pipes must be placed so that this joint lies in the top third of the completed line. These longitudinal joints must be staggered at 20E from each other.

M21.14.4 Clamps

Internal clamps must be used to keep the pipes in position during the welding. The root opening must be between 1,5 and 3,0 mm and the pipes may not deviate more than 1,5 mm from the concentric.

Clamps may be removed only after 50 % of the root weld has been completed in equal sections around the perimeter of the pipes.

M21.14.5 Welding

Root welding may at no place be thicker than two thirds of the pipe wall and must be without defects.

Welding must be thoroughly cleared of slag, scale and oxide before the next weld is applied. Weld joints must consist of at least two welds to ensure the specified reinforcing.

Complete penetration must be ensured by letting the weld reinforcement protrude 1,5 mm on the inside of the pipe. No other protrusions will be allowed on the inside of the pipe.

Weld joints must be built up until the weld reinforcement protrudes between 0,8 mm to 1,6 mm above the pipe. The cover weld must be 3,2 mm wider than the original groove width.

In order to avoid cracks, the second or "warm" weld must be applied immediately after the root weld has been cleaned and prior to the cooling of the pipe at the joint.

The internal weld bead on welded seams shall protrude a maximum of 1,0 mm into the barrel of the pipe. For butt-welded pipelines the weld bead shall be ground flush with the pipe body at each pipe end.

The Contractor must submit with his tender a Qualification of Welding Procedures as set out in Section 2 of API Std 1104 including a procedure specification as set out in paragraphs 2.3a, d, e, f, g, h, I, j, k, l, m, n, p, q and r of above specification. The Contractor must demonstrate that this proposed procedure will produce an acceptable pipeline. Should tests reveal that an acceptable result cannot be obtained; the Contractor shall alter his procedure and qualification so that the desired result is obtained.

No welding may take place should inclement weather including rain, sand and wind result in bad joints. If practical, shelters may be erected. The Engineer's representative will decide if the weather is suitable for welding or not.

M21.15 BONDING OF PIPELINE

It may be necessary as a result of tests to be carried out by the Employer, for the pipeline to be

bonded across couplings for electrical continuity.

The bonds shall consist of lengths of 16 mm² PVC sheathed cable secured to the pipeline by thermal welding. Each and every flexible and flanged coupling will be bonded across except in the case of valve chambers where the bonding will take place in the form of a bypass around the outside of the chamber. At flexible couplings two fastenings to the pipe (one on either side of the coupling) and one to the barrel of the coupling shall be made. The external protection of the pipe shall be made good by filling the space cleared of wrapping for the connection with bitumen as used for wrapping the pipe, such that the depth of bitumen thus applied is equal to the depth of the wrapping.

The bonding shall be carried out as soon as possible after installation of the piping and before joints are protected and backfilled. The cables shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of the supplier and to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Bonding of pipes shall be measured per joint unit. This price shall include for supplying of materials, transporting on Site and installing bonds and making good of pipe wrapping all as described in this Clause.

M21.16 BEDDING AND SUPPORTING OF PIPEWORK

In all cases buried pipes shall be laid on a 50 mm thick bedding layer, surrounded and covered to a height 150 mm above the pipe with selected fill material complying with the requirements of standardized specification unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or ordered by the Engineer.

Bedding material shall be to the same Specification as selected fill.

Exposed pipework shall be adequately supported on concrete pads and fastened down with approved metal straps with rag-bolts cast into the concrete or with holder bats or as indicated on the Drawings or directed by the Engineer.

M21.17 LAYING OF PIPES

Only qualified workmen shall be employed for the laying and jointing of pipes and proper tools shall be used for the execution of the works. Care shall be taken during construction that the ends of pipes are not hit against each other and pipe ends are damaged in this way.

Once a sufficient length of trench has been excavated and trimmed to the required levels and grades, the pipes shall be lifted and carefully lowered into the trench and placed on the prepared bedding layer (where gravel bedding layers are called for).

Immediately prior to laying the pipe or fitting, it shall be carefully examined both externally and internally for any damage or defect, and all foreign matter shall be removed from inside of the pipe.

Pipes shall be laid evenly on the prepared bedding layer that shall be free of hollows, bumps or other irregularities. Where any such irregularities occurring in this layer prevent the pipe barrel from bearing on the bedding layer for its full length between joint holes, the pipe shall be lifted out of the trench or moved to one side while the bedding layer is trimmed in the specified manner, and where such filling or trimming is necessary as a result of any fault or omission on the part of the Contractor responsible for excavating the trenches, the additional handling of the pipe and trimming shall be to his own cost.

A guideline shall be strung parallel to the centre-line of the pipe and at the height of the centre-line of the pipe. Alternatively the Contractor may make use of a laser beam grade indicator.

All pipes and fittings shall be laid to the true lines and levels indicated on the drawings or as instructed by the Engineer. Pipes and fittings shall be positioned concentrically correct so as to obtain a thoroughly uniform joint. Where possible pipes shall be laid by commencing at the lower end of the grade and working uphill, and in the case of spigot and socket pipes, the socket end of the pipe shall face uphill.

In order to prevent foreign matter entering pipes already laid, a properly fitting wooden or other approved type plug or cap shall be used to cover the end of the last pipe laid whenever laying of pipes is interrupted.

Under no circumstances will the Contractor be permitted to use stones, corrugated iron or cement bags to cover the open end of closed pipes.

An approved pipe "cleaner" attached to a sturdy rope and left in the mouth of the pipe already laid and jointed, shall be pulled forward through the pipeline as each successive pipe is laid. The scraper and ropes used must be of soft material, which will not damage the inner surface of the pipes.

M21.18 DAMAGED PIPES

Damaged or defective pipes or fittings may not be used but shall be placed to one side for inspection by the Engineer who will determine and decide whether the damage is of such a nature that the pipe or fitting shall be rejected or whether it is so slight that it may be repaired on the Site. The decision of the Engineer with regard to the rejection of the damaged or defective pipes and fittings shall be final. Pipes and fittings shall be replaced or repairs undertaken by the Contractor at his own cost to the full satisfaction of the Engineer. In the case of pipes and fittings provided by the Employer, the responsibility of the Contractor for the repair and replacement of damaged pipes and fittings will commence once the Contractor has taken delivery of the material from the Employer. Before taking over any material from the Employer, he shall thoroughly inspect all material and immediately report any damage or defects therein to the Engineer.

The Engineer shall have the right to order the removal of any defective or damaged pipe or fitting that has not been repaired or approved as described above, from the pipe line, irrespective of whether such pipe or fitting has been laid and joined in the pipe line or not, and the Contractor must then undertake the removal and replacement of such pipe or fitting to the complete satisfaction of the Engineer, at his own cost.

M21.19 SIGHT RAILS

In all cases pipes are to be laid to definite lines and levels and sight rails shall be erected after setting out, at changes in direction and grade and at intermediate positions such that the distance between sight rails does not exceed 50 m or as the Engineer may require.

Sight rails for bulk excavation of trenches may be temporary to suit the Contractor's requirements but for purpose of final trimming and pipe laying sight rails shall be of sturdy construction, firmly planted and have the cross-arm neatly and clearly painted black and white.

Boning rods shall be well constructed with the cross-arm painted red or other colour contrasting with the sight rail. Sight rails and boning rods shall be maintained in a clean and sound condition and shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer at all times.

M21.20 STORAGE OF PIPES AND PREFABRICATED SECTIONS

Unless specifically stated to the contrary, the Contractor shall supply, deliver and install, as shown on the Drawings and in the Schedule of Quantities, all pipes, prefabricated sections and accessories required under each particular Section of the various Sections of the Contract.

Unless the pipes, prefabricated sections and accessories are off-loaded on the side of the excavated trench, the Contractor shall stack such pipes, prefabricated sections and accessories on an approved site. The cost involved in the transport from such storage place to the section of the trench where the drain or pipe line has to be built, shall be included in the construction cost.

During transport, handling, stacking and placing, the prefabricated units shall be protected against damage.

The Engineer reserves the right to restrict the height to which pipes may be stacked. Pipes larger than 300 mm diameter may not be stacked at all.

M21.21 JOINTING OF PIPES

Only suitably qualified workmen will be permitted to lay and join pipes and suitable equipment must be used for the execution of work.

Before they are joined together, the ends of pipes and all fittings and flanges shall be inspected and cleaned.

(a) Flanged Joints

Where flanged pipework, valves, etc., are to be connected, the insertion material shall be cut to the correct size and provided with bolt holes. The insertion material shall be positioned immediately prior to the two flanges being brought together and the whole joint must then be bolted together by tightening diametrically opposite bolts in sequence.

(b) Flexible Joints (Viking Johnson Type)

The flanges must be placed in position first; one over each end of the pipe, and the rubber rings must then be inserted by pulling them over the ends of the pipes or by using special pointed plugs, the point of which has been placed in the end of the pipe. Any twists in the rubber rings must be removed by rolling the rings along the outside of the pipe and they must then be brought into position so that the distance from the end of the pipe to the ring is equal to half the length of the detachable collar. The collar shall be placed over the end of one of the pipes and the two pipe ends shall be brought together in such a way that the collar is placed centrally over the joint. The bolts must then be placed through the flanges and carefully and evenly tightened to the required torque, thus ensuring a watertight joint.

(c) Flexible Joints (Loose Collar Type)

The pipe barrel shall be thoroughly cleaned over the area to be covered by the coupling. The coupling shall be installed strictly in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions - a copy of which shall be kept by the Contractor on Site.

(d) Screwed Joints

Screw threads on pipes and in sockets shall conform to the relevant standards. Threading on Site will be subject to the approval of the Engineer. PTFE tape only shall

be used for thread sealing. Sockets shall not be over tightened and the pipes shall be screwed the same distance into the socket on either side.

(e) Spigot and Socket Joints

For spigot and socket joints the ring shall be placed around the spigot end of the pipe, perpendicular to the centre-line and as near as possible to the end. The ring shall be clean, dry and not twisted. The joint is made by pushing the pivot in the socket by means of a crowbar or block and tackle. If the pipe is inclined to creep out of the joint, it is a sign that the ring is not rolled on evenly and it must be redone.

(f) Open Joints

For open joints the pipes shall be laid close together and any gap larger than 3 mm on the inside as well as outside shall be filled completely with 3:1 cement mortar and on the outside covered with one layer of jute material soaked in the same mortar. The jute material must overlap the joint by at least 75 mm on both sides.

M21.22 COUPLING DIFFERENT TYPES OF PIPING

The following methods shall be used for connecting different types of pipe together:-

Cast iron flange adaptors or steel flange and spigot pieces to suit the types of piping shall be coupled with a flexible coupling on one end and bolted to a flange on the other end which may, in the case of steel piping, be welded or screwed on.

Where a steel pipe is to be connected to an asbestos cement pipe with a larger outside diameter, without the use of a flange adaptor to the end of steel pipe shall be furnished with a steel ring welded on or, in the case of galvanised piping, a special galvanised steel socket shall be screwed on such that the outside diameters of the pipes match and the pipes may then be joined with a flexible coupling.

M21.22.1 Making of Openings

Where drains have to be joined to existing structures or existing drains or newly constructed prefabricated box culverts in such a way that it was not possible for the Contractor to leave openings for the joining or building in of prefabricated units, such openings shall be made according to the instructions of the Engineer.

The Contractor shall supply the necessary equipment and labour to make the openings according to the dimensions and/or requirements directed by the Engineer without damaging the rest of the structure or drain. If the openings are made too large or the rest of the structures or drain is damaged in any way, the Contractor shall repair it at his own expense to the satisfaction of the Engineer.

Blasting to make openings will only be permitted in exceptional circumstances.

Where necessary, parts of the existing structure or drain shall be propped until the junction of the new drain is completed.

The prefabricated units must be built into the openings or the other drains joined thereto as directed by the Engineer and the joint shall be finished neatly so that a minimum of obstruction is caused to the flow of water. The Contractor must provide all material, tools and labour to make the new junction.

M21.22.2 Positioning of Valves and Fittings

All valves and fittings shall be correctly positioned as indicated on the Drawings, and where necessary shall be supported by concrete pads. Spindle guides and anchors shall be fixed to the brickwork or concrete and carefully adjusted to ensure correct operation of the spindle.

M21.22.3 Thrust Blocks

Unless otherwise ordered by the Engineer, concrete Class 25/19 MPa thrust blocks shall be cast as a support for bends, tees and caps and at valves. The size of the thrust will depend on the strength of the soil, the pipe diameter, the working pressure and the type of item to be supported.

All thrust blocks shall be cast against undisturbed soil and in such a manner as to leave all couplings accessible and such that the bearing area is in accordance with the table given below, which table is based on the assumption that the safe bearing capacity of the soil is at least 100 kN/m². The Engineer will determine in each case the safe bearing capacity for the soil, and the bearing area of the thrust block may then be interpolated from the table. The areas are given in square metres.

Thrust blocks and pipework supports inside buildings shall be constructed to the dimensions given on the Drawings or as directed by the Engineer after the piping and fittings are installed in position.

Note: Bearing area of thrust blocks for pipe diameters, working pressures and bends not stated in the table below, shall be interpolated from the values given.

Nominal Pipe Diameter (mm)	Working Pressure KPa	Bends				End Caps and T-pieces
		11.25º	22.50º	45.00º	90.00º	
100	300	0.010	0.020	0.035	0.065	0.045
	900	0.025	0.050	0.100	0.185	0.130
	1 500	0.045	0.085	0.165	0.305	0.215
	2 100	0.060	0.120	0.230	0.425	0.300
200	300	0.035	0.070	0.135	0.245	0.175
	900	0.107	0.200	0.395	0.725	0.515
	1 500	0.170	0.335	0.655	1.210	0.855
	2 100	0.235	0.470	0.915	1.695	1.195
300	300	0.080	0.150	0.295	0.545	0.385
	900	0.230	0.450	0.885	1.630	1.150
	1 500	0.380	0.750	1.475	2.720	1.920
	2 100	0.530	1.050	2.060	3.805	2.685
400	300	0.135	0.265	0.515	0.950	0.670
	900	0.395	0.785	1.540	2.845	2.005
	1 500	0.660	1.310	2.565	4.740	3.340
	2 100	0.920	1.895	3.590	6.635	4.675
500	300	0.210	0.420	0.820	1.510	1.065
	900	0.630	1.250	2.455	4.530	3.195
	1 500	1.050	2.085	4.085	7.550	5.325
	2 100	1.465	2.915	5.720	10.565	7.450
600	300	0.305	0.600	1.180	2.175	1.535
	900	0.905	1.800	3.530	6.521	4.600
	1 500	1.510	3.000	5.885	10.870	7.665
	2 100	2.110	4.200	8.235	15.215	10.730
800	300	0.540	1.070	2.095	3.865	2.725

Nominal Pipe Diameter (mm)	Working Pressure KPa	Bends				End Caps and T-pieces
		11.25º	22.50º	45.00º	90.00º	
	900	1.610	3.200	6.275	11.595	8.175
	1 500	2.680	5.335	10.460	19.320	13.625
	2 100	3.750	7.465	14.640	27.050	19.070
1 000	300	0.840	1.670	3.270	6.040	4.260
	900	2.510	5.000	9.805	18.110	12.770
	1 500	4.185	8.050	16.340	30.185	21.285
	2 100	5.855	11.660	22.875	42.260	29.795

M21.23 CUT PIPES AND PREFABRICATED SECTIONS

Cut pipes may only be used with the Engineer's permission and the ends shall be cut square to the length of the pipe and finished smooth and evenly so that the cut ends is not inferior to that of an uncut pipe.

The Contractor shall measure the length required for a cut length, cut the pipe, prepare the end for the required coupling and install the cut length. The cutting and end-finishing operations shall be done with special tools available for the particular type of piping such that the cut end is not inferior to the factory made end. In the case of asbestos cement piping particularly, an end cutting machine as supplied by the pipe manufacturers only, shall be used for cutting and preparing the end.

In the case of steel pipes since the ends only are truly circular, it is necessary that cut lengths be factory made and prepared. The prices tendered for cut lengths for various types, classes and diameters of piping shall include for the cutting and end finishing operations but exclude the actual pipe length used as this will be measured and paid for under the item provided for supplying and/or laying of straight pipes. The price shall however, include for one coupling as required, and for any possible wastage.

In the case of sewer pipes, cut pipes may only be used at manholes and the cut end shall wherever possible be built into the manhole. Prefabricated units may only be trimmed or cut where they join structures or other drains.

Box culvert sections may only be trimmed or cut perpendicular to the direction of flow to obtain the correct length and units of the correct skew shall be obtained from the manufacturer where the box culvert drain joins at a skew and in such cases the second last unit shall be trimmed or cut to obtain the correct length.

The ends of pipes to be built in shall be trimmed or cut to the correct skew to be finished smoothly on the inside face of the wall into which it is built.

Units shall be cut in such a way that the edges are not shattered or cracks are not caused in the concrete where the structural strength of the unit causes it to break. When it is trimmed it shall be cut or sawn to obtain the correct length and skew end.

The necessary openings for junctions shall be left when structures or drains are constructed. If the Contractor neglects to leave such openings, he shall, at his own expense, make such openings afterwards or remove the building work and reconstruct it with openings, all according to the Engineer's directions.

Units must fit neatly into the openings provided for them and must be firmly concreted or built in without any obstruction to the flow of water.

M21.23.1 Sterilizing of Pipelines

Pipelines that are to be used for potable water shall be sterilized over its complete length before it is taken into use.

The pipe shall be filled with potable water chlorinated to a concentration of 10 mg of chlorine per litre of water which shall remain with the inner surface of the pipe line for a period of not less than 24 hours. The pipeline is to be filled for sterilizing in such a manner that no shock is created or air trapped in the pipeline.

The Contractor shall at least 14 days prior to the commencement of sterilizing, submit full details of the proposed method of sterilizing the pipe line to the Engineer for his approval.

The Contractor shall provide all necessary tools, equipment and labour necessary to sterilize the pipeline. After sterilizing the pipe line the Contractor shall, at no extra cost empty the pipe lines and dispose of the water in a manner approved by the Engineer.

The Contractor may use the following products as a source of chlorine:-

(a) Chloride of Lime to SANS 295 yielding one third by weight free chlorine.

(b) Calcium Hyper Chloride to SANS 295 yielding 70% by weight free chlorine.

(c) Chlorine gas applied by chlorinator.

The unit rates tendered under the items in the Schedule of Quantities for sterilizing pipe lines shall include for all materials (including water) and labour necessary and shall also include for all arrangements the Contractor may have to make in order to obtain water and fill the pipe line.

M21.23.2 Route Markers

In certain instances concrete pipe route markers may be required. Such markers shall be detailed fully in the Project Specification.

M21.23.3 Protective Layers on Pipes and Fittings

Unless otherwise indicated on the Drawings or stated in the Schedule of Quantities, pipes, specials and fittings shall be protected as shown here-under. Note that preparation of metal surfaces shall be done as specified for steel and other metal work.

PVC, Polythene, galvanised and Chromed Piping

Pipes and fittings manufactured from the above materials shall receive no treatment except as follows:-

(a) Exposed galvanised steel piping shall be thoroughly cleaned and coated with one layer of etching primer, one coat zinc chromate primer and finishing coats as for exposed steel piping when called for in the Schedule of Quantities.

(b) The exposed threads and where galvanising has been damaged shall be thoroughly cleaned and all traces of oil removed with an appropriate solvent. One coat of zinc chromate primer to SANS 679 Type 1 followed by one undercoat to SANS 681 Type II to a total dried film thickness of 50 µm shall be brush applied to all surfaces.

(c) Buried galvanised steel piping shall, when called for in the Schedule of Quantities, be protected by wrapping with pressure sensitive tape or butyl rubber laminated tape.

(d) Identification bands shall be painted on exposed PVC, Polythene and chromed piping in accordance with instructions of the Engineer.

M21.23.4 Flexible and Flanged Couplings

The couplings shall first be cleaned by removing all loose scale, rust, extraneous matter such as mud, by means of wire brushing and removing possible excess water by wiping with a dry cloth.

After cleaning, the whole of the coupling shall be well primed with a paste of saturated petroleum hydrocarbons (petrolatum), insert fillers and passivating agents, leaving a thin film on flanges and sleeves and a liberal amount around the bolt heads, narrow cavities, etc. A mastic plats of petrolatum, insert fillers and mineral fibres shall then be applied to cover all the bolt heads on the outside of the flanges (also between flanges to give approximate 5 mm cover over the sleeve). The mastic shall then be moulded up to, but not to completely cover the bolts and flanges.

A glass fibre, felt coated tape saturated with petrolatum with insert siliceous fillers shall then be applied circumferentially, starting and finishing on top of the coupling, care being taken to form the tape well into the angle between the flange and the pipe. Care shall be taken to smooth the tape down and ensure conformability to the underlying mastic. The tape should be "fed" onto the coupling and not stretched.

Two complete turns of 0,15 mm thick polyethylene sheeting shall be applied over the coupling. The sheeting shall be wide enough to cover the entire coupling and overlap by 150 mm on top of the coupling. The sheeting shall be secured onto the pipe barrel each side of the coupling by means of self adhesive tape overlapping 25 mm on the pipe barrel and 75 mm on itself.

The tendered unit rate for wrapped couplings shall include all materials, labour, transport, etc. to complete the protection of the coupling in any position along the pipeline.

M21.24 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01.

M21.25 TOLERANCES

Pipes shall be laid to the lines, grades and levels as specified on the Drawings

(a) Vertical deviation from the straight line between two consecutive levels shall not be more than the value of "d" as calculated from the following formula :-

$$d = 5 + \frac{L^{1/2}\ D^{1/2}\ S^{1/2}}{60}$$

Where : d = tolerance in millimetre
L = length of pipe between control point in millimetre
D = nominal pipe diameter in millimetre
S = slope of pipe taken as the difference in level of control points in millimetre divided by L

(b) The horizontal deviation from the specified direction and line between two consecutive control points shall not be more than the maximum vertical deviation as calculated under (a) above.

Pipe items and specials shall be manufactured to the dimensions as specified in the pipe lists or shown on the Drawings

Maximum allowable deviation from the specified dimensions shall be as follows:-

(a) Straight pipes and tapers :-

Length (mm)	Tolerance (face to face) (mm)
Up to 1 800	± 16
1 800 to 2 700	± 24
2 700 to 3 600	± 32
Longer than 3 600	± 40

(b) Bends and Tees :-

Diameter (mm)	Tolerance (centre to face) (mm)
Up to 300	16
300 to 600	24
600 to 1 200	40

M21.26 TESTING

M21.26.1 Steel Pipes and Pipe Fittings

M21.26.1.1 *Testing and Inspection at Manufacturer's Works*

Where factory inspection and supervision of tests are required by the Engineer, such tests and inspections shall be carried out at the manufacturer's works at the expense of the Contractor who shall provide free of charge all necessary testing facilities, labour, instruments, etc. that may be required.

An independent inspector such as the SABS may be appointed to act on behalf of the Engineer. Fees payable to such an inspector, however, will not be to the account of the Contractor.

M21.26.2 Non-Destructive Tests

(a) Visual Inspection

All pipes and pipe specials shall be visually examined, shall be free of defects, such as cracks, laminations and arc burns and shall comply fully with the dimensions as specified.

A penetrant dye shall be used for the visual inspection of welding.

(b) Ultrasonic Inspection

All longitudinal or spiral welds on straight steel pipes shall be checked ultrasonically with approved equipment capable of continuous and uninterrupted inspection of weld seam - all in accordance with API 5L.

(c) Radiographic Inspection

As an alternative to (b) above, 20% of all longitudinal or spiral welds on straight pipe, and up to 100% of all butt-welds on straight pipes and up to 100% of all welds for pipe specials shall be checked radio graphically in accordance with API 5L.

(d) Hydrostatic Testing

All pipes and pipe specials shall be subjected to hydrostatic testing at a test pressure determined from the following formula:-

$$P = \frac{1500\ Yt}{D}$$

Where P = Hydrostatic test pressure in kPa
Y = Minimum Yield stress of material in Mpa
t = Nominal wall thickness in mm
D = Nominal outside diameter in mm

All leaks on sweating shall be considered as defects.

(e) Visual Inspection of Linings and Coatings

Linings shall have a smooth glossy finish, free from ripples, runs, pinholes, bubbles, laminations, disbanding, fraying or other blemishes.

Coatings shall be free of crazing, laminations, disbanding, pinholes, craters, bridging across and weld beads, or any sign of physical damage and shall have an acceptable smooth finish.

(f) Holiday Testing of Linings and Coatings

The entire lining and coating of each pipe shall be tested by the Contractor to the Engineer's satisfaction with an approved holiday detector fitted with the following heads:

(i) For epoxy linings and coatings - with a wet sponge detector head.
(ii) For bitumen or coal tar linings and coatings - with a copper bristle search head.
(iii) For wrapped coatings - with a rolling ring detector around the pipe.

(g) Thickness of Linings and Coatings

The thickness of linings and coatings shall be measured by means of a magnetic or eddy current instrument suitable for measuring non-metallic films on curved magnetic surfaces.

(h) Delamination Test and Disbonded Areas

Refer to SANS 1178 Clauses 7.2.3 and 7.2.4.

M21.26.3 Destructive Tests

Destructive tests on steel pipes and specials shall be carried out in accordance with SANS 719 and SANS 1178.

M21.26.4 Testing and Inspection on Site

M21.26.4.1 Site Welding

The Contractor must appoint an inspector from a certified institution in accordance with SANS 044 Part V at his own cost. An incompetent inspector must be replaced by a competent person. A copy of all inspection reports must be provided at no cost to the Engineer.

Inspection and test of welds must be carried out in accordance with API Std 1104 chapter 5 and the standard required must be according to chapter 6. All results must be tabulated.

Radio graphical tests in accordance with chapter 8 of above specification must be carried out. The numbers of welds of each welder that must be tested are: the first three joints, then every third joint to a total of 6 joints and then one out of every 10 joints. Should one joint fail the prescribed tests, the above procedure must be repeated starting from the before last joint.

The Contractor must keep a complete record of the position of every radio graphical tested joint and provide a copy at no cost to the Engineer.

All joints, which fail the prescribed test of API Std 1104, must be repaired in accordance with chapter 7 of above specification.

M21.26.4.2 Linings and Coatings

Linings and coatings shall be visually inspected on Site prior and after installation for any sign of physical damage.

All repairs to linings and coatings undertaken on Site shall be to the Engineer's approval who also reserves the right to order pipes and pipe specials to be returned to the factory for repairs to linings and coatings.

For bitumen linings and coatings the following procedure shall be followed:-

Weld spatters must be removed and steel surfaces must be wire brushed to ST 3 of SIS 0559 and all dust must be removed. Damaged bitumen primers, bitumen and lime layers must be scraped and/or brushed until steel or good bitumen is reached to a point at least 100 mm from the point of repair.

Bitumen primer must be cold applied to steel and exposed bitumen surfaces and left to dry for at least 4 hours but not more than 4 days.

For the repair of linings bitumen applied hot in an acceptable manner shall be used.

One layer of warm bitumen to a thickness of 1.5 mm followed by two layers bitumen saturated glass fibre cloth applied by means of a warm iron to ensure complete affixion and bitumen saturation must be applied as wrapping. Above must be followed by one layer of 1 mm thick warm applied bitumen on one layer of white lime over the joint area. The thickness of the wrapping must be at least a thick as the original and edges must fit to the original protection.

Bitumen must be heated in closed kettles to a maximum of 235EC. Local overheating must be prevented by stirring.

M21.26.4.3 Hydrostatic Testing of Pipe Line

Pipe joints shall in general be left exposed until the pipeline has been successfully tested and passed by the Engineer. All open excavations at joints shall be adequately and safely protected. Should the Engineer order any joints to be backfilled prior to testing, the responsibility for re-exposing the joints for the purpose of repair of leaks after testing shall be entirely the Contractor's own and he shall not be entitled to extra payment for such work.

The Contractor shall provide and maintain in good condition the equipment necessary to carry out the test. Where temporary pumping equipment is used for testing, the equipment shall consist of a force pump with the suction end in a suitable container of water, and connected to the pipe line by means of high pressure hosing in good condition and/or piping and all the necessary flanges, connections, couplings, etc. and a pressure gauge suitably calibrated and in good condition. The equipment and method of assembly for testing shall be subject to the approval of the Engineer.

The entire pipe line or portion of the pipe line between closed valves and/or blank flanges mat be tested at any one time provided that no section of the pipe line is subject to a higher pressure than one and a half times the working pressure for the particular class of pipe and fitting.

Prior to commencing the test the Contractor may, if he so desires, keep the pipeline full of water for as long a period as he considers necessary. The Contractor shall, at least 14 days prior to the first test being carried out, submit full details of the procedure he intends to follow, to the Engineer for approval.

For the purpose of the test the pipeline shall be filled with water in such a manner that no shock

is created or air trapped in the portion to be tested.

Once the pipe line is completely full of water, the pressure shall be brought up to one and a half times the maximum working pressure for all parts of the portion of pipe line under test as the water level in the container at the suction end of the pump noted. The initial application of the test pressure shall be done in the presence of the Engineer.

The pressure shall be maintained at the test level for 4 hours.

The quantity of water which has to be added to the container at the suction end of the pump during the 4 hours that the pipe line is under test in order to bring the water level back to the initial level at the start of the test, shall be carefully recorded. No water may be added to the container except in the presence of the Engineer.

Should the quantity of water thus added not exceed the following limit, the pipeline shall be deemed to be successfully tested.

Limit of leakage permitted over 4 hours:-

(a) For pipeline with flexible joints

50 ml per 10 mm of pipe diameter per 1 000 m of pipe length per 10 m maximum test head for the portion of pipeline tested. All joints must be inspected while the test is in progress to ensure that there are no visible leaks.

(b) For pipeline with welded joints

10 ml per 10 mm pipe diameter per 1 000 m of pipe length per 10 m maximum test head for the portion of pipeline tested. Should the leakage be more than 3 l/km of pipe tested, the Contractor must prove that no single leak exceeds 0,2 l in 4 hours.

M21.26.5 Other Pipe Materials

Visual inspections and hydrostatic tests shall be carried out on Site as described for steel pipes. Factory inspections and tests shall be as specified in the relevant SANS Specification for the pipe material concerned.

M21.27 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete pipework system installation as specified. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery and installation / commissioning of the equipment.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of drawings and instructions for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required for the proper installation to enable the system as described to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M26: MECHANICAL DOSING PUMPS

4	2013-10-23	General update and re-issued	J Ritchie	
3	2012-07-30	General update and re-issue	B Van Den Berg	
2	2010-02-16	General review	J Ritchie	
1	2009-05-12	Review of Mechanical / Electrical and Control / Instrumentation Standards, plus New Design Guidance		
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M19: DOSING PUMPS

CONTENTS

M26.1 SCOPE 2

M26.2 INTERPRETATIONS 2
M26.2.1 Abbreviations 2
M26.2.2 Standards 2
M26.2.3 General Requirements 3

M26.3 DOSING PUMPS 3
M26.3.1 General Design Parameters 3
M26.3.2 General 3
M26.3.3 Design Parameters 3
M26.3.4 Welds and fasteners 4

M26.4 DOSING PUMP PARAMETERS 4
M26.4.1 Diaphragms 4
M26.4.2 Drive Unit 4
M26.4.3 Motor 4
M26.4.4 Gearbox 4
M26.4.5 Pump Head and Valves 4
M26.5 Pipes 4
M26.6 Pulsation Dampeners 5

M26.7 AREA AROUND CHEMICAL DOSING PUMPS 5

M26.8 TRANSFER POLYELECTROLYTE PUMP 5

M26.9 PIPING FOR TRANSFER OF CHEMICALS 5

M26.10 PRESSURE GAUGES 5

M26.11 PIPEWORK 6

M26.12 CORROSION PROTECTION 6

M26.13 COLOUR CODES 6

M26.14 TESTING 6
M26.14.1 Works Testing 6

M26.15 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 6

M26.1 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of Dosing Pumps. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Project Specification

M26.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M26.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M26.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the dosing pumps shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
SANS 1044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10102-4	:	Selection of pipes for buried pipelines Part 1: General Provisions
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts
SANS 1123	:	Pipe Flanges

BS 4999	:	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for standard dimensions
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surface)
BS 5316 Part 2	:	Pump test codes

M26.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M20: Particular Specification for Valves

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion protection

M26.3 DOSING PUMPS

M26.3.1 General Design Parameters

Dosing pumps shall be designed such that the following requirements are met:-

- To facilitate manufacture, inspection, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs,
- To ensure safe and satisfactory operation and an acceptable life expectation under the ambient conditions prevailing at the Site,
- To prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion due to temperature changes.
- To keep maintenance costs to a minimum,
- To comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety as well as the prevention of water and air pollution,
- To satisfy any specific requirement contained in the statutory codes and legislation, and
- To be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under specified design conditions.

M26.3.2 General

This Contract calls for the supply, delivery, installation and commissioning of ferric chloride, ammonium bromide, chlorine and polymer dosing pumps. The pumps shall be utilised for dewatering, phosphate removal and to reduce BOD as well as removing heavy metals, larvae eggs, pathogenic content, suspended solids and colloidal content.

The mechanical equipment to be supplied under this Contract shall be installed, tested and commissioned on concrete structures, constructed by others, to the dimensions indicated on the construction detail drawings.

Any handling of ferric chloride, chlorine, polymer and ammonium bromide shall be done in accordance with the safety rules and regulations as stipulated per chemical.

The flow rate shall be controlled by setting the dosing pump speed to obtain the desired flow.

M26.3.3 Design Parameters

Double diaphragm dosing, self-priming pumps shall be used to dose the reactor with ferric chloride, chlorine, polymer and ammonium bromide. The speed of the pumps shall not exceed 800 rpm. The dosing rate of the pumps shall be 0.5 l/s at 6m or as specified.

M26.3.4 Welds and fasteners

All flanges, bolts, nuts and other steel components are to be galvanized or 304 or 316 SS.

M26.4 DOSING PUMP PARAMETERS

The flow rate of the ferric chloride, chlorine, polymer and ammonium bromide shall be controlled by setting the dosing pump speed to obtain the desired flow. Provision shall be made to lock a setting once selected to the sludge flow rate to achieve a constant ferric chloride, polymer and ammonium bromide to sludge volume ratio. The dosing system shall be integrated into the SCADA system.

M26.4.1 Diaphragms

The pump diaphragms shall & seals be manufactured from a material that has excellent resistance to aggressive fuels and chemicals and cuts, such as Teflon (PTFE) and Fluoro-elastomer/viton (FPM).

M26.4.2 Drive Unit

The drive unit consists of a motor coupled to a stroke mechanism which shall be housed in cast iron. It shall be manufactured from a material that can withstand extreme operating conditions and corrosive chemicals such as cast iron.

M26.4.3 Motor

The motor shall be able to withstand the dosing rate of the pump. The motor shall be electrically driven and shall be directly coupled to the pump. Refer E01: Volume E01: Particular Specification for electric motors.

The housing shall be manufactured from corrosion resistant and durable material.

M26.4.4 Gearbox

Refer M08: Volume M08: Particular Specification for Mechanical Gearboxes.

M26.4.5 Pump Head and Valves

The pump head, pressure valve and suction valve shall be manufactured from highly non-reactive polymer such as Polyvinylidene Fluoride (PVDF) and PVC. The pressure relief discharge shall be piped back to the storage tank on the suction side of the pumps.

The positive displacement pump shall be protected from excess discharge pressure by means of a spring loaded relief valve or by other proprietary safety equipment.

All relief valves shall be positively locked at the pressure setting and protected against accidental adjustment by wiring or other obvious suitable means. All relief valves shall be constructed in such a way that the pressure setting is preserved when the valve is dismantled for inspection. Refer to particular Specification M20: Volume 20 for detail on valves.

M26.5 Pipes

Each dosing line is to be fitted with a flow indicator of flow range 0 to 1.0 l/s.

Bends and branches shall provide non-turbulent flow conditions and the layout of the pipe work shall be such as to facilitate dismantling and inspection.

Plastic pipes with glass fibre reinforcement or PVC lining shall be used to transport the ferric chloride, chlorine and ammonium bromide. Polyelectrolytes shall be transported in stainless steel pipes. Refer to Particular Specification PMP for a detailed specification on pipes.

The pipes are to be properly supported and arranged so that all the stresses created in the pipeline by static and dynamic forces will be taken up by suitable anchors.

Where specific size is not given, pipework shall be sized so as to limit the maximum flow velocities to 1.5 m/s on the suction and 2 m/s on the delivery pipework. Refer to M21: Volume M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework for a detailed specification on pipes.

M26.6 Pulsation Dampeners

Where not included in the pump specifications, pulsation dampeners shall be included in all dosing pipework. This item shall be included under the quotation for pipework.

M26.7 AREA AROUND CHEMICAL DOSING PUMPS

This area is subject to spillage of chemical solution due to leaking glands, cleaning of filters, etc. the area around the chemical dosing tanks. The area will be delineated as indicated on the drawings by building a concrete plinth around it.

M26.8 TRANSFER POLYELECTROLYTE PUMP

The chemical transfer pumps that will deliver the chemicals from the storage facility shall be centrifugal pumps lined with acid resistant material and adequately protected internally. The pumps must be self priming and shall be seal less plastic pumps or equivalent, with a throttling valve.

The lined acid material shall be a thermoplastic layer moulded onto the pump housing. The transfer rate of the pumps shall be 8 l/s at 6m or as specified. The speed of the pumps shall not exceed 800 rpm.

Refer to Mechanical Specification M18: Volume M18: Centrifugal Pumps.

M26.9 PIPING FOR TRANSFER OF CHEMICALS

- All piping to be used for the transfer of concentrated or diluted chemicals shall be either rigid uPVC or rubber suitable for handling highly corrosive suspensions. The diameter of pipes shall be as indicated on the drawings.
- All piping to be used for potable water in the buildings and surrounding area shall be of stainless steel.
- All plastic piping running along walls or ceilings shall be supported continuously, for example in suitably protected lightweight metal channels.

M26.10 PRESSURE GAUGES

Pressure gauges shall be fitted with an isolating cock, shall be vibration and shock resistant and shall be calibrated to read with an accuracy of ±1% of the indicated pressure. Three 20mm minimum diameter ball valves shall be employed to zero the gauge, to isolate it and to vent to atmosphere. A chemical seal shall be used to insulate the gauge from the media being measured.

The faceplate diameters of the pressure gauges shall be at least 100 mm. The gauges shall indicate the water pressure in kilopascal and shall have a range of a maximum of 50% higher than the normal maximum working pressure. All gauge glass must conform to internationally recognize standards. These standards include DIN 7081, BS 3463 and JIS B 8211.

The pipe socket requirements shall be included.

Pressure gauges are to be accompanied with calibration certificates.

M26.11 PIPEWORK

The following items shall be supplied and installed by the contractor:-

(1) The dosing pump pipework

(2) The storage tank pipework

(3) The transfer pump pipework

The pipework shall be manufactured from PVC unless specified otherwise in the project specification.

M26.12 CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M26.13 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01: Colour Coding.

M26.14 TESTING

M26.14.1 Works Testing

Before delivery of the pumps a works test, to be witnessed by the Engineer or his representative, is to be carried out to the approval of the Engineer. The motors to be supplied with the pumps shall be used in the tests.

During the test of the pumps careful records are to be kept of the power consumed, the quantity delivered and the pumping head. From these records the capacities and efficiencies of the plant shall be calculated to determine whether they are in compliance with the guaranteed figures submitted by the Contractor.

The Contractor shall be responsible for the costs incurred in works testing and shall be included in the tendered price.

M26.15 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commission as well as per installation point. The respective tender rates shall cover all costs from supply to commission of each pump but excluding the electrical power supply and electrical cable connection.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg

17 Harrison Street Johannesburg Water Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400

Johannesburg PO Box 61542 Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M27 – DISINFECTION SYSTEM

2	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
1	2012-07-30	Issued	J Ritchie	
0	2012-04-30	Draft for Comments	J Ritchie	
Rev	Date	Description	Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership	Signature: Approval from JHB Water

Table of Contents

M27.1 SCOPE 3
M27.2 INTERPRETATIONS 3
M27.2.1 Abbreviations 3
M27.2.2 Standards 3
M27.2.3 General Requirements 3
M27.3 Disinfection 4
M27.3.1 Treatment objective and goal 4
M27.3.2 Application 4
M27.3.3 Basis of Design 4
M27.3.4 Operational Requirements 4
M27.3.4.1 Chemical Receiving / Settling Tank: 4
M27.3.4.2 Chemical Storage Tanks: 5
M27.3.4.3 Chemical scale in the system: 6
M27.3.4.4 Chemical Dosing Pumps 6
M27.3.4.4 Contact Tank 7
M27.4 Design Criteria 7
M27.5 Materials of construction 7
M27.6 Process control approach 8
M27.6.1 Balanced Flow Conditions 8
M27.6.2 Unbalanced flow conditions 8
M27.7 Health & Safety 8
M27.8 INFORMATION REQUIRED 8
M27.8.1 Manufacturing Drawings 8
M27.8.2 As Built Drawings 9
M27.8.3 Tools 9
M27.9 TESTING/COMMISSIONING 9
M27.9.1 Preliminary test 9
M27.9.2 Acceptance test 9
M27.10 QUALITY MANAGEMENT 9

M27.11 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 9

M27.11.1 General 9

M27.11.2 Testing 10

M27.1 SCOPE

This Specification covers the design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, testing and commissioning of equipment for the handling, storage, and dosing of Di Basic Filtrate (DBF- a by-product of HTH manufacture) wastewater treatment processes.

This Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Scope of Works. Clarifications to this specification are set out in the Scope of Works, which shall precede this specification in the Contract Document.

M27.2 INTERPRETATIONS

The following Interpretations relating to this specification, shall form part of the Contract Document:

M27.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M27.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the dosing of chemicals shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery

M27.2.3 General Requirements

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M20: Particular Specification for Valves
M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework
M26: Particular Specification for Dosing Pumps
G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes
G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion protection

M27.3 DISINFECTION

M27.3.1 Treatment objective and goal

The addition of a disinfecting chemical to the effluent from the secondary clarification tanks and any by-pass streams to reduce the effluent *e coli* count to below the maximum count allowed in the discharge licence while not exceeding the maximum allowable free chlorine residual specified in the licence before discharge to the receiving waters.

M27.3.2 Application

Placement in process chain:

After the secondary clarification tanks, Before the Final effluent outfall

M27.3.3 Basis of Design

The disinfection facility shall consist of:

- A chemical receiving
- Chemical storage
- Chemical dosing and
- A disinfection contact tank.

The system shall be suitable for dosing Di Basic Filtrate (DBF- a by-product of HTH manufacture) as the disinfecting chemical.

This specification deals with the requirements for chemical storage/receiving and dosing system.

The disinfection contact tank falls part of a separate specification.

Design Dosing Rate

The installation shall be capable of dosing a variable quantity of disinfecting chemical into the effluent with a maximum dosing rate of not less than 3mg/ℓ as chlorine equivalent and a maximum dosing rate of 10mg/ℓ as chlorine equivalent at average dry weather flow (ADWF).
Typical dosing rate range for a solution with 4%-6% available chlorine will be between 55 and 75 kg of DBF solution per Ml of flow to be disinfected.

M27.3.4 Operational Requirements

A typical DBF dosing plant is shown in **Error! Reference source not found.** for existing installations as well as for retrofitting a settling tank to existing DBF installations.

M27.3.4.1 Chemical Receiving / Settling Tank:

The chemical receiving / settling tank shall comply with the following:

- The chemical off-loading point shall be provided with a chemical coupling in accordance with the chemical suppliers' requirements.
- The chemical shall be able to be delivered into a receiving / settling tank sized to handle one tanker load and will have a minimum volume of 30m3.
- A receiving / settling tank shall be provided ahead of the storage tanks to remove settleable solids from the delivered product before the product enters the storage tanks.
- The receiving / settling tank must be circular in plan so as to form a cylindrical shape at the top and a conical shape toward the bottom as shown in Figure 2.
- One receiving / settling tank shall be provided
- The receiving / settling tank shall be located in a separate bunded area which shall also serve as a holding tank for sludge discharged from the tank. The bunded area shall be constructed of concrete (by others) and the floor shall be sloped to a sump closest to the tanker discharge point from which sludge can be removed from the tank.
- The receiving / settling tank shall be mounted at a height that allows the settled DBF solution to gravitate into the storage tanks as shown in Figure 2**Error! Reference source not found.**The receiving / settling tank shall be fitted with a valve 200mm diameter outlet at the bottom of the conical section to allow controlled withdrawal of sludge from the tank. The height of the sludge withdrawal pipe above the floor of the bunded area shall be such that sludge from the tank can be discharged directly into 25l containers.

- The receiving / settling tank shall be manufactured from GRP and painted externally as further protection against UV rays.
- The volume of the receiving / settling tank and the bunded area shall be displayed on a clearly visible location at the installation.
- A 380 volt power point shall be provided at the off-loading point

M27.3.4.2 Chemical Storage Tanks:

The Chemical storage tanks installation shall comply with the following:

- The chemical storage tanks must be circular in plan so as to form a cylindrical shape as shown in Figure 2
- The chemical storage tanks shall be fitted with a valve 200mm diameter outlet at floor level to allow the removal of accumulated sediment from the tanks.
- The chemical storage tanks shall be fitted with a valve outlet not less than 200mm above the bottom of the tank to allow the withdrawal of DBF solution..
- The chemical storage tanks shall be located in a bunded area which shall also serve as a holding tank for sludge discharged from the tanks. The bunded area shall be constructed of concrete (by others) and the floor shall be sloped to a sump closest to the tanker discharge point from which sludge can be removed from the tank.

- The chemical storage tanks and the settling tank shall be fitted with a cover. A hatch with cover shall be provided in the tank cover to allow entry into the tanks.
- The chemical storage tanks and settling tank shall be provided with a high level overflow that discharges just above the floor of the bunded area.
- The chemical storage tanks shall be cross-connected by pipes at one third of their. The number and volume of the storage tanks shall be as specified in the project specific specification.
- Where possible the chemical storage tanks shall be placed in a straight line
- One of the chemical storage tanks (except the first one) shall be fitted with an ultrasonic level monitoring sensor and for each storage tank they shall be fitted with flooded sight glass with isolating valves where scale build up is likely to negate these visual methods, alternate sensors should be provided.
- The chemical storage tanks shall be manufactured from GRP and painted externally as further protection against UV rays.
- All spills within the bunded areas shall drain to the contact tank or effluent channel.
- A foot operated drench shower and eye wash facility shall be provided in close proximity to the installation.

M27.3.4.3 Chemical scale in the system:

The following measures shall be taken to mitigate against the build-up of chemical scale in the system:

- Connections shall be provided on the inlet manifold of the dosing pumps to permit them to be flushed with effluent.
- The delivery pipe to the dosing point shall be kept as short as possible, shall be constructed of HDPE and shall be installed in a duct to facilitate the periodic replacement of the pipe.
- No chemical dispersion pipe shall be provided at the point of delivery and the disinfectant shall be discharged directly into an area of high mixing energy to achieve blending of the final effluent with the disinfectant.

M27.3.4.4 Chemical Dosing Pumps

An acid washing system shall be provided so that the pipework and associated fittings can be periodically flushed with acid to remove scale build up.

- The dosing pumps and associated pipework and fittings shall be located within a bunded area to contain chemical spills. There should be a standby pump with associated pipework and fittings.
- Dosing pumps shall be of the hose peristaltic type with variable speed drives. At least one standby pump must be provided.
- The variable speed dosing pumps shall be capable of dosing over a wide range and shall have sufficient capacity to cater for the design hydraulic capacity of the wastewater treatment plant for the design horizon.
- The dosing pumps shall be located outside of the bunded storage area.

- The dosing pump installation shall be provided with an integral calibration flask/tube.
- The delivery pipe to the dosing point shall be fitted with a magnetic type flow meter with bypass. A pulsation dampener should be located before the meter.
- The installation shall be provided with connections to the effluent reticulation system to allow the flushing out of the pipework and pumps, the cleaning of the storage tanks and the washing down of spills in the bunded areas.
- The dosing pump installation shall be provided with a manual sampling point
- Where possible a bypass shall be provided around the dosing pumps to allow the disinfectant to be dosed under gravity in the event of a power failure. The bypass shall include the integral calibration flask/tube

M27.3.4.4 Contact Tank

The contact tank will be constructed in concrete (by others) and the following information is for information.

- The contact tank shall be sectionalized or when to be constructed in phases provided with bypass facilities to allow the tank or sections of the tank to be taken out of operation for cleaning.
- The floor of the tank shall be sloped and fitted with a channel to facilitate cleaning. Settled solids removal from the tank on cleaning shall be disposed of in conjunction with the waste activated sludge or to the “plant drain”. This may require the installation of a pump.
- An effluent supply with suitable take off points shall be provided at the contact tank to facilitate the cleaning of the tank.
- Where the relative levels permit, draw down facilities shall be provided to allow the contents of the tank or sections of the tank to be emptied for cleaning without the need for pumping
- The contact tank will be designed with an effective retention of 45 minutes at design flow (ADWF)

M27.4 DESIGN CRITERIA

The sizing of the chemical receiving tank shall be based on the following criteria:

- Each tanker load of DBF has a volume of 30m^3 and is offloaded in 40minutes.
- DBF has 4-6% available chlorine, a specific gravity of 1.2 and a pH of 11-12.
- Chemical storage volume 4 days (excluding the receiving tank) at average dosing rate.
- Where applicable, all pipes and cables shall be laid in ducts.

M27.5 MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION

Handrails	3CR12 stainless steel

Receiving/Settling tanks	GRP with UV protective coating (Polyethylene with reflective coating will be considered as an alternative)
Storage tanks	GRP with UV protective coating (Polyethylene with reflective coating will be considered as an alternative)
Pipes and associated fittings	uPVC, HDPE with welded joints
Valves	uPVC ball valves shall be used
Bunded areas	Reinforced concrete protected against corrosion (by others)
Contact tank	Reinforced concrete (by others)
Sluice gates	304 Stainless Steel
Structural steelwork	304 Stainless Steel

M27.6 PROCESS CONTROL APPROACH

The process control philosophy will be as specified in the project specific specifications. The two process flow conditions being practiced on the existing Waste Water Treatment plant sites are:

M27.6.1 Balanced Flow Conditions

Manual adjustment of the dosing rate by adjusting the setting of the VSD.

M27.6.2 Unbalanced flow conditions

The speed of the VSDs shall be controlled to provide a constant ratio between the effluent flow rate and the chemical dosing rate.

Where the maximum free chlorine residual must be controlled, a chlorine sensor shall be provided with a feed-back control to the VSD's to control the dosing rate of the disinfectant.

M27.7 HEALTH & SAFETY

Appropriate safety signage to be erected in the vicinity of the installation.

Particular attention shall be given to the training of maintenance and operational staff in the safe handling of DBF solution and DBF sludges.

M27.8 INFORMATION REQUIRED

M27.8.1 Manufacturing Drawings

The Contractor shall inform the Engineer prior to the manufacture of any piece of equipment of the availability of the relevant general arrangement drawings for inspection and approval by the Engineer to be made available at the Engineer's office.

The Contract will be deemed incomplete until the Contractor has made available these drawings to the Engineer, and they have been checked and approved.

M27.8.2 As Built Drawings

The Contractor shall provide 'To Scale' as built General Arrangement Drawings of all the relevant equipment. Such drawings shall be made available in a recognized electronic format such as AutoCAD.

M27.8.3 Tools

A wall mounted toolbox shall be provided and mounted as directed by the Engineer. It shall contain all tools required to service and maintain all the equipment provided.

M27.9 TESTING/COMMISSIONING

Two series of tests shall be conducted on the equipment, as specified hereunder.

M27.9.1 Preliminary test

Before delivery of the equipment is accepted, each item of mechanised equipment shall be tested, at the supplier's works, throughout the operating range using the chemicals which the equipment is required to dose.

Calibration curves to demonstrate compliance with the specification shall be plotted and submitted to the Engineer.

M27.9.2 Acceptance test

After installation of the equipment and before commissioning, each item of mechanised equipment shall be tested throughout its operating range and calibration curves shall be produced.

The calibration curves shall be incorporated into the operating and maintenance instructions.

M27.10 QUALITY MANAGEMENT

Quality management criticality categorization: Major.

M27.11 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

M27.11.1 General

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commission for each item of equipment as listed and priced only in the Schedule of Quantities. Payment will not be made for part supply of any listed item.

The respective tender item rates shall be deemed to cover all costs of equipment required within the scope of this Contract.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off-loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part

thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M27.11.2 Testing

The tendered sum shall cover the cost of all plant and personnel for conducting the testing, and in the case of the workshop and preliminary testing shall include the cost of any consumables. For the acceptance testing, the consumables will be provided for the initial test only, by the Employer.

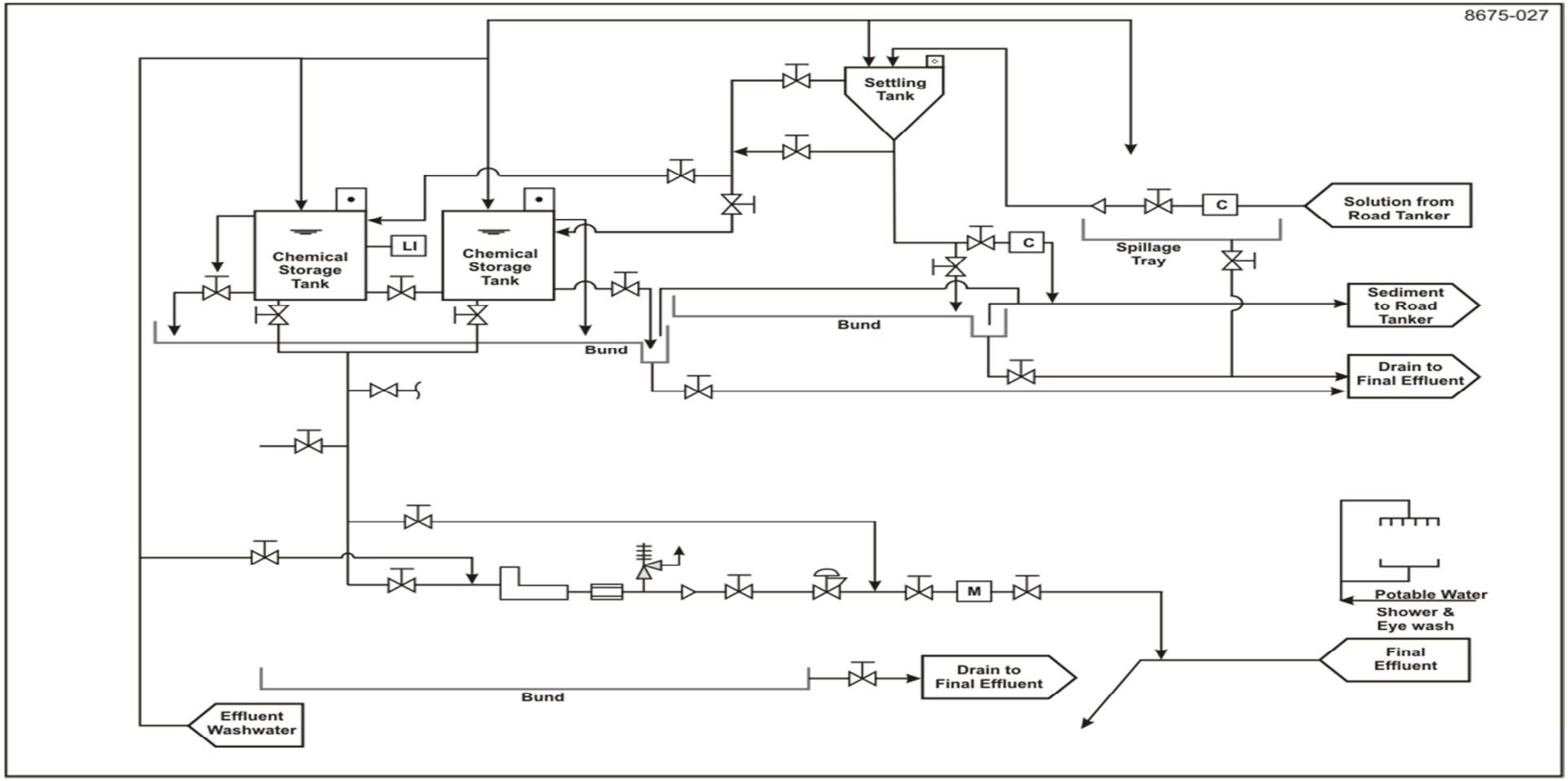


Figure 1: Typical DBF Dosing Plant

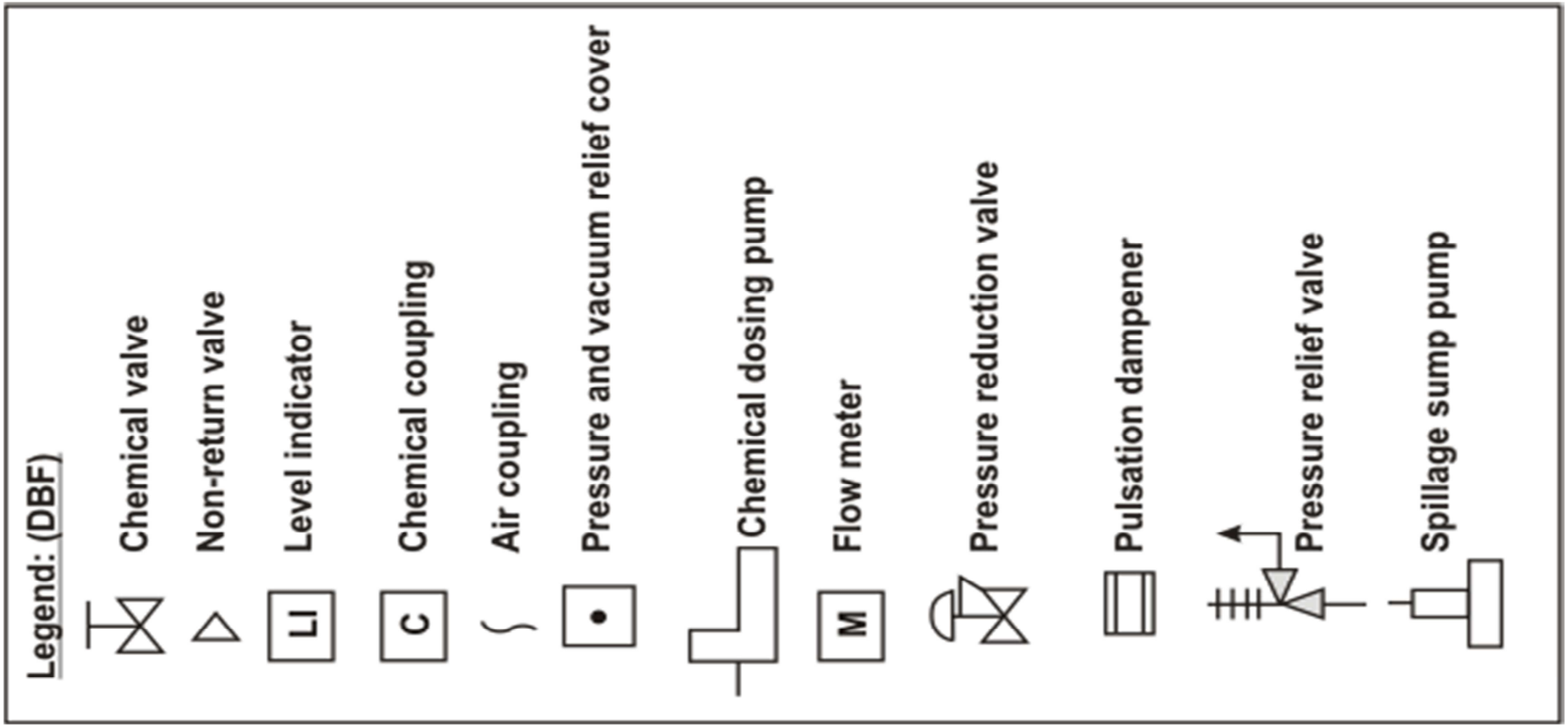


Figure 2A: Legend for Figure 1 - Typical DBF Dosing Plant

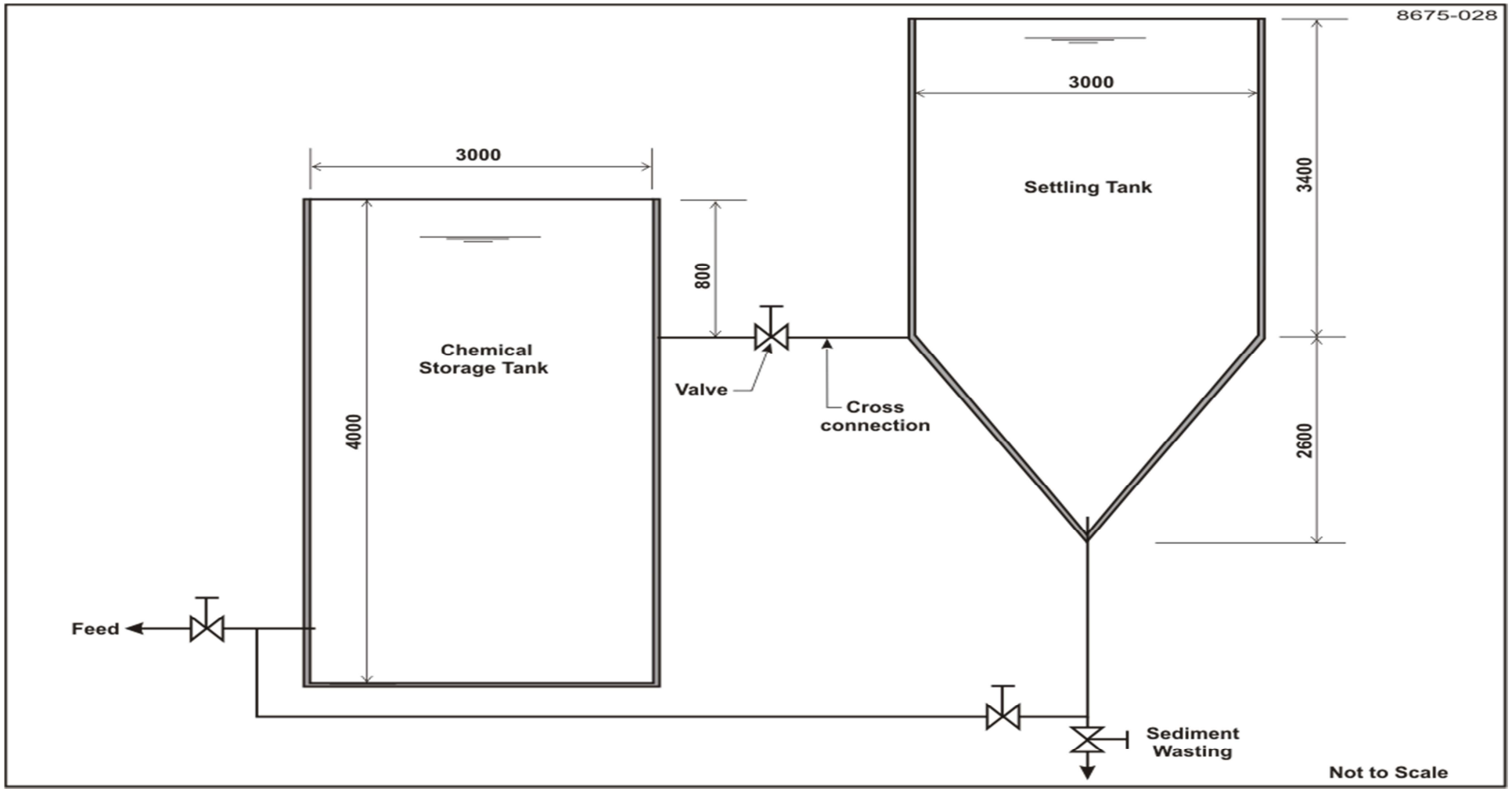


Figure 3: Settling and Storage Tank Installations

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M32: MECHANICAL FERRIC CHLORIDE HANDLING, STORAGE, AND DOSING EQUIPMENT

3	2013-10-23	Updated to suit revised design Guidance	J Ritchie	
2	2012-07-30	General update and re-issue	B Van Den Berg	
1	2010-02-17	First issue	J Ritchie	
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M32: FERRIC CHLORIDE HANDLING, STORAGE AND DOSING EQUIPMENT

CONTENTS

M32.1 SCOPE 2

M32.2 INTERPRETATIONS 2
M32.2.1 Abbreviations 2
M32.2.2 Standards 2
M32.2.3 General Requirements 2

M32.3 GENERAL 3
M32.3.1 General Design Parameters 3

M32.4 SUPPLY AND HANDLING 4
M32.4.1 Ferric Chloride 4

M32.5 LIQUID CHEMICAL STORAGE 4
M32.5.1 Bulk Storage Tanks for Chemicals Supplied in Liquid Form 4
M32.5.2 Storage Tank / Bund Area Pipework 5

M32.6 CHEMICAL PUMPS 6
M32.6.1 Corrosive Chemical Dosing Pumps 6
M32.6.2 Diaphragm Type Pumps 7
M32.6.3 Peristaltic Type Pumps 7
M32.6.4 Progressive Cavity Type Pumps 7

M32.7 DOSING OF CORROSIVE CHEMICALS 7
M32.7.1 Dosing Station Equipment 7
M32.7.2 Site Area Dosing Pipework (If Applicable) 8
M32.7.3 Pipework General 9

M32.8 SAFETY EQUIPMENT 9
M32.8.1 Safety Shower/eye bath 9
M32.8.2 Safety Signage 10

M32.9 DOSING CONTROL EQUIPMENT 10

M32.10 MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION & FINISH 11
M32.10.1 Materials of Construction (General) 11
M32.10.2 Materials of Construction 11

M32.11 INSTALLATION AND OPERATING REQUIREMENTS 11
M32.11.1 General 11
M32.11.2 Tools 11

M32.12 INFORMATION REQUIRED 11
M32.12.1 Manufacturing Drawings 11
M32.12.2 As Built Drawings 11

M32.13 TESTING/COMMISSIONING 11
M32.13.1 Preliminary Test 12
M32.13.2 Acceptance Test 12

M32.14 QUALITY MANAGEMENT 12

M32.15 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 12
M32.15.1 General 12
M32.15.2 Testing 12

M32.1 SCOPE

This Specification covers the design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, testing and commissioning of equipment for the handling, storage and dosing of Ferric Chloride [$FeCl_2$] for use in water and wastewater treatment processes.

This Specification shall be read in conjunction with the Scope of Works. Clarifications to this specification are set out in the Scope of Works, which shall precede this specification in the Contract Document.

The Ferric Chloride storage equipment shall be positioned within a concrete bunded area to be provided under a separate civil contract. The ferric chloride dosing equipment shall be positioned within a separate concrete bunded area to be provided under a separate civil contract. The delivery piping shall be surface run along the structure walls or in a conduit in specially prepared trenches.

The requirements set out herein are the minimum anticipated and the Contractor shall satisfy himself that the equipment offered is suitable in all respects for the duties specified in the Scope of Works.

The plant will operate either manually or automatically on a supply and demand basis, controlled from instrumentation / electrical equipment as specified in the Scope of Works.

M32.2 INTERPRETATIONS

The following Interpretations relating to this specification, shall form part of the Contract Document:

M32.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M32.2.2 Standards

All design standards for the dosing of chemicals shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SNAS 310-1:2007	:	Storage tank facilities for hazardous chemicals Part 1

M32.2.3 General Requirements

This specification shall be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

M20: Particular Specification for Valves

M21: Particular Specification for Pressure Pipework

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

Automation and Control Design Standards Volume 8: Flow Measurement

Automation and Control Design Standards Volume 9: Level Measurement

Automation and Control Design Standards Volume 21 – Load Cells

M32.3 GENERAL

M32.3.1 General Design Parameters

The following requirements shall be met :-

(a) The equipment shall be designed to facilitate efficient manufacture, inspection, transport, installation, maintenance, cleaning and repairs.

(b) The equipment shall be designed to ensure safe and satisfactory operation for a life expectancy of at least 12 years under the conditions prevailing at the Site.

(c) The equipment shall be designed to prevent undue stresses being produced by expansion and contraction due to temperature change, and other local natural and manmade conditions.

(d) The equipment shall be designed to keep maintenance costs to a minimum.

(e) The equipment shall comply with the legal requirements in respect of safety and the prevention of environmental pollution.

(f) The equipment shall satisfy any specific requirement contained in the relevant statutory codes and legislation.

(g) The equipment shall be suitable for operation 365 days per year, 24 hours per day under the specified design conditions.

(h) All equipment shall be provided to provide a fully operational plant within the scope of the Contract.

(i) All materials from which the equipment is manufactured shall be compatible with the chemicals used and suitable for the intended duty and service conditions.

(j) All equipment shall be suitably treated and protected from corrosion and erosion.

(k) After approval by the Engineer, at the time of the award of the Contract, the information stated in the Data Sheets shall be fully complied with.

(l) All electrical equipment, forming part of the specified equipment, shall be sealed against penetration by the chemicals in use, which may be airborne in dust form, and be also accessible for repair and maintenance.

M32.4 SUPPLY AND HANDLING

M32.4.1 Ferric Chloride

Ferric Chloride is normally supplied to site by tanker in liquid form, and will be pumped from the tanker through a flexible hose directly to the site storage tank using a pump on the tanker.

The ferric chloride solution to be used will conform to the following specification.

(a) Chemical Composition – $FeCl_3 + H_2O$.

(b) Concentration – 40% to 45% by mass.

(c) Specific Gravity – Approximately 1.45 at 20°C.

It should be noted that ferric chloride is considered to be a hazardous and corrosive substance. It is a strong irritant to the skin and other tissue and can cause burns. Dilution with water in the open can cause poisonous fumes to be given off and heat can be generated. It is rated to have a U.N. Hazard Code to Class 8 - UN No. 2582.

M32.5 LIQUID CHEMICAL STORAGE

M32.5.1 Bulk Storage Tanks for Chemicals Supplied in Liquid Form

Each storage tank shall be constructed as a vertical cylinder in Fibre Reinforced Plastic (FRP). It shall be designed and manufactured in accordance with BS 4994 Class II. Rotary Moulded Polyethylene tanks will not be considered for Ferric Chloride and for individual tank capacities above 15 m^3.

The base of the tank shall be flat, suitable for bedding onto the flat concrete plinth using an approved bedding material of sand and bitumen mixture, which will distribute the load on the tank base and minimize any stress concentrations. At least three lugs positioned slightly below the domed roof and equally around the tank shall be bonded as part of the tank construction and shall incorporate a hole in each for securing the tank with stainless steel wire rope and fittings complete with tensioning turn buckles to tie the tank down to the top of the bund walls using 316 S.S. anchor bolts. The anchor lugs shall be strong enough to prevent the wind displacing the tank in any way when empty or partially empty.

When the tank is contained within a building, the wire ropes and fittings will not be required.

The roof of the tank shall be domed such that it does not deflect when a load of 150 Kg is imposed vertically upon it.

At low temperatures some liquid chemicals becomes viscous. In such cases and in climates where the average daily temperature drops below 5°C the tank shall be fitted with trace heating elements and lagged.

The colour of the tank shall be mid to dark green.

The following tank penetrations shall be provided.

(a) A flanged access manhole at least 450 mm nominal bore on a vertical axis in the domed

roof. The manhole shall be fitted with a suitable weatherproof cover. On tanks with a total capacity of more than 5.0 m^3 a flanged manhole at least 450 mm nominal bore shall be incorporated in the side of the cylindrical section approximately 1,0 m above floor level. The flanged manhole shall be fitted with an F.R.P. blank flange.

(b) A flanged filling nozzle at least 80 mm nominal bore on a vertical axis shall be incorporated in the domed roof close to the outer knuckle radius.

(c) A flanged vent nozzle at least 80 mm nominal bore on a vertical axis shall be incorporated in the domed roof close to, or on the centre axis. The nozzle shall be fitted with rainproof cover.

(d) A flanged overflow nozzle at least 80 mm nominal bore on a horizontal axis shall be incorporated in the cylindrical section close to the knuckle radius of the domed roof.

(e) A flanged drain nozzle at least 80 mm nominal bore on a horizontal axis shall be incorporated close to the base of the tank. The nozzle shall extend beyond the concrete plinth. The drain nozzle shall be positioned directly below (on the same orientation) as the overflow nozzle.

(f) A flanged outlet nozzle at least 80 mm nominal bore on a horizontal axis shall be incorporated approximately 200 mm above the base of the tank.

(g) Two flanged nozzles at least 50 mm nominal bore for the installation of a vertical sight glass shall be positioned on a horizontal axis, one close to the domed roof and one 200 mm above the base.

(h) If Ultrasonic Level Sensing in the storage tanks is specified in the Scope of Works, a 100 mm nominal bore nozzle shall be incorporated on a vertical axis in the domed roof close to the centre.

All tank penetration nozzles shall be suitably reinforced to ensure that fractures or cracking cannot occur at the nozzle / tank joint.

All flanges moulded in FRP shall be drilled or equivalent to SABS 1123 Table 1000/3. Mild Steel backing flanges will not be acceptable on the tank nozzles.

Any reinforcing shall be of Stainless Steel and shall be completely covered and sealed with F.R.P.

The orientation of all the manholes and nozzles shall be to suit the installation and shall be to the approval of the Engineer.

Tanks having a capacity of over 25 m^3 shall incorporate a bolt on vertical ladder.

The ladder shall extend, from 200 mm above the tank base, to the domed roof where there shall be a small grating type platform to access the manhole. The ladder shall be in accordance with the OSHA requirements, and shall incorporate a cage and handrails at the platform. The ladder, cage, platform and hand railing shall be constructed from Fibre Reinforced Plastic (any other material shall be approved by the engineer) when used with Ferric Chloride.

The ladder shall be fitted with a lockable mechanism to prevent unauthorised access.

M32.5.2 Storage Tank / Bund Area Pipework

M32.5.2.1 Filling Pipe

A flanged pipe with a ‘U’ bend shall be connected to the flanged filling nozzle and rigidly fixed to the tank wall. The pipe shall terminate approximately 1000 mm above the tank base, or at the height of the bund wall, in a horizontal latitude with a flange, terminating approximately 100 mm

outside of the bund wall. A lockable manually operated isolating valve shall be connected to the flange with a suitable connector for connecting the supply tanker filling hose if required by the relevant liquid chemical supplier. The pipe shall be securely fixed to the bund wall with a pipe bracket consisting of a saddle and clamp manufactured from a material resistant to ferric chloride and approved by the engineer.

The height of the flanged filing nozzle will be such that it will not result in any risk of danger to the operate when connecting and disconnecting the flexible hose. It is estimated that a height for the flange filling nozzle should be around waist height to mitigate splashing to the face area.

M32.5.2.2 Overflow Pipe

A flanged pipe with an elbow shall be connected to the flanged overflow nozzle and rigidly fixed to the tank wall. The pipe shall terminate in a horizontal latitude just above the tank floor level. This pipe may be fixed to the drain pipe, beyond the drain valve for rigidity.

M32.5.2.3 Drain

A drain valve shall be fitted to the drain nozzle and fitted with a stainless steel padlock to prevent unauthorised opening.

M32.5.2.4 Outlet Pipe

A ball type outlet isolating valve shall be fitted to the outlet nozzle and from there piping shall lead through the dividing bund wall to the dosing pump bund area. Two unions shall be fitted in this pipe, one close to the valve and one close to the division wall.

M32.5.2.5 Water Flushing Pipe

When specified in the Scope of Works a water flushing system shall be provided.

The recycled final effluent flushing connection shall be fitted to the outlet pipe from each storage tank (as a 'T'). An isolating valve shall be fitted on all sides of the 'T' such that when required water can be flushed to the dosing pump assembly or also back into the storage tank. The final effluent supply pipe shall incorporate a non-return valve, such that should the final effluent pressure reduce in the event of a pipeline repair, the chemical cannot enter the final effluent distribution main. The non-return valve shall be manufactured from the relevant resistant plastic. The final effluent supply line up to the outside of the bund wall may be supplied in galvanised steel. A length of 10 m of this piping shall be allowed for outside the bund wall.

Where potable water is supplied instead of recycled final effluent then a potable water breaker tank is to be provided with the necessary booster pump for connection to the flushing system as detailed above.

M32.5.2.6 Sight Glass

A 32 mm outside diameter sight glass of clear polycarbonate shall be installed and connected between the upper and lower 50 mm nominal bore nozzles and a ball type isolating valve positioned at each nozzle to isolate the sight glass if required. The sight glass shall be supported to the cylindrical wall of the tank at no more than 1.0 m centres.

M32.6 CHEMICAL PUMPS

M32.6.1 Corrosive Chemical Dosing Pumps

Corrosive Chemicals such as Ferric Chloride shall be dosed using Diaphragm type pumps,

especially when high accuracy is required. For very large flows Peristaltic Pumps may be used, provided that all the pump parts are resistant to the chemical being pumped.

M32.6.2 Diaphragm Type Pumps

Diaphragm type dosing pumps shall be electric motor and gear driven.

The pump shall be driven through an oil filled gearbox and a spring loaded plunger with a support plate at the rear of the diaphragm. An eccentric cam system which actuates the plunger shall be manually adjustable to deliver from 0 to 100% of the design quantity of discharge.

The diaphragm chamber shall be designed such that in the event of a diaphragm rupture the pumped liquid cannot escape or enter the cam and gear mechanism of the pump and is drained away to a special chamber. The pump shall be designed in such a way that a leakage detector probe can be installed if so specified in the Project Specification or if required at a later date. The diaphragm and coating shall be completely resistant to the chemical concerned.

The diaphragm housing shall be manufactured from PVC or other suitable and resistant material. The diaphragm plunger shall be manufactured from stainless steel with the diaphragm support plate specially coated to resist any liquid, which could leak through the diaphragm in the event of a rupture.

Non-return valves shall be incorporated on the suction side and the delivery side of the pump. The valves shall be an integral part of the pump and of the double-ball type. The balls shall be manufactured from glass or ceramic, and the valve seats from PVC or other suitable and resistant material.

If automatic remote adjustment of the flow rate is specified, this shall be done using a VSD control unit for the pump motor.

M32.6.3 Peristaltic Type Pumps

Peristaltic type dosing pumps shall be electric motor and gear driven. The pump shall be driven through an oil filled gearbox and shall not run at more than 50% of its possible design speed. Variation of pumped flow shall be provided by varying the motor speed using a VSD control unit.

The pump casing shall be designed such that in the event of a tube rupture the pumped liquid cannot escape or enter the gear mechanism of the pump. The pump shall be designed in such a way that a leakage detector probe can be installed if so specified in the Project Specification or if required at a later date. An easily removable cover shall be incorporated on the casing of the pump such that the pump tube can be easily replaced. The tube and casing coating shall be completely resistant to the chemical concerned.

Variation of pumped flow shall be provided by varying the motor speed using a VSD control unit.

If peristaltic type pumps are used, then the back pressure valve may not be required.

M32.6.4 Progressive Cavity Type Pumps

Progressive Cavity type pumps with a rotating helix shall be 'V' belt or gearbox driven and all parts shall be fully corrosion resistant to the chemical being pumped. Variation of pumped flow shall be provided by varying the motor speed using a VSD control unit.

M32.7 DOSING OF CORROSIVE CHEMICALS

M32.7.1 Dosing Station Equipment

The following shall apply to equipment used for the dosing of ferric chloride and other chemicals

when diaphragm pumps are employed.

The pipework, valves and dosing pump assemblies situated in the separate bunded area shall consist of following equipment:

(a) The equipment shall be suitably fixed to a corrosion resistant mounting frame, which shall be located in an easily accessible position. Fittings shall be corrosion resistant, and plastic brackets and pipe clamps etc shall be employed. All fixing bolts and screws shall be manufactured from 316 stainless steel. All equipment including pumps, pipework and valves shall be factory assembled to the mounting frame, to ensure a high quality assembly.

(b) Two pump assemblies shall be provided (one installed and the other for storage).

(c) The valves, fittings and pump shall be arranged as shown on the P&ID.

(d) Isolating valves shall be of the 90° operation ball type.

(e) Dirt traps (or in line strainers) shall be complete with an easily removable element and incorporate a transparent casing so that the degree of blockage can be observed.

(f) Pulsation dampers shall have an FRP or other suitable plastic casing and incorporate a diaphragm which can be pressurised with compressed air from a car tyre pump.

(g) A swaged nozzle shall be fitted to the valve of each sampling point for the purposes of connecting a flexible hose.

(h) Flow monitoring tubes each with a transparent tube shall easily verify when a pump is in operation and working properly.

(i) If Magnetic Flow Meters with local indication are specified in the Project Specification, then calibration vessels and flow monitoring tubes in the supply lines will not be required.

(j) If dilution with potable water is required a solenoid valve and a non return valve shall be situated on the potable water line to dose clean water when the dosing pump is running and to prevent the possibility of contaminating the potable water line with the chemical. Ferric chloride should not be diluted, however a potable connection shall be provided for the flushing out of pipelines.

(k) A static inline mixer for mixing the dosing chemical and the dilution water if required.

(l) All dosing station pipework should be at least Class 16 Polypropylene (or PVC if agreed to by engineer) complete with union connectors, to enable easy removal of any pump, strainer, valve or other fitting as described above.

M32.7.2 Site Area Dosing Pipework (If Applicable)

The pipework, conduit / sleeving and valves from the dosing stations to the dosing points shall be as follows:

(a) All piping and sleeving shall be surface run along the sides or on the top of the structure concrete walls, or along the walkways. The piping and sleeving may be run at the sides of walkways, but shall not cross walking areas.

(b) Where piping must cross roadways or green areas, it shall be run through a duct comprising of 110 O.D. H.D.P.E. pipe, laid under the road or underground, and it shall be possible to remove the dosing pipe at a later date without digging up the road. Buried piping should be avoided wherever possible.

(c) Conduit / sleeving shall surround all straight lengths of Polypropylene or PVC feed piping, and shall extend to within 50 mm of the centre line of the relevant elbow, tee or valve. All sleeving shall be fixed to the concrete at no more than 1.5 m centres, using PVC brackets of the saddle and clamp type. Fixing shall be using approved plastic plugs (Fischer or equal) and 5,0 mm diameter, 316 Stainless Steel screws, which will extend at least 30 mm into the concrete. After installation the sleeving and brackets shall be lightly abraded with sand paper, and painted with an approved exterior PVA paint, colour light brown.

(d) Black H.D.P.E. feed piping shall also be sleeved as indicated above, or alternatively shall be laid in prepared concrete channels or corrosion resistant cable type trays.

(e) When dosed into a tank, the discharge feed pipe shall terminate such that the chemical cannot splash or be blown by the wind onto any concrete structures and cause corrosion.

(f) When dosed into a channel, the discharge feed pipe shall terminate with a spreader bar positioned over the entire width of the channel.

(g) When dosed into a pipeline, mixing shall be provided by a suitable, inline static type mixer.

(h) All isolating valves shall be positioned such that they can be operated easily and safely from walkways etc.

M32.7.3 Pipework General

All backing flanges shall be manufactured from 316 stainless steel and drilled to SABS 1123 Table 1000/3.

UPVC, which is brittle, particularly at low temperatures, shall not be used with hazardous chemicals.

UPVC and Polypropylene are susceptible to U.V. light and shall not be used in direct sunlight.

HDPE has good U.V. resistance, but has low rigidity and a high thermal movement. It shall therefore be supported at regular intervals, or run in other rigid conduit piping.

UPVC conduits shall be lightly abraded and painted with good quality PVA type paint.

Notwithstanding the above all pipework valves and fittings shall be constructed from Class 16 PVC, HDPE or Polypropylene resistant to the chemical concerned. No metallic parts shall be in normal contact with the chemical solution. The PVC or Polypropylene shall incorporate U.V. inhibitors and shall be resistant to direct sunlight.

All valves and fittings shall be of a high quality designed and proven for the application in which they are to be used.

All surface mounted pipe work shall be lagged with ferric chloride and water resistant lagging. The lagging shall be covered with at least 1.5 mm thick FRP cladding.

M32.8 SAFETY EQUIPMENT

The following safety equipment shall be provided for hazardous chemicals and when specified in the Scope of Works.

M32.8.1 Safety Shower/eye bath

Safety shower/eye bath unit shall be supplied and installed at the location specified in the Scope of Works. The shower/eye bath shall be of an SABS approved type suitable for use

where dangerous chemicals are in use and shall be constructed from 316 Stainless Steel or corrosion resistant, reinforced plastic. It shall be of the single column type, operated by standing upon a tilting foot stand to douse downwards and forwards, and also by pushing a lever to spray upwards to the hands and face. The sprayed liquid shall be collected in a concrete basin supplied by others, and which will incorporate a drain.

The water supply to the eye bath is to be by rigid pipe work and fittings, flexible plastic tubing shall not be acceptably.

The Contractor shall include for the supply and installation of 5.0 m of 25 N.B. Galvanised Steel feed piping and a 25 N.B. Isolating Valve of the 90 degree ball type in stainless steel.

M32.8.2 Safety Signage

A set of safety signage for each hazardous chemical specified in the Project Specification shall be supplied and fitted as follows:

(a) Two identical signs, each indicating both the Hazchem Code (2R) and the Substance Identity No. (1773).

(b) Two identical signs, each indicating the First Aid Requirements, in case of accidental contact with the Ferric Chloride solution.

(c) Two identical signs, each indicating '(THE RELEVANT CHEMICAL) – HAZARDOUS SUBSTANCE'.

(d) One Emergency Procedures Chart with emergency telephone numbers.

(e) One sign, indicating 'SAFETY SHOWER' for each shower proposed.

(f) Volume of each storage tank and bunded area shall be clearly displayed.

Signs items (a) to (d) shall measure at least 450 mm x 600 mm. The Safety Shower sign shall measure at least 300 mm x 500 mm.

All signs shall be manufactured from a strong UV resistant plastic material. When fixing to a flat wall, at least four 316 Stainless Steel screws and plastic plugs shall be used. Each Shower sign shall be bolted to a Stainless Steel or GRP plate, which in turn shall be fitted to the shower upright, using Stainless Steel 'U' bolts

Signs items (a) to (c) shall be to outside of the bund walls, such that when viewed onto any of the four corners of the bunded area, at least one of each of the above signs can be clearly seen.

Each Safety Shower sign shall be fitted to each shower upright approximately 1.5 m high.

If the dosing station is positioned remotely from the storage area, one additional set of signs will be required to be fitted in prominent positions, close to the dosing station.

Notwithstanding the above all signs shall be in accordance with the requirements of the Occupational Health and Safety Act.

Information on chemical classification and signs is available from - N.C.P.

M32.9 DOSING CONTROL EQUIPMENT

Unless otherwise specified in the Scope of Works the dosing control equipment will form part of a separate electrical / instrumentation contract. The Contractor shall ensure that the type of

instrumentation is provided to satisfactorily control the equipment in accordance with the specified requirements.

M32.10 MATERIALS OF CONSTRUCTION & FINISH

M32.10.1 Materials of Construction (General)

Water Supply Piping	304 Stainless steel
Piping (indoors)	HDPE
Piping (outside)	HDPE
Bolts & Nuts	304 Stainless Steel
Concrete Anchors	304 Stainless Steel

M32.10.2 Materials of Construction

Storage Tank	FRP
Ladder for Storage Tank	FRP
Hand Railing for Storage Tank	FRP
Electrical Enclosures	FRP
Cable Racks	FRP
Protective structure	FRP

M32.11 INSTALLATION AND OPERATING REQUIREMENTS

M32.11.1 General

The equipment shall operate as described in the Scope of Works, depending upon the chemical dosed and the particular installation.

Unless otherwise specified, equipment shall dose the amount of chemical automatically in accordance with the associated equipment demand. Only duty and standby equipment shall be selected manually.

M32.11.2 Tools

A wall mounted toolbox shall be provided and mounted as directed by the Engineer. It shall contain all tools required to service and maintain all the equipment provided.

M32.12 INFORMATION REQUIRED

M32.12.1 Manufacturing Drawings

The Contractor shall inform the Engineer prior to the manufacture of any piece of equipment of the availability of the General Arrangement drawings for inspection and approval by the Engineer to be made available at the Engineer's office. The Contract will be deemed incomplete until the Contractor has made available these drawings to the Engineer, and they have been checked and approved.

M32.12.2 As Built Drawings

The Contractor shall provide 'To Scale' As Built General Arrangement Drawings of all the relevant equipment. Such drawings shall be made available in a recognized electronic format such as AutoCAD.

M32.13 TESTING/COMMISSIONING

Two series of tests shall be conducted on the equipment, as specified hereunder.

M32.13.1 Preliminary Test

Before delivery of the equipment is accepted, each item of mechanised equipment shall be tested, at the supplier's works, throughout the operating range using the chemicals which the equipment is required to dose. Calibration curves to demonstrate compliance with the specification shall be plotted and submitted to the Engineer.

M32.13.2 Acceptance Test

After installation of the equipment and before commissioning, each item of mechanised equipment shall be tested throughout its operating range and calibration curves shall be produced. The calibration curves shall be incorporated into the operating and maintenance instructions.

M32.14 QUALITY MANAGEMENT

Quality management criticality categorization: Major.

M32.15 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

M32.15.1 General

Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply/delivery and installation/commission for each item of equipment as listed and priced only in the Schedule of Quantities. Payment will not be made for part supply of any listed item.

The respective tender item rates shall be deemed to cover all costs of equipment required within the scope of this Contract.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

M32.15.2 Testing

The tendered sum shall cover the cost of all plant and personnel for conducting the testing, and in the case of the workshop and preliminary testing shall include the cost of any consumables. For the acceptance testing, the consumables will be provided for the initial test only, by the Employer.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M33: MECHANICAL ELUTRIATION PUMPS

2	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
1	30/07/2012	General up Date and Reissue	J Richie	
0	03/11/2010	First Issue	J Ritchie	
Rev	**Date**	**Description**	**Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership**	**Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water**

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M32: ELUTRIATION PUMPS

CONTENTS

M33.0 SCOPE ..... - 3 -

M33.1 INTERPRETATIONS ..... - 3 -
M33.1.1 Abbreviations ..... - 3 -
M33.1.2 Standards ..... - 3 -
M33.1.3 General Requirements ..... - 4 -

M33.2 DESIGN PARAMETERS ..... - 4 -

M33.3 PUMPS ..... - 4 -
M33.3.1 Pump Casing ..... - 4 -
M33.3.2 Pump Shaft and shaft Sleeves ..... - 5 -
M33.3.3 Impeller ..... - 5 -
M33.3.4 Wear Rings ..... - 5 -
M33.3.5 Bearings ..... - 5 -
M33.3.6 Mechanical Seal ..... - 5 -
M33.3.7 Shaft Coupling ..... - 6 -

M33.4 PUMP PERFORMANCE DATA ..... - 6 -

M33.5 VENT COCKS ..... - 6 -

M33.6 BASE PLATE ..... - 6 -

M33.7 DRIVE UNIT ..... - 6 -

M33.8 MONITORING DEVICES ..... - 7 -

M33.9 PRESSURE GAUGES ..... - 7 -

M33.10 TEMPERATURE DETECTORS ..... - 7 -

M33.11 NO-FLOW PROTECTION ..... - 7 -

M33.12 INDICATOR ON AUTOMATIC AIR VENT ..... - 7 -

M33.13 GLAND LEAKAGE ..... - 7 -

M33.14 HOLDING DOWN BOLTS ..... - 7 -

M33.15 VIBRATION AND NOISE ..... - 7 -

M33.16 CORROSION PROTECTION ..... - 7 -

M33.17 DESIGNATION AND INFORMATION PLATES ..... - 7 -

M33.18 INTERCHANGEABILITY ..... - 8 -

M33.19 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS ..... - 8 -

M33.20 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL ..... - 8 -

M33.21 DRAWINGS ..... - 8 -

M33.22 INSTALLATION ..... - 8 -

M33.23 INSPECTION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING ..... - 9 -
M33.23.1 Testing by Manufacturer ..... - 9 -
M33.23.2 Witnessed Testing ..... - 9 -
M33.23.3 Testing by an Independent Facility ..... - 9 -
M33.23.4 Failure to Pass Performance Test ..... - 9 -

M33.23.5 Commissioning ..... - 10 -
M33.23.6 Tests at the Site of the Works ..... - 10 -

M33.24 COLOUR CODES ..... - 10 -

M33.25 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT ..... - 10 -

M33.0 SCOPE

This specification covers the detailed design parameters, manufacture, supply, installation, test and commissioning of Elutriation Centrifugal Pumps. The Specification shall be read in conjunction with that of the Project Specification.

M33.1 INTERPRETATIONS

M33.1.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee
AGMA	:	American Gear Manufactures Association

M33.1.2 Standards

All design standards for the centrifugal pumps shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10400	:	National Building Regulations
BS 5304	:	Code of practice for safeguarding of machinery
SANS 9096-1: 1994	:	Testing of welders, where applicable to the type of welding required
BS 292 Part 1: 1987	:	Dimensions of ball bearings, cylindrical and spherical roller bearings
SANS 10162-4	:	Structural use of Steel Part 4: The design of cold-formed stainless steel structural
SANS 1044-3	:	Welding Part 3: The fusion of steel (including stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welding procedures
SANS 10044-4	:	Welding Part 4: The fusion welding of steel (including austenitic stainless steel): Tests for the approval of welders working where weld procedure approval is not required.
SANS 10064	:	The preparation of steel surfaces for coating
SANS 10111-2-1	:	Engineering Drawing Part 1: General principles Engineering Drawing Part 2: Geometric Tolerancing Section 1

SANS 10341	:	Installation and maintenance of bearings – General guidelines
SANS 1700-5-9	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Bolts, Screws & Studs
SANS 1700-5-10	:	Fasteners Part 5: General requirements & material properties Section 8: Corrosion resistant stainless steel fasteners-Nuts
BS EN ISO 14847:1999	:	Rotary positive displacement pumps. Technical requirements
BS EN 734:1995	:	Pumps and pump units for liquids. Common safety requirements
BS EN 12162:2001	:	Liquid pumps Safety requirements. Procedure for hydrostatic testing
BS EN 60041:1995	:	Field acceptance tests to determine the hydraulic performance of hydraulic turbines, storage pumps and pump-turbines.
BS EN 60994:1993	:	Guide for field measurement of vibrations and pulsations in hydraulic machines (turbines, storage pumps and pump-turbines)
BS EN 22858:1993	:	End-suction centrifugal pumps (rating 16 bar). Designation, nominal duty point and dimensions
BS EN 23661:1993	:	End-suction centrifugal pumps. Baseplate and installation dimensions
BS EN 733:1995	:	End-suction centrifugal pumps, rating with 10 bar with bearing bracket. Nominal duty point, main dimensions, designation system
SANS 1123	:	Pipe Flanges
ISO 281	:	Rolling bearings -- Dynamic load ratings and rating life
BS 4999	:	General requirements for rotating electrical machines. Specification for standard dimensions
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surface
BS 5316 Part 2	:	Pump test codes

M33.1.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

E01: Particular Specification for Electric Motors

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M33.2 DESIGN PARAMETERS

Centrifugal pumps shall have stable non-overloading characteristics and the shaft speed shall not exceed 1500 rpm and preferable operate at a lower speed to reduce wear.

The pumps shall be designed for continuous operating service and constructed as follows to meet the intended service and shall be warranted for a period of two full years after date of shipment.

Materials of construction shall be selected to handle elutriation overflow and sludge with a ph ranging from 5.5 to 6.5. The sludge generally has a solids content of 3.5% and can contain grit carried over from the grit removal equipment and solids that are of a stringing substance in nature.

M33.3 PUMPS

M33.3.1 Pump Casing

The pump casing shall be tangential discharge of back pull out design allowing for removal of rotating element without disturbing piping connections. The casing shall be a modified

concentric volute design to reduce the radial loads. The radial load shall not exceed 600 lbs at any given point on the pump curve. The casing shall be constructed of CD4MCU Stainless Steel. All casing sections shall have heavy wall thickness to provide long life under abrasive and corrosive operating conditions. All mating surfaces shall have register fits to ensure proper alignment.

M33.3.2 Pump Shaft and shaft Sleeves

The shaft shall be of high strength AISI 1144 Stress proof Alloy Steel. The shaft shall be accurately machined and polished and of sufficient size to transmit full driver output without excessive flexure or stressing.

Shaft shall be protected by a renewable shaft sleeve which extends through the stuffing box and under the gland. The sleeve shall be grooved on the inside for an o-ring to prevent leakage along the shaft and shall be positively locked to prevent rotation. The sleeve O.D. shall be a minimum of 0.375 inches over the shaft diameter and constructed of 420 S.S H.T. min 400 BHN.

M33.3.3 Impeller

The impeller shall be CD4MCu Stainless Steel with the two-port design. Impellers will have back vanes to reduce axial thrust and lower the stuffing box pressure. Internal vane edges shall be well rounded to present smooth flow. Impeller shall have a straight non-tapered bore and shall be dynamically balanced, keyed to the shaft and further secured with a Stainless Steel washer and a Stainless Steel impeller lock screw. The impeller shall be fixed at location with no expected or required adjustment.

M33.3.4 Wear Rings

Replaceable double suction wear rings shall be provided. The rings shall be of the peripheral design requiring no axial adjustment. One ring shall be press fit into the case and the opposite ring shall press onto the impeller eye. The rings shall be constructed of AISI 420 heat treated hardened Stainless Steel. The rings shall be hardened to a minimum of 400-500 Brinnell with a minimum of 50 Brinnell hardness difference between rings to prevent galling.

M33.3.5 Bearings

The bearing frame shall be constructed of fine grain ASTM A48 Class 30 Grey Iron. The bearing frame shall be line bored for exact concentricity and be equipped with antifriction style bearings. The bearings shall be both ball or roller style properly sized to accommodate all thrusts both mechanical and hydraulic imposed upon them. The frame shall be designed for captured bearing positioning and shall not require any field axial adjustment. The bearings shall have a minimum calculated B-10 bearing life rating of 100,000 hours at the stated design condition. A complete bearing life stress and loading calculation shall be provided by the pump manufacturer to illustrate compliance with this requirement. Bearing lubrication shall be either grease or oil with proper provisions, drains, vents or reliefs to facilitate easy re-lubrication in the field.

M33.3.6 Mechanical Seal

The mechanical seal chamber shall be of a “Cycloseal” design, where deflector vanes pass past the back plate thus reducing the pressure on the mechanical seal whilst evacuating all foreign matter away from the seal faces. The design shall allow for continuous operation

without the need for external flush water or venting. Back plate and deflector vanes shall be constructed of CD4MCU Stainless Steel. A single mechanical seal, (John Crane Type 1, Tungsten Carbide VS Silicon Carbide) shall be provided.

M33.3.7 Shaft Coupling

The pump and motor shall be connected by a flexible coupling in such a way as to prevent them from uncoupling regardless of which way the impeller may be rotating.

The coupling shall accommodate small axial, lateral and angular misalignments without imposing undue stresses on the shaft and bearings. The coupling shall be enclosed in a stationery solid-plate guard to the Engineers satisfaction.

M33.4 PUMP PERFORMANCE DATA

Detailed performance curves for the pump type shall be provided at the time of tendering.

The curves shall indicate the following:

- Head (metres) vs. flow (litres/second) - 0% to 120% duty flow
- Power absorbed in kW - 50% to 120% of duty flow
- Pump efficiency – 0% to 120% duty flow
- Net positive suction head curves required by the pumps at the specified flow rate.

The efficiency curve shall be flat over a wide range in order to provide efficient working at various pump operating conditions.

Pumps shall be able to operate without cavitation over a full range as specified without throttling. Pumps are required to operate continuously at an ambient temperature of 40°C.

The following quantities shall be guaranteed by the Contractor:

- Minimum flow rate of the pump at the specified total head.
- Maximum power demand at the specified total head.
- Minimum efficiency at the specified total head.
- Maximum net positive suction head required by the pump at the specified flow rate.

M33.5 VENT COCKS

Vent cocks shall be fitted at all high points to the pump casing. These cocks shall be adequately sized in order to allow the trapped air to be released freely.

An automatic air vent shall be fitted to each pump casing if specified. This device shall be suitable for the remote operation of an indicator to show the open and closed positions of the air vent.

M33.6 BASE PLATE

The base plate of the pump and motor shall be rigid. The pump and motor shall be situated on the upper face of each base plate, which shall be machined flat and smooth to ensure that the pump and motor are bedded properly without the use of spacers.

The pump/motor base plate shall be completely aligned prior to grouting and provision shall be made to grout within the base plate itself to facilitate vibration-free operation.

Base plates which have a mass greater than 200 kg shall have two jacking bolts at right angles with a lock nut at every corner of the unit.

M33.7 DRIVE UNIT

The pump shall be driven by a fixed electric speed motor and a speed reducer. Refer to Particular Specification E01 Volume E01: Electric Motors for a detailed specification for Electric motors.

M33.8 MONITORING DEVICES

Full detail of all monitoring devices offered must be submitted with the Tender.

M33.9 PRESSURE GAUGES

Pressure gauges shall be fitted with an isolating cock, shall be vibration and shock resistant and shall be calibrated to read with an accuracy of ±1% of the indicated pressure. Three 20mm minimum diameter ball valves shall be employed to zero the gauge, to isolate it and to vent to atmosphere. A chemical seal shall be used to insulate the gauge from the media being measured.

The faceplate diameters of the pressure gauges shall be at least 100 mm. The gauges shall indicate the water pressure in kilopascal and shall have a range of a maximum of 50% higher than the normal maximum working pressure. All gauge glass must conform to internationally recognized standards. These standards include DIN 7081, BS 3463 and JIS B 8211.

A calibration certificate is to be provided with each pressure gauge.

M33.10 TEMPERATURE DETECTORS

If required oil lubricated bearings and glands offered shall be fitted with temperature detectors. The temperature detectors shall be PT100 – RTD's

If grease lubricated bearings are offered, the Tenderer will indicate in his Tender if temperature detectors can in fact be used. If temperature detectors are not feasible, an alternative means of monitoring bearings must be offered.

M33.11 NO-FLOW PROTECTION

(a) Each pump shall be protected against no flow by a clamp on flow meter installed in the discharge line from the pump.

M33.12 INDICATOR ON AUTOMATIC AIR VENT

If an automatic air vent is required for the pump casing, it shall be fitted with an indicator to indicate the open and closed positions of the air vent. The air vent shall be suitable for remote operation and air vent control shall be mounted on the control panel inside the pump station.

M33.13 GLAND LEAKAGE

If a gland leakage device is required in order to monitor the gland leakage it shall be supplied and fitted with adjustable alarm contacts designed to close when gland leakage rises to a pre-set value.

M33.14 HOLDING DOWN BOLTS

The contractor shall be responsible for the supply of all necessary holding down bolts for the machines supplied by him/her. The holding down bolts shall be manufactured from 316 SS.

All bolts necessary for assembling all equipment shall be supplied by the contractor.

M33.15 VIBRATION AND NOISE

The pumps as well as the motors will comply with the requirements of BS 4999. The Contractor may be requested by the Engineer to carry out vibration tests. The noise level shall not exceed 85 dBA at 1m.

M33.16 CORROSION PROTECTION

Refer to Particular Specification G02: Corrosion Protection

M33.17 DESIGNATION AND INFORMATION PLATES

Each pump shall be supplied with an information plate secured to the pump casing in a visible position indelibly marked with the following details:-

- Maker's name, pump type and serial number
- Year of manufacture
- Maximum and fitted impellor diameter
- Rated duty of pump in litres per second
- Head in metres at rated duty
- Pump speed in r/min
- Mass of completely assembled pump in kilogram

M33.18 INTERCHANGEABILITY

Where two or more similar pump units are required, these units will be identical in all respects.

All similar parts of items supplied will be interchangeable without any additional machining or fitting.

M33.19 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS

The Tenderer must submit details of spare parts recommended to be kept in store by the Employer with his Tender.

The detail will include a full description of the parts, part identification, number required, guaranteed delivery time and total price delivered to Site.

M33.20 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL

The Contractor shall hand over to the Engineer four sets of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final take over of the plant.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

(a) Brief description of the plant and installation.

(b) Concise operating instructions.

(c) Routine maintenance instruction.

(d) Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.

(e) Detailed information on equipment.

(f) Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.

M33.21 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Engineer's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, he shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, he will submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Engineer. Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M33.22 INSTALLATION

The pump and motor shall be aligned to within ± 0.025 mm full indicator movement on dial gauge, regardless of the coupling type. After the pump and motor feet are tightened down, ad pipework erected and tightened, both angular and parallel alignment shall be checked and recorded at each quarter revolution. These readings shall be submitted to the Engineer and is a prerequisite for handover.

Upon completion, dowel pins shall be fitted to facilitate relocation at any future time.

M33.23 INSPECTION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

M33.23.1 Testing by Manufacturer

The Manufacturer will carry out all tests on materials, quality control tests, dimensional checking and routine tests on parts to ensure that the pumps and materials conform to the requirements of the relevant SANS or BS specifications and to this Specification. The Engineer will not necessarily attend these tests but records must be kept and all test results will be made available to the Engineer.

M33.23.2 Witnessed Testing

In addition to the above, a number of performance tests will also be carried out in the testing facility of the supplier before equipment is transported to Site. These tests can be carried out in the workshop of the manufacturer/supplier if it is suitably equipped or another approved test facility.

The Engineer may witness these tests and the Contractor will notify the Engineer two weeks in advance of the date and place at which the equipment may be inspected and tested. When tests and inspections have met the satisfaction of the Engineer a certificate of workshop acceptance will be issued. These certificates are a prerequisite before payment for "Materials on Site" can be passed. The Engineer's acceptance will in no way relief the Manufacturer of any of his obligations to design, manufacture and supply pumps strictly in accordance with the Specification.

Performance tests shall include:-

(a) Hydraulic tests on the pump casing. The test pressure will be equal to 1½ times the maximum working pressure at the delivery end of the pump. The testing will be done with blank flanges bolted onto the flanges. The pressure will be maintained for at least 15 minutes. No sign of sweating, leaking, undue deformation and stressing or defect of any kind will be evident during the test period.

(b) Tests to prove that the rotating parts are dynamically balanced.

(c) Performance tests on pump and driving unit.

(d) NPSH requirements if called for in the Project Specifications.

A performance test shall be carried out in accordance with BS 5316 Part 2 - Class B tests if specified. Unless otherwise stated, the Contractor will be required to conduct the performance test on the combined pump/motor unit.

If a performance test of the pump and its driving unit is not possible at the manufacturer’s works, this shall be stated in the Tender with reasons to allow the Engineer opportunity to make alternative proposals.

M33.23.3 Testing by an Independent Facility

The Employer may require that an independent testing facility or institution such as the South African Bureau of Standards carry out performance tests. A separate item for performance testing will be provided in the Schedule of Quantities to allow for this.

M33.23.4 Failure to Pass Performance Test

Should the pump unit fail the performance test, whether performed at the manufacturer’s works or at an independent institution, the Engineer shall authorise any amendments to the plant which may be considered necessary to meet the guaranteed quantities within the permissible tolerances laid down in BS 5316 Part 2 - Class B tests and prove with further test that the equipment conform to the Specification.

All costs involved in the re-testing of pump units will be borne by the Contractor.

Should the pump unit fail to pass the test with more than 5% variation on the actual guaranteed figures, the engineer will reject the pump unit and request the Contractor to replace the unit so rejected.

Should the pump until still fail to pass the test, but the actual figures do not vary by more than 5% from the actual guaranteed figures, the Engineer may :-

(a) Request the Contractor to carry out amendments to ensure the compliance of the unit with the Specification; or

(b) Accept the equipment but impose a penalty for non-compliance on the Contractor. A sum will be calculated based on the additional energy used over the life expectancy of the equipment and this will be deducted from the Contract price for each pump set for every kilowatt by which the gross demand exceeds the guaranteed figure with permissible tolerances.

M33.23.5 Commissioning

On completion of the installation the Contractor will check all items for satisfactory functioning. He will then inform the Engineer of his intension to commission the plant. The Engineer may request control measurements on pump alignment at this stage.

A detailed programme of his proposed commissioning procedures will be submitted not later than two weeks prior to the commissioning date.

After a successful running period of 4 hours (to be witnessed by the Engineer) the Contractor will hand over the installation to the Employer as well as the Operation and Maintenance Manuals. The Completion Certificate will only be issued after the units have been in successful operation for 14 consecutive days and the acceptance tests successfully completed.

During the first 14 days of operation, the Contractor will rectify any problems with the units on Site within 24 hours of being telephonically notified. During the remainder of the maintenance period, the Contractor will, within 14 days of being notified, commence rectifying any possible problems that the Employer may encounter with the equipment supplied under this Contract.

Should the Contractor fail to meet the above requirements, the Employer may appoint others to undertake the necessary repair work at the Contractor's cost.

M33.23.6 Tests at the Site of the Works

The Engineer may require that site tests are performed to verify performance figures guarantee by the Contractor. Flow rate, total head and power input to the pump/motor units shall be determined, as accurate as Site conditions permit, for one or more points on the pump curves close to the specified duty point. The Contractor shall provide suitable instruments with recent calibration certificates.

Should these measured and calculated quantities differ from those guaranteed by more than the tolerances allowed by BS 5316 Part 1 - re-testing of the unit at any testing facility, or the recalibration of the measuring instruments.

Should the subsequent test results still fall outside the allowable tolerances, Clause M18.28.4 shall apply, and call costs shall be borne by the Contractor. In the event of the subsequent test being successful, costs shall be borne by the Employer.

M33.24 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01.

M33.25 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery and installation / commissioning of the equipment.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

a world class African city

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water SOC Ltd

17 Harrison Street
Johannesburg

Johannesburg Water
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Tel +27(0) 11 688 1400
Fax +27(0) 11 688 1528

www.johannesburgwater.co.za

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

M34: MECHANICAL SLUICE/CHANNEL GATES, ADJUSTABLE WEIRS, HAND STOPS AND STOP LOGS

2	2013-10-23	Minor updates and re-issued	J Ritchie	
1	30/7/2012	General up Date and reissue	J Ritchie	
0	3/11/2011	First issue	J Ritchie	
Rev	Date	Description	Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership	Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION M34: MECHANICAL SLUICE/CHANNEL GATES, ADJUSTABLE WEIRS, HAND STOPS AND STOP LOGS
CONTENTS

M34.1 SCOPE 2

M34.2 INTERPRETATIONS 2
M34.2.1 Abbreviations 2
M34.2.2 Standards 2
M34.2.3 General Requirements 2

M34.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS 2
M34.3.1 Pressure Rating 3
M34.3.2 Wastewater Liquids and chemicals 3
M34.3.3 Guarantee 3
M34.3.4 Operating and Maintenance Manuals 3
M34.3.6 Jointing Material 3
M34.3.7 Contact between Dissimilar Metals 3

M34.4 MATERIALS 4

M34.5 DESIGN 4

M34.6 SLUICE AND CHANNEL GATES 4

M34.7 ADJUSTABLE OVERFLOW TILTING WEIRS 5

M34.8 HAND STOPS 5

M34.9 OPERATING GEAR 6

M34.10 STOPLOGS 6

M34.11 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS 6

M34.12 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL 7

M34.13 DRAWINGS 7

M34.14 INSTALLATION 7

M34.15 INSPECTION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING 7
M34.15.1 Testing by Manufacturer 7
M34.15.2 Witnessed Testing 7
M34.15.3 Testing by an Independent Facility 8
M34.15.4 Failure to Pass Performance Test 8
M34.15.5 Commissioning 8

M34.16 COLOUR CODES 8

M34.17 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT 8

M34.1 SCOPE

This Specification covers the manufacture, testing and supply of sluice / channel gates, adjustable weirs, hand stops and stop logs for use in waste water and potable water treatment plants at ambient temperatures.

M34.2 INTERPRETATIONS

M34.2.1 Abbreviations

In this Specification the following abbreviations will apply:-

ANSI	:	American National Standards Institute
ASTM	:	American Society for Testing and Materials
BS	:	British Standards Institution
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SIS	:	Swedish Institute of Standards
DIN	:	Deutsch Industry Normen
ISO	:	International Organisation for Standardization
ASME	:	American Society of Mechanical Engineers
SAECC	:	South African Electrolytic Corrosion Committee

M34.2.2 Standards

For the purposes of this Specification the latest issues of the following standard specifications will apply:-

SANS 1700	:	Fasteners
SANS 135	:	Isometric Bold Screws and Nuts (Lexagon & square/coarse thread free fit series)
SANS 136	:	Isometric Precision Hexagon Head Bolts and Screws and Hexagon Nuts (coarse thread medium fit series)
SANS 1431	:	Steel
BS 3100	:	Cast Steel
BS 4504	:	Flange Drilling
SIS 05 59 00	:	Pictorial Surface Preparation Standards for Painting Steel Surfaces
ISO 244	:	Pipe Line Flanges for General use - Shapes and Dimensions of Pressure Tight Surfaces
SANS 1123	:	Steel Pipe Flanges

M34.2.3 General Requirements

This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

G01: Particular Specification for Colour Codes

G02: Particular Specification for Corrosion Protection

M34.3 GENERAL REQUIREMENTS

Sluice / channel gates, adjustable weirs, hand stops and stop logs shall be so transported, stored and handled as to prevent damage. Equipment damaged in any way shall be removed

from the site repaired or replaced to the satisfaction of the engineer.

The Contractor shall satisfy the Engineer as to the sufficiency of the place of manufacture regarding manufacturing, testing and inspection equipment to ensure that the production of equipment is strictly in accordance with this Specification.

M34.3.1 Pressure Rating

The design pressure for the sluice / channel gates, adjustable weirs, hand stops and stop logs is specified in the Tender Document in the Project Specification, Drawings and Schedule of Quantities.

M34.3.2 Wastewater Liquids and chemicals

Sluice / channel gates, adjustable weirs, hand stops and stop logs which encounter raw wastewater, treated wastewater and sludge shall be manufactured from corrosive resistant material.

M34.3.3 Guarantee

All sluice / channel gates, adjustable weirs, hand stops and stop logs shall be guaranteed against faulty design, materials and workmanship until the end of the maintenance period on the Main Contract. During this period the Contractor shall be required to attend to and rectify any defects, which occur due to faulty design, materials or workmanship at his own cost.

M34.3.4 Operating and Maintenance Manuals

A copy of the Operating and Maintenance Manual for each equipment type shall be bound in with the Operating and Maintenance Manual for the project. The manual shall be A4 size and properly bound. Drawings larger than A3 size shall be contained in separate plastic pockets.

M34.3.5 Contents

A copy of the signed factory test certificate shall be bound in with the manual, while the original shall be handed to the Engineer.

Operating instructions

Maintenance instructions

Lubrication instructions

Spare parts list

Drawings

Brochures

M34.3.6 Jointing Material

Jointing material shall comply with SANS 1700. sluice / channel gates, adjustable weirs, hand stops and stop logs shall be supplied complete with bolts, nuts, washers (2 per bolt) and gaskets for joining up to adjacent mating flanges and or concrete mounting.

Bolts shall be of stainless steel and shall be long enough to allow at least two screw threads to protrude from the nut when the assembly is fully tightened. A washer must be provided both under the bolt head and the nut.

M34.3.7 Contact between Dissimilar Metals

When flanges of dissimilar metals are bolted together, the internal epoxy coating shall cover the contact area of the flange without any break.

Suitable insulation material shall be used between the contact faces of dissimilar metals of

which the potential difference exceeds 0,3 V. Where corrodible metal is welded to a corrosion resistant metal, the protection coating specified shall overlap onto the latter by at least 5 mm.

M34.4 MATERIALS

The thickness of materials shall be suitable for the duty required.

M34.5 DESIGN

All parts shall be designed for the duty required, but the minimum factor of safety against structural failure shall not be less than 3, based on the working stress of the material. In the design, due consideration shall be given to the thickness of materials with regard to corrosion and operating conditions. The force required at a hand wheel or crank to raise a gate or open a valve shall be in the order of 100 Newton, and the design parameters must be submitted in the Technical Schedule.

The design shall be such as to give a 100% leak free seal when under the full operating head.

M34.6 SLUICE AND CHANNEL GATES

The sliding frames, floor seats and gates of wall mounted as well as channel type gates with head frame shall be made of grade 304L stainless steel or as specified. All gates shall be well guided with no possibility of jamming. The gates shall be held uniformly against the side facings of the frames by the action of adjustable wedges and shall provide drop-tight closure under the operating conditions. Sluice gates shall be of the standard or flush invert type fitted with renewable seals of a non-biodegradable material on the invert.

Channel gates shall be dimensioned such that their installation in the channels and openings shown on the drawings is facilitated. The channel gates shall be standard items and shall be installed so that head frames shall be flush with vertical channel walls and do not project horizontally into the channel. Vertical sliding frames and floor seat to be cast into concrete so as to leave an unobstructed waterway to dimensions indicated in the schedule. Pre-formed recess details for casting in of frames to be submitted by the supplier. Head frame bridge for a channel gate to allow indicated water level to pass under the gate when in UP-position.

All nuts, bolts, washers and other components shall be manufactured from same grade stainless steel specified for gate.

Gates shall be robustly designed and constructed, having vertical and horizontal ribs to withstand pressures from both directions. The matching head frame for channel gates shall be adequately designed to resist distortion, and both the gate and the frame shall have machined seating faces to ensure perfect sealing. The head frame shall extend above the concrete channel, to support the gate in the fully open position.

Seating pressure as well as unseating pressure may act on any channel or circular sluice gate and the sluice gate shall be able to resist these pressures.

Holding down bolts of penstocks fixed against concrete walls shall be made of Grade 304 Stainless Steel.

Channel gates shall be provided with rising spindles as well as approved transparent position

indicators as requested.

M34.7 ADJUSTABLE OVERFLOW TILTING WEIRS

The adjustable overflow tilting weirs shall comply with the following requirements:

(i) 304L stainless steel manufacture or as specified.

(ii) Stainless steel indicators showing the degree of adjustment of the weirs in mm enclosed in an approved transparent tube.

(iii) Be horizontal after installation with a maximum allowable variation from the horizontal not exceeding 1 mm.

(iv) Be equipped with rounded side plates and be watertight underneath and at the sides of the frame.

(v) Holding-down bolts, washers, etc. shall be of same grade stainless steel as specified for weir.

M34.8 HAND STOPS

(i) The following requirements shall be applicable to hand stops:

(ii) Supplied with an aluminum frame extending to the top of the concrete or masonry. The frame shall be grouted into a recess in the concrete or masonry. Details of such recess to be submitted by supplier. Hand stop shall be capable of sliding in and out of the frame.

(iii) Hand stop shall seal 100% watertight under all circumstances. This may be achieved with the use of neoprene sealing material.

(iv) Hand stops and frames shall be manufactured from 6 mm aluminum plate and shall be robust and provided with reinforcing elements designed by the supplier to the approval of the Engineer. The reinforcing elements shall effectively prevent buckling under full static head conditions.

M34.9 OPERATING GEAR

M34.9.1 Spindles to be extended as required and secured to structure to Engineer's approval.

M34.9.1.1 Arrows shall be cast on all hand wheels together with the wording "OPEN" or "CLOSE". The closing direction shall be clockwise unless otherwise specified.

M34.9.1.2 Gates shall be fitted with position indicators. Fully closed, fully open and intermediate positions shall be indicated in corrosive proof and robust design indicators.

M34.9.2 Channel gate - Head frame bridge across with hand wheel or actuator on rising spindle.

M34.9.3 Gates and Tilting Weirs

Hand wheels or actuators installed in the following manner.

Platform-mounted hand wheel pedestal (PMP)

Hand wheel pedestal on wall support bracket (HPWB)

Stub hand wheel pedestal on wall support bracket (SHWB)

Tee-key on support bracket (TKSB)

Grid-mounted hand wheel pedestal (GMP)

M34.10 STOPLOGS

A stop log set shall comply with the following requirements:

(i) Stop log sets shall be supplied with stainless steel frames extending to the top of the concrete or masonry. The frames shall be grouted into the recess in the concrete or masonry in such a way that the stop logs are capable of sliding in and out of the frame. The stop logs sets shall be watertight under all normal operational circumstances.

(ii) Stop logs and frames shall be manufactured from stainless steel plate. Each stop log shall be provided with reinforcing elements designed by the supplier to the approval of the Engineer. The reinforcing shall effectively prevent buckling under full differential static head conditions.

(iii) The maximum vertical dimension of any individual stop log shall not exceed 150 mm.

(iv) Each individual stop log in any one set shall have the same vertical and horizontal dimensions.

(v) Each individual stop log shall be provided with two lifting lugs.

(vi) A neat stainless steel stand or pair of stainless steel hooks shall be installed in close proximity to each installed set of stop logs for the storing of stop logs when removed from the frame.

(vii) Each set of stop logs shall be provided with two portable stainless steel lifting hooks, each fastened with a 200 kg capacity stainless steel anti-loss chain or UV-stabilized 200 kg capacity nylon rope to a suitable bracket on the hand railing or walkway structure. The chain or rope shall be long enough to facilitate easy operation of the lifting hooks. The lifting hooks shall be used to manipulate individual stop logs in to lifting lugs

(viii) Enough individual stop logs shall be supplied in each set to effectively span a minimum distance

M34.11 RECOMMENDED SPARE PARTS

The Tenderer must submit details of spare parts recommended to be kept in store by the Employer with his Tender.

The detail will include a full description of the parts, part identification, number required, guaranteed delivery time and total price delivered to Site.

M34.12 OPERATION AND MAINTENANCE MANUAL

The Contractor shall hand over to the Engineer four sets of the Operation and Maintenance Manual compiled for each installation not later than at the time of commissioning of the installation. These manuals are a prerequisite for final takeover of the plant.

The Operation and Maintenance Manual will contain the following:

(a) Brief description of the plant and installation.

(b) Concise operating instructions.

(c) Routine maintenance instruction.

(d) Precautionary measures, elementary trouble location, rectifying measures and emergency actions.

(e) Detailed information on equipment.

(f) Lists of spare parts including names and addresses of suppliers.

M34.13 DRAWINGS

The drawings included in the Tender Documents are the Engineer's proposal for the plant layout. Should the Tenderer offer alternative layouts, he shall submit drawings with his Tender in order for it to be evaluated.

Before the Contractor carries out any work, he will submit detailed working drawings to be approved by the Engineer. Approval of these drawings does not relieve the Contractor from his responsibility for the correctness of the drawings.

M34.14 INSTALLATION

The equipment shall be installed, aligned and grouted in to position without distortion of the frame and or gate/weir which may cause damage to the sealing arrangement of the equipment.

M34.15 INSPECTION, TESTING AND COMMISSIONING

M34.15.1 Testing by Manufacturer

The Manufacturer will carry out all tests on materials, quality control tests, dimensional checking and routine tests on parts to ensure that the equipment and materials conform to the requirements of the relevant SANS or BS specifications and to this Specification. The Engineer will not necessarily attend these tests but records must be kept and all test results will be made available to the Engineer.

Test shall include but not be limited to hydraulic testing to ensure 100% leak free. If the equipment offered is not 100% leak free then the percentage should be specified in the data sheets.

M34.15.2 Witnessed Testing

In addition to the above, a number of performance tests will also be carried out in the testing facility of the supplier before equipment is transported to Site. These tests can be carried out in the workshop of the manufacturer/supplier if it is suitably equipped or another approved test facility.

The Engineer may witness these tests and the Contractor will notify the Engineer two weeks in advance of the date and place at which the equipment may be inspected and tested. When tests and inspections have met the satisfaction of the Engineer a certificate of workshop acceptance will be issued. These certificates are a prerequisite before payment for "Materials on Site" can be passed. The Engineer's acceptance will in no way relief the Manufacturer of any of his obligations to design, manufacture and supply pumps strictly in accordance with the Specification.

M34.15.3 Testing by an Independent Facility

The Employer may require that an independent testing facility or institution such as the South African Bureau of Standards carry out performance tests. A separate item for performance testing will be provided in the Schedule of Quantities to allow for this.

M34.15.4 Failure to Pass Performance Test

Should the equipment fail any test, whether performed at the manufacturer's works or at an independent institution, the Engineer shall authorise any amendments to the equipment which may be considered necessary to meet the specifications and prove with further test that the equipment conform to the specification.

All costs involved in the re-testing of equipment will be borne by the Contractor.

M34.15.5 Commissioning

On completion of the installation the Contractor will check all items for satisfactory functioning. He will then inform the Engineer of his intension to commission the plant.

A detailed programme of his proposed commissioning procedures will be submitted not later than two weeks prior to the commissioning date.

The Completion Certificate will only be issued after the equipment has been in successful operation for 14 consecutive days.

During the first 14 days of operation, the Contractor will rectify any problems with the equipment on Site within 24 hours of being telephonically notified. During the remainder of the maintenance period, the Contractor will, within 14 days of being notified, commence rectifying any possible problems that the Employer may encounter with the equipment supplied under this Contract.

Should the Contractor fail to meet the above requirements, the Employer may appoint others to undertake the necessary repair work at the Contractor's cost.

M34.16 COLOUR CODES

The standard final colour codes for equipment supplied under this Contract shall be in accordance with Particular Specification G01.

M34.17 MEASUREMENT AND PAYMENT

Payment under scheduled items shall be made per complete installation as specified, electrical connections, etc and grouting, etc. Measurement and payment will distinguish between supply / delivery and installation / commissioning of the equipment.

The tendered rates or sums shall cover the cost of design, drawings, manufacture, supply, testing at the manufacturers works, delivery to site, off loading, installation, site testing, setting into operation, the supply of O & M manuals, commissioning and maintenance during the warranty period of all equipment specified and also for anything not specifically mentioned but obviously required, (e.g. all ancillaries, including all bolts, fastenings and brackets, safety guards and any work or material required for the proper installation of such equipment) to enable the equipment to be installed and/or function safely and correctly as specified. No claims whatsoever for extras will be allowed on the grounds that a necessary piece of equipment or a part thereof is not specifically mentioned.

5.4 PARTICULAR SPECIFICATIONS FOR CONTROL AND INSTRUMENTATION

CONSULTANT CONTRACT JW 5246

PROJECT BWW 523C: PROJECT STANDARDS DOCUMENT

AUTOMATION AND CONTROL DESIGN STANDARDS

VOLUME 19

FIELD JUNCTION BOXES AND PANELS

Rev	Date	Description	Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership	Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water
9	2012-03-08	Changed required paint thickness for IJBs, added requirements for supports/brackets and changed (Pty) to (SOC).		
8	2011-07-11	Removed 2010 logo.		
7	2010-07-27	Altered minimum panel powder coating thickness & hinges material.		
6	2010-03-12	Altered submission time of FJB panel drawings.		
5	2009-08-18	New logos and data display viewing requirements added.		
4	2009-03-25	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.		
3	2008-10-08	"Joburg" & "JW" Logos added to top & partnership logos removed.		
2	2007-06-05	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added		
1	2007-03-28	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off		

INDEX

19 FIELD JUNCTION BOXES AND PANELS 3

19.1 Scope 3

19.2 Abbreviations 3

19.3 Standards 3

19.4 General Requirements 3

19.5 Standard Features 4

19.6 Wiring and Terminals 5

19.7 Existing Panels 6

19.8 Factory Acceptance 6

19.9 Over-Voltage/Lightning Protection 7

19.10 Spares 7

19.11 Painting (Powder Coating Method) 7

19.12 Drawings And Diagrams 8

19 FIELD JUNCTION BOXES AND PANELS

19.1 Scope

19.1.1 This specification covers the manufacturing, supply and installation of Field Junction Boxes, Field Equipment Panels and any other panels used for housing terminals, surge protection devices, instruments, control switchgear (such as pushbuttons, selector switches, indicating lamps, potentiometers, etc.) for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

19.2 Abbreviations

19.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
LPZ	:	Lightning Protection Zone
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device

19.3 Standards

19.3.1 All design standards for cabling shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

19.4 General Requirements

19.4.1 The Field Panel will typically house the following items:-

19.4.1.1 Terminals, fuses, MCB's, trunking, surge protection, relays, etc.

19.4.1.2 Pushbuttons, selector switches, potentiometers, indicating lamps, etc.

19.4.1.3 Power supplies, indicating instruments, etc.

19.4.1.4 Instruments such as transmitters.

19.4.2 The supply and installation shall in general comply with the relevant clauses in all specifications attached to the tender documentation.

19.4.3 The panels shall be free standing units with bottom cable entry (via a glanding plate)

and have front door access (hinged and lockable).

19.4.4 The panel should be manufactured from at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel typically not less than 1,5 mm thick. All hinges, locking devices, bolts, nuts and washers must also be at least 3CR12 stainless steel. The panel will have a door on the front which opens to the full width and height of the panel. The panel shall be free standing and the top edge of the panel shall not be more than 1,8m above floor level and it should be sized to accommodate all the associated equipment comfortably.

19.4.5 Once the door is open there should be no obstruction to prevent full access to every point inside the panel.

19.4.6 The panel shall be epoxy powder coated electric orange (Shade B26) finish. Interior chassis mounting plates will be finished in appliance white.

19.4.7 Each panel and control function should be clearly labelled with labels engraved on laminated engraving board with black letters on a white background. All labels must be attached with chrome plated, screws and nuts or screws and tapped holes. On the backing plate only tapped holes may be used. Screws with nuts on the backing plate will not be acceptable.

19.4.8 The panel must be vermin-proof and must have a protection rating of no less than IP 65.

19.4.9 Where equipment such as pushbuttons, selector switches, potentiometers, etc. are required on the panel exterior, a double door system must be used. The equipment must be mounted on a hinged door, which in turn is located inside a second hinged door fitted with a transparent panel so that all relevant equipment can be viewed without the need to open this external door. This external door with the glass panel must ensure that the IP 65 protection rating is not compromised by the fitting of equipment such as pushbuttons, switches, etc.

19.4.10 Where outer doors are equipped with transparent panels, such a panel must consist of a material that will not deteriorate significantly due to its exposure to the elements such as ultra-violet radiation, heat, wind, rain, etc. Glass panels will be preferred.

19.4.11 Where there are no existing structures against which the panel can be mounted, a sturdy stand, or mounting bracket must be manufactured of the same material as the panel (i.e. at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel), painted to the same specification and in the same colour as the panel.

19.5 Standard Features

19.5.1 Each panel shall have the following features as standard:-

19.5.1.1 No ventilation fans shall be mounted in the panel and thereby compromise the protection rating.

19.5.1.2 No holes may be drilled for tapping, riveting, bolts & nuts, etc. in any section of the panel where it will compromise the protection rating of the panel. I.e. only in the first (i.e. inner) door of a 2-door panel, in the backing plate or in the glanding plate may holes be drilled.

19.5.1.3 A copper earth bar running the width of the panel at the bottom with solid electrical connection to the panel doors and to the steel of the panel at two

or more places and provided with terminals for connection of equipment and screen earth wires.

19.5.1.4 Terminals and equipment of the same voltage must be grouped together, while terminals and equipment of different voltages must be clearly marked and separated by at least 50mm or by suitable insulated barriers to ensure that inadvertent contact or accidental terminations in the wrong place are avoided. Where such barriers are used between terminals of different voltages, these barriers must be larger than the terminals (i.e. standard terminal end barriers will not be acceptable) to ensure that there is a clear separation and to avoid accidental incorrect terminations.

19.5.1.5 Where the panel will be installed out in the open (i.e. not in an area where it is in the shade), the panel must be equipped with a cover which will provide shade for the panel while allowing air flow between the panel and the cover. Such panels should as far as practically possible be installed to face South and the cover should ensure that all transmitters, analysers, pushbuttons, lamps, etc. are protected from direct sunlight.

19.6 Wiring and Terminals

19.6.1 All screwed terminals shall be mounted on raised DIN terminal rail, secured to the chassis plate at the back of the panel.

19.6.2 Not more than one wire shall be connected to one side of any terminal.

19.6.3 Every wire shall be marked at both ends with a numbering system approved by the Engineer, and all terminating wires shall also be suitably crimped to a terminal lug. Not more than one wire shall be crimped into a single lug.

19.6.4 All wiring shall be flexible, tinned, annealed, multi-strand copper wire not less than:-

19.6.4.1 1,5mm² for 230V AC or 110V AC power

19.6.4.2 1,0mm² for 24V DC or AC power

19.6.4.3 0,5mm² for all PLC I/O wiring between modules and marshalling terminals

19.6.4.4 4,0mm² for earth drain

19.6.5 Irrespective of the minimum wire sizes allowed in this specification, contractors must ensure that all cables and wiring are capable of carrying the full system currents, inclusive of de-rating factors as specified in SANS 10142-1:2003 as amended.

19.6.6 All wire terminations must be done by using suitable lugs. No more than one wire may be crimped into a single lug. Where pin lugs are crimped onto the ends of wires, correctly sized pin lugs must be used, which fit into the terminals properly and such that the tightening of the terminal does not result in the loosening of the pin lug.

19.6.7 All panel wiring shall run in suitable sized slotted trunking for as much of their course as possible, thereafter in spiral band or similar conduit to its destination if the exposed run would exceed 100mm.

19.6.8 The distance between the terminals and the trunking or between equipment (such as relays, surge protection, circuit breakers, etc.) and trunking shall not be less than

50mm.

19.6.9 Control wiring should not run with power wiring and all cross-overs shall be at ninety degrees.

19.6.10 Each analogue and digital input and output to and from the PLC shall have surge protection units as specified in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

19.6.11 Internal wiring shall be colour coded as follows:-

19.6.11.1 230V AC Power

Live	Brown
Neutral	Blue
Earth	Green and Yellow

19.6.11.2 24V DC Power

Positive	Red
Negative	Black

19.6.11.3 Digital Inputs

230V AC	Yellow
24V DC	Red

19.6.11.4 Digital Outputs

230V AC	Grey
24V DC	Red

19.6.11.5 Relay Outputs

230V AC	Grey
24V DC	Red

19.6.11.6 Analogue Signals

Positive	Orange
Negative	Purple

19.6.12 A terminal section for AC and DC power distribution shall be included in the panel where both voltages are used for equipment power supplies. The terminal groups shall be clearly identified to indicate the various voltages.

19.6.13 All wiring must be continuous from one termination (in a terminal strip or device such as a relay, contactor, surge arrester, etc.) to the next. No spliced wiring will be accepted.

19.7 Existing Panels

19.7.1 All modifications and wiring changes to existing panels must comply with the specifications as laid down for new panels.

19.8 Factory Acceptance

19.8.1 Before delivery of the panels, a comprehensive system factory acceptance test must take place. The Engineer must be notified one week in advance of the proposed test.

19.8.2 The test shall comprise of at least, but not be limited to:

19.8.2.1 Checking the panel manufacturing and assembly for compliance with this specification.

19.8.2.2 Layout, numbering and labelling of equipment.

19.8.2.3 Wiring – sizes, numbering, colours, termination, etc.

19.8.2.4 Wiring as per drawings, I/O schedules, etc. (i.e. loop checks).

19.9 Over-Voltage/Lightning Protection

19.9.1 The function of the over-voltage/lightning protection units is to prevent damage from occurring to the electrical and electronic devices due to destructive voltages, by resistive coupling, capacitive coupling or inductive coupling, arising from extraneous events such as lightning discharges, switching surges etc. All lightning and surge protection must be in accordance with the requirements in the Clean Power And Surge Protection specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Design Standards).

19.9.2 The SPD's on all incoming power supplies to the panel shall be in accordance with the LPZ in which the panel is and must comply with the requirements of SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L. This protection must be at least Class II medium surge protection.

19.9.3 All analogue and digital input and output circuits must have at least Class III surge arresters for protection of these circuits.

19.10 Spares

19.10.1 The tenderer will be required to provide at least 10% spare fuses and other consumable items which may be required during commissioning. In addition to commissioning spares, a recommended spare list for three years maintenance, should be submitted. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

19.11 Painting (Powder Coating Method)

19.11.1 **General**

Switchboards and panels shall be epoxy powder coated in accordance with Type 1 coatings to SANS 1274-2005.
Unless specified otherwise, a high gloss finish in the following colour shall be provided:
Colour - Light Orange, Colour No. B26, Munsell Ref. 2,5 YR C/14 to SANS 1091 : 2004 and Colour No. 381C-557 to BS 381C : 1980.
Paintwork must be guaranteed against blistering, peeling, cracking and general deterioration which can lead to rusting, corrosion, etc. for a period of no less than three years. If the tenderer cannot comply with this requirement, it must be clearly stated as such in the tender.

19.11.2 **Specifications**

The following specifications in accordance with SANS 1274-2005 shall be provided:-

Property	Requirement	Test Method
Thickness, minimum	50 micron	6,7
Marking Resistance (400g)	No marking	6.20
Impact Resistance, J, minimum	6,78	6.10
Water Resistance, h, minimum	720	6.13
Humidity resistance, h, minimum	1000	6.14
Resistance to salt fog, h, minimum	1000	6.16

19.11.3 **Surface Preparation**

Surface preparation of sheet steel components shall be carried out by means of the multi-bath zinc phosphate/chromate passivation treatment.
All fabricated sheet steel components are to be degreased and de-rusted ready for treatment.
A steel surface is considered ready for treatment when all dirt, grease, rust, mill scale, moisture or other contaminants have been removed in an alkaline degreaser to give a dry, clean, bright, metallic surface.
Steel plate less than 4mm thick - black steel sheet shall be pickled to white metal condition while pre-pickled, bright, cold rolled sheet steel shall be solvent cleaned. These surfaces shall be treated within eight hours in all cases while still uncontaminated and rust-free.
The prepared steel surface shall be treated by means of immersion in a heated zinc phosphate solution bath, rinsing and thereafter chromate passivated by means of immersion in the final treatment bath.

19.11.4 **Powder Coating**

A thermosetting powder consisting of epoxy/polyester resin shall be applied by means of an electrostatic spray gun to give a uniform coating thickness of 50 to 60 micron. Less than 50 micron will not be acceptable.

The powder coating shall be baked at a metal temperature of 185ºC so as to melt the powders to form a continuous film over the metal substrate.

19.12 Drawings And Diagrams

19.12.1 The tenderer must submit layout drawings, showing the panel size, cable entry, location of equipment, details of equipment (such as trunking size, circuit breakers, fuses, terminals, etc.), panel colour, material of construction (e.g. 2mm 3CR12 SS), etc. for approval by the Engineer before any manufacturing commences.

19.12.2 The drawings must be accompanied with data lists of the proposed equipment. These data sheets must show the type, supplier, make, model, size, etc. of equipment where applicable. For example:

Treminals - Phoenix SK12, 4mm, white.
MCB's - Merlin Gerin, 5A, 10kA, single-pole.
Etc.

CONSULTANT CONTRACT JW 5246

PROJECT BWW 523C: PROJECT STANDARDS DOCUMENT

AUTOMATION AND CONTROL DESIGN STANDARDS

VOLUME 8

FLOW MEASUREMENT

Rev	Date	Description	Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership	Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water
10	2012-03-08	Altered gas flow to use orifice plate or pitot tube and changed (Pty) to (SOC).		
9	2011-07-11	Removed 2010 logo.		
8	2010-07-27	Gas flow meter ambient temperature range altered and data about classification of IS designs and installations added.		
7	2009-08-18	New logos and transmitter position requirements added and mag flow pulse output requirements altered.		
6	2009-05-08	Added requirements from client meeting on 04 May 2009.		
5	2009-03-25	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted, logos altered as per client's requirements and data sheets for magnetic and diversion/distribution flow meters split.		
4	2007-11-07	Flow meters for distributing/flow diversion added.		
3	2007-09-10	Gas flow measurement added and "Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum".		
2	2007-06-05	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added		
1	2007-03-28	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off		

INDEX

8 FLOW MEASUREMENT 3

8.1 Scope 3

8.2 Abbreviations 3

8.3 Standards 3

8.4 General Requirements 4

8.5 Surge Protection 6

8.6 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 6

8.7 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer 6

8.8 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 7

8.9 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer 7

8.10 Gas Flow 8

8.11 Spares 9

8.12 Hazardous Areas 9

8.13 Intrinsically Safe Installations 9

8.14 Data Sheets 9

8 FLOW MEASUREMENT

8.1 Scope

8.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Flow meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

8.2 Abbreviations

8.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
PTFE	:	Polytetrafluoroethylene
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance
NPT	:	National Pipe Thread
DP	:	Differential Pressure
LP	:	Low Pressure
HP	:	High Pressure
RH	:	Relative Humidity
IS	:	Intrinsically Safe

8.3 Standards

8.3.1 The supply and installation of all Flow meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1 : National Standards for the wiring of premises.

SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.
BS 3680	:	Measurement of liquid flow in open channels.
SANS10108:2005	:	The classification of hazardous locations and the selection of apparatus for use in such locations.
SANS60079-10:2005	:	Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres. Part 10: Classification of hazardous areas.
SANS60079-11:2005	:	Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres. Part 10: Intrinsic safety “i”.
SANS10086-1	:	The installation, inspection and maintenance of equipment used in explosive atmospheres Part 1: Installations including surface installations on mines

8.4 General Requirements

8.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

8.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

8.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC’s) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.4 FJB’s and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

8.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

8.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.)

such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. LCD displays must always be protected from direct sunlight, either by facing them away from the sun or by installing it inside the FJB, in the shade of the FJB canopy. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

8.4.7 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

8.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

8.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

8.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

8.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

8.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

8.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

8.5 Surge Protection

8.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.6 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

8.6.1 Flow calculations for all open channel flow measurement must be done in accordance with BS 3680.

8.6.2 All flow measurements in open channels must be done by using ultra-sonic distance measurement, which is converted into a flow value.

8.6.3 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

8.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable.

8.6.5 The instrument must be equipped with at least one SPDT relay, rated for at least 230V AC, 500mA, for totalised flow pulses. This output must be user-programmable for the units-per-pulse.

8.6.6 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

8.6.7 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.25% or 6mm, whichever is greater.

8.6.8 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 0.1% or 2mm, whichever is greater.

8.6.9 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display showing instantaneous flow and totalised flow.

8.7 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer

8.7.1 The range of the sensor must be suitable for the application (see items 8.4.8 and 8.4.9 of this specification).

8.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -10ºC to

+50ºC.

8.7.3 The sensor must be equipped with automatic temperature compensation.

8.7.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

8.7.5 Brackets used for the mounting of ultra-sonic sensor heads must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

8.8 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

8.8.1 All flow measurements in full pipelines must be done by using electro-magnetic flow (mag-flow) measurement, which is converted into a flow value where accuracy of measurement is required for dosing and/or custody transfer of flow. Where measurement for flow distribution or flow diversion is required (i.e. where high accuracy is not essential), non-intrusive flow measurement using external sensors can be applied. These systems must incorporate either ultrasonic time of flight or Doppler principles. Ultrasonic time of flight systems can be used on clean water with low contents of air bubbles or other entrained gasses and suspended solids of less than 10,000 milligrams/litre. Doppler systems can be used on liquids with entrained particles or gasses of 100 microns or larger and suspended solids in excess of 75 milligrams/litre.

8.8.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

8.8.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable.

8.8.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least one SPDT relay, or an output that can be used to drive a relay, for totalised flow pulses. This output must be user-programmable for the units-per-pulse.

8.8.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

8.8.6 The transmitter for electro-magnetic flow meters must have an accuracy of at least 0.025% of full scale for flow velocities which are less than 0.5 meters/second and at least 0.5% of full scale for flow velocities which are greater than 0.5 meters/second. Transmitters of flow meters for flow distribution/diversion can have an accuracy of less than 0.5% but they must not be less accurate than ±2% of the full scale. Repeatability must not be less than 1% of the measured value.

8.8.7 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display showing instantaneous flow and totalised flow.

8.9 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer

8.9.1 The range of the sensor must be suitable for the application (see items 8.4.7 and 8.4.8 of this specification).

8.9.2 The sensor lining for electro-magnetic flow meters used in sludge or non-corrosive liquids must be Neoprene or Rubber, suitable for operating in temperatures ranging from -10ºC to +80ºC.

8.9.3 The sensor lining for electro-magnetic flow meters used in corrosive or heated liquids must be PTFE, suitable for operating in temperatures ranging from -20ºC to

+150ºC.

8.9.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 68 or higher.

8.9.5 The sensor tube material for electro-magnetic flow meters must be at least 304, 316 or 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

8.9.6 The sensor electrode material for electromagnetic flow meters must be at least 304, 316 or Hastelloy C grade stainless steel.

8.9.7 The sensor for electromagnetic flow meters must have either a grounding electrode or earth rings fitted.

8.9.8 Where process flow in the pipeline cannot be stopped or isolated by any other means, isolation hand valves must be fitted on either side for removal/replacement of the flow meter.

8.9.9 The sensor material for flow meters used for flow distribution/diversion must be stainless steel.

8.9.10 Magnetic flow meters must be equipped with an “Empty Pipe” detection which is configurable to stop the 4-20mA flow indication and/or operate a potential free contact, or an output that can be used to drive a relay, for PLC interfacing.

8.10 Gas Flow

8.10.1 The flow measurement must be done by using differential pressure measurement on either side of an orifice plate or from an averaging pitot tube and employing a capacitance silicon sensor.

8.10.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 67 or higher rating.

8.10.3 The instrument must be equipped with a 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load.

8.10.4 The instrument must be suitable for use with a 24V DC power supply and it must have an Ex ia rating, suitable for use in a Zone 0 area with Methane gas.

8.10.5 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.07% for all calibrated spans and a stability of at least 0.1% of the upper range limit, for no less than 3 years.

8.10.6 The transmitter must have a span adjustment from 0-0,32 up to 32 kPa and a zero adjustment of -100% to +100% of maximum span.

8.10.7 The process wetted parts must all be manufactured from at least 316 stainless steel with Viton “O” rings. All mounting brackets must also be manufactured from at least 316 grade stainless steel.

8.10.8 The process connection must be ¼” NPT Female and the electrical connection must beM20 x 1,5 female.

8.10.9 The maximum static pressure and the maximum DP over-pressure (LP or HP side) must be 160 Bar.

8.10.10 The transmitter must have an LCD display showing instantaneous volumetric flow in m^3/hr.

8.10.11 The range of the instrument must be suitable for the application (see items 8.4.7 and 8.4.8 of this specification)

8.10.12 The instrument must be suitable for an ambient operating temperature range of -20ºC to +70ºC and a process temperature operating range of -20ºC to +120ºC.

8.10.13 The instrument must be suitable for operating in a humidity range of 0 to 100% RH.

8.11 Spares

8.11.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

8.12 Hazardous Areas

8.12.1 If the flow meter is going to be used for any combustible gas flow measurement, the tenderer must ensure that there is a hazardous area classification for the area in which the instrument will be installed.

8.12.2 If no hazardous area classification exists, the tenderer must allow a suitable cost for the classification of all relevant areas and must clearly indicate this cost in either the Bill Of Quantities or in a covering letter.

8.12.3 The flow meter and associated equipment supplied must all be suitable for use in the hazardous area concerned.

8.13 Intrinsically Safe Installations

8.13.1 Where intrinsically safe (IS) installations are required the tenderer must allow a cost to have the IS design from the Engineer certified as safe and compliant with the relevant legal requirements. This certification can only be done by a suitably accredited organization or company.

8.13.2 Once the certified IS design has been installed, the installation must be certified as correct and in accordance with the certified design. The tenderer must allow a cost for the certification. This certification can only be done by a suitably accredited organization or company.

8.13.3 All instruments supplied for use in a hazardous area must have the hazardous area rating and classification (E.g. Ex ia IIC T5) and suitable marking as specified in SANS 10108, ARP 0108:2007, Annex B, indicated on the instrument and the instrument must be certified by an approved testing/certification body as listed in SANS 0108, ARP 0108:2007.

8.14 Data Sheets

8.14.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – OPEN CHANNEL FLOW METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Type & Rating (E.g. SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Programmable Totaliser (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous & total LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

DATA SHEET – FULL PIPELINE FLOW METER (MAGNETIC)

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Type & Rating (E.g. SPDT, 230V AC, 5A or 24V DC output) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Repeatability	
Programmable Totaliser (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous & total LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Transducer/Sensor lining material	
Transducer/Sensor tube material	
Transducer/Sensor grounding details	
Transducer/Sensor equipped with “Empty Pipe” detection as specified (Y/N)?	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DATA SHEET – FULL PIPELINE FLOW METER FOR DISTRIBUTION/DIVERSION

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Type & Rating (E.g. SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Repeatability	
Programmable Totaliser (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous & total LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor material	
Transducer/Sensor rating	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

City of Johannesburg
Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd

DATA SHEET – GAS FLOW METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output	
Hazardous area rating (E.G. Ex ia IIC T5)	
Hazardous classification certification body (E.G. CSA, CESI, DEMKO, DMT, LCIE, etc.) as approved by SANS 10108, ARP 0108:2007.	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Drift	
Range	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous m^3/hr LCD)	
Max static pressure and DP over-pressure	
Ambient temperature operating range	
Process temperature operating range	
Humidity range	
Wetted parts material	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

CONSULTANT CONTRACT JW 5246

PROJECT BWW 523C: PROJECT STANDARDS DOCUMENT

AUTOMATION AND CONTROL DESIGN STANDARDS

VOLUME 23

PRESSURE MEASUREMENT

Rev	Date	Description	Signature: JW Wastewater Partnership	Signature: Approval from Johannesburg Water
2	2012-03-08	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).		
1	2007-03-28	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off		

INDEX

23 PRESSURE MEASUREMENT 3

23.1 Scope 3

23.2 Abbreviations 3

23.3 Standards 3

23.4 General Requirements 4

23.5 Surge Protection 5

23.6 Pressure Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 5

23.7 Pressure Measurement – Sensor/Transducer 6

23.8 Spares 6

23.9 Data Sheets 6

23 PRESSURE MEASUREMENT

23.1 Scope

23.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Pressure meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

23.2 Abbreviations

23.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

23.3 Standards

23.3.1 The supply and installation of all Pressure meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

23.4 General Requirements

23.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

23.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

23.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

23.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

23.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

23.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

23.4.4 FJBs and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

23.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

23.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), or where it is not practically possible (for example where a transmitter is screwed directly into a socket in a pipe or vessel), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

23.4.7 FJBs must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

23.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems,

they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

23.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

23.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

23.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

23.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

23.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

23.5 Surge Protection

23.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

23.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

23.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

23.6 Pressure Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

23.6.1 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

23.6.2 The instrument must be equipped with a 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. If a pressure switch is required, the instrument must be equipped with two digital outputs of which the pressure operating value can be

adjusted.

23.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with a local LCD or LED display to show the instantaneous pressure (for analogue or digital (pressure switch) instruments).

23.6.4 The transmitter must have an error of not more than 0.2% of the full scale value for analogue instruments. This error must include non-linearity, hysteresis, repeatability plus zero-point and full scale deviations. If the error is defined by the maximum deviation of the transmitter output from a best fit straight line (B.F.S.L) in any one calibration cycle, this error must not be greater than 0.1% of the span (or full scale value). For digital instruments (pressure switch) the combined error (including non-linearity, hysteresis, zero point and full scale error) must not be greater than 1%.

23.6.5 The transmitter must be suitable for an ambient operating temperature range of -10ºC to +50ºC.

23.7 Pressure Measurement – Sensor/Transducer

23.7.1 All pressure measurements must be done by using a threaded instrument with a flush diaphragm sensor to ensure that there are no parts protruding into a pipe and which can lead to snagging of material in the medium being measured.

23.7.2 The range of the sensor must be suitable for the application (see items 9.4.8 and 9.4.9 of this specification).

23.7.3 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -10ºC to +100ºC.

23.7.4 The sensor must be equipped with automatic temperature compensation.

23.7.5 The sensor must have an overpressure safety of not less than 1.33 times the measuring range.

23.7.6 The sensor diaphragm material must be ceramic.

23.8 Spares

23.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

23.9 Data Sheets

23.9.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – PRESSURE METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 2 x PNP, 250mA) & Programmable (Y/N)?)	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Controller/Transmitter Accuracy	
Resolution	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous pressure & LCD)	
Transmitter ambient temperature range	
Sensor temperature operating range	
Sensor process connection - Flush diaphragm (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Sensor overpressure safety rating (??? times range)	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details.	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 16 : AMMONIA ANALYSING

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.

PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 13 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 16 : Ammonia Analysing**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 16**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	13	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	12	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to labelling specification & updated filtration supplied by JW.
2014-04-17	10	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	9	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	8	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	7	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	6	C. Du Toit	Included latest laboratory requirements & removed 2010 logo.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter position requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

16 AMMONIA ANALYSING 4

16.1 Scope 4

16.2 Abbreviations 4

16.3 Standards 4

16.4 Scope Of Work 5

16.5 General Requirements 5

16.6 Surge Protection 6

16.7 Analyser – Required Features 7

16.8 Analyser - Filtration Requirements 8

16.9 Spares 9

16.10 Data Sheets 10

16 AMMONIA ANALYSING

16.1 Scope

16.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Ammonia analysers, complete with sampling, filtration, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

16.2 Abbreviations

16.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS : British Standards
PLC : Programmable Logic Controller
I/O : Input/Output
CPU : Central Processing Unit
UPS : Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC : Motor Control Centre
MCB : Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD : Surge Protection Device
FJB : Field Junction Box
SSO : Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT : Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD : Liquid Crystal Display
LED : Light Emitting Diode
mg/l : Milligram per litre
O&M : Operating And Maintenance
FSD : Full Scale Deflection (Also refers to maximum range)

16.3 Standards

16.3.1 The supply and installation of all Ammonia analysers and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1 : National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004 : National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005 : Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980 : Paint colour chart.

16.4 Scope Of Work

16.4.1 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all fittings, brackets, piping, cabling, etc. required for the complete sampling, analyzing, display and interfacing (e.g. to PLC's) system.

16.4.2 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of all Field Junction Boxes (FJB's) with circuit breakers, surge protection, terminals, trunking, etc. required to ensure compliance with this specification.

16.4.3 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of the analyzer and all required filtration systems to ensure sample analyzing in accordance with this specification.

16.4.4 The contractor will be required to conduct annual electronic functionality tests on the analysers.

16.4.5 The contractor must ensure a one month supply of the minimum stock levels of instrument replacement parts such as lamps, tubes, etc.

16.5 General Requirements

16.5.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

16.5.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.5.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.5.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.5.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.5.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.5.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

16.5.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.5.4 FJB's and all sampling pumps, filtration units, fittings, displays, etc., must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

16.5.5 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.)

such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

16.5.6 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

16.5.7 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, solids in liquid, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

16.5.8 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or there are solid particles too large for proper operation, or the analyser is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

16.5.9 Each analyser must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, or it must be supplied from a 15 Amp, earth leakage protected, switched socket outlet to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

16.5.10 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

16.5.11 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the analyser and associated equipment for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

16.5.12 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

16.6 Surge Protection

16.6.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the

Automation And Control Standards).

16.6.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.6.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

16.7 Analyser – Required Features

16.7.1 All analytical measurement must be based on the colorimetric reaction of analyte with reagents and the subsequent measurement of change in colour, which is then converted to mg/l of ammonia. The analyser must employ the Modified Bertelot Method for analysis, in which the principle of measurement is that the ammonia complexes with the salicylate and then reacts with the chlorine generated from the dichloroisocyanurate reagent to form an emerald green complex.

16.7.2 The addition of sample and reagent must be reliable, using the minimum of moving parts.

16.7.3 Zero point measurement and automatic compensation must be performed at least once per measuring cycle.

16.7.4 Routine operation and calibration must be selectable for manual or automatic.

16.7.5 The analysis cycle must not take more than 20 minutes.

16.7.6 Operating parameters such as sample sequencing must be programmable.

16.7.7 An automatic clean/rinse cycle between analyses must be available.

16.7.8 The sample flow to the analyser must be monitored and if a no-flow situation occurs, the problematic stream must be placed on standby while the balance of the streams are analysed.

16.7.9 All instrument enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

16.7.10 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable for the ammonia measurement of each stream.

16.7.11 The instrument must be equipped with at least one SPDT alarm relay per stream, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. These outputs must be user-programmable for each stream.

16.7.12 The analyser must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

16.7.13 The analyser must have an accuracy of at least 1% of FSD.

16.7.14 The analyser must have a reproducibility of at least 1% (calculated from 5 consecutive standards manually introduced).

16.7.15 The analyser must have a linear response within the calibration range. Preference will be given to multiple point calibration.

16.7.16 The analyser function must be micro processor controlled.

16.7.17 The analyser must have programmable stream sequencing.

16.7.18 The analyser must have a facility to insert a grab sample for quality assurance purposes.

16.7.19 Within the analyser, the reagent storage area, the analysing section and the electronics section must be kept separate to prevent damage from spillages.

16.7.20 The analyser must have a local data storage facility for at least 100 results for ease of local checks.

16.7.21 The analyser must have an LCD and/or LED display. The analyser must show the instantaneous ammonia value and alarm relay status.

16.7.22 The range of the analyser must be from 0 to 2 ppm with an option of manually changing the range from 1 to 3 ppm and must be suitable for the application (see items 16.5.7 and 16.5.8 of this specification).

16.7.23 The analyser must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -3ºC to +45ºC and a relative humidity of 71%.

16.7.24 No priming of sampling pumps must be required.

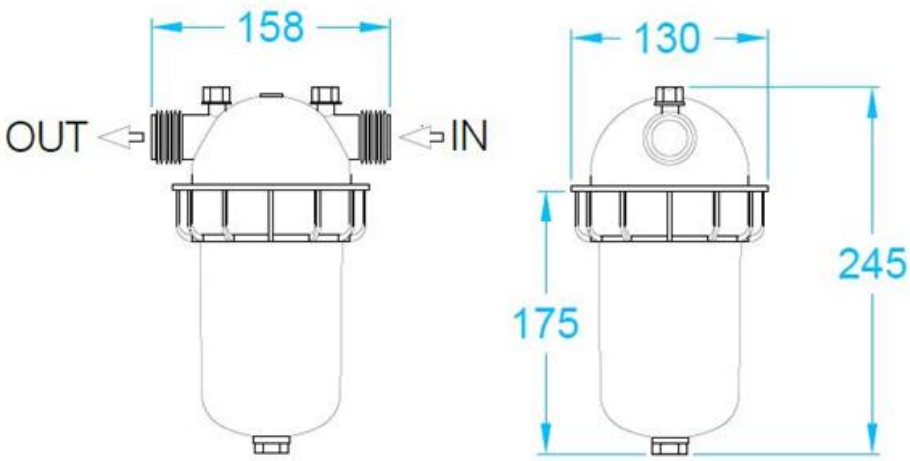
16.7.25 The system is required to perform monitoring on a continual batch basis and must be capable of unattended operation for at least 96 hours.

16.7.26 The system must use suitably sized piping or tubing in order to pass small quantities of suspended solids.

16.8 Analyser - Filtration Requirements

16.8.1 Effluent that has passed through a cyclone separator is available at each installation point and may be used if suitable. These separators are constructed of stainless steel, have a maximum flow rate of above 250ml per minute and can handle particles up to 3.2 mm. If this effluent is not suitable, the tenderer must offer whatever additional equipment is needed in order to remove sufficient solids from the effluent supplied for the successful operation of the instrument.

16.8.2 In addition to the cyclone separator a mechanical filter with the specifications below will also be provided by the client in the effluent supply to the analyser:



25mm / 1" Disc Filter Specifications

25mm / 1" Disc Filter Specifications

Pressure Maximum (m)	100
Pressure Minimum (m)	n/a
Flow rate Maximum (m3/h) for 130um to 400um	6
Flow rate Maximum (m3/h) for 55um	4.2
Flow Rate Minimum (m3/h)	n/a
Filtration Area (cm2)	308
Filtration Volume (cm3)	370
Outer Diameter of Filter Element (mm)	70
Temperature Rangew (degrees Celcius)	1 - 70
PH Range	4-11

16.8.3 Filtration units supplied by the contractor must be capable of switching from an exhausted filtration unit to a fresh one, or to facilitate cleaning, by turning valves or other simple manual means. The units must consist of two filters in parallel.

16.8.4 Filtration units supplied by the contractor must be of robust design with low maintenance requirements (i.e. between 4 and 8 weeks maintenance intervention required, depending on the contamination levels).

16.9 Spares

16.9.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a list of recommended spares for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as

part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

16.10 Data Sheets

16.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – AMMONIA ANALYSER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
1. ANALYSER	
1.1 Make/Manufacturer	
1.2 Type/Model	
1.3 Supplier/Vendor	
1.4 Principle of operation	
1.5 Number of channels/streams	
1.6 Sample capture method	
1.7 PERFORMANCE	
1.7.1 Measuring range	
1.7.2 Accuracy	
1.7.3 Repeatability	
1.7.4 Standard deviation of measurement	
1.7.5 Frequency of auto compensation	
1.7.6 Cycle time	
1.7.7 Measurement time	
1.7.8 Calibration time	
1.7.9 Calibration method	

1.7.10 Measured wavelength	
1.7.11 Detection limit	
1.7.12 Drift over 24 hrs	
1.7.13 Sample flow rate (l/hr)	
1.7.14 Method interferences	
1.7.15 Diagnostics	
1.7.16 Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous Ammonia, LCD).	
1.7.17 Sample pressure requirement (bar)	
1.7.18 Operating temperature range	
1.8 GENERAL	
1.8.1 Dimensions	
1.8.2 Supply voltage & frequency	
1.8.3 Analogue Output Type & Programmable for each stream (Y/N)?	
1.8.4 Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable per stream (Y/N)?	
1.8.5 Reagents	
1.8.6 Reagent consumption	
1.8.7 Analyser Enclosure Rating	

2. FILTRATION UNIT	
2.1 Manufacturer/Make	
2.2 Model/Type	
2.3 Supplier/Vendor	
2.4 PERFORMANCE	
2.4.1 No. of filter tubes	
2.4.2 Separation method	
2.4.3 Chemical stability	
2.4.4 Sample temperature	
2.4.5 Sample flow rate	
2.4.6 Service life	
2.4.7 Dimensions	
2.5 COMPANY RESOURCES	
2.5.1 No. of personnel	
2.5.2 Training	
2.5.3 Experience	
2.5.4 Qualifications	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 6 : CABLING

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 17 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 6 : Cabling**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 6**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	17	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-08-14	16	C. Du Toit	Updated materials for use in corrosive areas (GRP).
2019-06-15	15	C. Du Toit	JW comments included (Trenching under roads, sleeve draw wires, route marker painting, manhole covers and
2018-11-30	14	C. Du Toit	Added maximum losses for OTDR & OLTS testing, standards for data cable testing, protective tiles and
2014-04-17	13	C. Du Toit	Added blown fibre, splicing requirements & laser safety.
2013-10-07	12	C. Du Toit	Updated footer, bends for cable racks, cores in fibre-optic cables, fibre-optic cable type, earthing for theft
2012-07-27	11	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	10	C. Du Toit	Updated support material for Ferric Chloride areas.
2012-03-08	9	C. Du Toit	Altered height of cable route markers, added new wiring size requirements and precedence of wiring sizes,
2011-07-11	8	C. Du Toit	Added cable theft prevention measures and removed 2010 logo.

2010-07-27	7	C. Du Toit	Added details of cable route markers and updated materials for cable ladders.
2009-08-18	6	C. Du Toit	Added new logos, cable rack material & colour and warning tape in trenches.
2009-05-08	5	C. Du Toit	Added requirements from client meeting on 04 May 2009.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2008-10-08	3	C. Du Toit	"Joburg" & "JW" Logos added to top & partnership logos removed.
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

6 CABLING 4

6.1 Scope 4

6.2 Abbreviations 4

6.3 Standards 4

6.4 General 5

6.5 Cabling On Racks And Supports 11

6.6 Electric Cable Terminations 13

6.7 Cables, Sleeves Or Microduct Assemblies In Trenches 14

6.8 Fibre-Optic Data Cable Terminations 18

6.9 Copper Data Cables 21

6.10 Data Cabling General 22

6.11 Cable Theft Prevention Measures 22

6 CABLING

6.1 Scope

6.1.1 This specification covers the selection, installation, testing, marking and termination of electrical cables used for low voltage power and control installations as well as fibre-optic and copper cables for data transmission, used in process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

6.2 Abbreviations

6.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

SANS	:	South African National Standards
IEC	:	International Electrotechnical Commission
EN	:	Standards from the European Committee for Standardization
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
UV	:	Ultra Violet
PVC	:	Poly Vinyl Chloride
OTDR	:	Optical Time Domain Reflectometer
OLTS	:	Optical Loss Test Set
SFP	:	Small Form Pluggable

MRM Ref. No. : The nominal mass in kg/m^2 multiplied by 100, used for steel wire mesh reinforcing.

6.3 Standards

6.3.1 All design standards for cabling shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises
SANS 1507	:	Electric Cables (300/500V to 900/3300V)
SANS 1574	:	Electric Cables Flexible cords and flexible cables
SANS 1411-1 to 7	:	Material of insulated electric cables and flexible cords
SANS 1507-1 to 3	:	Electric cables with extruded solid dielectric insulation for fixed installations (300/500V to 1900/3300V)
SANS 1803-1	:	Lugs and ferrules for insulated cables
SANS 60793	:	Optical fibres
SANS 1024:2006	:	Steel wire mesh
IEC 60793	:	Optical fibres
SANS 60794	:	Optical fibre cables
IEC 60794	:	Optical fibre cables

ISO/IEC 14763-3	:	Fibre optic testing
TIA/EIA 568-B.2-10	:	Copper data cable testing
EN 50288	:	Multi-element metallic cables used in analogue and digital communications and control
ISO/IEC SANS 11801:2002	:	Information Technology – Generic cabling for customer premises
IEC 60332-1	:	Flammability of a single vertical cable

6.4 General

6.4.1 All cables and wiring supplied must be supplied complete with fittings, accessories, etc.

6.4.2 The installation of all wires and cables must comply with SANS 10142-1:2003 and SANS 1507-1 to 3, all as amended.

6.4.3 The installation of flexible cords must comply with SANS 1574:2004 as amended.

6.4.4 All power, control and instrumentation cables (i.e. excluding fibre-optic cabling for data transmission) and wires must have untinned, annealed, multi-strand copper conductors and must comply with, SANS 1507-2 and SANS 1507-3: 2002 as amended.

6.4.5 All power, control and instrumentation cables (i.e. excluding fibre-optic cabling for data transmission) and wires must comply with the latest edition of SANS 1411-1 to 7 in terms of material of construction. The sheath of these cables must be an impermeable, halogen-free, reduced smoke emission, flame retardant, UV stabilised compound in accordance with the latest edition of SANS 1411.

6.4.6 All fibre-optic cables must comply with SANS 60793-1 for measurement and test methods, SANS 60793-2 for product specifications and SANS 60794 for generic, sectional and family specifications.

6.4.7 All blown fibre-optic installations must comply with the requirements of SANS 60794-5 which specifies the requirements of microduct optical fibre cables, microduct fibre units, microducts and protected microducts for installation by blowing for outdoor and/or indoor use.

6.4.8 All fibre-optic micro cables must comply with the requirements of SANS 60794-5-10 and all blown fibre-optic bundles must comply with the requirements of SANS 60794-5-20.

6.4.9 All blown fibre installations must be done by people who can provide proof of certified training by a recognized supplier/installer such as Lonspeare SA (Pty) Ltd. or equivalent.

6.4.10 Where fibre-optic data communication is employed, blown fibre installations will be the preferred method. Only where the use of fibre-optic cabling is unavoidable, will such cabling, instead of blown fibre assemblies be accepted.

6.4.11 All wires and cables must be from fresh stock, with the manufacturer’s original wrappings, labels and seals intact when delivered to site.

6.4.12 All cables must be inspected for visible defects or signs of damage before installation. A

checklist of cables checked for visible defects/damage must be available on request.

6.4.13 All cable ends must be sealed or capped immediately after cutting to prevent ingress of moisture, dirt, impurities, etc. This applies to cables to be installed as well as cable remaining on the drum.

6.4.14 Where cables or wires of different voltages run in the same trunking, cable trays, cable racks or cable supports, all insulation must be rated for the highest voltage being conducted.

6.4.15 For PLC panel wiring, this specification must be read in conjunction with the PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

6.4.16 All electrical and instrumentation cables must be tested, and the results recorded, for insulation resistance and conductivity in accordance with SANS 1507-3:2002 as amended, before installation and again before final termination. Rectification of faults in cables before final termination will be for the contractor's account.

6.4.17 For PLC I/O wiring, the minimum conductor size shall be 0.5mm^2 but contractors must ensure that all cables and wiring are capable of carrying the full system currents, inclusive of de-rating factors as specified in SANS 10142-1:2003 as amended.

6.4.18 All wiring for PLC panels, junction boxes, control panels, etc. shall be flexible, untinned, annealed, multi-strand copper wire of not less than:-

6.4.18.1 6mm² for 230V AC power between the main incoming circuit breaker of the PLC panel and the distribution AC circuit breakers.

6.4.18.2 4mm² for 24V DC power between the main DC circuit breaker of the PLC panel and the distribution DC circuit breakers.

6.4.18.3 1,5mm² for 230V AC or 110V AC power from below the distribution circuit breakers.

6.4.18.4 1,0mm² for 24V DC or AC power from below the distribution circuit breakers.

6.4.18.5 0,5mm² for all PLC I/O wiring between modules and marshalling terminals.

6.4.18.6 4,0mm² for earth drain.

6.4.19 Irrespective of the minimum wire sizes allowed in this specification, contractors must ensure that all cables and wiring are capable of carrying the full system currents, inclusive of de-rating factors as specified in SANS 10142-1:2003 as amended. If wiring of greater cross-sectional area than the sizes indicated in item 6.4.17 and 6.4.18 above are indicated on project design drawings, the larger wiring sizes will take precedence.

6.4.20 All wires and cable cores must be fitted with suitable lugs at the end of each wire or core. The fitting of lugs and ferrules must comply with SANS 1803-1:2002 as amended. No more than one wire may be crimped into a single lug. Where pin lugs are crimped onto the ends of wires, correctly sized pin lugs must be used, which fit into the terminals properly and such that the tightening of the terminal does not result in the loosening of the pin lug.

6.4.21 The use of lugs and ferrules must comply with SANS 1803-1:2002 as amended.

6.4.22 The outer sheath of all power cabling must be black and the outer sheath of all instrumentation and control cabling must be orange. The power supply to instruments

and transmitters are regarded as part of the instrumentation cabling and must therefore have an orange outer sheath. The outer sheaths of all blown fibre microduct assemblies must also be orange. Where blown fibre microduct assemblies have an outer sheath of a specific material (such as UV protection) which is not available in orange, the contractor can apply to the Engineer for a concession to use the assembly as is and only attach an orange heat-shrink (for identification purposes) at the ends where terminations are made.

6.4.23 The jacket or buffer tubes of fibre cores in fibre-optic cables must be colour coded and terminated in the following sequence:

Fibre/Tube	Colour
1	Blue
2	Orange
3	Green
4	Brown
5	Grey (Slate)
6	White
7	Red
8	Black
9	Yellow
10	Violet
11	Pink (Rose)
12	Aqua (Turquoise)

6.4.24 All fibre-optic cable will be CST (corrugated steel tape) or steel wire armoured, rodent-proof, UV protected, loose-tube, water blocking, suitable for use in direct burial and manufactured with an orange PVC sheath. The conductive steel armour of installed fibre cables shall be properly grounded to the protective earth at all termination points.

6.4.25 All blown fibre microduct assemblies installed in trenches must be suitable for direct burial in terms of strength and mechanical protection.

6.4.26 All blown fibre microduct assemblies installed on cable racks or supports above ground must have suitable mechanical protection. Suitable mechanical protection includes, blown fibre microduct assemblies on racks that are covered with metal covers, blown fibre microduct assemblies installed in metal tubing and blown fibre microduct assemblies with steel wire armouring or steel tape armouring.

6.4.27 Where blown fibre microduct assemblies are installed in buildings or in cable tunnels, such microduct assemblies must have an inner and outer sheath of fire retardant material. The outer sheath must also be low-smoke and halogen-free.

6.4.28 Where blown fibre microduct assemblies are exposed to direct sunlight, such microduct assemblies must have an outer sheath that is UV protected.

6.4.29 The contractor must take very careful note of the requirements for blown fibre microduct assemblies as outlined in items 6.4.25 to 6.4.28 above. These requirements imply that where the installation conditions change, suitable blown fibre microduct assemblies must be installed to suit the requirements of each section of the installation. The table below gives an example of the blown fibre microduct assembly requirements for various sections of an installation:

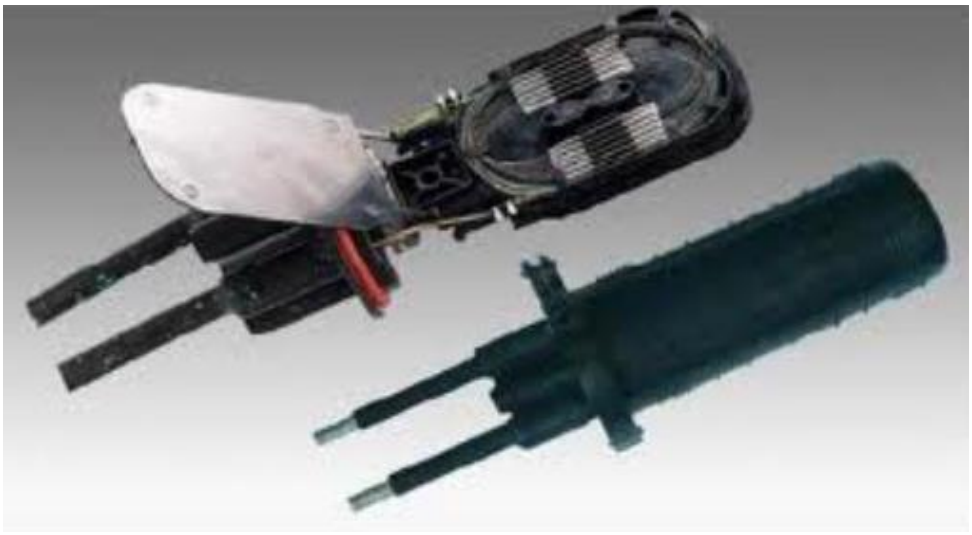
Installation Condition	Blown Fibre Microduct Assembly Requirem
In ceiling of a building	Rodent-proof, low-smoke, fire retardant, halogen
On a cable support against the side of the building	Steel wire or steel tape armoured, UV protected.
Buried in a trench	Suitable for direct burial.
On a rack in the open above ground	Mechanical protection, UV protection (if mechani protection is not steel covers or metal tubing).
On a rack inside a building	Mechanical protection, low-smoke, halogen-free, retardant.

6.4.30 All cables on racks, in trenches, in tunnels, in wire ways, on cable supports, etc. must be vermin-proof. I.e. such cables must be equipped with suitable armouring to prevent rodents or other vermin from chewing through core conductors or their insulation.

6.4.31 Bending of all cables and microduct assemblies for blown fibres must be limited to the safe criteria specified by the manufacturers.

6.4.32 Holes for cables or blown fibre microduct assemblies passing through walls, floors, partitions, ceilings, etc. must be done neatly and must be sealed off with plaster or filler as appropriate.

6.4.33 Splices in cables are prohibited, unless the route lengths exceed the maximum length of a drum or if the Engineer agrees to a splice. In such cases splices are to be made by using approved proprietary types of junction boxes, installed in an appropriate manner. For fibre-optic cables, dome splicing kits with a protection rating of at least IP68, installed in a manhole must be used. The dome splicing kit must be mounted vertically inside the manhole. The manhole must be big enough to create a 3m service loop in the each cable without exceeding the minimum bending radius of the cable and big enough to mount the enclosure appropriately in the manhole. Only fusion splices will be acceptable and ease of access to the splice must be ensured. Examples of such dome splicing kits are shown below. Alternatively the splice can be made in a junction box that complies with all the requirements of the specification “Field Junction Boxes And Panels” (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards), mounted on a proper support, above ground level. Once a splice is completed, all the testing requirements of items 6.8.8 and 6.8 9 below must be complied with.



6.4.34 For blown fibre microduct assemblies, in-line splicing kits, installed in a manhole, can be used if a splice is approved by the Engineer. These kits must also have a protection rating of at least IP68. Only fusion splices will be acceptable and ease of access to the splice must be ensured. An example of such an in-line splicing kit is shown below. Alternatively the splice can be made in a junction box that complies with all the requirements of the specification “Field Junction Boxes And Panels” (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards), mounted on a proper support, above ground level. Once a splice is completed, all the testing requirements of items 6.8.8 and 6.8 9 below must be complied with.

6.4.35 Splices in copper cables can be done with the aid of proprietary, resin-encapsulated splices that are completely water-proof (such as Scotch Cast or similar). Alternatively the splice can be made in a junction box that complies with all the requirements of the specification “Field Junction Boxes And Panels” (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards), mounted on a proper support, above ground level.

6.4.36 Manholes used for splicing can be constructed using bricks or concrete. The manhole must allow for adequate drainage of water. All sleeves entering the manhole must be sealed with an appropriate sealer that will prevent moisture, dirt, rodents, etc. from getting into the sleeves, but the sealant must be of such material that it can easily be removed if required in future. The area around the sleeve where it enters the manhole must also be sealed to prevent moisture, mud, rodents, etc. from getting into the manhole. The manhole must not have any sharp edges that can damage cables or microduct assemblies.

6.4.37 Cables or conductors passing through holes must be fully protected against damage by

correctly fitted grommets, bushes, etc.

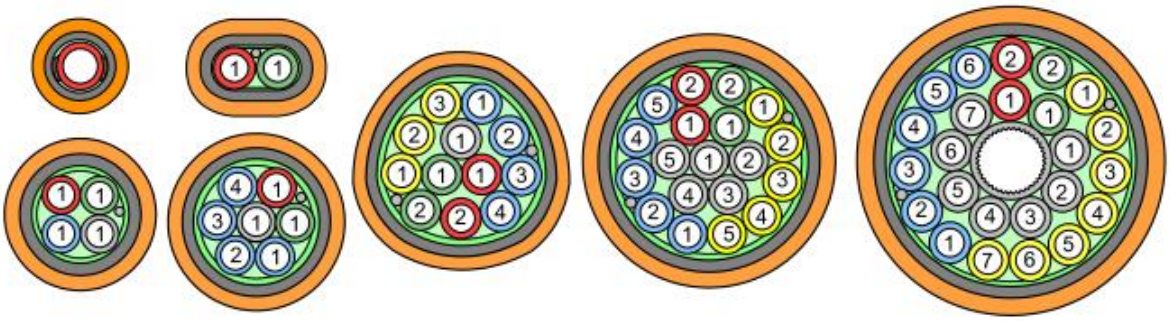
6.4.38 All cable routes, including trenches, cable racks, tunnels, cable supports, etc. must be clearly marked on drawings and submitted for approval by the Engineer. The project will not be regarded as complete until such cable route drawings have been submitted and approved.

6.4.39 The jacket or buffer tubes of fibre bundles used in blown fibre installations must be colour coded and terminated in the following sequence:

Fibre/Tube	Colour
1	Blue
2	Orange
3	Green
4	Brown
5	Grey (Slate)
6	White
7	Red
8	Black
9	Yellow
10	Violet
11	Pink (Rose)
12	Aqua (Turquoise)

6.4.40 The microducts (or inner tubes) of microduct assemblies used for blown fibre installations must be constructed from low-friction Poly Ethylene (PE). These microducts must be 5/3.5 in size (i.e. 5mm OD and 3.5mm ID). Surrounding the group of microducts, must be a layer of waterswell tape. Where steel wire armour or steel tape armour is not used, the microduct assembly must be metal-free.

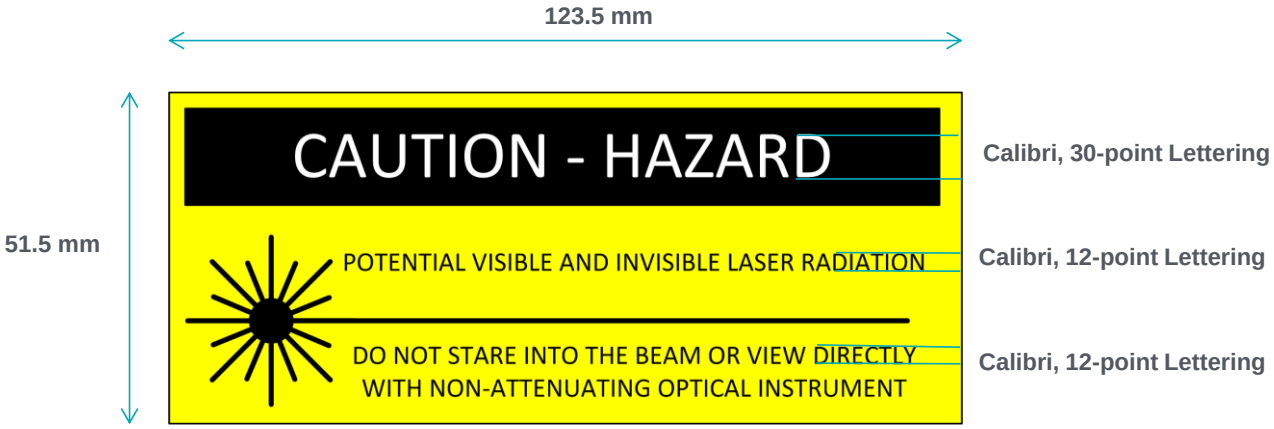
6.4.41 Microducts in microduct assemblies must be available in 1, 2, 4, 7, 12, 19 and 24 microduct assemblies and must be numbered and colour-coded as indicated in the sketch below.



6.4.42 The routes (i.e. source and destination) of microducts installed at each splice and/or termination must be noted down in detail during installation. This record must indicate for each fibre bundle that is blown into a microduct: Source – microduct colour – microduct number and Destination – microduct colour – microduct number. This detailed record must be submitted to the Engineer for approval before the blowing in of fibre bundles commences. Once it is approved, installation must be done according to this record. If a change is made, such a change must be recorded and a final “as-built” record of the installation must be produced for record purposes. The project will not be

regarded as complete until such microduct route records have been submitted and approved.

6.4.43 Wherever fibre-optic ends exist, such as at patch panels, splices, switches, transmitters, receivers, etc. and where it would be possible for a person to look into such fibre-optic ends, a danger warning as shown by the image below (or equivalent approved by the engineer), must be affixed to the panel, enclosure, etc. This label must comply with all the requirements stipulated in the JW Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).



6.5 Cabling On Racks And Supports

6.5.1 Cable ladders shall, unless otherwise specified, be heavy-duty cable ladder standard pattern.

6.5.2 Cable ladders used inside Elutriation Terrace pump stations or in areas within 10m or less of Ferric Chloride, Sodium Hypochlorite or Chlorine shall be manufactured from corrosion resistant GRP (Glass Reinforced Polyester). All GRP cable ladders shall consist of a 75 mm high side rail. The minimum thickness of the material that the cable rack is to be manufactured from, shall at least be 4mm. Cross rungs shall be spaced at maximum intervals of 300 mm (centre-to-centre). All screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be 316 grade stainless steel for all these corrosive applications, and all exposed metal shall be painted with a 2-component auto-motive or industrial paint (2K poly urethane paint). Racks for instrumentation and control cabling shall contain pigmentation to produce an electric orange rack. A sample of the rack material must be approved by the engineer before manufacturing commences. Sections of rack, bends, t-pieces etc. shall be joined together with the correct dowels and resins as specified by the supplier. Wherever racking is drilled or cut, the exposed areas of GRP must be sealed with the same resin and painted with 2K paint to ensure that the material does not fray. Channels or other sections used for securing of cable ladders should also be made from GRP. All cable glands must be totally encapsulated glands (envirogland type) as shown in the example below.

6.5.3 The GRP profile (cable rack or equipment support) shall consist of pultruded (i.e. a continuous process of pulling material, such as **glass fiber** and resin, through a shaped die for manufacturing of composite materials with constant cross-section), e-glass roving and e-glass multi-axial fabric strength mat, sandwiched between polyester synthetic veil or tissue of minimum 35 gram/ m^2, all of which is encased in an isophthalic vinyl-ester resin. The resin must contain UV stabiliser. It must also contain pigment to provide colour and additional environmental protection. The rack or support must be cleaned and de-greased before it is painted with a 2K automotive or industrial poly urethane paint.

6.5.4 Cable ladders used inside de-watering buildings shall be metal cable ladders, manufactured from corrosion resistant, powder coated, 3CR12 grade stainless steel. All cable ladders shall consist of at least 75 mm high side rail. The minimum sheet thickness of the material that the cable rack is to be manufactured from shall at least be 2mm. Cross rungs shall be spaced at maximum intervals of 300 mm (centre-to-centre). All screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be 316 grade stainless steel. Metal racks for instrumentation and control cabling shall be powder coated electric orange.

6.5.5 Cable ladders used for all applications other than those mentioned in items 6.5.2 to 6.5.4 above shall be heavy-duty metal cable ladders, manufactured from corrosion resistant hot-dipped galvanised, powder coated, mild steel. All metal cable ladders shall consist of at least 75 mm high side rail. The minimum sheet thickness of the material that the cable rack is to be manufactured from shall at least be 3mm. Cross rungs shall be spaced at maximum intervals of 300 mm (centre-to-centre). All screws, bolts and nuts shall be hexagonal to ISO Metric commercial standards. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be 316 grade stainless steel. Racks for instrumentation and control cabling shall be powder coated electric orange.

6.5.6 Power and control cabling must always be separated by no less than 500mm. Where it is unavoidable to cross power and control cabling, such cross-overs must be done at right angles.

6.5.7 Only single layers of cable will be allowed on a rack, to reduce de-rating and for ease of replacement and/or repairs.

6.5.8 Bends in cable racks and supports shall have radii which will ensure that cables are not bent more than the safe criteria specified by the cable manufacturers. For this reason all racking, whether horizontal or vertical must include 90 degree bends where there are 90 degree direction changes in cable runs. I.e. cabling cannot be run from one straight cable rack onto another straight cable rack at 90 degrees, without a 90 degree cable rack bend.

6.5.9 Angle iron cable supports may be used. All such angle iron supports must be hot-dipped galvanised, 3CR12 grade stainless steel, 304 grade stainless steel or 316 grade stainless steel and electric orange powder coated as for the cable racks. The material will depend on the application area as specified in items 6.5.2 to 6.5.5 above.

6.5.10 No more than two cables may be run on a single angle iron support.

6.5.11 The size of angle iron supports must be such that no part of a cable projects beyond the support.

6.5.12 The minimum size of angle iron cable supports is 25mm x 25mm x 5mm.

6.5.13 Wherever possible cable racks must be mounted in the vertical plane to avoid accumulation of dirt and debris.

6.5.14 UV stabilised PVC straps may be used for cables up to 4core x 25mm^2. For cables of larger diameter than this (i.e. 30mm diameter and larger), stainless steel strapping must be used.

6.5.15 Cables must be marked at both ends with stainless steel cable markers strapped to the cable with stainless steel or UV resistant straps in a position where this number is visible without the need to move cables or equipment to view the number. Cable numbering must comply with all the requirements of the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

6.6 Electric Cable Terminations

6.6.1 All cable terminations must be made in a professional manner and cables shall be made off by using appropriate cable glands and UV treated shrouds. Glands similar or equal to the "Enviro" glands supplied by some manufacturers must be used. All cable glands must be:

- environmentally sealed to IP68 against the ingress of water from either end of the cable gland
- constructed from brass and black nylon plastic encapsulation
- supplied complete with brass locknut
- have a loose cone bush and cone ring
- suitable for use in an Ex e application and must therefore have an Ex identification band

6.6.2 Proprietary type wire strippers shall be used and no stranded conductor shall be terminated if one or more strands have been damaged.

6.6.3 Not more than one wire shall be connected to any terminal unless the terminal can accept pin lugs on either side of a screw or unless proper connecting material is used (see examples below).

Every wire shall be marked at both ends with a numbering system as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Design Standards), or if approved by the Engineer, and all terminating wires shall also be suitably crimped to a terminal lug. Not more than one wire shall be crimped into a single lug. Bare wire terminations will not be accepted.

6.6.4 Where lugs are bolted onto studs, suitably sized lugs must be used. Enlarged holes in lugs will not be accepted.

6.6.5 Where pin lugs are crimped onto the ends of wires, correctly sized pin lugs must be used, which fit into the terminals properly and such that the tightening of the terminal

does not result in the loosening of the pin lug.

6.6.6 Where cable cores are terminated, sufficient slack must be allowed for wiring changes, re-terminations, etc.

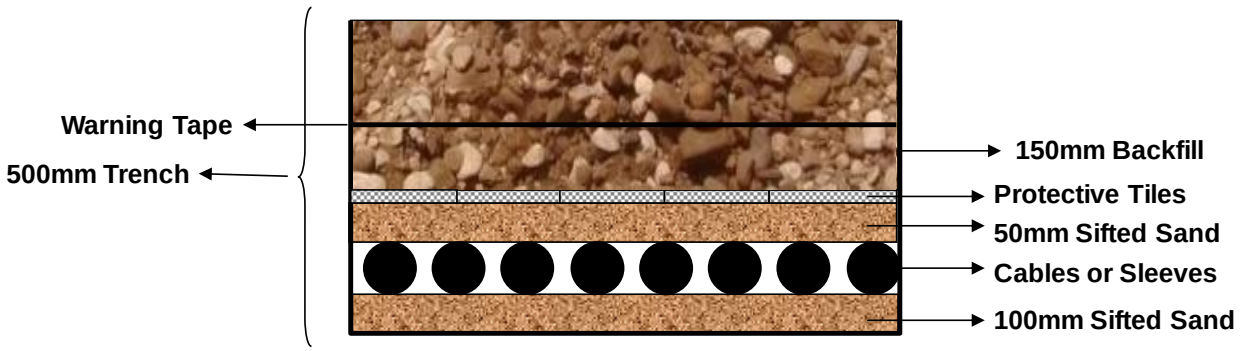
6.6.7 Where cable junction boxes, terminal boxes or terminations in instruments or any other panels in the field take place it must be ensured that such a junction box, termination box, instrument, etc. is not exposed to fire hazards from burning grass or other vegetation. If such a termination point is out in the open field (e.g. where grass grows below and/or around it), a clear area of at least 2.5m radius around this termination point must be provided. This must be a permanent clearing, such as a cement or concrete surface. A mere clearing of vegetation which can grow back again will not be accepted.

6.7 Cables, Sleeves Or Microduct Assemblies In Trenches

6.7.1 All cabling in trenches must be armoured cables to ensure sufficient mechanical protection.

6.7.2 Where cabling (electrical or fibre-optic) has to be done between points where cabling will not run along cable racks, in cable ducts or in cable tunnels, these cables or microduct assemblies for blown fibre must be run in trenches. Overhead cabling will not be acceptable. Blown fibre microduct assemblies buried in trenches must be suitable for direct burial.

6.7.3 Cable trenches must be at least 500 mm deep. There must be a 100mm layer of selective backfill (soft sifted sand), free of sharp and hard objects, at the bottom of the trench and another 50mm layer of selective backfill (soft sifted sand) directly above the cable, sleeves or microduct assemblies. Thereafter a single layer of protective pre-cast concrete tiles must be placed, without spaces between tiles, so that it forms one continuous protective layer. On top of the concrete tiles a layer of approximately150mm backfill must be placed before placing plastic cable warning tape. The warning tape must consist of a strip of polyethylene of thickness 0,04 mm and of nominal width 230 mm, completely impregnated with a pigment such that the colour of the tape is yellow, colour No B49 of SANS 1091, and having printed at intervals not exceeding 1 metre along its length, a black-triangle and an electric flash symbol and the words "Danger, Gevaar, Ingozi". Thereafter the trench must be filled with sand (see the sketch below).



6.7.4 Protective concrete tiles in trenches are there to provide protection against hand digging and warning of cables below. These tiles therefore can be paving blocks, precast wall slabs, etc. Requirements are that the tiles are not less than 38mm thick and will not break under their own weight (i.e. when the longest span of the tile or slab is supported on its ends) or when laid in the trenches by commonly accepted means.

The tiles must also not break when the soil is compacted. The tiles must cover the entire width and length of the trench. Before purchasing any protective tiles, the contractor must submit details of the proposed tiles to the engineer for approval.

6.7.5 Where trenches pass under roads, railway lines, buildings, structures, etc., the cable trench must be at least 800 mm deep and at least 110mm HDPE (High-density polyethylene) double wall, corrugated pipes must be used as sleeving.

6.7.6 Protective concrete tiles in trenches under roads must comply with all the requirements listed in item 6.7.4 above plus the concrete tiles must not break if subjected to the heavy vehicle traffic on that road. The requirements mentioned in items 6.7.5 and 6.7.6 must be extended for 2 meters beyond the edge of roads to ensure that cables and cable sleeves will suffer no damage from heavy vehicles driving beyond the edge of the road.

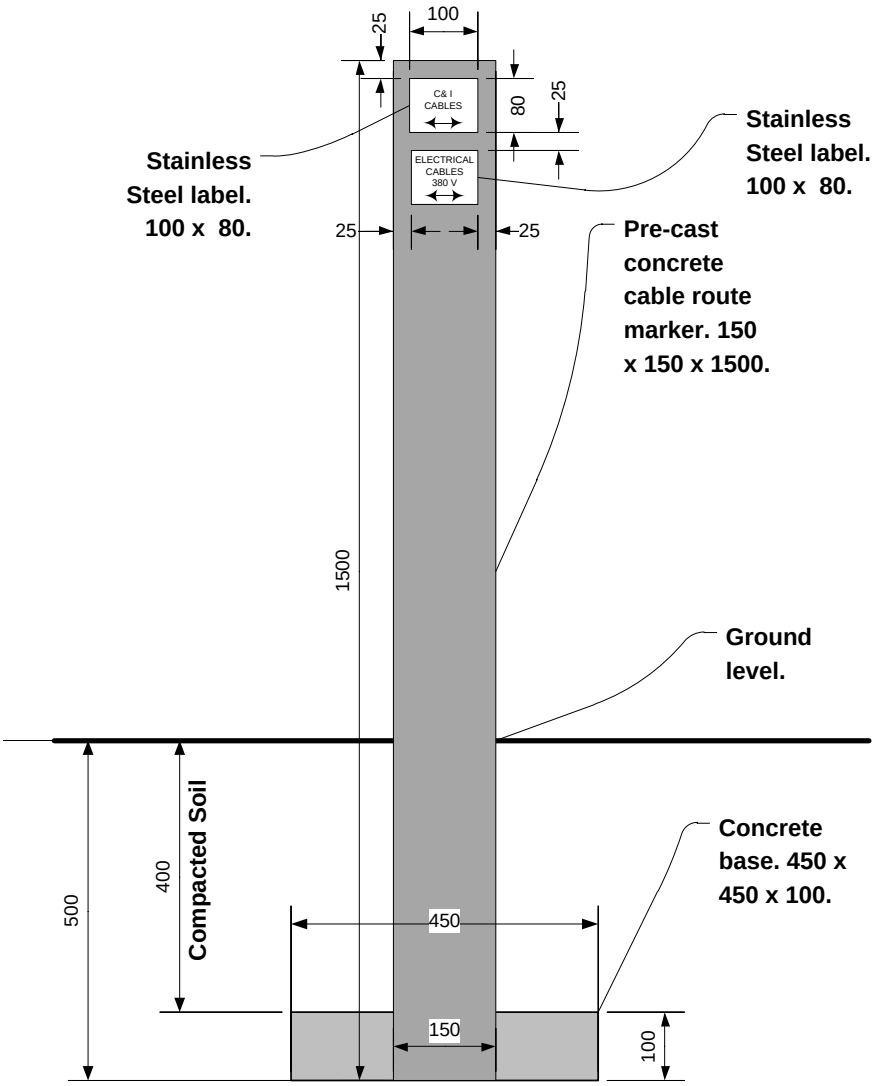
6.7.7 Cable route markers, in the form of concrete pre-cast posts, which stand 1.0m above ground level, secured in the ground, must be installed every 50m on straight runs and at every change in direction of the trench. Movable route markers will not be acceptable. The post must be equipped with a stainless steel plate engraved with “C&I CABLES” and/or “DATA CABLES” as applicable and the direction indicated in which the cables run. If there are electrical cables in the same trench, there must be a separate label engraved with “ELECTRICAL CABLES”, the voltage and the direction indicated in which the cables run. If there are data communication cables in the same trench, there must be a separate label engraved with “DATA CABLES” and the direction indicated in which the cables run. These labels must be cast into the concrete post so that they cannot be pried off.

6.7.8 At the bottom of the post a 450 x 450 x 100mm concrete base must be cast to ensure that the route marker can only be removed if it is deliberately dug out of the ground. Steel reinforcing mesh of MRM reference 156, in accordance with SANS 1024:2006 is required in the concrete and the concrete compressive strength of the base must not be less than 15 MPa. (Note: Reinforcing mesh to MRM 156 consists of 3.55mm diameter wire used to create 100 x 100 mm squares).

6.7.9 These route markers must be installed right next to the trench and not over the cables, so that the trench can be re-opened without affecting the route marker. The labels on the route marker must be on the trench side of the route marker.

6.7.10 All route markers for C&I and data cables must be painted with two coats synthetic polymer base emulsion paint for exterior use, complying with SANS 1586 Grade 1. The first coat may be thinned with no more than 10% water to aid penetration. Thereafter reflective yellow paint, suitable for use on concrete, must be applied.

6.7.11 The diagram below provides the required detail of these cable route markers.



6.7.12 Power and control cables must remain separated by at least 500mm as stated earlier. This means that power and control cables are not to be installed in the same cable sleeve.

6.7.13 Where sleeves are used for cables, an accessible manhole must be installed on every 50m straight run of sleeve and at every change of direction. This manhole can be built from bricks or concrete or it can be polyethylene Stakboxes as shown in the example below. Lids used on Stakboxes must not be made of material that is prone to theft for scrap metal (such as mild, steel, cast iron, etc.

6.7.14 The manhole must be large enough to allow proper access for cable installation. For example a manhole on a straight length of sleeving must in any event also not be smaller than 300mm x 300mm. Manholes installed at a change of direction must be large enough so that the bending radius of any cable running through it is not smaller that the manufacturer's recommended bending radius. The manhole must also not be smaller than 300mm x 300mm. If the manhole is required to make cable splices (fibre or copper) it must comply with all the requirements of item 6.4.36 above and there must be enough space so that cable loops can be comfortably left in the manhole without exceeding manufacturer's recommended minimum bending radii. Such a manhole must in any event also not be smaller than 600mm x 600mm.

6.7.15 The larger the number of cables running through the manhole, the larger the manhole must be to ensure ease of cable installation.

6.7.16 The depth below ground level at which the cables run through the manhole must not be less that the required cable burial depth as specified in item 6.7.3 above.

6.7.17 All sleeves entering the manhole must be sealed with an appropriate sealer that will prevent moisture, dirt, rodents, etc. from getting into the sleeves, but the sealant must be of such material that it can easily be removed if required in future. The area around the sleeve where it enters the manhole must also be sealed to prevent moisture, mud, rodents, etc. from getting into the manhole. The manhole must not have any sharp edges that can damage cables or microduct assemblies.

6.7.18 Where manholes are installed in roads, paving or paths where vehicles can travel, the lids and lid support structure must be strong enough so that heavy vehicle traffic from that area will have no detrimental effect on the lid or manhole. Such manhole covers must not be manufactured from material such as cast iron which is prone to theft. Metal covers filled with concrete will be acceptable.

6.7.19 The manhole covers shall either have a latch that requires a special tool to unlock and remove, or be heavy enough that lifting equipment is required to remove them (see the picture below).

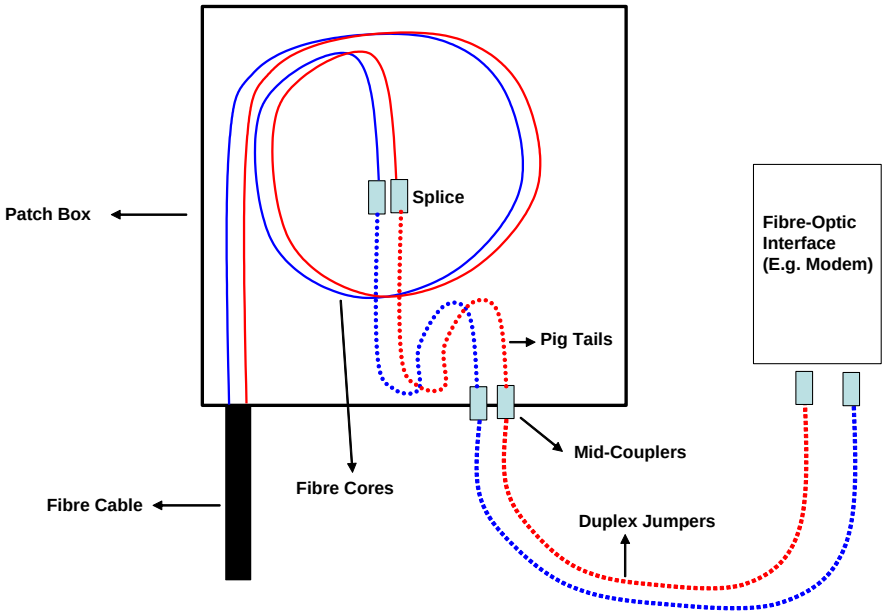
6.7.20 The base of the chamber must be made up of a dry mix of stone and cement so that it forms a hard but porous surface which is free draining for any water which enters the chamber.

6.7.21 All installed sleeves must be equipped with draw wires (or equivalent, such as nylon rope) to allow pulling in of cables. These draw wires must be non-corrosive and must be strong enough to pull the cables intended for that sleeve.

6.8 Fibre-Optic Data Cable Terminations

6.8.1 All terminations must be done by fusion splicing cores of the fibre-optic cable onto pre-fabricated “pig tails”, inside a “patch box”. The optical fibres will be terminated in the sequence specified in item 6.4.23 and 6.4.39 above.

6.8.2 The “patch box” must be equipped with mid-couplers, to accept the “pig tails” from inside the “patch box”. The other end of these mid-couplers must accept the ends of the duplex jumpers fitted with LC connectors at both ends, which in turn are connected to the fibre-optic interface (modem, switch, hub, etc.). This arrangement is to ensure that disconnecting for testing or maintenance purposes does not involve working where the splices were made (see the sketch below).



6.8.3 The “patch box” must be hardened and robust, with a minimum environmental rating of IP65 and suitable for use in industrial applications.

6.8.4 All splices must be fusion splices, and not mechanical splices.

6.8.5 All fibre-optic cables must be at least 12-core cables to ensure sufficient spare cores in the event of faults and for future modifications, additions, etc.

6.8.6 All fibre-optic data communication cables must be single mode.

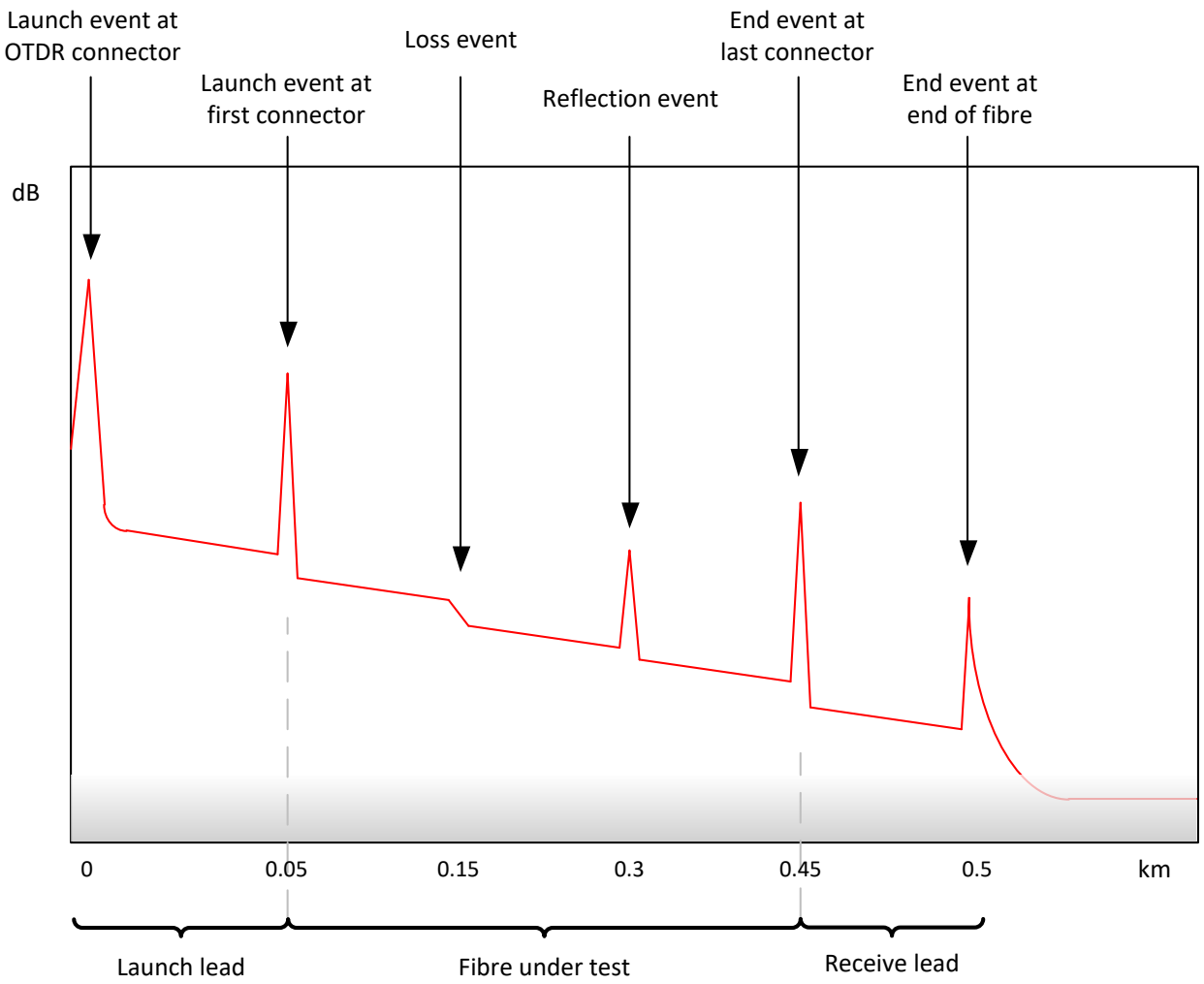
6.8.7 All fibre-optic cables supplied must comply with the relevant parts of SANS 60793/ IEC 60793 and SANS 60794/ IEC 60794 in terms of construction, installation and testing.

6.8.8 All the fibres and splices must be tested by an experienced fibre-optic network specialist and the results saved for analysis. The following tests have to be completed and test certificates have to be produced:

6.8.8.1 OTDR (optical time domain reflectometer) tests for all fibres at both 1310nm and 1550nm wavelengths, in both directions, must be completed when the cable is delivered to the site and again after the installation has been completed.

6.8.8.2 When performing OTDR tests, adequate launch and receiving leads must be used so that the splicing on both ends of the cable is clearly visible on the OTDR trace. The pulse width must be set to the minimum possible width for the distance under test and the time duration of the test must not be less than sixty (60) seconds. The scale of the trace should be set to 1.5x to 2x the length of the cable under test. The measured loss of each event must be captured in MS Excel and the original OTDR results must be saved in its native format. The results must be supplied to the engineer for approval. A typical OTDR trace is shown below.

Typical OTDR trace

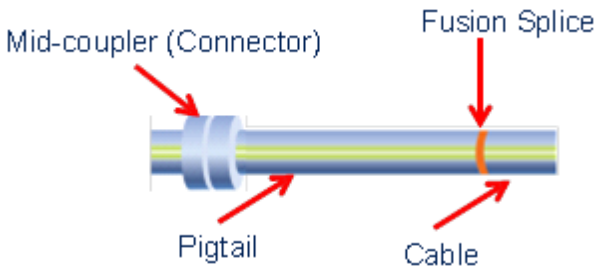


6.8.8.3 OLTS (optical loss test set) analysis with a power source and power meter must be done for all fibres after the installation has been completed. These tests must be done in both directions and the results have to be captured in MS Excel. A typical test report for one fibre is shown below. (P/Loss = Power Loss; ORL = Optical Reflection Loss).

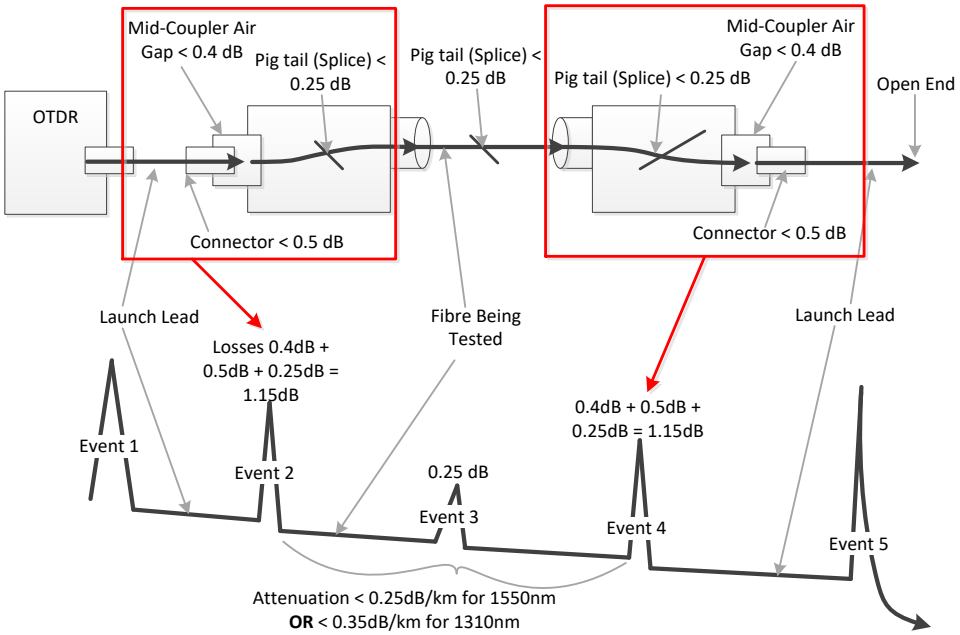
Fibre ID	Wavelength	P/Loss	P/Loss	Average	ORL A	ORL B	Length
		A->B	**B->A**				
	(nm)	(dB)	(dB)	(dB)	(dB)	(dB)	(km)

6.8.9 Losses in any fibre-optic core measured end-to-end at wavelengths of 1310nm and 1550nm, must not exceed **0.25dB per fusion splice**. The attenuation over the length of the fibre must not exceed 0.35dB/km at 1310nm and 0.25dB/km at 1550nm.

6.8.10 Losses over any connection (i.e. including mid-couplers) must not exceed 0.5dB.



6.8.11 The figure above shows a typical patch box situation (see item 6.8.2) where a pigtail is spliced onto the cable at one end and onto a connector (the mid-coupler) at the other end. These two events are too close together to be identified as separate events by an OTDR test. The overall maximum acceptable loss (at 1310 nm or 1550nm) for this combination will thus be **0.5 (connection) + 0.25 (fusion splice) = 0.75 dB**. This requirement is illustrated in the sketch below.



6.8.12 SFP's should be used so that the length of a fibre measured from one end to the other is greater than 5% of the rated maximum distance specified by the manufacturer of the SFP.

6.9 Copper Data Cables

6.9.1 All copper data cable shall be a high performance, 4-pair, Category 6, 23 AWG, unshielded, twisted pair (U/UTP) with solid copper conductors, polyolefin insulated PVC or low-flammability sheath and colour-coded pairs.

6.9.2 All copper data cable shall be tested after installation using an instrument with the capability of certifying the cable as Category 6 as specified in the TIA/EIA 568-B.2-10 industry standard.

6.10 Data Cabling General

6.10.1 All data cabling systems must be designed and installed in accordance with ISO/IEC SANS 11801:2002.

6.10.2 The cables must comply with EN 50288-5/6.

6.10.3 In terms of flammability, the cables or blown fibre microduct assemblies inside buildings (whether on racks, in ceilings, under floor panels, etc.) must comply with IEC 60332-1.

6.11 Cable Theft Prevention Measures

6.11.1 Cable theft prevention methods must be discussed with each site manager and implemented to suit the unique requirements in each area on each site.

6.11.2 Trenches in high risk areas (as defined by the relevant site manager) will have a 100mm thick layer of 20/20 concrete (i.e. 20MPA strength and 20mm aggregate size) supplied in the place of the concrete tiles.

6.11.3 Where inverted culverts with cable racking inside the culverts and concrete covers over the culverts are used the concrete covers must be constructed of reinforced concrete. The slabs must be sized to suit the width of the culvert. Each slab must weigh at least 100kg and must be provided with only two lifting holes.

6.11.4 Where cables are laid in trenches, the contractor must ensure that cable de-rating factors are strictly applied in accordance with SANS 10142-1:2003 to prevent cables from overheating. This clause is especially important to adhere to when existing inverted culverts with existing installed cables are to be filled with soil.

6.11.5 No bare copper conductors are to be used for earth conductors, earth strapping, earth bonding, etc. If possible a 5-core cable should be used to allow the 5^{th} core to be used as an earth conductor. If this is not a viable option, a 2-core PVC, SWA cable must be installed as an earth cable.

6.11.6 For short runs of earth cable (such as bonding of earth bars or earthing conductors of buildings), other cable (i.e. not copper), approved by the Engineer, must be used.

6.11.7 For high risk areas where cable racking is used, such cable racks must be covered with solid covers of the same material and complying with the same paint specification as the racking itself. Such covers must be bolted onto the rack in such a way that either special tools or a disk grinder would be required to remove these covers.

6.11.8 If any additional cable theft prevention methods are required, such requirements will be made clear to the contractor at the time of tender.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 22 : CHLORINE ANALYSER

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 8 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 22 : Chlorine Analysing**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 22**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	8	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	7	C. Du Toit	Added requirements from Cydna (IP65 enclosure & grab sample facility) and from Best Practices (range 0
2018-11-30	6	C. Du Toit	Added reference to labelling specification & updated filtration supplied by JW.
2014-04-17	5	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	4	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	3	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-08-03	2	C. Du Toit	Updated specification in accordance with Cydna Laboratories requirements and changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	1	C. Du Toit	First revision in accordance with JW Online Monitoring Section requirements.

INDEX

22 CHLORINE ANALYSING 4

22.1 Scope 4

22.2 Abbreviations 4

22.3 Standards 4

22.4 Scope Of Work 5

22.5 General Requirements 5

22.6 Surge Protection 6

22.7 Analyser – Required Features 7

22.8 Analyser - Filtration Requirements 7

22.9 Spares 9

22.10 Data Sheets 9

22 CHLORINE ANALYSING

22.1 Scope

22.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Chlorine analysers, complete with sampling, filtration, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

22.2 Abbreviations

22.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
mg/l	:	Milligram per litre
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance
FSD	:	Full Scale Deflection (Also refers to maximum range)

22.3 Standards

22.3.1 The supply and installation of all Chlorine analysers and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

22.4 Scope Of Work

22.4.1 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all fittings, brackets, piping, cabling, etc. required for the complete sampling, analyzing, display and interfacing (e.g. to PLC's) system.

22.4.2 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all sampling pumps required for sample analyzing where applicable.

22.4.3 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of all Field Junction Boxes (FJB's) with circuit breakers, surge protection, terminals, trunking, etc. required to ensure compliance with this specification.

22.4.4 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument and, where applicable, all required filtration systems to ensure sample analyzing in accordance with this specification.

22.5 General Requirements

22.5.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

22.5.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.5.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.5.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.5.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.5.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.5.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

22.5.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.5.4 FJB's and all sampling pumps, filtration units, fittings, displays, etc., must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

22.5.5 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the

sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

22.5.6 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

22.5.7 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, solids in liquid, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

22.5.8 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or there are solid particles too large for proper operation, or the analyser is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

22.5.9 Each analyser must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

22.5.10 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

22.5.11 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the analyser and associated equipment for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

22.5.12 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

22.6 Surge Protection

22.6.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.6.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And

Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.6.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

22.7 Analyser – Required Features

22.7.1 The analyser must use colorimetric DPD (N-diethylpphenylenediamine) chemistry to continuously monitor water for free or total residual chlorine.

22.7.2 The instrument must measure chlorine in the range of 0 to 3 mg/L.

22.7.3 The instrument must be able to switch between measuring free chlorine and total chlorine.

22.7.4 The instrument must be capable of operating unattended for 10 days or more.

22.7.5 The instrument must incorporate pH and temperature compensation where applicable.

22.7.6 The analysis cycle must not take more than 30 minutes.

22.7.7 All instrument enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

22.7.8 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load.

22.7.9 The instrument must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

22.7.10 The analyser must be suitable for an operating temperature range of 5ºC to +40ºC and a relative humidity of 90%.

22.7.11 The instrument must have an LCD and/or LED display. The instrument must display the instantaneous or most recent chlorine value.

22.7.12 The analyser must have an accuracy of at least ±5% or ±0.035 mg/l as CL_2, whichever is greater.

22.7.13 The minimum detection limit need not be less than 0.035 mg/l.

22.7.14 The instrument must be equipped with at least two SPDT alarm relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. These outputs must be user-programmable for analyser system warning and failure.

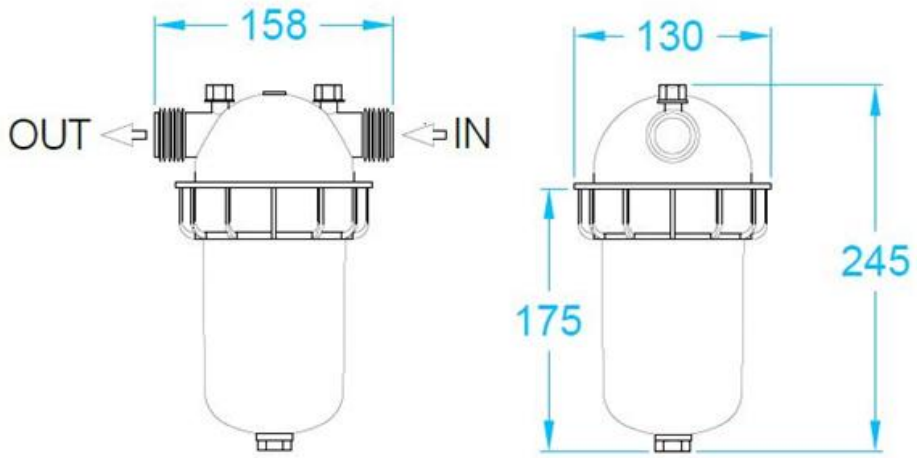
22.7.15 The analyser must have a facility to insert a grab/manual sample for quality assurance purposes.

22.8 Analyser - Filtration Requirements

22.8.1 Effluent that has passed through a cyclone separator is available at each installation point and may be used if suitable. These separators are constructed of stainless steel, have a maximum flow rate of 10 litres per minute and can handle particles up

to 3.2 mm. If this effluent is not suitable, the tenderer must offer whatever additional equipment is needed in order to remove sufficient solids from the effluent supplied for the successful operation of the instrument.

22.8.2 In addition to the cyclone separator a mechanical filter with the specifications below will also be provided by the client in the effluent supply to the analyser:



25mm / 1" Disc Filter Specifications

25mm / 1" Disc Filter Specifications

Pressure Maximum (m)	100
Pressure Minimum (m)	n/a
Flow rate Maximum (m3/h) for 130um to 400um	6
Flow rate Maximum (m3/h) for 55um	4.2
Flow Rate Minimum (m3/h)	n/a
Filtration Area (cm2)	308
Filtration Volume (cm3)	370
Outer Diameter of Filter Element (mm)	70
Temperature Rangew (degrees Celcius)	1 - 70
PH Range	4-11

22.8.3 Filtration units supplied by the contractor must be capable of switching from an exhausted filtration unit to a fresh one, or to facilitate cleaning, by turning valves or other simple manual means.

22.8.4 Filtration units supplied by the contractor must be of robust design with low

maintenance requirements (i.e. between 4 and 8 weeks maintenance intervention required, depending on the contamination levels).

22.9 Spares

22.9.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a list of recommended spares for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

22.10 Data Sheets

22.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – CHLORINE ANALYSER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Operating principle	
Sample capture method	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analyser Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Minimum Detection Limit	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous Chlorine LCD).	
Instrument chlorine range	
Instrument temperature operating range	
Automatic cleaning/rinse cycles between samples (Y/N)?	
Cycle time	
Measurement time	
Sample flow rate (litres/hour)	
Sample pressure requirement (bar)	
Reagents	

Other consumables	
Reagent consumption	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 5 : CLEAN POWER AND SURGE PROTECTION

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 14 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 5 : Clean Power And Surge Protection**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 5**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	14	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	13	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW
2018-11-30	12	C. Du Toit	Requirements for static and manual bypass switches on UPS corrected & added reference to Labelling
2014-04-17	11	C. Du Toit	Added more detail to "transformer-based" UPS description
2013-10-07	10	C. Du Toit	Updated numbering in item 5.7 and clarified "transformer-based" UPS
2013-02-04	9	C. Du Toit	Updated Footer
2012-07-27	8	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	7	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	6	C. Du Toit	Altered rated operating current for SPDs, added data sheets & removed 2010 logo.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	Logos altered and UPS size altered.

2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-11-22	3	C. Du Toit	Item number referred to in item 5.11.3 corrected.
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

5 CLEAN POWER AND SURGE PROTECTION 4

5.1 Scope 4

5.2 Abbreviations 4

5.3 Standards 4

5.4 Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) General Requirements 5

5.5 UPS Rating 6

5.6 UPS Backup Batteries 6

5.7 UPS Standards 6

5.8 UPS Data Sheets 7

5.9 Surge Protection General 8

5.10 Surge Protection On Mains Power 11

5.11 Surge Protection On Field I/O 12

5.12 Surge Protection Data Sheets 17

5 CLEAN POWER AND SURGE PROTECTION

5.1 Scope

5.1.1 This specification covers the selection, installation, testing, marking and termination of Uninterruptible Power Supplies and Surge Protection used for low voltage power and control installations at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

5.2 Abbreviations

5.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

SANS	:	South African National Standards
IEC	:	International Electrotechnical Commission
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
CE	:	Official marking to indicate compliance with essential requirements of European Union directives
LGA	:	Local Government Association
GS	:	Geprüfte Sicherheit ("Tested Safety") is a voluntary certification mark
EMC	:	Electromagnetic Compatibility
EN	:	British Standard (BS EN)
PWM	:	Pulse Width Modulation
THD	:	Total Harmonic Distortion
Vpc	:	Volts per cell
Ah	:	Ampere hour
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
LPZ	:	Lightning Protection Zone
ICASA	:	Independent Communication Authority of South Africa

5.3 Standards

5.3.1 All design standards for cabling shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 61643-1	:	Surge protection devices – performance requirements and testing methods
IEC 61643-1	:	Surge protection devices – performance requirements and testing methods
EN 50091-1, -2	:	General and safety requirements for UPS
EN 61000-3-2	:	Limits for harmonics

5.4 Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) General Requirements

5.4.1 The UPS must be a **TRUE** on-line, double conversion transformer-based unit (i.e. using a transformer which is an integral part of the UPS, on the **input** to the UPS). Hybrids, transformerless units or units with external, separate transformers will not be acceptable.

5.4.2 The UPS must employ PWM technology.

5.4.3 The UPS must have battery backup for at least 30 minutes at the **FULL RATED LOAD** of the UPS.

5.4.4 The output wave form shall be sinusoidal in form with the THD at full line load not exceeding 3%.

5.4.5 The output voltage variation must not exceed 2%.

5.4.6 Interference shall not exceed the limits laid down by ICASA.

5.4.7 The UPS must have a battery low voltage/DC cut-off which is not lower than 1,67 Vpc.

5.4.8 The UPS must be accompanied by the tenderer's proof of their ability to install, test, service, repair, etc. these devices in the field and that they have a suitable after-sales infrastructure.

5.4.9 The UPS must be equipped with an integral static bypass switch as well as an integral manual/maintenance bypass switch.

5.4.10 The UPS static bypass switch must be upgradable in order to be matched to the load inrush current.

5.4.11 The tenderer must be willing and able to provide a complete factory load test, which can be witnessed by the engineer and/or client.

5.4.12 If it is an imported UPS, the vendor must be the **ACTUAL** importer of the UPS. In other words, a middleman who cannot provide factory load tests or suitable after-sales service and backup will not be acceptable.

5.4.13 A voltage free contact rated for 230V AC at 2 amps shall be provided in all the UPS units. This general alarm relay shall be internally wired to energise when a collective signal from all alarms is healthy. Alternatively, this relay shall de-energise when a fault occurs, raw mains is interrupted or the battery power is low.

5.4.14 The UPS must be supplied complete with maintenance free batteries and with a capacity to run the system for 30 minutes at full load. If external battery packs are provided, the battery charger must be adequately rated to re-charge the additional batteries at the C/10 rate.

5.4.15 The UPS system shall be suitable for operation from a 230V AC single phase supply and must supply a nominal single phase 230 Volt, 50 Hz output.

5.4.16 Tenderers must satisfy themselves that the UPS rating is adequate to supply all the equipment which they are offering.

5.4.17 The units shall be able to sustain an overload of 125% for one minute or 150% for ten seconds whereupon it shall switch itself off. A full short circuit shall cause the unit to switch off without sustaining damage.

5.4.18 The UPS must be able to operate normally in an ambient service temperature of 0ºC to +35ºC and a relative humidity of 5 to 95% non-condensing at 1500 to 3000m above sea level.

5.4.19 The rated output voltage must be user selectable from 220/230/240V.

5.4.20 The output frequency must not vary by more than 3Hz.

5.4.21 All labelling must comply with the requirements as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

5.5 UPS Rating

5.5.1 The UPS should be able to supply a load with a power factor of 0.7 to unity. Tenderers must submit both the VA and Wattage rating of each UPS offered.

5.5.2 The UPS efficiency must be no less than 89% from zero to full load.

5.5.3 The UPS must be suitably rated to supply all the required equipment specified in this tender and any attached specifications and provide backup to this equipment for no less than 30 minutes at full load. Even if the equipment does not require it however, the UPS must not have a rating of less than 3kVA.

5.6 UPS Backup Batteries

5.6.1 Tenderers must state the exact number of batteries that will be used.

5.6.2 Tenderers must state the type of batteries that will be used.

5.6.3 Tenderers must state the Ah rating of the batteries that will be used.

5.6.4 Tenderers must state the design life of batteries that will be used (3-5years, 10 years, etc.).

5.7 UPS Standards

5.7.1 All imported UPSs must have a CE rating.

5.7.2 The UPS must have CE, LGA/GS markings.

5.7.3 The UPS must comply with safety conformance to EN-50091-1.

5.7.4 The UPS must have EMC conformance to EN-50091-2 and EN-61000-3-2.

5.8 UPS Data Sheets

5.8.1 The tenderer must complete the data sheet below with his tender:

Technical Data Sheet: UPS

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model (E.g. true on-line, double conversion)	
Transformer-based unit (Y/N?)	
Technology employed (E.g. pulse width modulation)	
Output voltage variation	
Output frequency variation	
UPS rating (VA and Watts)	
UPS efficiency from zero to full load	
Maximum harmonic distortion at full load	
Overload handling capabilities (E.g. “x”% load for “y” minutes)	
Power backup period from batteries at full rated load	
Compliance with standards rating and markings (E.g. “Yes, full compliance” or “No”.	
Tenderer to provide complete factory load test that can be witnessed by the Engineer?	
Staff available for installation, testing and backup service?	
Number of batteries to be used	
Type of batteries to be used	
Ah rating of batteries	
Design life of batteries	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

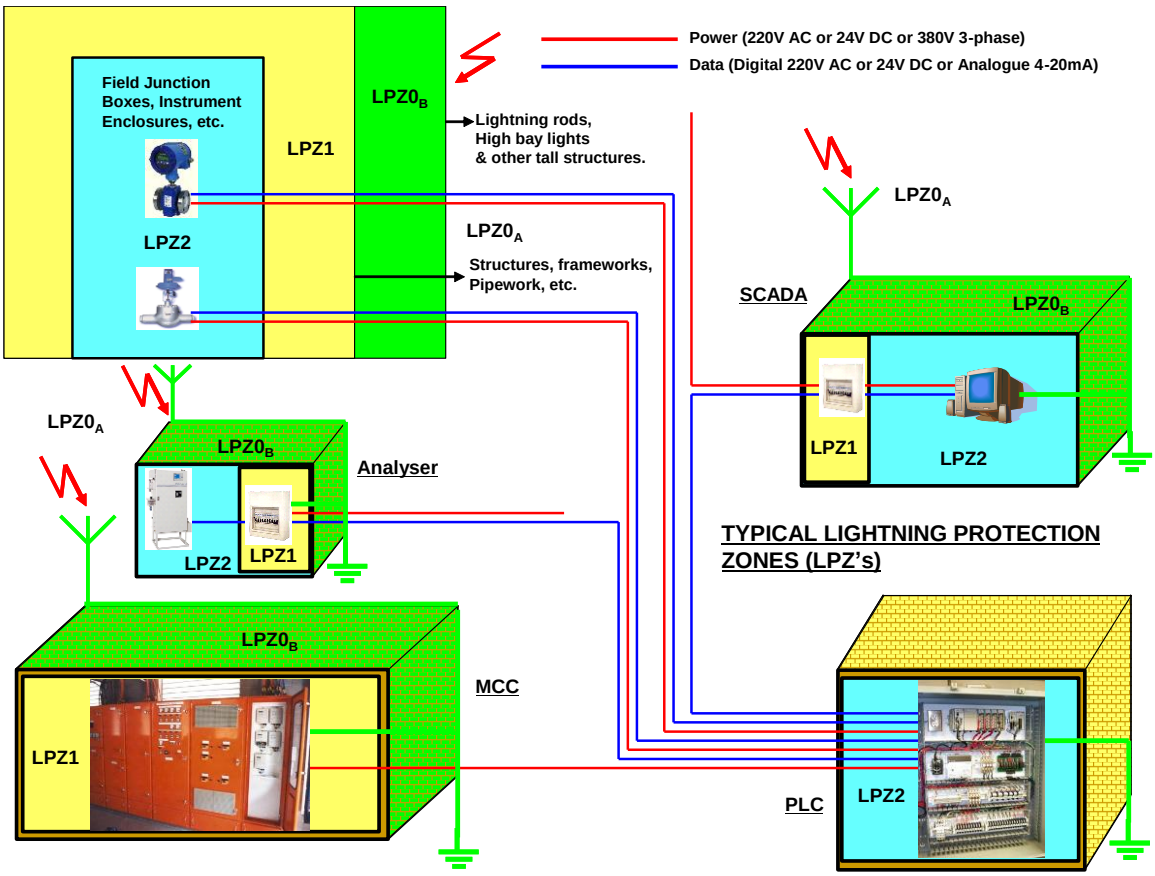
5.9 Surge Protection General

5.9.1 All labelling must comply with the requirements as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

5.9.2 The **Protection Level** required (i.e. Level I, Level II or Level III-IV in accordance with Table L.2 in SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L) needs to be established for every installation where there is doubt about these requirements. This requirement looks at the consequential loss resulting from potential lightning hazards. Generally for all JHB Water wastewater sites in the Gauteng area, Level III-IV will suffice. In other words, a lighting impulse level of 100kA (10/350µs) needs to be considered when designing protection systems.

5.9.3 The function of the Surge Protection Device (SPD) is to prevent damage from occurring to the electrical and electronic devices due to destructive currents and voltages arising from extraneous events such as lightning discharges, switching surges etc. All lightning and surge protection must comply with SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L, SANS 61643-1/IEC 61643-1 and any other specifications referred to in SANS 10142-1:300 Annex L.

5.9.4 The definition of lightning protection zones (LPZs), as specified in SANS 61643-1/IEC 61643-1, must be used to determine the **Class** of SPD to be used (i.e. Class I, Class II or Class III in accordance with SANS 61643-1/IEC 61643-1). These classes (also referred to as IEC Classes or IEC Category Classes or Types) define the surge handling ability which SPDs must have for use in each Class.



5.9.5 Notwithstanding the requirements of SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L, the surge handling ability of the SPDs installed in the various LPZs for JHB Water applications must be as follows:

At the Interface Between:	IEC Class SPD Required	Min. Required SPD Rating
LPZ 0_A and LPZ 1	Class I	For Single Units: I_{imp} = 50kA (10/350 µs) for SPDs between PHASE and NEUTRAL I_{imp} = 100kA (10/350 µs) for SPDs between NEUTRAL and PE and For Combination Units: I_{imp} = 25kA (10/350 µs) per channel
LPZ 0_B and LPZ 1	Class II	I_{sn} = 20kA (8/20 µs) for SPDs between PHASE and NEUTRAL I_{sn} = 12kA (10/350 µs) for SPDs between NEUTRAL and PE
LPZ 1 and LPZ 2	Class III	I_{sn} = 5kA (8/20 µs)

Where: I_{imp} = The standard impulse current curve with a 10/350 µs waveform
I_{sn} = The nominal discharge current or peak value of the current flowing through the SPD. It has an 8/20 µs impulse current waveform.

5.9.6 All SPDs used must limit the voltage to less than two times the nominal operating voltage for systems below 60V (AC or DC) and for systems above 60V it must limit the voltage to the values given in Table L.1 in SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L.

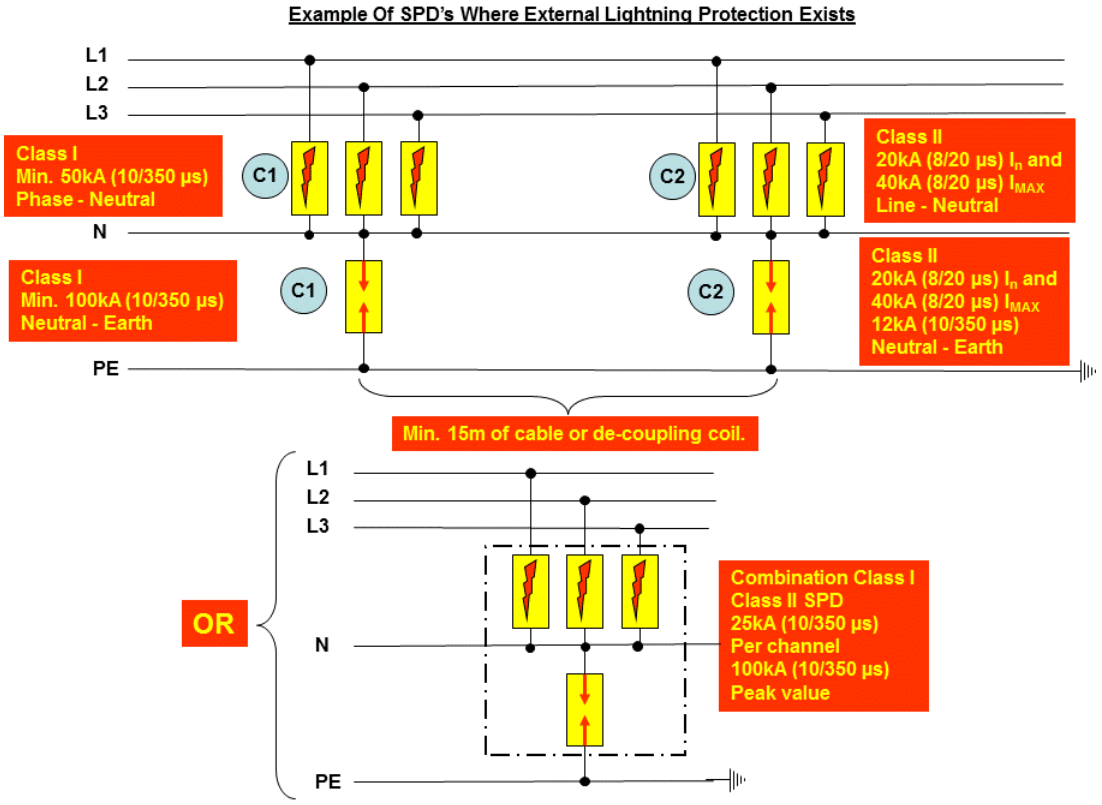
5.9.7 In order to ensure that individual protective devices are selectively effective, i.e. each protection stage only takes on the amount of interference energy which it is designed for, if one protection stage is faced with the threat of an energy overload, the upstream, more powerful arrester must “respond” and thus take over the discharge of the interference energy.

5.9.8 Even though surge arresters (i.e. Class II and Class III devices), by definition, are only tested to pulse waveforms of 8/20 µs, it is imperative to determine the ability of the device to carry an impulse current of the partial lightning currents with the waveform 10/350 µs for the co-ordination between surge arrester (i.e. Class II and Class III devices) and lightning current arrester (i.e. Class I devices), and also for the SPD.

5.9.9 All SPDs must be DIN rail mounted.

5.9.10 Should the building (where the PLC, distribution board, etc. and surge protection is installed) have external lightning protection, then a combination of Class I lightning current arresters (min. rating of 50kA (10/350 µs) each phase to neutral) plus one Spark Gap (min. rating of 100kA (10/350 µs) neutral to earth) and Class II nominal discharge current I_n = 20kA (8/20 µs) and maximum discharge current I_{MAX} = 40kA (8/20 µs), non-linear surge arresters from each phase to neutral and one Spark Gap, nominal discharge current I_n = 20kA (8/20 µs) and maximum discharge current I_{MAX} = 40kA (8/20 µs) surge arresters must be installed as per SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L (see the diagram below). In all other cases a minimum of Class II SPDs are required.

5.9.11 These surge arresters (Class I and II or combination Class I/Class II above) must be installed from each Phase to Neutral and from Neutral to Earth. It must be borne in mind that if Class I **and** Class II SPDs are used, a minimum of 15m of cabling is required between these two systems for de-coupling. Another alternative is to use the correct coils available on the market to simulate the 15m difference. Preference will however be given to **combination** Class I and Class II units with pluggable modules because this eliminates coils and long cables and it allows replacement/inspection without the need to disconnect cables.



5.9.12 For Class I lightning arresters the minimum conductor size is 16mm^2 and pre-fusing of 315 Amps is required if the upstream protection is greater than 250 Amps. Fuses must be connected in series with the SPDs and must have the same fault current level or higher than that of the panel or board where they are installed.

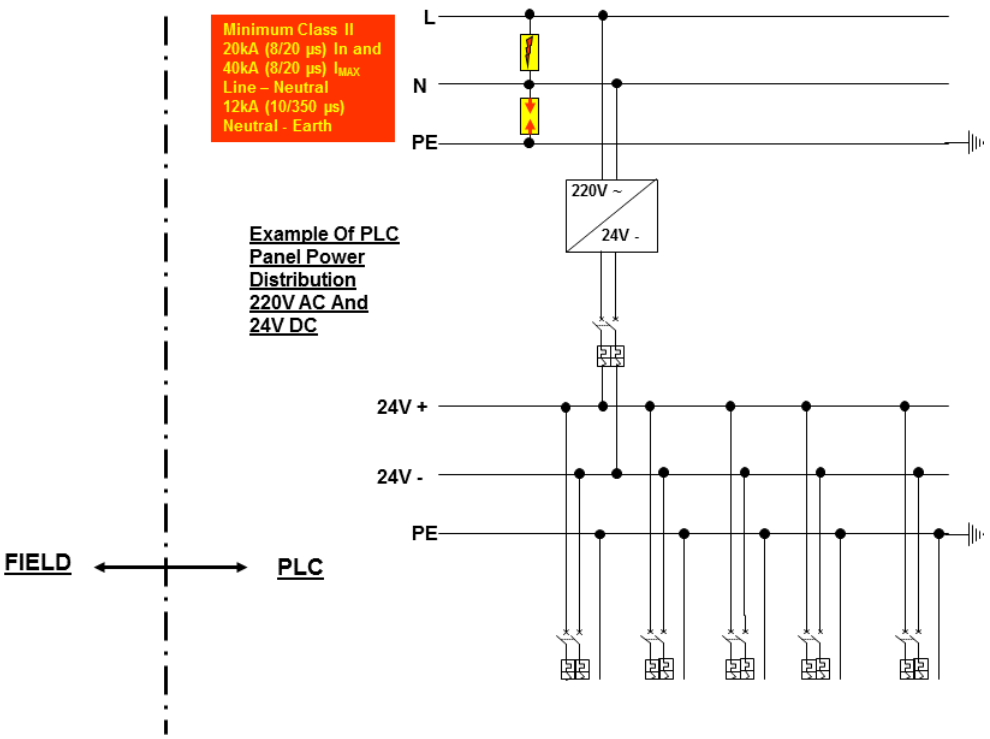
5.9.13 For Class II the minimum conductor size is 6mm^2 and pre-fusing of 125 Amps is required if the upstream protection is greater than 250 Amps. Fuses must be connected in series with the SPDs and must have the same fault current level or higher than that of the panel or board where they are installed.

5.10 Surge Protection On Mains Power

5.10.1 If there is no external lightning protection on the building, the protection units on the mains supply of the PLC panel must consist of at least IEC Category Class II, nominal discharge current I_n = 20kA (8/20 µs) and maximum discharge current I_{MAX} = 40kA (8/20 µs), non-linear surge arresters from each phase to neutral and one Spark Gap, nominal discharge current I_n = 20kA (8/20 µs) and maximum discharge current I_{MAX} = 40kA (8/20 µs), surge arrester from neutral to earth (same arrangement as the example shown above).

5.10.2 All the surge arresters must be DIN rail mounted and must comply with IEC 61643-1 (other designations, SANS 61643-1 and SANS IEC 61643-1) and there must be visual indication if the unit is over stressed (i.e. it has failed).

5.10.3 The spark gap must be able to withstand surges of 12kA (10/350 µs) and must specifically bond between neutral and earth.



5.11 Surge Protection On Field I/O

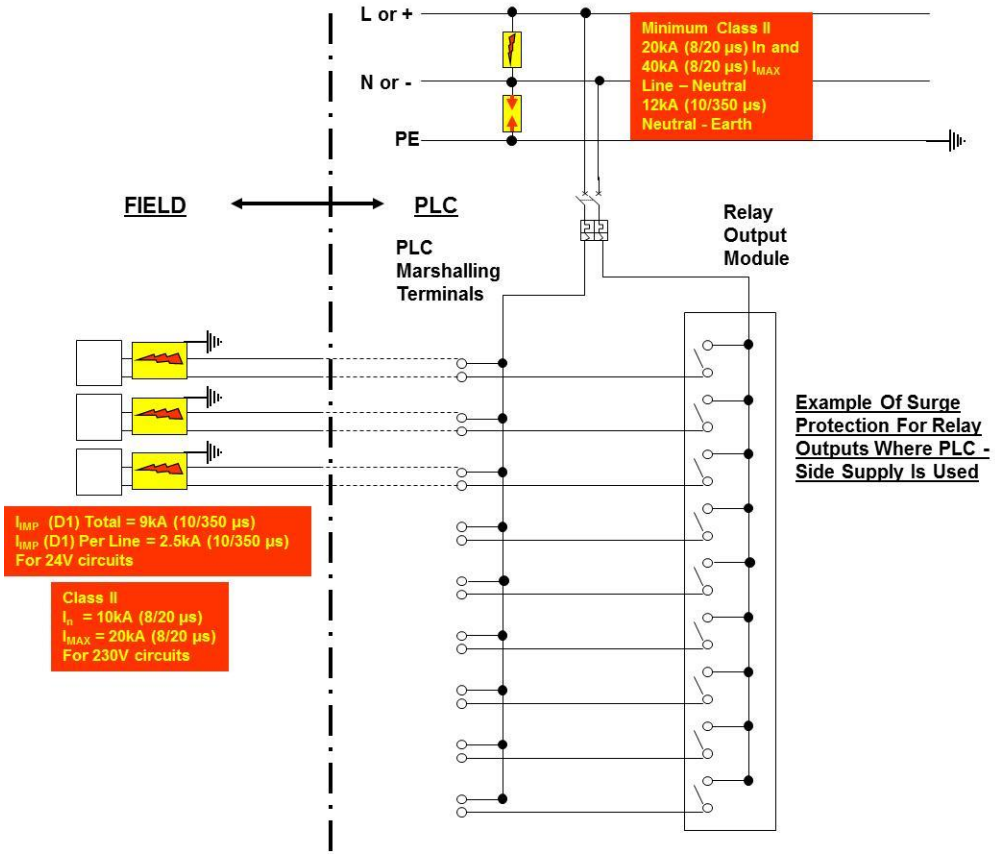
5.11.1 SPDs used for data protection (i.e. of digital and analogue I/O connected to devices outside the PLC building where induced voltages and currents are possible) must be designed to repeatedly withstand direct lightning currents I_{imp} of 2.5kA (10/350 µs) per line and nominal (i.e. peak) surges I_{sn} of 20kA (8/20 µs) for 4-20mA control loops, 24V DC digital and analogue systems and 24V AC systems. SPDs used for 230V AC digital I/O connected to devices outside the PLC building where induced voltages and currents are possible, must be designed to repeatedly withstand nominal discharge currents I_n of 10kA (8/20 µs) and maximum discharge currents I_{max} of 20kA (8/20 µs). These 230V AC SPDs must be rated at least Class II according to IEC 61643-1 or Type 2 according to IEC 61643-11.

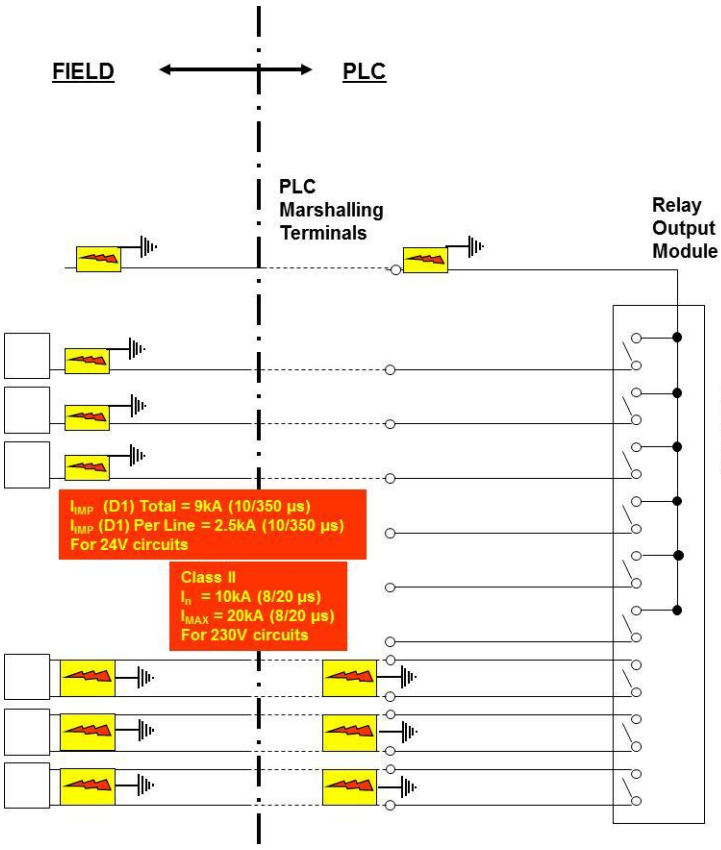
5.11.2 SPDs must be installed at both ends of each cable (i.e. at the PLC and at the field instrument, MCC, control panel, junction box, etc).

5.11.3 The LPZ in which the instrument, instrument distribution board or instrument junction box is, must be used to determine the ratings of the SPD. The ratings on digital and analogue I/O protection must just never be lower than the ratings mentioned in item 5.11.1 above.

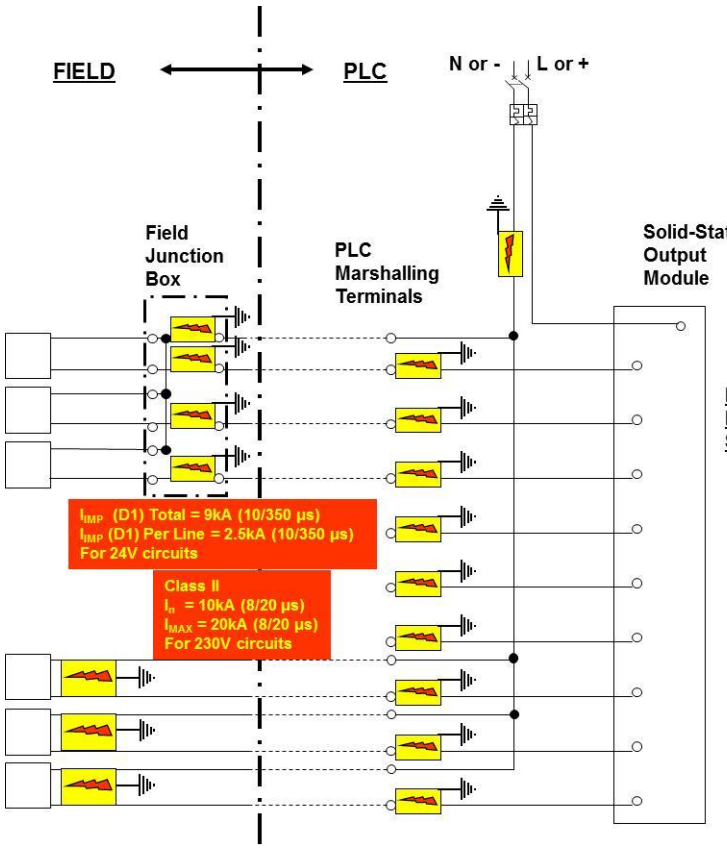
5.11.4 The rated operating current for SPDs used for protection of I/O systems must not be less than 0.75Amp.

5.11.5 All SPDs must consist of a base and a pluggable top which can be disconnected without interrupting the signals.

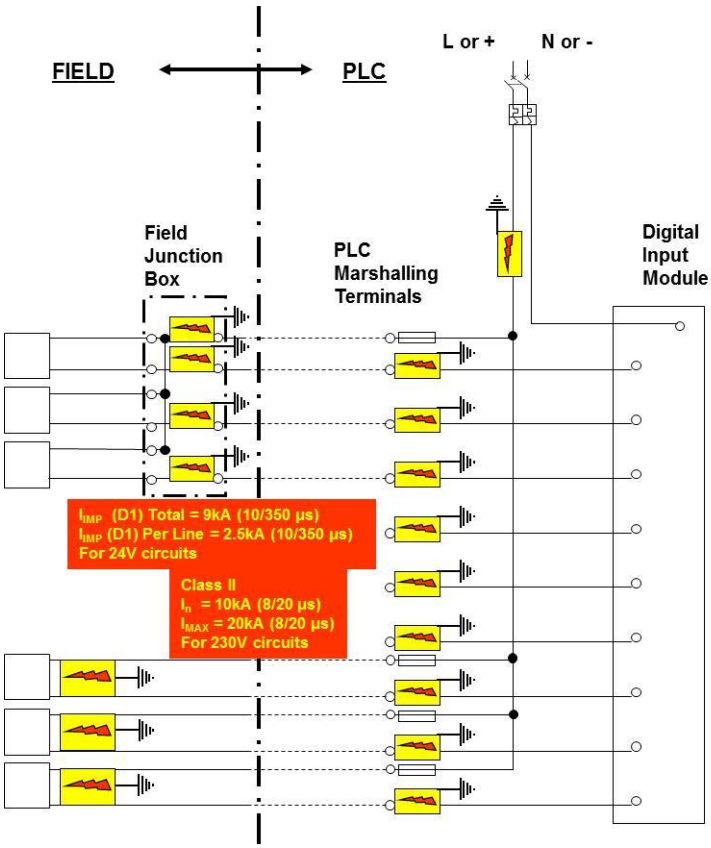

L or +
N or -
PE
Minimum Class II
20kA (8/20 µs) In and
40kA (8/20 µs) IMAX
Line – Neutral
12kA (10/350 µs)
Neutral - Earth
FIELD
PLC
PLC
Marshalling
Terminals
Relay
Output
Module
IIMP (D1) Total = 9kA (10/350 µs)
IIMP (D1) Per Line = 2.5kA (10/350 µs)
For 24V circuits
Class II
In = 10kA (8/20 µs)
IMAX = 20kA (8/20 µs)
For 230V circuits
Example Of Surge
Protection For Relay
Outputs Where PLC -
Side Supply Is Used



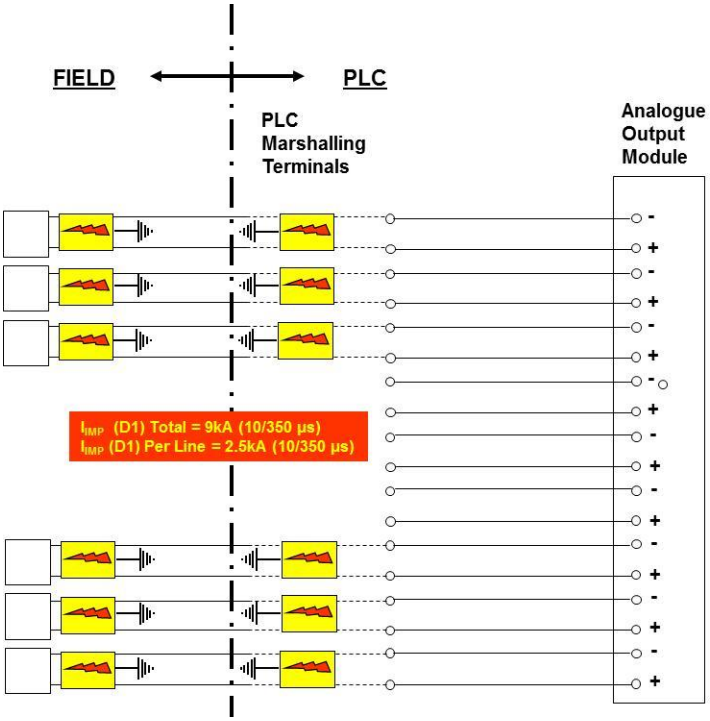
Example Of Surge Protection For Relay Outputs Where External Supply Is Used



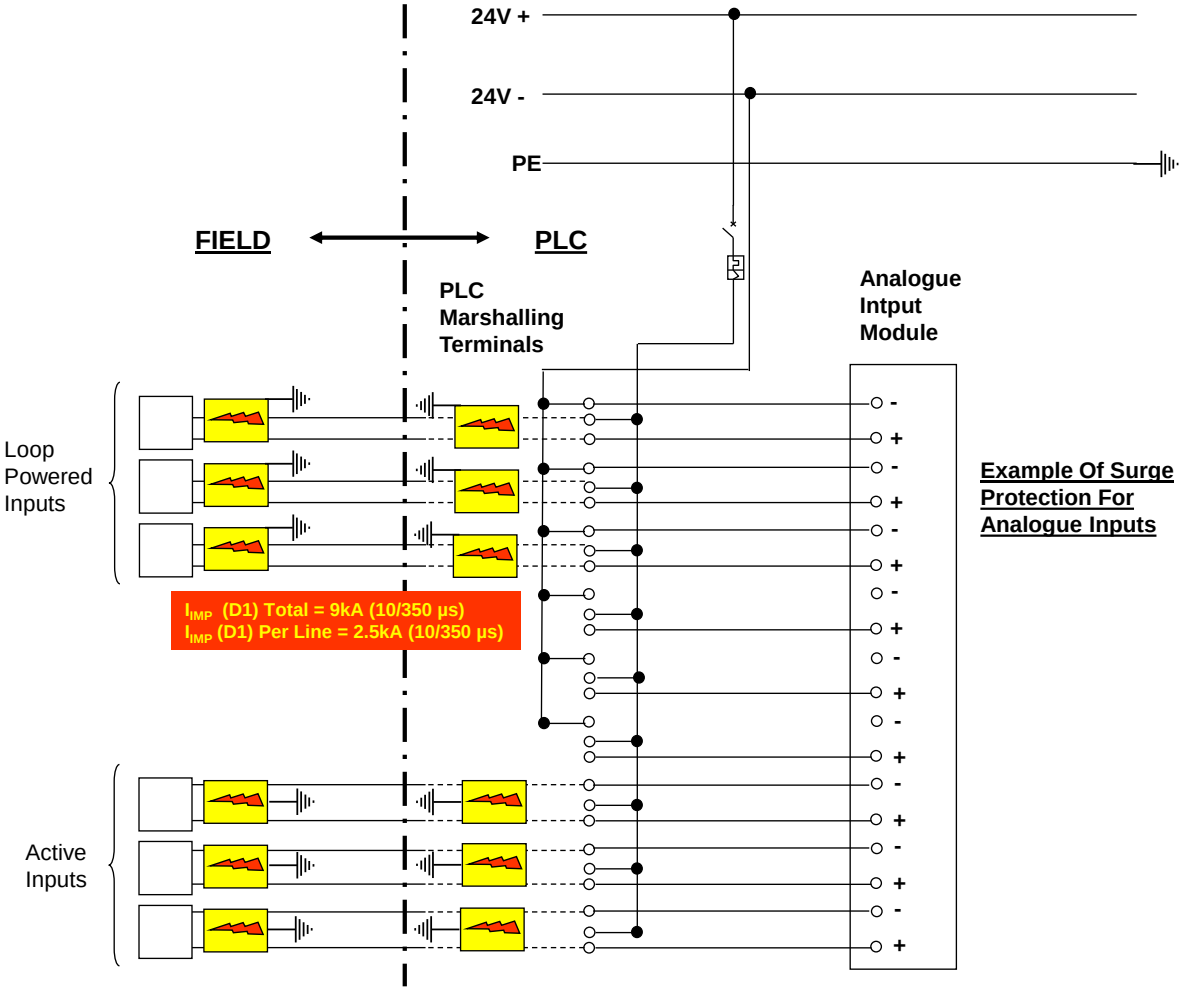
Example Of Surge Protection For Solid State Outputs



Example Of Surge Protection For Digital Inputs



Example Of Surge Protection For Analogue Outputs


24V +
24V -
PE
FIELD
PLC
PLC
Marshalling
Terminals
Analogue
Intput
Module
Loop
Powered
Inputs
Active
Inputs
I_IMP (D1) Total = 9kA (10/350 µs)
I_IMP (D1) Per Line = 2.5kA (10/350 µs)
Example Of Surge
Protection For
Analogue Inputs

5.12 Surge Protection Data Sheets

5.12.1 The tenderer must complete the relevant data sheets below with his tender:

Technical Data Sheet: Mains Surge Protection

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Order No./Part No./Reference No.	
Class (E.g. Class I, Class II, combined Class I/Class II, etc.)	
Surge current rating at the relevant waveform (E.g. 20kA, 10/350µs, phase-to-neutral)	
Rated operating voltage	
Rated operating current	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

Technical Data Sheet: Surge Protection 230V Digital I/O

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Order No./Part No./Reference No.	
Class (E.g. Class I, Class II, combined Class I/Class II, etc.)	
Discharge current rating at the relevant waveform (E.g. 20kA, 10/350µs, phase-to-neutral)	
Rated operating voltage	
Rated operating current	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

Technical Data Sheet: Surge Protection 24V DC Digital I/O

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Order No./Part No./Reference No.	
Lightning Impulse Current and pulse form (E.g. 9kA - 10/350µs – total, 2.5kA - 10/350µs – per line, etc.)	
Rated operating voltage	
Rated operating current	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

Technical Data Sheet: Surge Protection Analogue I/O

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Order No./Part No./Reference No.	
Lightning Impulse Current and pulse form (E.g. 9kA - 10/350µs – total, 2.5kA - 10/350µs – per line, etc.)	
Rated operating voltage	
Rated operating current	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 18 : CHEMICAL OXYGEN DEMAND MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 13 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 18 : Chemical Oxygen Demand Measurement (COD)**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 18**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	13	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	12	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification and corrected errors.
2014-04-17	10	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification and sensor flow cell.
2013-10-07	9	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	8	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	7	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC) and changed from reagent-using, on-line analyser to probe as per Cydna request.
2011-07-11	6	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added

2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

18 CHEMICAL OXYGEN DEMAND MEASUREMENT 4

18.1 Scope 4

18.2 Abbreviations 4

18.3 Standards 4

18.4 Scope Of Work 5

18.5 General Requirements 5

18.6 Surge Protection 6

18.7 COD Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 7

18.8 COD Measurement – Transducer/Sensor 7

18.9 Spares 8

18.10 Data Sheets 8

18 CHEMICAL OXYGEN DEMAND MEASUREMENT

18.1 Scope

18.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Chemical Oxygen Demand meters, complete with sampling, filtration, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

18.2 Abbreviations

18.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
mg/l	:	Milligram per litre
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance
FSD	:	Full Scale Deflection (Also refers to maximum range)
COD	:	Chemical Oxygen Demand
SAC 254:		The Spectral Absorption Coefficient (SAC 254 nm) is a total parameter measuring the dissolved organic material that absorbs UV light at a wavelength of 254 nm.

18.3 Standards

18.3.1 The supply and installation of all COD meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.

SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

18.4 Scope Of Work

18.4.1 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all fittings, brackets, piping, cabling, etc. required for the complete sampling, analyzing, display and interfacing (e.g. to PLC's) system.

18.4.2 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all sampling pumps required for sample analyzing.

18.4.3 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of all Field Junction Boxes (FJB's) with circuit breakers, surge protection, terminals, trunking, etc. required to ensure compliance with this specification.

18.4.4 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of the analyzer and all required filtration systems to ensure sample analyzing in accordance with this specification.

18.5 General Requirements

18.5.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

18.5.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.5.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.5.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.5.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.5.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.5.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

18.5.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.5.4 FJB's and all sampling pumps, filtration units, fittings, displays, etc., must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

18.5.5 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from

floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

18.5.6 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

18.5.7 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, solids in liquid, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

18.5.8 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or there are solid particles too large for proper operation, or the analyser is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

18.5.9 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

18.5.10 If the instrument requires de-ionised water, the tenderer must ascertain whether this is available on site and provide for the de-ionised water where necessary.

18.5.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

18.5.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the analyser and associated equipment for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

18.5.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

18.6 Surge Protection

18.6.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.6.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge

protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.6.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

18.7 COD Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

18.7.1 The transmitter/controller must be a microprocessor based instrument.

18.7.2 All instrument transmitter enclosure must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

18.7.3 The transmitter must have an operating temperature range of -20 to 60 degrees C.

18.7.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least two isolated, active, 4 – 20mA outputs which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load.

18.7.5 The transmitter must be able to accept two inputs from digital measuring sensors.

18.7.6 The instrument must be equipped with at least three SPDT relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. Two relays for preset COD outputs and one relay for alarm status (i.e. transmitter failure, out of range measurement, etc.). The preset outputs must be user-programmable for various COD values.

18.7.7 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

18.7.8 The transmitter/controller must have at least two data logs of not less than 128kB each. The logged data must be downloadable on an SD card in XML format.

18.7.9 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display, which will show instantaneous nitrate value.

18.8 COD Measurement – Transducer/Sensor

18.8.1 The principle of sensor operation must be based on ultraviolet absorption technology using two beams. The measurement method must be measurement of SAC 254 in accordance with DIN 38404 C3.

18.8.2 No reagents must be used.

18.8.3 The sensor housing material must be stainless steel.

18.8.4 The sensor must be self-cleaning.

18.8.5 The detection range of the sensor must be from 0.1 to 600 m^{-1} absorption units, using a 5mm path and must be suitable for the application (see items 18.5.7 and 18.5.8 of this specification).

18.8.6 The sensor accuracy will be determined by the calibration of the unit after installation. It is therefore essential that the tenderer allows a cost to have the supplier available for a period of approximately 2 weeks to set up and calibrate the

instrument correctly.

18.8.7 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of 2ºC to +40ºC.

18.8.8 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel if the sensor is not used within a flow cell.

18.9 Spares

18.9.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

18.10 Data Sheets

18.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – CHEMICAL OXYGEN DEMAND ANALYSER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Transmitter/Controller type/model	
Transmitter/Controller operating temperature range	
Transmitter/Controller microprocessor based (Y/N)?	
Transmitter/Controller data logs available (Y/N)?	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Number of sensor inputs to controller and type (e.g. 2 x digital sensor inputs)	
Analogue output	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Transmitter/Controller enclosure rating	
Display data & type (E.g. instantaneous Nitrate, LCD).	
Sensor type/model	
Sensor operating principle	
Sensor range	
Sensor housing material	
Sensor operating temperature range	

Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 24 : CONDUCTIVITY MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 5 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 24 : Conductivity Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 24**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	5	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	4	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	3	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-05-15	2	C. Du Toit	Cydna requirement included.
2014-04-17	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off.

INDEX

24 CONDUCTIVITY MEASUREMENT 4

24.1 Scope 4

24.2 Abbreviations 4

24.3 Standards 4

24.4 General Requirements 5

24.5 Surge Protection 6

24.6 Conductivity Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 6

24.7 Conductivity Measurement – Transducer/Sensor 7

24.8 Spares 8

24.9 Data Sheets 8

24 CONDUCTIVITY MEASUREMENT

24.1 Scope

24.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Conductivity meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

24.2 Abbreviations

24.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
mS/m	:	Millisiemens per meter
PVDF	:	Polyvinylidene fluoride or Polyvinylidene difluoride
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

24.3 Standards

24.3.1 The supply and installation of all Conductivity meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

24.4 General Requirements

24.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

24.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

24.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

24.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

24.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

24.4.7 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

24.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the

manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

24.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

24.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

24.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

24.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

24.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

24.5 Surge Protection

24.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

24.6 Conductivity Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

24.6.1 All conductivity measurements must be done by applying a voltage to electrodes and measuring the resultant current.

24.6.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

24.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with at least two isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output signals which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load each. These outputs must be user-programmable for conductivity and temperature.

24.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least three potential-free contacts, rated for at least 230V AC, 1A. Two relays for preset conductivity outputs and one relay for alarm status (i.e. transmitter failure, out of range measurement, etc.). The preset outputs must be user-programmable for various conductivity values.

24.6.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

24.6.6 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.5% of the measured value.

24.6.7 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 0.1% of full scale.

24.6.8 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display, which will show instantaneous conductivity, temperature and relay status.

24.6.9 The transmitter must be able to operate in an ambient temperature range of -10 to +50ºC.

24.6.10 The transmitter must be able to operate in a humidity range of 10 to 90% relative, non-condensing.

24.6.11 All data must be saved in a non-volatile memory so that there is no loss of data in the event of a power failure.

24.6.12 The transmitter must be able to operate with a sensor/transducer equipped with an integrated Pt1000 temperature sensor.

24.7 Conductivity Measurement – Transducer/Sensor

24.7.1 The range of the sensor must be at least from 0.00 to 100 mS/m and must be suitable for the application (see items 24.4.8 and 24.4.9 of this specification).

24.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of 0ºC to +50ºC and it must be able to withstand a maximum pressure of 10 bar at 25 ºC.

24.7.3 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 68 or higher.

24.7.4 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel if the sensor is not used within a flow cell.

24.7.5 The sensor must be unaffected by fouling and must not suffer from measuring errors due to polarization effects. Alternating current must be used in the conductivity measurement.

24.7.6 Sensors must have an accuracy of ± 1.5% or 0.02 mS/m (0.2 µS/cm), whichever is greater.

24.7.7 Sensors must use four platinum current electrodes and must have a built-in Pt1000 temperature sensor.

24.7.8 The sensor shaft and tip must be PVDF.

24.8 Spares

24.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

24.9 Data Sheets

24.9.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – CONDUCTIVITY METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Sensor Type/Model	
Transmitter Type/Model	
Operating Principle (E.g. AC current measurement)	
Transmitter Temperature Operating Range.	
Transmitter Humidity Operating Range.	
Transmitter Power Supply (voltage)	
Analogue Output Quantity, Type & Programmable (E.g. 2 x 4-20mA, Yes)?	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x potential-free contacts, 230V AC, 1A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Transmitter Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous conductivity & temperature + relay status, LCD).	
Transmitter Resolution	
Sensor Accuracy	
Sensor Conductivity Range	
Sensor Temperature Operating Range	
Sensor Enclosure Rating (IP??)	
Sensor Material (shaft & tip)	
Sensor No. Of Electrodes.	
Sensor Built-in Pt1000 Sensor (Y/N)?	
Local Agent (Y/N)?	
Local Agent Contact Details	
Guarantee Period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 20 : DENSITY MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 13 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 20 : Density Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 20**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	13	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	12	C. Du Toit	Added requirement for sensor in a spool piece.
2018-11-30	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	10	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	9	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	8	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	7	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC) and changed measuring principle from scattered light to hybrid ultrasonic
2011-07-11	6	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter position requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2009-02-27	3	C. Du Toit	Specification changed from nuclear technology to scattered infra-red light for density measurement.

2008-10-08	2	C. Du Toit	"Joburg" & "JW" Logos added to top & partnership logos removed.
2008-02-04	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off
2007-10-16	A	C. Du Toit	First Draft

INDEX

20 DENSITY MEASUREMENT 4

20.1 Scope 4

20.2 Abbreviations 4

20.3 Standards 4

20.4 General Requirements 5

20.5 Surge Protection 6

20.6 Density Measurement – Sensor/Transducer 7

20.7 Density Measurement – Analyser/Transmitter 7

20.8 Spares 8

20.9 Density Ranges 8

20.10 Data Sheets 8

20 DENSITY MEASUREMENT

20.1 Scope

20.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Density meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

20.2 Abbreviations

20.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
EEPROM	:	Electrically Erasable Programmable Read Only Memory
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance
FNU	:	Formazin Nephelometric Unit (Measure of turbidity using infrared light)
ISO	:	International Organisation For Standardisation
EN	:	European Normalization

20.3 Standards

20.3.1 The supply and installation of all Density meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.

SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

20.4 General Requirements

20.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

20.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

20.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLCs) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.4.4 FJBs and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

20.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

20.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

20.4.7 FJBs must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

20.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

20.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

20.4.10 It is the express responsibility of the tenderer to guarantee that this instrument will work correctly for this application. If the instrument does not work correctly, the tenderer will be required to replace the instrument with one that does work correctly, and the cost of such replacement (including the cost for another instrument, labour and material) will be for the tenderer's account.

20.4.11 Each instrument which is a 2-wired, 24V DC, loop powered device must be equipped with a suitably sized fuse in a latched fuse holder, connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

20.4.12 Each instrument which is a 230V AC powered device must be equipped with a 2-pole circuit breaker, connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

20.4.13 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing, calibration and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

20.4.14 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

20.4.15 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

20.5 Surge Protection

20.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge

protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

20.6 Density Measurement – Sensor/Transducer

20.6.1 All density measurements must be done by using a hybrid ultrasonic spectroscopy method with a flush-mounted probe so that there is no obstruction in the pipe where the measurement is done. The sensor must measure density in a range of 500 to 3000 g/l (i.e. 500 to 3000kg/m^3).

20.6.2 The sensor material must be resistant to the corrosive and abrasive effects of waste water treatment sludge. PEEK (Polyether ether ketone, which is a colourless, organic, polymer thermoplastic) sensor front face material is preferred.

20.6.3 The sensor must be supplied in the form of a UWC (Ultrasonic Wafer Cell), suitable for use in a pipe size as specified in the relevant project scope of work. This UWC must be manufactured from at least 304 grade stainless steel. Where possible (from the supplier) the UWC must be supplied in a spool piece, manufactured of at least grade 304 stainless steel, to prevent damage to the wafer during site installation.

20.6.4 The sensor must be supplied complete with its UMCS (Ultrasonic Measuring Cell Sensor) with its adapter for the ultrasonic sensor, a Pt100 sensor for temperature compensation and a 10m HD (Heavy Duty) cable for the ultrasonic connection between the sensor and the analyser.

20.6.5 Neither the ultrasonic sensor, nor the Pt100 must protrude into the pipe onto which they are fitted. I.e. they must be flush with the inner wall of the pipe so that there is no obstruction to the free flow of sludge and so that they do not provide something for material to get snagged on, resulting in subsequent blockages.

20.6.6 The sensor must have at least an IP68 or higher rating, and must be suitable for operating in a nominal temperature range of -10ºC to +150ºC.

20.6.7 The range of the unit must be suitable for the application (see items 20.4.8 and 20.4.9 of this specification).

20.6.8 The unit must contain an EEPROM in the sensor so that if there is a power failure or the transmitter is replaced all the calibration data will be retained.

20.7 Density Measurement – Analyser/Transmitter

20.7.1 The unit must be equipped with an isolated, 4 – 20mA output for density, which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load.

20.7.2 The unit must have at least two, potential-free, SPDT alarm relay contacts, programmable for various density values. All potential-free contacts must be rated for maximum 250V AC at 2A.

20.7.3 The unit must be suitable for a 230V AC, ±10% power supply.

20.7.4 The unit must be equipped with an LCD display, programmable to display instantaneous density in kg/m^3 or g/litre.

20.7.5 The unit must have an accuracy (or measurement deviation) of 0.02% or better of its full scale current output range (i.e. the 4-20mA range, measuring 500 to 3000g/l). The unit must have an accuracy (or indication deviation) of 1% or better of its measured range (i.e. of the 500 to 3000g/l range).

20.7.6 The unit must have a resolution of 0.2g/l or better.

20.7.7 The unit must have a repeatability of 1g/l of the measured value (i.e. the 500 to 3000 g/l value) or better.

20.7.8 Unless otherwise specified, a standard wall mount unit must be supplied and it must have a protection rating of at least IP65 (front) and IP20 for the housing.

20.7.9 The unit must have a nominal operating temperature rating of -10ºC to +55ºC.

20.7.10 The unit must be able to operate in a relative humidity range of 10% to 95% without condensing.

20.8 Spares

20.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

20.9 Density Ranges

20.9.1 The details for specific applications must be submitted to suppliers to ensure the supply of suitable density meters, but in general sludge solids of 15g/litre to 80g/litre (i.e. 1.5% to 8% solids content) will be measured. The density of Waste Activated Sludge is typically 1050kg/m^3 and the density for Digested Sludge is typically 1080kg/m^3. The density measuring range will typically vary from 1015kg/m^3 to 1080kg/m^3.

20.10 Data Sheets

20.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

20.10.2 Where terms and conditions apply to warranties or guarantees, these should be clearly stated in the data sheets in the section where “Guarantee period” is requested.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – DENSITY SENSOR/TRANSDUCER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Mode Of Detection	
Sensor face material PEEK (Y/N)?	
Wafer material	
Density sensor IP rating	
Density sensor temperature operating range	
Pt100 for temperature compensation supplied (Y/N)?	
Guarantee period	

DATA SHEET – DENSITY ANALYSER/TRANSMITTER

Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Manufacturer/authorised distributor (Y/N)?	
Manufacturer/authorised distributor contact details.	
Guarantee period	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type	
SPDT relays programmable for threshold limits (Y/N)?	
Number of SPDT relays?	
SPDT relay contact ratings?	
Display Unit Enclosure IP Rating	
Density Accuracy (% of density full scale)	

Resolution (in g/l)?	
Repeatability in g/l of the measured range?	
Operating temperature range?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous density & LCD)	
Measuring range	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 12 : DISSOLVED OXYGEN MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 14 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 12 : Dissolved Oxygen Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 12**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	14	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	13	C. Du Toit	Revision approves by JW.
2018-11-30	12	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	10	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	9	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	8	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	7	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	6	C. Du Toit	Transmitter relay rating altered.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"

2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and ”Joburg” logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

12 DISSOLVED OXYGEN MEASUREMENT 4

12.1 Scope 4

12.2 Abbreviations 4

12.3 Standards 4

12.4 General Requirements 5

12.5 Surge Protection 6

12.6 Dissolved Oxygen Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 6

12.7 Dissolved Oxygen Measurement – Transducer/Sensor 7

12.8 Spares 7

12.9 Data Sheets 7

12 DISSOLVED OXYGEN MEASUREMENT

12.1 Scope

12.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Dissolved Oxygen meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

12.2 Abbreviations

12.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
D.O.	:	Dissolved Oxygen
mg/l	:	Milligram per litre
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

12.3 Standards

12.3.1 The supply and installation of all Dissolved Oxygen meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

12.4 General Requirements

12.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

12.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

12.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

12.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

12.4.6 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

12.4.7 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

12.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the

manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

12.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

12.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

12.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

12.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

12.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

12.5 Surge Protection

12.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

12.6 Dissolved Oxygen Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

12.6.1 All D.O. measurements must be done by using a membrane operating principle.

12.6.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

12.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable for D.O. As an option the instrument must be equipped with a second isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be for temperature.

12.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least one to three SPDT relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. Two relays for preset D.O. outputs and one relay for alarm status (i.e. transmitter failure, out of range measurement, etc.). The preset outputs must be user-programmable for various D.O. values.

12.6.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

12.6.6 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.01mg/l or 1% saturation.

12.6.7 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 0.1mg/l.

12.6.8 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display, which is selectable to show instantaneous D.O. or temperature. It must also show relay status.

12.6.9 The transmitter must have automatic compensation for temperature, altitude and salinity.

12.7 Dissolved Oxygen Measurement – Transducer/Sensor

12.7.1 The range of the sensor must be from 0.00 to 9.99 mg/l and must be suitable for the application (see items 12.4.8 and 12.4.9 of this specification).

12.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating and measurement temperature range of 0ºC to +50ºC.

12.7.3 The sensor must be equipped with automatic temperature compensation.

12.7.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

12.7.5 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

12.7.6 The sensor must be supplied, complete with a cleaning unit (air or water), equipped with a user-programmable cleaning cycle.

12.8 Spares

12.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

12.9 Data Sheets

12.9.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – DISSOLVED OXYGEN METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Operating principle	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Controller/Transmitter temperature, altitude & salinity compensation (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous D.O. Temperature & relay status LCD). Selectable (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor D.O. range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature measuring range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Transducer/Sensor cleaning system type & programmable (Y/N)?	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 19 : FIELD JUNCTION BOXES AND PANELS

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 19 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 19 : Field Junction Boxes And Panels**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 19**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	19	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-08-14	18	C. Du Toit	Use of materials in corrosive areas updated (GRP)
2019-06-25	17	C. Du Toit	Stopper plugs used updated.
2019-06-15	16	C. Du Toit	Cable terminations plus wiring and terminations updated to correspond with that in PLC Panels and
2019-01-28	15	C. Du Toit	Included Cydna requirement for no direct sunlight on display units.
2018-11-30	14	C. Du Toit	Updated reference to Labelling specification, IJBs should not cause obstruction, clearing to be created
2014-04-17	13	C. Du Toit	Updated FJB stands and labelling
2013-10-07	12	C. Du Toit	Updated footer and racking on IJB stands
2012-07-27	11	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	10	C. Du Toit	Added Polycarbonate boxes and updated labelling requirements.

2012-03-08	9	C. Du Toit	Changed required paint thickness for IJBs, added requirements for supports/brackets and changed (Pty)
2011-07-11	8	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	7	C. Du Toit	Altered minimum panel powder coating thickness & hinges material.
2010-03-12	6	C. Du Toit	Altered submission time of FJB panel drawings.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and data display viewing requirements
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2008-10-08	3	C. Du Toit	"Joburg" & "JW" Logos added to top & partnership logos removed.
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

19 FIELD JUNCTION BOXES AND PANELS 4

19.1 Scope 4

19.2 Abbreviations 4

19.3 Standards 4

19.4 General Requirements 4

19.5 Standard Features 7

19.6 Wiring and Terminals 8

19.7 Existing Panels 10

19.8 Factory Acceptance 10

19.9 Over-Voltage/Lightning Protection 11

19.10 Spares 11

19.11 Painting (Powder Coating Method) 11

19.12 Drawings And Diagrams.....12

19 FIELD JUNCTION BOXES AND PANELS

19.1 Scope

19.1.1 This specification covers the manufacturing, supply and installation of Field Junction Boxes, Field Equipment Panels and any other panels used for housing terminals, surge protection devices, instruments, control switchgear (such as pushbuttons, selector switches, indicating lamps, potentiometers, etc.) for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

19.2 Abbreviations

19.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
LPZ	:	Lightning Protection Zone
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device

19.3 Standards

19.3.1 All design standards for cabling shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

19.4 General Requirements

19.4.1 The Field Panel will typically house the following items:-

19.4.1.1 Terminals, fuses, MCB's, trunking, surge protection, relays, etc.

19.4.1.2 Pushbuttons, selector switches, potentiometers, indicating lamps, etc.

19.4.1.3 Power supplies, indicating instruments, etc.

19.4.1.4 Instruments such as transmitters.

19.4.2 The supply and installation shall in general comply with the relevant clauses in all specifications attached to the tender documentation.

19.4.3 The panels shall be free standing units with bottom cable entry (via a glanding plate) and have front door access (hinged and lockable).

19.4.4 For areas other than those mentioned in item 19.4.12 below, the panel should be manufactured from at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel typically not less than 1,5 mm thick. All hinges, locking devices, bolts, nuts and washers must also be at least 3CR12 stainless steel. The panel will have a door on the front which opens to the full width and height of the panel. The panel shall be free standing and the top edge of the panel shall not be more than 1,8m above floor level and it should be sized to accommodate all the associated equipment comfortably.

19.4.5 Once the door is open there should be no obstruction to prevent full access to every point inside the panel.

19.4.6 The panel shall be epoxy powder coated electric orange (Shade B26) finish. Interior chassis mounting plates will be finished in appliance white.

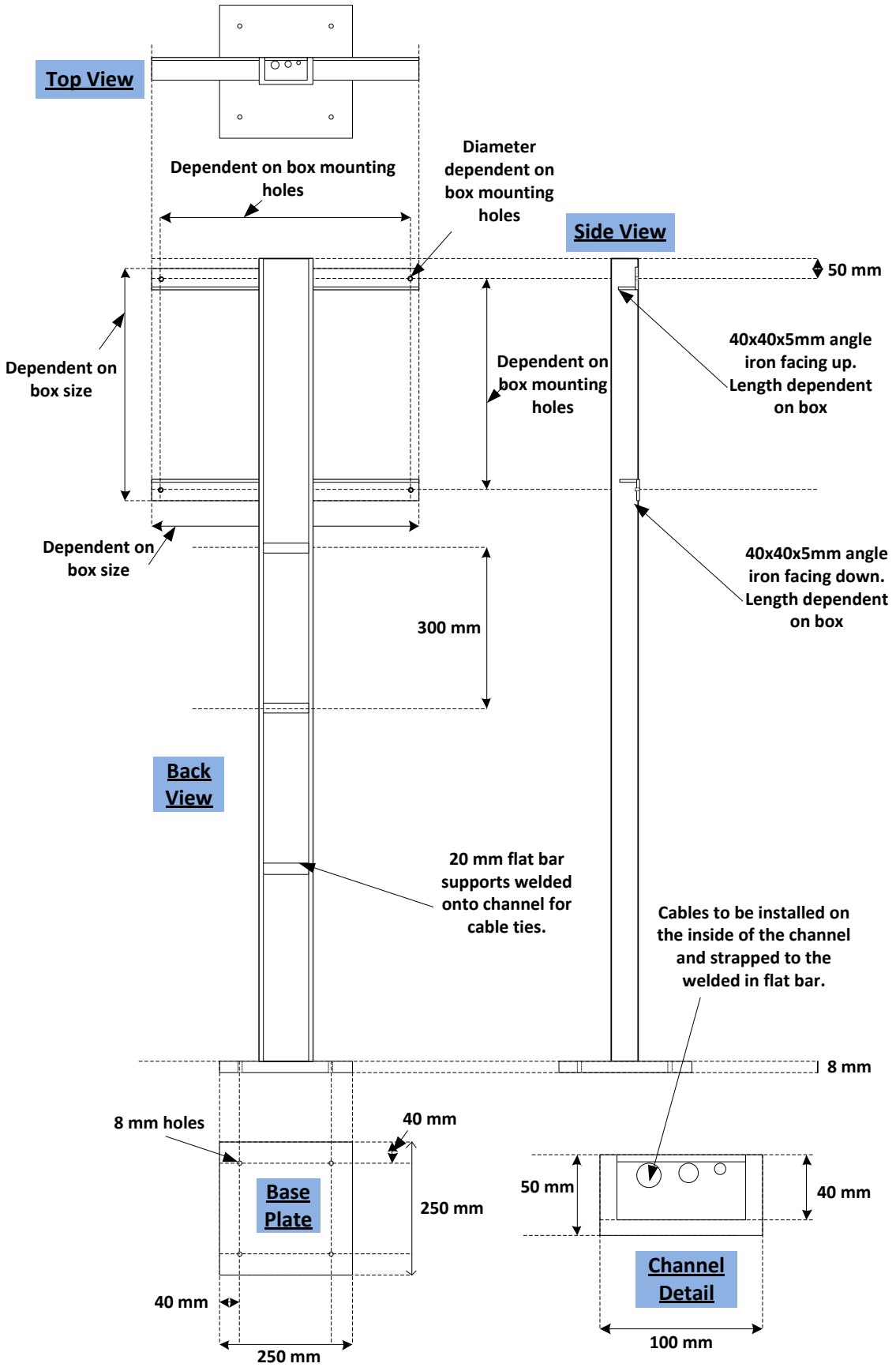
19.4.7 All IJBs should be clearly labelled with labels as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

19.4.8 The panel must be vermin-proof and must have a protection rating of no less than IP 65.

19.4.9 Where equipment such as pushbuttons, selector switches, potentiometers, etc. are required on the panel exterior, a double door system must be used. The equipment must be mounted on a hinged door, which in turn is located inside a second hinged door fitted with a transparent panel so that all relevant equipment can be viewed without the need to open this external door. This external door with the glass panel must ensure that the IP 65 protection rating is not compromised by the fitting of equipment such as pushbuttons, switches, etc.

19.4.10 Where outer doors are equipped with transparent panels, such a panel must consist of a material that will not deteriorate significantly due to its exposure to the elements such as ultra-violet radiation, heat, wind, rain, etc. Glass panels will be preferred.

19.4.11 Where there are no existing structures against which the panel can be mounted, a sturdy stand (see the picture below), or mounting bracket must be manufactured of the same material as the panel (i.e. at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel), painted to the same specification and in the same colour as the panel. A ladder type cable rack of suitable width to accommodate all the cabling, plus at least 10% spare space must be fitted to the stand or structure to enable proper securing of the cables, if the cables cannot comfortably be run inside the channel used for the stand or if there is no stand (i.e. where brackets or wall-mounting is used). The cable racking must comply with all the requirements in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).


Top View
Dependent on box mounting holes
Diameter dependent on box mounting holes
Side View
50 mm
Dependent on box size
Dependent on box mounting holes
40x40x5mm angle iron facing up. Length dependent on box
Dependent on box size
40x40x5mm angle iron facing down. Length dependent on box
300 mm
Back View
20 mm flat bar supports welded onto channel for cable ties.
Cables to be installed on the inside of the channel and strapped to the welded in flat bar.
8 mm
8 mm holes
40 mm
Base Plate
250 mm
50 mm
40 mm
Channel Detail
40 mm
250 mm
100 mm

19.4.12 Field junction boxes used inside Elutriation Terrace pump stations or in areas within 10m or less of Ferric Chloride, Sodium Hypochlorite or Chlorine shall be manufactured from Polycarbonate. All bolts, nuts, spring washers, etc. shall be 316 grade stainless steel, painted with 2K poly urethane paint, for all these applications. A sample of the panel must be approved by the engineer before manufacturing or purchasing commences. Channels or other sections used for securing of these junction boxes should be made from GRP (Glass Reinforced Polyester). Where transparent covers are used, they must be high visibility Polycarbonate with UV filtration. Since these Polycarbonate panels are used in highly corrosive atmospheres, they must contain as little metal as possible. Hinges, locking devices, etc. wherever possible, should also be Polycarbonate. All cable glands must be totally encapsulated glands (envirogland type) as shown in the example below.

19.4.13 The GRP profile (cable rack or equipment support) shall consist of pultruded (i.e. a continuous process of pulling material, such as **glass fiber** and resin, through a shaped die for manufacturing of composite materials with constant cross-section), e-glass roving and e-glass multi-axial fabric strength mat, sandwiched between polyester synthetic veil or tissue of minimum 35 gram/ m^2, all of which is encased in an isophthalic vinyl-ester resin. The resin must contain UV stabiliser. It must also contain pigment to provide colour and additional environmental protection. The rack or support must be cleaned and de-greased before it is painted with a 2K automotive or industrial poly urethane paint.

19.4.14 IJB's shall not be installed such that they obstruct passageways or are close to the road where moving objects such as vehicles, forklifts etc. can damage the IJB.

19.4.15 Where cable junction boxes, terminal boxes or terminations in instruments or any other panels in the field take place it must be ensured that such a junction box, termination box, instrument, etc. is not exposed to fire hazards from burning grass or other vegetation. If such a termination point is out in the open field (e.g. where grass grows below and/or around it), a clear area of at least 2.5m radius around this termination point must be provided. This must be a permanent clearing, such as a cement or concrete surface. A mere clearing of vegetation which can grow back again will not be accepted.

19.5 Standard Features

19.5.1 Each panel shall have the following features as standard:-

19.5.1.1 No ventilation fans shall be mounted in the panel and thereby compromise the protection rating.

19.5.1.2 No holes may be drilled for tapping, riveting, bolts & nuts, etc. in any section of the panel where it will compromise the protection rating of the panel. I.e. only in the first (i.e. inner) door of a 2-door panel, in the backing plate or in the glanding plate may holes be drilled. Where drilling is unavoidable, e.g. to affix labels, the holes must be sealed so that the protection rating of the

panel is not compromised.

19.5.1.3 Bolts with nuts shall not be used to attach equipment to any mounting plate at any point. On mounting plates only bolts in tapped holes will be acceptable. Bolts with nuts will be allowed on enclosure doors however, where the bolts and nuts are easily accessible.

19.5.1.4 Where bolts are used on the door or any outside panels of the enclosure, a sealing method (e.g. rubber washers) must be used to ensure that the IP protection rating of the enclosure is not compromised.

19.5.1.5 Wherever bolts are used, the bolts must be as short as practically possible so that there are no long protrusions that can injure people or snag clothing, wiring, other equipment, etc. If bolts are cut to the correct length, the ends of the bolts must be neatly de-burred and smoothed so that there are no sharp edges that can cause injuries and so that the nuts can be easily screwed on and off. No more than four threads of the bolt end must be visible beyond the nut. It is however preferred that the correct length of bolts are used so that shortening is not required.

19.5.1.6 A copper earth bar running the width of the panel at the bottom with solid electrical connection to the panel doors and to the steel of the panel at two or more places and provided with terminals for connection of equipment and screen earth wires.

19.5.1.7 Terminals and equipment of the same voltage must be grouped together, while terminals and equipment of different voltages must be clearly marked and separated by at least 50mm or by suitable insulated barriers to ensure that inadvertent contact or accidental terminations in the wrong place are avoided. Where such barriers are used between terminals of different voltages, these barriers must be larger than the terminals (i.e. standard terminal end barriers will not be acceptable) to ensure that there is a clear separation and to avoid accidental incorrect terminations.

19.5.1.8 Where the panel will be installed out in the open (i.e. not in an area where it is in the shade), the panel must be equipped with a cover which will provide shade for the panel while allowing air flow between the panel and the cover. Such panels should as far as practically possible be installed to face South and the cover should ensure that all transmitters, analysers, pushbuttons, lamps, etc. are protected from direct sunlight. It must be ensured that transmitter LED/LCD displays are **never** exposed to direct sunlight.

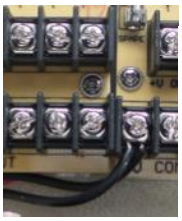
19.5.1.9 Where stopper plugs are used to seal holes that are not used, no plastic stopper plugs will be acceptable. All stopper plugs must be threaded, non-corrodible, metal plugs with rubber washers on both sides of the panel to ensure at least an IP65 seal (see examples below).

19.6 Wiring and Terminals

19.6.1 All terminals shall be screw type terminals and shall be mounted on raised DIN terminal rail, secured to the chassis plate at the back of the panel.

19.6.2 Proprietary type wire strippers shall be used and no stranded conductor shall be terminated if one or more strands have been damaged.

19.6.3 Not more than one wire shall be connected to any terminal unless the terminal can accept pin lugs on either side of a screw or unless proper connecting material is used (see examples below).



Every wire shall be marked at both ends with a numbering system as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Design Standards), or if approved by the Engineer, and all terminating wires shall also be suitably crimped to a terminal lug. Not more than one wire shall be crimped into a single lug. Bare wire terminations will not be accepted.

19.6.4 All wiring shall be flexible, tinned, annealed, multi-strand copper wire not less than:-

19.6.4.1 1,5mm² for 230V AC or 110V AC power

19.6.4.2 1,0mm² for 24V DC or AC power

19.6.4.3 0,5mm² for all PLC I/O wiring between modules and marshalling terminals

19.6.4.4 4,0mm² for earth drain

19.6.5 Irrespective of the minimum wire sizes allowed in this specification, contractors must ensure that all cables and wiring are capable of carrying the full system currents, inclusive of de-rating factors as specified in SANS 10142-1:2003 as amended.

19.6.6 All wire terminations must be done by using suitable lugs. Where pin lugs are crimped onto the ends of wires, correctly sized pin lugs must be used, which fit into the terminals properly and such that the tightening of the terminal does not result in the loosening of the pin lug.

19.6.7 All panel wiring shall run in suitable sized slotted trunking for as much of their course as possible, thereafter in spiral band or similar conduit to its destination if the exposed run would exceed 100mm.

19.6.8 The distance between the terminals and the trunking or between equipment (such as relays, surge protection, circuit breakers, etc.) and trunking shall not be less than 50mm.

19.6.9 Control wiring should not run with power wiring and all cross-overs shall be at ninety degrees.

19.6.10 Each analogue and digital input and output to and from the PLC shall have surge protection units as specified in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification

(Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

19.6.11 Internal wiring shall be colour coded as follows:-

19.6.11.1 230V AC Power

Live	Brown
Neutral	Blue
Earth	Green and Yellow

19.6.11.2 24V DC Power

Positive	Red
Negative	Black

19.6.11.3 Digital Inputs

230V AC	Yellow
24V DC	Red

19.6.11.4 Digital Outputs

230V AC	Grey
24V DC	Red

19.6.11.5 Relay Outputs

230V AC	Grey
24V DC	Red

19.6.11.6 Analogue Signals

Positive	Orange
Negative	Purple

19.6.12 A terminal section for AC and DC power distribution shall be included in the panel where both voltages are used for equipment power supplies. The terminal groups shall be clearly identified to indicate the various voltages.

19.6.13 All wiring must be continuous from one termination (in a terminal strip or device such as a relay, contactor, surge arrester, etc.) to the next. No spliced wiring will be accepted.

19.7 Existing Panels

19.7.1 All modifications and wiring changes to existing panels must comply with the specifications as laid down for new panels.

19.8 Factory Acceptance

19.8.1 Before delivery of the panels, a comprehensive system factory acceptance test must take place. The Engineer must be notified one week in advance of the proposed test.

19.8.2 The test shall comprise of at least, but not be limited to:

19.8.2.1 Checking the panel manufacturing and assembly for compliance with this specification.

19.8.2.2 Layout, numbering and labelling of equipment.

19.8.2.3 Wiring – sizes, numbering, colours, termination, etc.

19.8.2.4 Wiring as per drawings, I/O schedules, etc. (i.e. loop checks).

19.9 Over-Voltage/Lightning Protection

19.9.1 The function of the over-voltage/lightning protection units is to prevent damage from occurring to the electrical and electronic devices due to destructive voltages, by resistive coupling, capacitive coupling or inductive coupling, arising from extraneous events such as lightning discharges, switching surges etc. All lightning and surge protection must be in accordance with the requirements in the Clean Power And Surge Protection specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Design Standards).

19.9.2 The SPD's on all incoming power supplies to the panel shall be in accordance with the LPZ in which the panel is and must comply with the requirements of SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L. Even if the LPZ dictates that class III surge protection is required, at least class II surge protection must be installed.

19.9.3 All analogue and digital input and output circuits shall be in accordance with the LPZ in which the panel is and must comply with the requirements of SANS 10142-1:2003 Annex L. and even if the LPZ dictates that class III surge protection is required, at least class II surge protection must be installed. for protection of these circuits.

19.10 Spares

19.10.1 The tenderer will be required to provide at least 10% spare fuses and other consumable items which may be required during commissioning. In addition to commissioning spares, a recommended spare list for three years maintenance, should be submitted. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

19.11 Painting (Powder Coating Method)

19.11.1 **General**

Switchboards and panels shall be epoxy powder coated in accordance with Type 1 coatings to SANS 1274-2005.
Unless specified otherwise, a high gloss finish in the following colour shall be provided:
Colour - Light Orange, Colour No. B26, Munsell Ref. 2,5 YR C/14 to SANS 1091 : 2004 and Colour No. 381C-557 to BS 381C : 1980.
Paintwork must be guaranteed against blistering, peeling, cracking and general deterioration which can lead to rusting, corrosion, etc. for a period of no less than three years. If the tenderer cannot comply with this requirement, it must be clearly stated as such in the tender.

19.11.2 **Specifications**

The following specifications in accordance with SANS 1274-2005 shall be provided:-

Property	Requirement	Test Method
Thickness, minimum	50 micron	6,7
Marking Resistance (400g)	No marking	6.20
Impact Resistance, J, minimum	6,78	6.10
Water Resistance, h, minimum	720	6.13

Humidity resistance, h, minimum	1000	6.14
Resistance to salt fog, h, minimum	1000	6.16

19.11.3 **Surface Preparation**

Surface preparation of sheet steel components shall be carried out by means of the multi-bath zinc phosphate/chromate passivation treatment.
All fabricated sheet steel components are to be degreased and de-rusted ready for treatment.
A steel surface is considered ready for treatment when all dirt, grease, rust, mill scale, moisture or other contaminants have been removed in an alkaline degreaser to give a dry, clean, bright, metallic surface.
Steel plate less than 4mm thick - black steel sheet shall be pickled to white metal condition while pre-pickled, bright, cold rolled sheet steel shall be solvent cleaned. These surfaces shall be treated within eight hours in all cases while still uncontaminated and rust-free.
The prepared steel surface shall be treated by means of immersion in a heated zinc phosphate solution bath, rinsing and thereafter chromate passivated by means of immersion in the final treatment bath.

19.11.4 **Powder Coating**

A thermosetting powder consisting of epoxy/polyester resin shall be applied by means of an electrostatic spray gun to give a uniform coating thickness of 50 to 60 micron. Less than 50 micron will not be acceptable.

The powder coating shall be baked at a metal temperature of 185ºC so as to melt the powders to form a continuous film over the metal substrate.

19.12 Drawings And Diagrams

19.12.1 The tenderer must submit layout drawings, showing the panel size, cable entry, location of equipment, details of equipment (such as trunking size, circuit breakers, fuses, terminals, etc.), panel colour, material of construction (e.g. 2mm 3CR12 SS), etc. for approval by the Engineer before any manufacturing commences.

19.12.2 The drawings must be accompanied with data lists of the proposed equipment. These data sheets must show the type, supplier, make, model, size, etc. of equipment where applicable. For example:

Treminals - Phoenix SK12, 4mm, white.
MCB's - Merlin Gerin, 5A, 10kA, single-pole.
Etc.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 8 : FLOW MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 18 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 8 : Flow Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 8**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	18	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	17	C. Du Toit	Added electronic calibration data storage requirement.
2018-11-30	16	C. Du Toit	Changed from annubar to thermal dispersion gas flow measurement.
2018-11-30	15	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification and made allowance for new area/velocity flow measurement.
2014-04-17	14	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	13	C. Du Toit	Updated footer, updated mag flow meter requirements & added area-velocity flow meters
2012-07-27	12	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	11	C. Du Toit	Corrected accuracy requirements for electromagnetic flow meters.
2012-03-08	10	C. Du Toit	Altered gas flow to use orifice plate or pitot tube and changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	9	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	8	C. Du Toit	Gas flow meter ambient temperature range altered and data about classification of IS designs and installations

2009-08-18	7	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter position requirements added and mag flow pulse output requirements altered.
2009-05-08	6	C. Du Toit	Added requirements from client meeting on 04 May 2009.
2009-03-25	5	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted, logos altered as per client's requirements and data sheets for magnetic
2007-11-07	4	C. Du Toit	Flow meters for distributing/flow diversion added.
2007-09-10	3	C. Du Toit	Gas flow measurement added and "Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum".
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

8 FLOW MEASUREMENT 4

8.1 Scope 4

8.2 Abbreviations 4

8.3 Standards 5

8.4 General Requirements 5

8.5 Surge Protection 7

8.6 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 7

8.7 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer 8

8.8 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 8

8.9 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer 9

8.10 Partially Filled Pipeline Or Channel Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 10

8.11 Partially Filled Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensors/Transducers For Velocity Measurement 10

8.12 Partially Filled Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensors/Transducers For Level Measurement 11

8.13 Partially Filled Pipeline Flow Measurement – General 11

8.14 Gas Flow 11

8.15 Spares 12

8.16 Hazardous Areas 12

8.17 Intrinsically Safe Installations 13

8.18 Data Sheets 13

8 FLOW MEASUREMENT

8.1 Scope

8.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Flow meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

8.2 Abbreviations

8.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
PTFE	:	Polytetrafluoroethylene
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

NPT	:	National Pipe Thread
DP	:	Differential Pressure
LP	:	Low Pressure
HP	:	High Pressure
RH	:	Relative Humidity
IS	:	Intrinsically Safe

8.3 Standards

8.3.1 The supply and installation of all Flow meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.
BS 3680	:	Measurement of liquid flow in open channels.
SANS10108:2005	:	The classification of hazardous locations and the selection of apparatus for use in such locations.
SANS60079-10:2005	:	Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres. Part 10: Classification of hazardous areas.
SANS60079-11:2005	:	Electrical apparatus for explosive gas atmospheres. Part 10: Intrinsic safety “i”.
SANS10086-1	:	The installation, inspection and maintenance of equipment used in explosive atmospheres Part 1: Installations including surface installations on mines

8.4 General Requirements

8.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

8.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

8.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

8.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

8.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. LCD displays must always be protected from direct sunlight, either by facing them away from the sun or by installing it inside the FJB, in the shade of the FJB canopy. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

8.4.7 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

8.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

8.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or

replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

8.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

8.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

8.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

8.4.13 If a flow meter (for any application) is offered, which has the facility to store calibration and set-up data electronically, so that it can be downloaded when an instrument is replaced, the contractor must include the supply of all the necessary equipment (special cables, memory cards, etc.) to enable the use of this facility.

8.4.14 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

8.5 Surge Protection

8.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

8.6 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

8.6.1 Flow calculations for all open channel flow measurement must be done in accordance with BS 3680.

8.6.2 All flow measurements in open channels must be done by using ultra-sonic distance measurement, which is converted into a flow value at weirs or venturi flumes. Where there are no weirs or venturi flumes, area/velocity flow meters must be used (see requirements later in this specification).

8.6.3 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

8.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable.

8.6.5 The instrument must be equipped with at least one SPDT relay, rated for at least 230V AC, 500mA, for totalised flow pulses. This output must be user-programmable for the units-per-pulse.

8.6.6 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

8.6.7 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.25% or 6mm, whichever is greater.

8.6.8 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 0.1% or 2mm, whichever is greater.

8.6.9 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display showing instantaneous flow and totalised flow.

8.7 Open Channel Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer

8.7.1 The range of the sensor must be suitable for the application (see items 8.4.8 and 8.4.9 of this specification).

8.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -10ºC to +50ºC.

8.7.3 The sensor must be equipped with automatic temperature compensation.

8.7.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

8.7.5 Brackets used for the mounting of ultra-sonic sensor heads and velocity sensor heads (if external velocity sensors are used) must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

8.8 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

8.8.1 All flow measurements in full pipelines must be done by using electro-magnetic flow (mag-flow) measurement, which is converted into a flow value where accuracy of measurement is required for dosing and/or custody transfer of flow. Where measurement for flow distribution or flow diversion is required or for pump protection (i.e. where high accuracy is not essential), non-intrusive flow measurement using external sensors can be applied. These systems must incorporate either ultrasonic time of flight or Doppler principles. Ultrasonic time of flight systems can be used on clean water with low contents of air bubbles or other entrained gasses and suspended solids of less than 10,000 milligrams/litre. Doppler systems can be used on liquids with entrained particles or gasses of 100 microns or larger and suspended solids in excess of 75 milligrams/litre.

8.8.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

8.8.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable.

8.8.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least one SPDT relay, or an output that can be used to drive a relay, for totalised flow pulses. This output must be user-programmable for the units-per-pulse.

8.8.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

8.8.6 The transmitter for electro-magnetic flow meters must have an accuracy of at least 0.5%, or better, of the measured value for flow velocities which are greater than 0.5 meters/second. Transmitters of flow meters for flow distribution/diversion can have an accuracy of less than 0.5% but they must not be less accurate than ±2% of the full scale for Doppler meters and not less than ±2% of the measured value for time of flight meters. For both Doppler and time of flight meters these accuracy requirements apply to flow velocities of 0.5 meters/second or greater. Repeatability must not be less than 1% of the measured value.

8.8.7 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display showing instantaneous flow and totalised flow.

8.9 Full Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensor/Transducer

8.9.1 The range of the sensor must be suitable for the application (see items 8.4.8 and 8.4.9 of this specification).

8.9.2 The sensor lining for electro-magnetic flow meters used in sludge or non-corrosive liquids must be Neoprene or Rubber, suitable for operating in temperatures ranging from -10ºC to +80ºC.

8.9.3 The sensor lining for electro-magnetic flow meters used in corrosive or heated liquids must be PTFE, suitable for operating in temperatures ranging from -20ºC to +150ºC.

8.9.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 68 or higher.

8.9.5 The sensor tube material for electro-magnetic flow meters must be at least 304, 316 or 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

8.9.6 The sensor electrode material for electromagnetic flow meters must be at least 304, 316 or Hastelloy C grade stainless steel.

8.9.7 The sensor for electromagnetic flow meters must have either a grounding electrode or earth rings fitted.

8.9.8 Where process flow in the pipeline cannot be stopped or isolated by any other means, isolation hand valves must be fitted on either side of electro-magnetic flow meters for removal/replacement of the flow meter.

8.9.9 The sensor material for flow meters used for flow distribution/diversion must be stainless steel.

8.9.10 Magnetic flow meters must be equipped with an “Empty Pipe” detection which is configurable to stop the 4-20mA flow indication and/or operate a potential free contact, or an output that can be used to drive a relay, for PLC interfacing.

8.9.11 Electro-magnetic flow meters must not be a wafer-type. I.e. the sensor tube or wafer must be housed in a flanged stainless steel spool piece which can readily be bolted onto flanges in the pipe where it must be installed.

8.10 Partially Filled Pipeline Or Channel Flow Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

8.10.1 Where electro-magnetic flow meters (e.g. for full pipes) or conventional ultrasonic flow meters (e.g. at weirs or venturi flumes) cannot be used, such as in partially filled pipes or open channels without a weir or venturi, area-velocity flow meters must be used. A liquid velocity measurement as well as a liquid depth measurement, together with the dimension of the pipe or channel which is programmed into the controller/transmitter, must then be used to produce a proportional flow measurement.

8.10.2 The flow measurement must be done by using ultrasonic, microwave or radar signals to measure both velocity and depth of liquid.

8.10.3 The controller/transmitter must have at least an IP66 rating or higher.

8.10.4 The controller/transmitter must have a backlit LCD display to display flow rate and total flow.

8.10.5 The error of the level measurement must not be more than 0.25% of the range and the error of the velocity must not exceed 2% of the velocity reading.

8.10.6 The repeatability and linearity must be 0.1% or better.

8.10.7 The unit must be suitable for use with a 230V AC supply.

8.10.8 The unit must have 3 x 4-20mA outputs, one for flow, one for level and one for velocity.

8.10.9 The unit must have at least 2 x SPDT relays, rated at no less than 2A at 230V AC. One of the relays must be programmable for flow pulses and the other must be programmable for flow and/or level alarm.

8.10.10 The unit must have at least 3 x 4-20mA outputs, one for velocity, one for level/depth and one for flow. These outputs will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load.

8.10.11 The unit must suitable for operating in temperatures ranging from minus 15ºC to +60ºC.

8.11 Partially Filled Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensors/Transducers For Velocity Measurement

8.11.1 If the velocity sensor is installed below the water, the velocity sensor must be shaped and installed in such a manner that the cabling to it is protected from any debris that might flow in that pipe or channel.

8.11.2 The velocity sensor must be able to measure in a range of 0.03 to 6.2 m/sec and reverse flow of -1.5m/sec if a submerged sensor is used. If an non-submerged sensor is used, it must be able to measure in a range of 0.2 to 6 m/sec.

8.11.3 The velocity sensor must be suitable for operating in temperatures ranging from minus 15ºC to +65ºC.

8.11.4 The velocity sensor must be equipped with continuous, automatic temperature compensation.

8.12 Partially Filled Pipeline Flow Measurement – Sensors/Transducers For Level Measurement

8.12.1 The level sensor must have a low profile, in order to provide the maximum measuring distance in enclosed pipes.

8.12.2 The level sensor must have a measuring range of at least 3.66m and a minimum range (deadband) of not more than 203.2mm.

8.12.3 The level sensor must be suitable for operating in temperatures ranging from minus 15ºC to +65ºC.

8.12.4 The level sensor must be equipped with continuous, automatic temperature compensation.

8.13 Partially Filled Pipeline Flow Measurement – General

8.13.1 The submerged velocity sensor must not be installed in locations where sediment builds up.

8.13.2 The sensors must not be installed in locations where there is high water turbulence (the lower the turbulence, the higher the accuracy).

8.13.3 The sensors must be installed in locations where the velocity and level are equally distributed across the channel or pipe.

8.13.4 The channel or pipe where the sensors are installed must not have drops or direction changes immediately upstream of the sensors.

8.13.5 The slope of the pipe or channel where the sensors are installed must not exceed 3%.

8.13.6 Under no circumstances must sensors be installed in a manner or in a location which makes it impossible for site maintenance staff to access it for repairs or replacement later.

8.14 Gas Flow

8.14.1 The flow measurement must be done by using thermal dispersion technology, with a guaranteed drift-free operation and a turn down ratio up to 100:1 to measure volumetric gas flow. With thermal dispersion, two temperature probes are used. The first probe generates a temperature and the second one measures the dispersed temperature. Thermal dispersion measurement must be unaffected by changes in gas pressure or gas temperature. The sensor must also maintain a minimum accuracy of 2% of the reading ± 0.2% of full scale for changes in gas composition as high as ±2.5% of CH_4.

8.14.2 The instrument must be equipped with a remote transmitter which can be mounted in an IJB located in an easily accessible location in a non-hazardous area for viewing, maintenance and repairs. The transmitter shall have a 10-digit LED display for indication of flow rate and totalised flow. Where compensating leads for Pt100s are used, the contractor must ensure that the cable between the sensor

and transmitter is installed as supplied by the supplier. I.e. cables must not be cut. Excess cable must be coiled up neatly at the IJB.

8.14.3 The instrument must be equipped with integrated compensation for humidity. The average biogas composition which will be used must be 60% Methane and 40% Carbon Dioxide.

8.14.4 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 67 or higher rating.

8.14.5 The instrument must be equipped with a 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load, for instantaneous volumetric flow in m^3/hr. It must also be equipped with a pulsed output for flow totalization.

8.14.6 The instrument must be suitable for use with a 24V DC power supply and it must have an EEx [i, e or d] rating, suitable for use in a Zone 1 area with Methane gas.

8.14.7 The sensor shall be of the insertion type with full stainless steel design. The housing shall be a compression-proof, dual compartment, stainless steel housing of material type DIN 1.4571 (316Ti). All sealing on the housing shall be done with Viton “O” rings.

8.14.8 The sensor must be equipped with a hot tapping unit for ease of insertion removal during normal digester operation. The compression fitting on the hot tapping unit must be with a metal-Viton elastomer design, resistant to pipe vibration and with a robust, threaded process connection for frequent mounting/dismounting of the sensor for inspection.

8.14.9 The sensor must be installed strictly in accordance with the supplier’s recommendations and requirements. The sensor must be equipped with locating pins to ensure that the sensor cannot be replaced incorrectly after removal.

8.14.10 The range of the instrument must be suitable for the application (see items 8.4.8 and 8.4.9 of this specification)

8.14.11 The instrument must be suitable for an ambient operating temperature range of minus 20ºC to +70ºC and a process temperature operating range of minus20ºC to +120ºC.

8.14.12 The instrument must be suitable for operating in a humidity range of 0 to 100% RH.

8.15 Spares

8.15.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

8.16 Hazardous Areas

8.16.1 If the flow meter is going to be used for any combustible gas flow measurement, the tenderer must ensure that there is a hazardous area classification for the area in which the instrument will be installed.

8.16.2 If no hazardous area classification exists, the tenderer must allow a suitable cost for the classification of all relevant areas and must clearly indicate this cost in either the Bill Of Quantities or in a covering letter.

8.16.3 The flow meter and associated equipment supplied must all be suitable for use in the hazardous area concerned.

8.17 Intrinsically Safe Installations

8.17.1 Where intrinsically safe (IS) installations are required the tenderer must allow a cost to have the IS design from the Engineer certified as safe and compliant with the relevant legal requirements. This certification can only be done by a suitably accredited organization or company.

8.17.2 Once the certified IS design has been installed, the installation must be certified as correct and in accordance with the certified design. The tenderer must allow a cost for the certification. This certification can only be done by a suitably accredited organization or company.

8.17.3 All instruments supplied for use in a hazardous area must have the hazardous area rating and classification (E.g. Ex ia IIC T5) and suitable marking as specified in SANS 10108, ARP 0108:2007, Annex B, indicated on the instrument and the instrument must be certified by an approved testing/certification body as listed in SANS 0108, ARP 0108:2007.

8.18 Data Sheets

8.18.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – OPEN CHANNEL FLOW METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Type & Rating (E.g. SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Programmable Totaliser (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous & total LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

DATA SHEET – FULL PIPELINE FLOW METER (MAGNETIC)

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Type & Rating (E.g. SPDT, 230V AC, 5A or 24V DC output) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Repeatability	
Programmable Totaliser (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous & total LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor range	
Transducer/Sensor wafer-type or flange-type?	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Transducer/Sensor lining material	
Transducer/Sensor tube material	
Transducer/Sensor grounding details	
Transducer/Sensor equipped with “Empty Pipe” detection as specified (Y/N)?	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

DATA SHEET – FULL PIPELINE FLOW METER FOR DISTRIBUTION/DIVERSION

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Type & Rating (E.g. SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Repeatability	
Programmable Totaliser (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous & total LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor material	
Transducer/Sensor rating	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

DATA SHEET – GAS FLOW METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output	
Hazardous area rating (E.G. Ex ia IIC T5)	
Hazardous classification certification body (E.G. CSA, CESI, DEMKO, DMT, LCIE, etc.) as approved by SANS 10108, ARP 0108:2007.	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Range	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous m^3/hr LCD)	
Ambient temperature operating range	
Process temperature operating range	
Humidity range	
Sensor material	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

DATA SHEET – AREA-VELOCITY FLOW METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
No. Of Analogue Outputs	
Digital Output Type & Rating (E.g. SPDT, 230V AC, 2A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
No. Of Relay Outputs	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Velocity Accuracy	
Level Accuracy	
Repeatability & Linearity	
Programmable Totaliser (Y/N)?	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous & total LCD)	
Velocity Transducer/Sensor range	
Level Transducer/Sensor range	
Velocity Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Level Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Velocity Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Velocity Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 25 : LABELLING

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 3 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 25 : Labelling**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 25**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	3	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-07-04	2	C. Du Toit	JW requirements from electrical workshop for wire numbering included.
2019-06-15	1	C. Du Toit	JW requirements included (Arial font on labels and no more than 4 threads showing on bolt ends).
2018-11-30	A	C. Du Toit	Initial revision issued for comment/approval

INDEX

25 LABELLING 4

25.1 Scope 4

25.2 Abbreviations 4

25.3 Standards 4

25.4 Performance And Installation Requirements 5

25.5 Safety 6

25.6 Enclosures 6

25.7 Cables 7

25.8 Wires 7

25.9 Components 7

25 LABELLING

25.1 Scope

25.1.1 The purpose of this document is to cover the requirements for the supply and installation of labels on all C&I equipment, cables, wires, and panels.

25.1.2 If there is a discrepancy between the requirements of this specification and the requirements in the tender Scope of Work, the Scope of Work will take precedence.

25.2 Abbreviations

25.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

Contractor	:	The persons/s named as a contractor in the letter of tender accepted by the employer.
Employer	:	The person/entity named as Employer in the tender, and the legal successors in title to this person.
Engineer	:	The person appointed by the Employer to act as Engineer for the purposes of this contract.
BS	:	British Standards
ICP	:	Instrument Control Panel
IJB	:	Instrument Junction Box
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
PTFE	:	Mixed Liquor Suspended Solids
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance
UV	:	Ultraviolet

25.3 Standards

25.3.1 All design standards shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1186	:	Information and Safety Signs.
SANS 1040	:	National Building Regulations

25.4 Performance And Installation Requirements

25.4.1 The attachment of labels must not at any time compromise the IP protection rating of any panel or enclosure.

25.4.2 Glue-on labels will only be permitted if industrial type glue or industrial type double-sided adhesive tape is used. Normal commercial or household glue or double-sided adhesive tape will not be accepted. This glue or tape must also not be used where environmental conditions such as wind, rain, UV, etc. can lead to the deterioration of the adhesive tape.

25.4.3 Any deviations from this specification need to be approved in writing by the engineer.

25.4.4 Where glue or adhesive tape is not used, signs and labels shall be affixed using corrosion resistant, mechanical fixings.

25.4.5 Not more than one item will be labelled with one label**, i.e. there will not be a continuous strip of labels for multiple items.** Each item shall have a separate, unique label assigned to it**.**

25.4.6 Allowed label materials are as follows:

25.4.6.1 Traffolyte or equal, or hard plastic sandwich board. (black lettering on white background) (not applicable to cables).

25.4.6.2 Reverse engraved acrylic material, with filled letters and reverse sprayed. (not applicable to cables).

25.4.6.3 Engraved or embossed stainless steel (for cable labels).

25.4.7 Labels that will be outside and frequently exposed to wind, rain and UV radiation must be either Traffolyte or equal, stainless steel, brass or aluminium, with engraved letters filled with black, or embossed lettering.

25.4.8 At the engineer's request the contractor shall provide proof that materials used for labels are corrosion proof or UV resistant. The cost of this needs to be allowed for in the tender.

25.4.9 The font used for all printed and engraved labels shall be Arial.

25.4.10 Specific requirements for labels listed in the tender specification supersede any general requirements listed in this specification.

25.4.11 Bolts with nuts shall not be used to attach labels to any mounting plate at any point. On mounting plates only bolts in tapped holes will be acceptable (if glue or double sided tape as mentioned in item 25.4.2 above is not used). Bolts with nuts will be allowed on enclosure doors however, where the bolts and nuts are easily accessible.

25.4.12 The use of pop rivets to attach labels will not be allowed.

25.4.13 The preferred method of attaching labels is to use corrosion resistant screws in tapped

holes.

25.4.14 Where bolts are used on the door or any outside panels of the enclosure, a sealing method (e.g. rubber washers) must be used to ensure that the IP protection rating of the enclosure is not compromised.

25.4.15 Wherever bolts are used, the bolts must be as short as practically possible so that there are no long protrusions that can injure people or snag clothing, wiring, other equipment, etc. If bolts are cut to the correct length, the ends of the bolts must be neatly de-burred and smoothed so that there are no sharp edges that can cause injuries and so that the nuts can be easily screwed on and off. No more than four threads of the bolt end must be visible beyond the nut. It is however preferred that the correct length of bolts are used so that shortening is not required.

25.5 Safety

25.5.1 Where hazardous or dangerous equipment, conditions or materials are present, safety signs and labels shall be attached in such a way that it is clear what the hazard or danger is.

25.5.2 Any hazard, for which there is not a standard symbol defined in the standards mentioned in item 25.3.1 of this document, will be identified by simple wording and symbols approved or specified by the engineer.

25.5.3 Self-adhesive safety signs on vinyl will be permitted on enclosures if the safety signs are standard or approved by the engineer.

25.5.4 Where approved by the engineer, internally mounted, project specific safety labels and charts may be printed on plastic or laminated thin card, protected behind Perspex.

25.5.5 The contractor will supply safety signs for all hazardous components, including, but not limited to:

25.5.5.1 Busbar covers.

25.5.5.2 Fibre Optic patch panels and switches where laser light could be harmful to one’s sight.

25.5.5.3 Power inside a panel that does not originate inside the panel itself i.e. it may not be powered down when the panel is isolated.

25.5.6 The text size for Information/warning labels inside enclosures shall be 6mm high (16pt).

25.5.7 The text size for Information/warning labels outside enclosures shall be 10mm high (26pt).

25.6 Enclosures

25.6.1 Labels with the name of the enclosure shall be attached to the outside of the enclosure, on the front at eye height, or as close to eye height as is practical.

25.6.2 The label will be attached with corrosive resistant bolts or screws either into a tapped hole, or via a corrosion resistant washer and nut at the back. Nuts and bolts can only be used on enclosures where such nuts and bolts are readily accessible (e.g. on the enclosure door).

25.6.3 Every PLC panel, ICP, or IJB, shall have an engraved stainless steel label attached with the following information clearly visible inside the panel, ICP, or IJB:

25.6.3.1 Contractor name.

25.6.3.2 Contractor contact information.

25.6.3.3 Enclosure serial/identification number and manufacture date.

25.6.4 The text size for Enclosure name labels shall be 10mm high (26pt).

25.7 Cables

25.7.1 Identical labels shall be attached at both ends of each cable.

25.7.2 Labels for cables in a PLC panel/MCC panel/IJB/ICP shall be located at the entry to the panel, on the inside and outside of the panel, where the cable numbers inside and outside the panel are not visible from one location (e.g. cables at the PLC panel entry, where cable numbers are either visible inside the PLC panel or inside the cable trench).

25.7.3 Labels for cables of instrument sensors and other field mounted components shall be located within 100mm of the termination point.

25.7.4 Labels for cables must be attached via either stainless steel straps or cable ties that are certified as UV stabilized.

25.7.5 The text size for cable identification labels shall be at least 6mm (16pt).

25.8 Wires

25.8.1 No separate wire numbers slid onto wires will be accepted. A wire number holder must be attached to the wire and the wire numbers must then be inserted into the wire holder (see the examples below).

These wire number holders must surround the wire completely. I.e. they must slide onto the wire. Clip-on holders will not be accepted.

25.8.2 Wires shall be labelled at both ends with the numbers indicated on construction drawings.

25.9 Components

25.9.1 Each component inside IJBs, ICPs, and PLC panels shall be clearly identified with a

unique label as indicated on the construction drawings.

25.9.2 Labels will not be attached to trunking or any other item that can be removed for maintenance, including the component itself. Removal of trunking or replacement of components must not affect the component labelling.

25.9.3 Pushbuttons and other controls must be labelled with their function on a separate label (E.g. Stop, Start, Open, Close, etc.).

25.9.4 Labels for components are allowed to be inserted in a rail on the mounting plate, if this rail is specifically made for the relevant labels. The rail shall not obscure any part of any lettering.

25.9.5 Labels shall be located directly below, above or adjacent to the relevant equipment, as long as the label is clearly visible and it is clear and unambiguous as to which item of equipment the label refers to.

25.9.6 All terminal strips, and terminals must be labelled with labels that attach to the relevant terminal strip marker or terminal respectively.

25.9.7 The text size for component identification labels shall be 4mm high (10pt).

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 9 : LEVEL MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 14 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 9 : Level Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 9**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	04/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	14	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-25	13	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	12	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	10	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	9	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	8	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	7	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	6	C. Du Toit	Transmitter relay rating altered.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter position requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.

2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	“Minimum” 500 ohm load changed to “Maximum”
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and ”Joburg” logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

9 LEVEL MEASUREMENT 4

9.1 Scope 4

9.2 Abbreviations 4

9.3 Standards 4

9.4 General Requirements 4

9.5 Surge Protection 6

9.6 Level Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 6

9.7 Level Measurement – Sensor/Transducer 7

9.8 Spares 7

9.9 Labelling 7

9.10 Data Sheets 7

9 LEVEL MEASUREMENT

9.1 Scope

9.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Level meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

9.2 Abbreviations

9.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

9.3 Standards

9.3.1 The supply and installation of all Level meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

9.4 General Requirements

9.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

9.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.4.1.4 Load Cells And Their Installation

9.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

9.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

9.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

9.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

9.4.7 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

9.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

9.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if

instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

9.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

9.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

9.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

9.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

9.5 Surge Protection

9.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.6 Level Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

9.6.1 All level measurements must be done by using ultra-sonic distance measurement, which is converted into a level value.

9.6.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

9.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable.

9.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least three to five SPDT relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A, for preset level outputs. These outputs must be user-programmable for various levels.

9.6.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

9.6.6 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.25% or 6mm, whichever is greater.

9.6.7 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 0.1% or 2mm, whichever is greater.

9.6.8 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display showing instantaneous level and relay status.

9.7 Level Measurement – Sensor/Transducer

9.7.1 The range of the sensor must be suitable for the application (see items 9.4.8 and 9.4.9 of this specification).

9.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -10ºC to +50ºC.

9.7.3 The sensor must be equipped with automatic temperature compensation.

9.7.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

9.7.5 Brackets used for the mounting of ultra-sonic sensor heads must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

9.8 Spares

9.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

9.9 Labelling

9.9.1 All labelling must comply with the requirements as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

9.10 Data Sheets

9.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – LEVEL METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 5 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous level & relay status LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details.	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 13 : MIXED LIQUOR SUSPENDED SOLIDS MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 14 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 13 : Mixed Liquor Suspended Solids Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 13**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	14	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	13	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	12	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	10	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	9	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	8	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	7	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	6	C. Du Toit	Transmitter relay rating altered.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"

2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and ”Joburg” logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

13 MIXED LIQUOR SUSPENDED SOLIDS MEASUREMENT....4

13.1 Scope....4

13.2 Abbreviations....4

13.3 Standards....4

13.4 General Requirements....5

13.5 Surge Protection....6

13.6 MLSS Measurement – Controller/Transmitter....6

13.7 MLSS Measurement – Transducer/Sensor....7

13.8 Spares....7

13.9 Data Sheets....7

13 MIXED LIQUOR SUSPENDED SOLIDS MEASUREMENT

13.1 Scope

13.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Mixed Liquor Suspended Solids meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

13.2 Abbreviations

13.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
	SPDT :	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
MLSS	:	Mixed Liquor Suspended Solids
mg/l	:	Milligram per litre
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

13.3 Standards

13.3.1 The supply and installation of all Mixed Liquor Suspended Solids meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

13.4 General Requirements

13.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

13.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

13.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

13.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

13.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

13.4.7 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

13.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the

manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

13.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

13.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

13.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

13.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

13.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

13.5 Surge Protection

13.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

13.6 MLSS Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

13.6.1 All MLSS measurements must be done by using a light scatter operating principle.

13.6.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

13.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable for MLSS.

13.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least one to three SPDT relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. Two relays for preset MLSS outputs and one relay for alarm status (i.e. transmitter failure, out of range measurement, etc.). The preset outputs must be user-programmable for various MLSS values.

13.6.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

13.6.6 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 5% or 100mg/l, whichever is greater.

13.6.7 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 1% or 50mg/l, whichever is greater.

13.6.8 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display, which will show instantaneous MLSS and relay status.

13.7 MLSS Measurement – Transducer/Sensor

13.7.1 The range of the sensor must be from 0.00 to 10,000 mg/l and must be suitable for the application (see items 13.4.8 and 13.4.9 of this specification).

13.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of 0ºC to +50ºC.

13.7.3 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

13.7.4 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

13.7.5 The sensor must be supplied, complete with a cleaning unit (air or water), equipped with a user-programmable cleaning cycle.

13.8 Spares

13.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

13.9 Data Sheets

13.9.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – MIXED LIQUOR SUSPENDED SOLIDS METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Operating principle	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous MLSS & relay status LCD).	
Transducer/Sensor MLSS range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Transducer/Sensor cleaning system type & programmable (Y/N)?	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 7 : NETWORKING

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 15 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 7 : Networking**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 7**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	15	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-25	14	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	13	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	12	C. Du Toit	Added use of blown fibre.
2013-10-07	11	C. Du Toit	Updated footer.
2012-07-27	10	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	9	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC), updated core switch port requirements, core switch power supply requirements,
2011-07-11	8	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	7	C. Du Toit	Area and core switch requirements clarified, data irrelevant to tenderers deleted and data sheets
2010-03-12	6	C. Du Toit	Fibre core switch requirements updated to specify Gigabit uplinks and to include a data sheet.

2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2009-02-24	3	C. Du Toit	Switch requirements from specialist added plus "Joburg" & "JW" Logos added to top & partnership
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

7 NETWORKING 4

7.1 Scope 4

7.2 Abbreviations 4

7.3 Standards 5

7.4 Communication Protocol 5

7.5 Network Topology 6

7.6 Switches 7

7.7 Compliance With Standards 9

7.8 Network Switch Data Sheets 9

7.9 Redundancy Testing 9

7.10 Labelling 10

7 NETWORKING

7.1 Scope

7.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of equipment, the network topologies, the communication methods and the security for data communication systems, typically between Programmable Logic Controllers and Supervisory systems, used in process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

7.2 Abbreviations

7.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

CD	:	Compact Disk
CLI	:	Command Line Interface
DiffServ	:	Differentiated Services
EMC	:	Electro-Magnetic Compatibility
GARP	:	Generic Attribute Registration Protocol
GMRP	:	GARP Multicast Registration Protocol
GUI	:	Graphical User Interface
GVRP	:	GARP VLAN Registration Protocol
HTTPS	:	Hyper Text Transfer Protocol Secure switches
IEC	:	International Electrotechnical Commission
IEEE	:	Institute of Electrical and Electronic Engineers
IGMP	:	Internet Group Management Protocol
LACP	:	Link Aggregation Control Protocol
LAN	:	Local Area Network
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
MAC	:	Media Access Control
Mbit	:	Mega bits
Mbps	:	Mega bits per second
MDI/MDI-X	:	Medium Dependent Interface/ Medium Dependent Interface (crossed)
OS	:	Operating system
PC	:	Personal Computer
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
QoS	:	Quality Of Service
RD	:	Read
RSTP	:	Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
SANS	:	South African National Standards
SCADA	:	Supervisory Control And Data Acquisition

SNMP	:	Simple Network Management Protocol
SSH	:	Secure Shell
SSL	:	Secure Sockets Layer
TCP/IP	:	Transmission Collision Protocol/Internet Protocol
TOS	:	Type Of Service
TX	:	Transmit
USB	:	Universal Serial Bus
VLAN	:	Virtual Local Area Network

7.3 Standards

7.3.1 All design standards shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

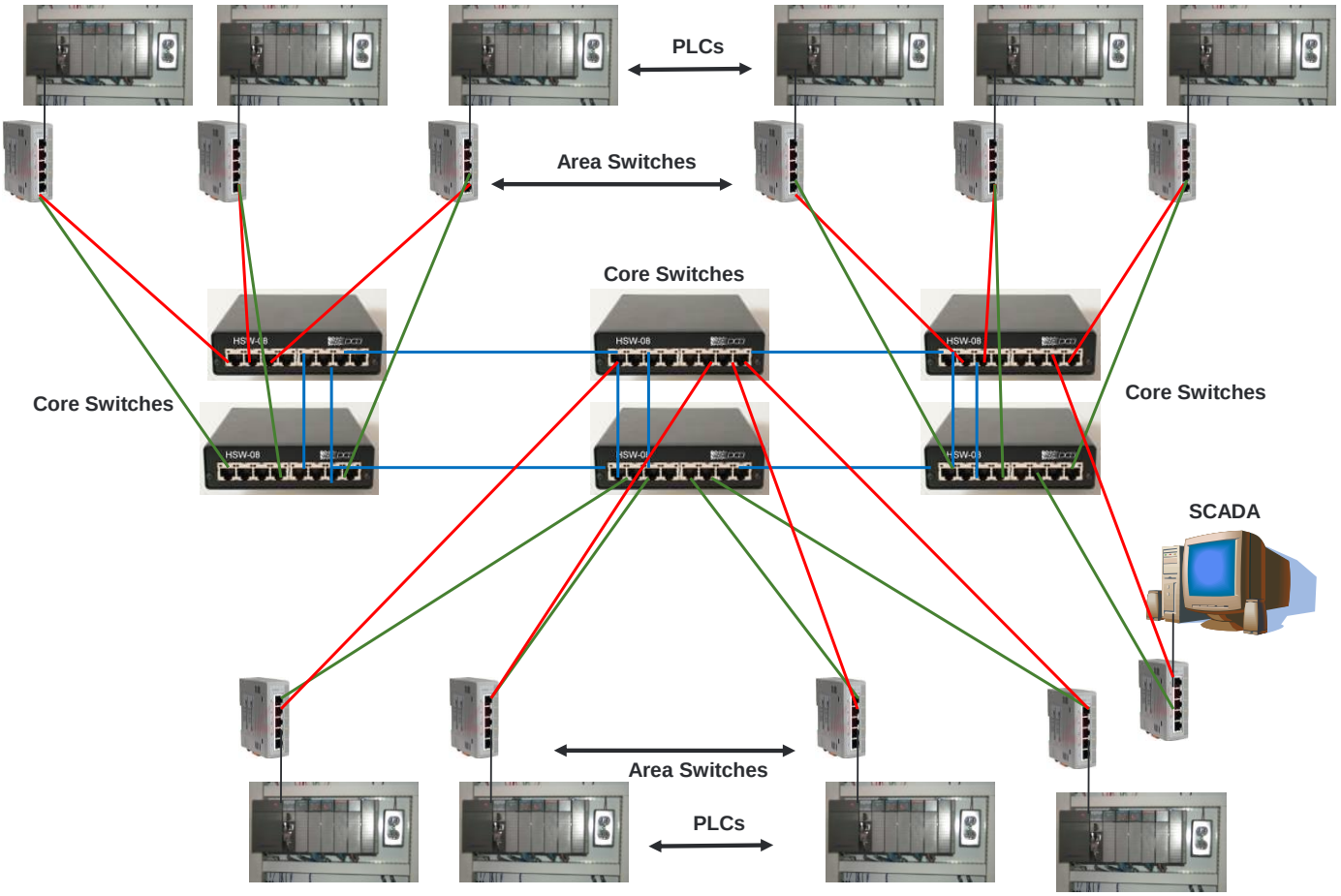
SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises
IEEE 802.3-2005	:	Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) access method and physical layer specifications
IEEE 802.3ad (Now IEEE 802.1AX)	:	Link Aggregation
IEEE 802.1d	:	MAC Bridges
IEEE 802.1p	:	Quality of service
IEEE 802.1Q	:	VLAN Tagging
IEEE 802.1w	:	Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
IEEE 802.1X	:	Port Based Network Access Control
IEC 60068-2-6	:	Environmental Testing - Vibration
IEC 60068-2-27	:	Environmental Testing – Test Ea and guidance: Shock
SANS 61000-4/IEC 61000-4	:	Electromagnetic compatibility – testing and measurement techniques

7.4 Communication Protocol

7.4.1 The preferred method of communication between PLC’s or between PLC’s and SCADA systems is Ethernet TCP/IP.

7.4.2 Systems must be designed and equipment selected with the view of communicating via TCP/IP over Ethernet.

7.5 Network Topology



7.5.1 The preferred topology is an Ethernet star/mesh topology as indicated in the diagram above.

7.5.2 Where existing installations make the use of a star/mesh topology impractical, contractors must link into the existing system in such a way that future conversion to a star/mesh topology will not be hampered by the current installation.

7.5.3 All systems must be designed and equipment selected with the view of converting to a star/mesh topology when possible.

7.5.4 Network redundancy must be such that if one core switch fails, there must be a second one that can maintain communication (as shown in the diagram above).

7.5.5 Data communication between core switches and from core switches to the area switch patch panels must be done via 9/125µm, single mode, PVC, CST (Corrugated Steel Tape) cable or single mode blown fibre microduct assemblies (see the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards)). The number of cores must be as specified in the project scope of work and the tender bill of quantities.

7.5.6 Each core switch pair (i.e. the two core switches which form a dual redundant system at a particular location) must be equipped with two UPSs (Uninterruptable Power Supplies) as specified in the “Automation And Control Design Standards, Volume 5, Clean Power And Surge Protection”. The two power supplies must be connected to both switches (i.e. each UPS supplies both core switches) to provide redundancy. These supplies must also be equipped with proper surge protection as detailed in the same specification - “Automation And Control Design Standards, Volume 5, Clean Power And Surge Protection”.

7.6 Switches

7.6.1 Minimum Requirements For Area Switches

7.6.1.1 Only industrial type switches will be accepted. No standard “commercial” or “Office” switches will be accepted. These switches must have at least an IP 20 rating, must have a rugged high-strength metal case and must have DIN-rail or panel mounting ability. They must have an operating temperature of at least 0 to 55ºC, without the use of cooling fans and must be able to work in relative humidity up to 95% without condensation.

7.6.1.2 Redundancy and fault recovery:

- Must comply with IEEE 802.1w for Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol

7.6.1.3 Remote management and monitoring:

- Must support SNMP V1/V2/V3 for different levels of network management security

7.6.1.4 Area switches must have at least two SFP uplink ports which are 1000Base-LX Gigabit Ethernet standard compatible. These ports must be compatible with Duplex LC-type connectors for single-mode fibre.

7.6.1.5 Area switches must have the number of copper ports as specified in the project scope of work and the tender bill of quantities. The copper ports must be 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX compatible in order to communicate with the PLCs. These ports must be capable of accepting RJ45 connectors on CAT-6 cable.

7.6.1.6 In terms of configuration, maintenance, management and monitoring features required, all area switches must:

- Have support for loading or saving configurations to a remote host
- Have port monitoring for debugging
- Have line-swap fast recovery to normal operation (within milliseconds) after devices are unplugged and then re-plugged into different ports
- Be configurable by Operating System (OS) independent web browser, using secure HTTPS

7.6.2 Minimum Requirements For Core Switches

7.6.2.1 Only industrial type switches will be accepted. No standard “commercial” or “Office” switches will be accepted. These switches

must have redundant, dual DC power units, must have at least an IP 30 rating, must have a rugged high-strength metal case and must be 19" rack-mounted switches. They must have an operating temperature of at least 0 to 55ºC, without the use of cooling fans and must be able to work in relative humidity up to 95% without condensation.

7.6.2.2 Redundancy and fault recovery:

- Must comply with IEEE 802.1w for Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol
- Must comply with IEEE 802.3ad (now 802.1AX) for link aggregation or port trunking and must have at least 4 trunks.

7.6.2.3 Broadcast isolation and network segmentation:

- Must comply with IEEE 802.1Q in terms of support for VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP) to ease network planning

7.6.2.4 Quality of service:

- Must comply with IEEE 802.1p/1Q in terms of support for TOS/DiffServ in order to increase determinism

7.6.2.5 Multicasting:

- Must have IGMP Snooping and GMRP for filtering multicast traffic from industrial Ethernet protocols

7.6.2.6 Security and authentication:

- Must comply with IEEE 802.1X in terms of support for SSL to enhance network security

7.6.2.7 Remote management and monitoring:

- Must support SNMP V1/V2/V3 for different levels of network management security

7.6.2.8 Core switches must be managed, Layer 3 switches with the number of ports as specified in the project scope of work and the tender bill of quantities.

7.6.2.9 Core switches must provide support for a minimum of four trunked Gigabit SFP ports with 1000Base-LC, LC connectors.

7.6.2.10 Core switches must provide support for a minimum of eight SFP ports that will support a combination of Fast Ethernet ports (10/100Base-TX,) and Gigabit Ethernet ports (1000Base-T, 1000Base-LX).

7.6.2.11 In terms of configuration, maintenance, management and monitoring features required, all core switches must:

- Have support for loading or saving configurations to a remote host
- Have port monitoring for debugging
- Have line-swap fast recovery to normal operation (within milliseconds) after devices are unplugged and then re-plugged into different ports
- Be configurable by Operating System (OS) independent web browser, using secure HTTPS
- Be configurable by CLI by Local Serial console and remote SSH network connection
- Support ping commands to identify network segment integrity

7.7 Compliance With Standards

7.7.1 It is important that all equipment is selected and installations are done to industrial standards. These are usually harsh environments in terms of dirt, industrial activities such as welding, grinding, etc. and electrical interference such as lightning, capacitor switching, large drives starting and stopping, etc.

7.7.2 The complete installation and networking system must comply with IEEE 802.3-2005.

7.7.3 The equipment installed must comply with SANS 61000-4/IEC 61000-4 for EMC.

7.7.4 The equipment installed must comply with IEC 60068-2-6 for vibration (10 to 57 Hz – amplitude 0.15mm, 57 to 150 Hz – acceleration 2g).

7.7.5 The equipment installed must comply with IEC 60068-2-27 for shock (12 shocks semi-sinusoidal, 15g, 11ms).

7.7.6 All installations must comply with the requirements of SANS 10142-1.

7.8 Network Switch Data Sheets

7.8.1 For network switches supplied, the tenderer must supply the data sheets shown in Appendix A with his tender.

7.8.2 All installations must comply with the requirements of SANS 10142-1.

7.9 Redundancy Testing

7.9.1 All the core network switches and area switches that have been installed in a redundant configuration must to be tested by a network specialist and the results documented. The contractor must make the following equipment available to complete these tests:

- Two portable area switches as specified in 7.6.1
- Two portable computers, running from a CD ROM-booted operating system (e.g. Linux LiveCD)

7.9.2 The following ping test procedures must be followed using ICMP (Internet Control Message Protocol).

- Continuous ping messages will be sent form a portable test computer located at the core switch to a remote portable test computer that will be moved around all the network points (i.e. the area switches) to confirm the data throughput, latency (ping time) and network failover time.
- Confirm that the round-trip ping times with a packet size of 10kb does not exceed 2 milliseconds.
- Confirm that the continuous ping messages recovers within 3 seconds after either one of the redundant core switches has been powered down or powered up and after either one of the fly leads to the area switch has been disconnected form a core switch.
- Capture the result as indicated in the following example:

Port No	PING Time	SW0-A Switch Down	SW0-B Switch Down	SW0-A Link Down	SW0-B Link Down	Comments
1	<1ms	✓	✓	✓	✓	Location L2

7.10 Labelling

7.10.1 All labelling must comply with the requirements as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET - FIBRE "CORE" GIGABIT ETHERNET SWITCHES

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Manufacturer	
Model or Type	
Part or Order Number	
19" Rack-mount switch?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Comply with IEEE 802.1w for Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Comply with IEEE 802.3ad (now 802.1AX) for link aggregation or port trunking?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Switch has at least 4 trunks?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Comply with IEEE 802.1Q i.t.o. support for VLAN Registration Protocol (GVRP)?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Comply with IEEE 802.1p/1Q i.t.o. support for TOS/DiffServ?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Comply with IEEE 802.1X i.t.o. support for SSL?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Support SNMP V1/V2/V3 for different levels of network management security?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Is it a managed, Layer 3 switch?	☐ Yes ☐ No
At least 8 SFP ports that will support a combination of Fast Ethernet ports (10/100Base-TX) and Gigabit Ethernet ports (1000Base-T, 1000Base-LX)?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Support for loading or saving configuration to a remote host?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Port monitoring for debugging?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Has line-swap fast recovery to normal operation (within milliseconds) after swapping devices?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Configurable by Operating System (OS) independent web browser, using secure HTTPS?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Configurable by CLI by Local Serial console and remote SSH?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Support ping commands to identify network segment integrity?	☐ Yes ☐ No

Local Agent?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

DATA SHEET – "AREA" ETHERNET SWITCHES

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Manufacturer	
Model or Type	
Part or Order Number	
Comply with IEEE 802.1w for Rapid Spanning Tree Protocol?	☐ Yes ☐ No
SFP Uplink ports which are 1000BASE-LX Gigabit Ethernet standard compatible?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Uplink ports compatible with Duplex LC-type connectors for single-mode fibre?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Support for loading or saving configuration to a remote host?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Port monitoring for debugging?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Has line-swap fast recovery to normal operation (within milliseconds) after swapping devices?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Configurable by Operating System (OS) independent web browser, using secure HTTPS?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Local Agent?	☐ Yes ☐ No
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 17 : NITRATE MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 14 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 17 : Nitrate Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 17**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	14	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	13	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	12	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification and sensor flow
2013-10-07	10	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	9	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	8	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC) and changed from reagent-using on-line analyser to probe as per Cydna request.
2011-07-11	7	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2009-08-18	6	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter position requirements added.
2009-03-25	5	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	4	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"
2007-07-20	3	C. Du Toit	Comments from Russell Rimmer included.

2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and ”Joburg” logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

17 NITRATE MEASUREMENT 4

17.1 Scope 4

17.2 Abbreviations 4

17.3 Standards 4

17.4 Scope Of Work 5

17.5 General Requirements 5

17.6 Surge Protection 6

17.7 Nitrate Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 7

17.8 Nitrate Measurement – Transducer/Sensor 7

17.9 Spares 8

17.10 Data Sheets 8

17 NITRATE MEASUREMENT

17.1 Scope

17.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Nitrate on-line monitors, complete with sampling, filtration, indicators, panels, etc. where applicable, used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites. These instruments will be used to monitor clarified wastewater.

17.2 Abbreviations

17.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
mg/l	:	Milligram per litre
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance
FSD	:	Full Scale Deflection (Also refers to maximum range)

17.3 Standards

17.3.1 The supply and installation of all Nitrate meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

17.4 Scope Of Work

17.4.1 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all fittings, brackets, piping, cabling, etc. required for the complete sampling, monitoring, display and interfacing (e.g. to PLC's) system.

17.4.2 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all sampling pumps required for sample analyzing where applicable.

17.4.3 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of all Field Junction Boxes (FJB's) with circuit breakers, surge protection, terminals, trunking, etc. required to ensure compliance with this specification.

17.4.4 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument and, where applicable, all required filtration systems to ensure sample analyzing in accordance with this specification.

17.5 General Requirements

17.5.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

17.5.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.5.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.5.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.5.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.5.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.5.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

17.5.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.5.4 FJB's and all sampling pumps, filtration units, fittings, displays, etc., must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

17.5.5 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful

conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

17.5.6 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

17.5.7 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, solids in liquid, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

17.5.8 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or there are solid particles too large for proper operation, or the instrument is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

17.5.9 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

17.5.10 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

17.5.11 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument and associated equipment for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

17.5.12 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

17.6 Surge Protection

17.6.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.6.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the

distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.6.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

17.7 Nitrate Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

17.7.1 The transmitter/controller must be a microprocessor based instrument.

17.7.2 All instrument transmitter enclosure must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

17.7.3 The transmitter must have an operating temperature range of -20 to +60 ºC.

17.7.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least two isolated, active, 4 – 20mA outputs which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load.

17.7.5 The transmitter must be able to accept two inputs from digital measuring sensors.

17.7.6 The instrument must be equipped with at least three SPDT relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. Two relays for preset nitrate outputs and one relay for alarm status (i.e. transmitter failure, out of range measurement, etc.). The preset outputs must be user-programmable for various nitrate values.

17.7.7 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

17.7.8 The transmitter/controller must have at least two data logs of not less than 128kB each. The logged data must be downloadable on an SD card in XML format.

17.7.9 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display, which will show instantaneous nitrate value.

17.8 Nitrate Measurement – Transducer/Sensor

17.8.1 The principle of sensor operation must be based on ultraviolet absorption technology using two beams. This UV absorption, at a specific UV wavelength (210 nm), is measured as the nitrate concentration varies and the measurement is then converted to a nitrate reading in mg/l of nitrate (NO_3).

17.8.2 No reagents must be used and the sensor must be capable of providing compensation for the interference effects of turbidity and organic contamination up to 150 mg/l.

17.8.3 The sensor housing material must be stainless steel and it must have a double seal.

17.8.4 The sensor must be self-cleaning.

17.8.5 The detection range of the sensor must be from 0.1 to 100 mg/l NO_3 and must be suitable for the application (see items 17.5.7 and 17.5.8 of this specification).

17.8.6 The sensor must have an accuracy of not less than 3% of the mean reading ± 0.5 mg/l NO_3.

17.8.7 The resolution must be 0.1 mg/l NO_3 or better.

17.8.8 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of 2ºC to +40ºC.

17.8.9 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel if the sensor is not used within a flow cell.

17.9 Spares

17.9.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

17.10 Data Sheets

17.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – NITRATE MONITOR

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Transmitter/Controller type/model	
Transmitter/Controller operating temperature range	
Transmitter/Controller microprocessor based (Y/N)?	
Transmitter/Controller data logs available (Y/N)?	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Number of sensor inputs to controller and type (e.g. 2 x digital sensor inputs)	
Analogue output	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Transmitter/Controller enclosure rating	
Display data & type (E.g. instantaneous Nitrate, LCD).	
Sensor type/model	
Sensor operating principle	
Compensation for Turbidity interference (Y/N)?	
Sensor Accuracy	
Sensor range	

Sensor resolution	
Sensor housing material	
Sensor operating temperature range	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 10 : pH MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 15 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 10 : pH Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 10**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	15	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	14	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	13	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	12	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification and sensor flow cell.
2013-10-07	11	C. Du Toit	Updated footer.
2012-07-27	10	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	9	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	8	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	7	C. Du Toit	Transmitter relay requirements altered.
2009-08-18	6	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter requirements added.
2009-03-25	5	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	4	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to

2007-07-20	3	C. Du Toit	Error in item 10.6.1 corrected.
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and ”Joburg” logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

10 pH MEASUREMENT 4

10.1 Scope 4

10.2 Abbreviations 4

10.3 Standards 4

10.4 General Requirements 4

10.5 Surge Protection 6

10.6 pH Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 6

10.7 pH Measurement – Electrode 7

10.8 Spares 7

10.9 Data Sheets 7

10 pH MEASUREMENT

10.1 Scope

10.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of pH Meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

10.2 Abbreviations

10.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS : British Standards
PLC : Programmable Logic Controller
I/O : Input/Output
CPU : Central Processing Unit
UPS : Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC : Motor Control Centre
MCB : Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD : Surge Protection Device
FJB : Field Junction Box
SSO : Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT : Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD : Liquid Crystal Display
LED : Light Emitting Diode
O&M : Operating And Maintenance

10.3 Standards

10.3.1 The supply and installation of all pH meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1 : National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004 : National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005 : Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980 : Paint colour chart.

10.4 General Requirements

10.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

10.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

10.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

10.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

10.4.6 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

10.4.7 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

10.4.8 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

10.4.9 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power

supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

10.4.10 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

10.4.11 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

10.4.12 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

10.5 Surge Protection

10.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

10.6 pH Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

10.6.1 All pH measurement must be done by using an electrolytic principle to measure hydrogen ions, which is converted into a pH value.

10.6.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

10.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable for pH. As an option the instrument must be equipped with a second isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be for temperature.

10.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least three SPDT relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. Two relays for preset pH outputs and one relay for alarm status (i.e. transmitter failure, out of range measurement, etc.). The preset outputs must be user-programmable for various pH values.

10.6.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

10.6.6 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.05% of the full pH range.

10.6.7 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 1% of full scale.

10.6.8 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display showing instantaneous pH and relay status.

10.7 pH Measurement – Electrode

10.7.1 The range of the sensor must be from 2 to 14 pH and must be suitable for the application (see items 10.4.7 and 10.4.8 of this specification).

10.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating and measurement temperature range of 0ºC to +50ºC.

10.7.3 The sensor must be equipped with automatic temperature compensation.

10.7.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

10.7.5 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel if the sensor is not used within a flow cell.

10.7.6 The sensor must be supplied, complete with a cleaning unit (air or water), equipped with a user-programmable cleaning cycle if the sensor is not used within a flow cell.

10.8 Spares

10.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

10.9 Data Sheets

10.9.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – pH METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous pH & relay status LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor pH range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature measuring range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Transducer/Sensor cleaning system type & programmable (Y/N)?	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details.	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 15 : PHOSPHATE ANALYSING

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 13 August 2019

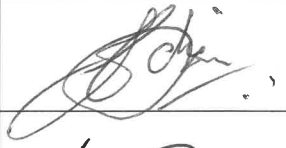
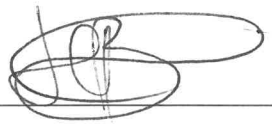
DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 15 : Phosphate Analysing**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 15**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	13	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	12	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification & updated filtration supplied by JW.
2014-04-17	10	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	9	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	8	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	7	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	6	C. Du Toit	Included latest laboratory requirements & removed 2010 logo.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter position requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

15 PHOSPHATE ANALYSING 4

15.1 Scope 4

15.2 Abbreviations 4

15.3 Standards 4

15.4 Scope Of Work 5

15.5 General Requirements 5

15.6 Surge Protection 6

15.7 Analyser – Required Features 7

15.8 Analyser - Filtration Requirements 8

15.9 Spares 9

15.10 Data Sheets 9

15 PHOSPHATE ANALYSING

15.1 Scope

15.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Phosphate analysers, complete with sampling, filtration, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

15.2 Abbreviations

15.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS : British Standards
PLC : Programmable Logic Controller
I/O : Input/Output
CPU : Central Processing Unit
UPS : Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC : Motor Control Centre
MCB : Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD : Surge Protection Device
FJB : Field Junction Box
SSO : Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT : Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD : Liquid Crystal Display
LED : Light Emitting Diode
mg/l : Milligram per litre
O&M : Operating And Maintenance
FSD : Full Scale Deflection (Also refers to maximum range)

15.3 Standards

15.3.1 The supply and installation of all Phosphate analysers and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1 : National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004 : National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005 : Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980 : Paint colour chart.

15.4 Scope Of Work

15.4.1 The supply, installation testing and commissioning of all fittings, brackets, piping, cabling, etc. required for the complete sampling, analyzing, display and interfacing (e.g. to PLC's) system.

15.4.2 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of all Field Junction Boxes (FJB's) with circuit breakers, surge protection, terminals, trunking, etc. required to ensure compliance with this specification.

15.4.3 The supply, installation, testing and commissioning of the analyzer and all required filtration systems to ensure sample analyzing in accordance with this specification.

15.4.4 The contractor will be required to conduct annual electronic functionality tests on the analysers.

15.4.5 The contractor must ensure a one month supply of the minimum stock levels of instrument replacement parts such as lamps, tubes, etc.

15.5 General Requirements

15.5.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

15.5.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.5.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.5.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.5.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.5.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.5.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

15.5.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.5.4 FJB's and all sampling pumps, filtration units, fittings, displays, etc., must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

15.5.5 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.)

such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

15.5.6 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

15.5.7 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, solids in liquid, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

15.5.8 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or there are solid particles too large for proper operation, or the analyser is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

15.5.9 Each analyser must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, or it must be supplied from a 15 Amp, earth leakage protected, switched socket outlet to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

15.5.10 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

15.5.11 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the analyser and associated equipment for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

15.5.12 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

15.6 Surge Protection

15.6.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the

Automation And Control Standards).

15.6.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.6.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

15.7 Analyser – Required Features

15.7.1 All analytical measurement must be based on the colorimetric reaction of analyte with reagents and the subsequent measurement of change in colour, which is then converted to mg/l of Phosphate. The analyser must employ the Ascorbic Acid Method (Ammonium molybdate and ascorbic acid) for analysis, in which the principle of measurement is that the phosphate forms the phosphomolybdate complex which is reduced by the ascorbic acid to form the phosphomolybdenum blue.

15.7.2 The addition of sample and reagent must be reliable, using the minimum of moving parts.

15.7.3 Zero point measurement and automatic compensation must be performed at least once per measuring cycle.

15.7.4 Routine operation and calibration must be selectable for manual or automatic.

15.7.5 The analysis cycle must not take more than 20 minutes.

15.7.6 Operating parameters such as sample sequencing must be programmable.

15.7.7 An automatic clean/rinse cycle between analyses must be available.

15.7.8 The sample flow to the analyser must be monitored and if a no-flow situation occurs, the problematic stream must be placed on standby while the balance of the streams are analysed.

15.7.9 All instrument enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

15.7.10 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable for the Phosphate measurement of each stream.

15.7.11 The instrument must be equipped with at least one SPDT alarm relay per stream, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. These outputs must be user-programmable for each stream.

15.7.12 The analyser must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

15.7.13 The analyser must have an accuracy of at least 1% of FSD.

15.7.14 The analyser must have a reproducibility of at least 1% (calculated from 5

consecutive standards manually introduced).

15.7.15 The analyser must have a linear response within the calibration range. Preference will be given to multiple point calibration.

15.7.16 The analyser function must be micro processor controlled.

15.7.17 The analyser must have programmable stream sequencing.

15.7.18 The analyser must have a facility to insert a grab sample for quality assurance purposes.

15.7.19 Within the analyser, the reagent storage area, the analysing section and the electronics section must be kept separate to prevent damage from spillages.

15.7.20 The analyser must have a local data storage facility for at least 100 results for ease of local checks.

15.7.21 The analyser must have an LCD and/or LED display. The analyser must show the instantaneous Phosphate value and alarm relay status.

15.7.22 The range of the analyser must be from 0 to 2 ppm with an option of manually changing the range from 1 to 3 ppm and must be suitable for the application (see items 15.5.7 and 15.5.8 of this specification).

15.7.23 The analyser must be suitable for an operating temperature range of -3ºC to +45ºC and a relative humidity of 71%.

15.7.24 No priming of sampling pumps must be required.

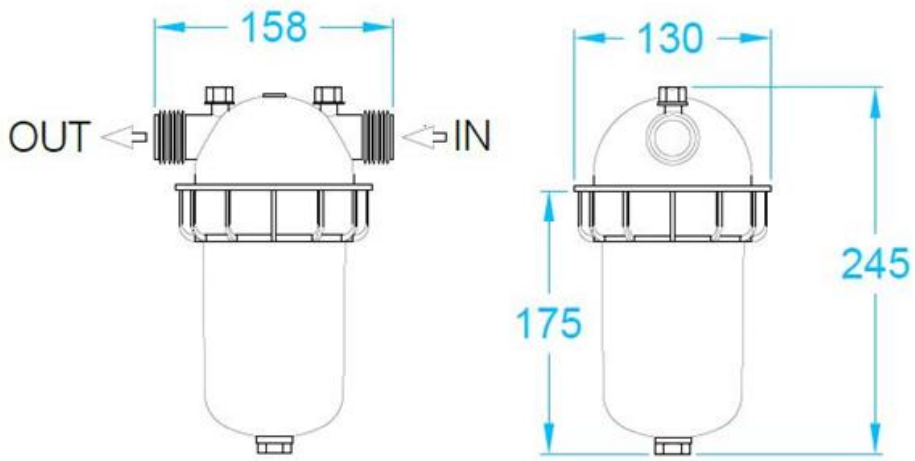
15.7.25 The system is required to perform monitoring on a continual batch basis and must be capable of unattended operation for at least 96 hours.

15.7.26 The system must use suitably sized piping or tubing in order to pass small quantities of suspended solids.

15.8 Analyser - Filtration Requirements

15.8.1 Effluent that has passed through a cyclone separator is available at each installation point and may be used if suitable. These separators are constructed of stainless steel, have a maximum flow rate of above 250ml per minute and can handle particles up to 3.2 mm. If this effluent is not suitable, the tenderer must offer whatever additional equipment is needed in order to remove sufficient solids from the effluent supplied for the successful operation of the instrument.

15.8.2 In addition to the cyclone separator a mechanical filter with the specifications below will also be provided by the client in the effluent supply to the analyser:



25mm / 1" Disc Filter Specifications

15.8.3 Filtration units supplied by the contractor must be capable of switching from an exhausted filtration unit to a fresh one, or to facilitate cleaning, by turning valves or other simple manual means. The units must consist of two filters in parallel.

15.8.4 Filtration units supplied by the contractor must be of robust design with low maintenance requirements (i.e. between 4 and 8 weeks maintenance intervention required, depending on the contamination levels).

15.9 Spares

15.9.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

15.10 Data Sheets

15.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – PHOSPHATE ANALYSER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
1. ANALYSER	
1.1 Make/Manufacturer	
1.2 Type/Model	
1.3 Supplier/Vendor	
1.4 Principle of operation	
1.5 Number of channels/streams	
1.6 Sample capture method	
1.7 PERFORMANCE	
1.7.1 Measuring range	
1.7.2 Accuracy	
1.7.3 Repeatability	
1.7.4 Standard deviation of measurement	
1.7.5 Frequency of auto compensation	
1.7.6 Cycle time	
1.7.7 Measurement time	
1.7.8 Calibration time	
1.7.9 Calibration method	

1.7.10 Measured wavelength	
1.7.11 Detection limit	
1.7.12 Drift over 24 hrs	
1.7.13 Sample flow rate (l/hr)	
1.7.14 Method interferences	
1.7.15 Diagnostics	
1.7.16 Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous Phosphate, LCD).	
1.7.17 Sample pressure requirement (bar)	
1.7.18 Operating temperature range	
1.8 GENERAL	
1.8.1 Dimensions	
1.8.2 Supply voltage & frequency	
1.8.3 Analogue Output Type & Programmable for each stream (Y/N)?	
1.8.4 Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable per stream (Y/N)?	
1.8.5 Reagents	
1.8.6 Reagent consumption	
1.8.7 Analyser Enclosure Rating	

2. FILTRATION UNIT	
2.1 Manufacturer/Make	
2.2 Model/Type	
2.3Supplier/Vendor	
2.4 PERFORMANCE	
2.4.1 No. of filter tubes	
2.4.2 Separation method	
2.4.3 Chemical stability	
2.4.4 Sample temperature	
2.4.5 Sample flow rate	
2.4.6 Service life	
2.4.7 Dimensions	
2.5 COMPANY RESOURCES	
2.5.1 No. of personnel	
2.5.2 Training	
2.5.3 Experience	
2.5.4 Qualifications	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 3 : PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLER (PLC) PANELS

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 15 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 3 : Programmable Logic Controller (PLC) Panels**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 3**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	15	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-25	14	C. Du Toit	Added stopper plugs, fan terminations, panel light and PLC panel earthing.
2018-11-30	13	C. Du Toit	Added spare space requirements, PLC fan position, terminal requirements, use of bolts, fused terminal
2014-04-17	12	C. Du Toit	PLC fan position and reference to SANS 10142 updated.
2013-10-07	11	C. Du Toit	Updated footer, screws in backing plates and PLC fan requirements.
2012-07-27	10	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	9	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	8	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	7	C. Du Toit	Altered I/O card terminal requirements and minimum panel powder coating thickness.
2010-03-12	6	C. Du Toit	Altered submission time of PLC panel drawings.

2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2008-10-08	3	C. Du Toit	"Joburg" & "JW" Logos added to top & partnership logos removed.
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

3 PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLER (PLC) PANELS 5

3.1 Scope 5

3.2 Abbreviations 5

3.3 Standards 5

3.4 General Requirements 5

3.5 Standard Features 6

3.6 Wiring, Relays and Terminals 8

3.7 Existing PLC Panels 11

3.8 Factory Acceptance 11

3.9 Loop Isolators 11

3.10 Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS) 11

3.11 Over-Voltage/Lightning Protection 11

3.12 Spares 12

3.13 Painting (Powder Coating Method) 12

3.14 Drawings And Diagrams 13

3 PROGRAMMABLE LOGIC CONTROLLER (PLC) PANELS

3.1 Scope

3.1.1 This specification covers the manufacturing, supply and installation of Programmable Logic Controller panels used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

3.2 Abbreviations

3.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker

3.3 Standards

3.3.1 All design standards for cabling shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

3.4 General Requirements

3.4.1 The PLC control panel shall house the following items:-

3.4.1.1 The PLC and all I/O modules and racks.

3.4.1.2 Fibre-optic network interface modules.

3.4.1.3 All network switches and hubs.

3.4.1.4 All field instrumentation and MCC interface cables shall be marshalled in this panel.

3.4.1.5 All power supply and distribution circuitry and equipment.

3.4.1.6 All lightning and surge protection devices as required.

3.4.1.7 Marshalling terminals as required

3.4.1.8 Interposing relays as required.

3.4.2 The supply and installation shall in general comply with the relevant clauses in all specifications attached to the tender documentation.

3.4.3 The panels shall be free standing units with bottom cable entry (via a glanding plate) and have front door access (hinged and lockable).

3.4.4 The panel should be manufactured from sheet steel not less than 2,0 mm thick. The panel will have a door on the front which opens to practically the full width and height of the panel. The panel shall be free standing and shall not be more than 2 200 mm high, 2 400mm wide and 600mm deep and it should be sized to accommodate all the PLC and associated equipment required for the actual PLC I/O and future spare capacity as indicated in the PLC schematic diagram.

3.4.5 Once the door is open there should be no obstruction to prevent full access to every point inside the panel.

3.4.6 The panel shall be epoxy powder coated electric orange (Shade B26) finish. Interior chassis mounting plates will be finished in appliance white. All removable parts and hardware will be cadmium yellow passivized.

3.4.7 Each panel and control function should be clearly labelled with labels engraved on laminated engraving board with black letters on a white background. All labels must be attached with chrome plated, screws and nuts or screws and tapped holes. On the backing plate only tapped holes may be used. Screws with nuts on the backing plate will not be acceptable.

3.4.8 The panel must be vermin-proof and must have a protection rating of no less than IP 55.

3.4.9 This specification must be read in conjunction with the PLC Hardware Specification (Volume 2 of the Automation And Control Standards).

3.4.10 All labelling must comply with the requirements as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

3.5 Standard Features

3.5.1 Each panel shall have the following features as standard:-

3.5.1.1 Ventilation fans with air filters shall be mounted on the PLC panel at high level with no air outlets. The fans must pressurise the panel to prevent the ingress of dust.

3.5.1.2 Ventilation fans must have proper screw terminals in an enclosed terminal box. No exposed terminations, soldered connections or push-on lugs will be accepted.

3.5.1.3 A 230V AC switch socket outlet shall be mounted inside the panel (supplied from the UPS section). This socket must have a shaved earth which shall be used for the PLC programmer only.

3.5.1.4 Interior lighting at the top of the panel must be arranged to switch on, via a micro switch, when the panel door is opened. This light must be an LED

light with a CCT (Correlated Colour Temperature) of 4000K to 6000K. The light must be fitted with a diffuser and it must supply no less than 680 lm (Net luminous flux). The lamp must have proper screw terminals in an enclosed terminal box. No exposed terminations, soldered connections or push-on lugs will be accepted.

3.5.1.5 A substantial area of removable gland plates on the floor of the panel, split into two or more sections.

3.5.1.6 A sheet steel pocket welded onto inside of the door to hold A4 sized drawings, books etc.

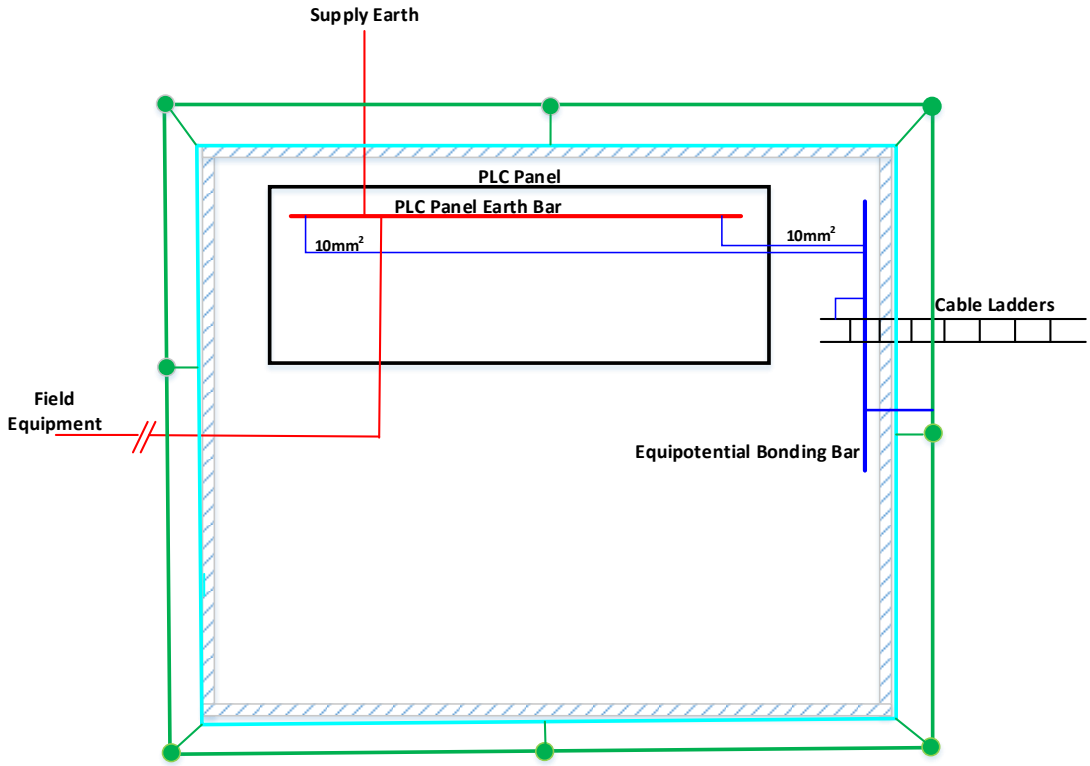
3.5.1.7 No holes may be drilled for tapping, riveting, bolts & nuts, etc. in any section of the panel where it will compromise the protection rating of the panel. I.e. only in the backing plate or in the glanding plate may holes be drilled. Where drilling is unavoidable, e.g. to affix labels, the holes must be sealed so that the protection rating of the panel is not compromised.

3.5.1.8 Bolts with nuts shall not be used to attach equipment to any mounting plate at any point. On mounting plates only bolts in tapped holes will be acceptable. Bolts with nuts will be allowed on enclosure doors however, where the bolts and nuts are easily accessible.

3.5.1.9 Where bolts are used on the door or any outside panels of the enclosure, a sealing method (e.g. rubber washers) must be used to ensure that the IP protection rating of the enclosure is not compromised.

3.5.1.10 Wherever bolts are used, the bolts must be as short as practically possible so that there are no long protrusions that can injure people or snag clothing, wiring, other equipment, etc. If bolts are cut to the correct length, the ends of the bolts must be neatly de-burred and smoothed so that there are no sharp edges that can cause injuries and so that the nuts can be easily screwed on and off. No more than four threads of the bolt end must be visible beyond the nut. It is however preferred that the correct length of bolts are used so that shortening is not required.

3.5.1.11 A copper earth bar running the full width (i.e. left-end to right-end) of the panel at the bottom with solid electrical connection to the panel doors and to the steel of the panel at two or more places and provided with terminals for connection of equipment and screen earth wires. This earth bar must be connected to the equipotential bonding bar of the building via at least 2 x $10mm^2$ earth conductors (one from each end of the panel earth bar), as shown in the sketch below.



3.5.1.12 Separate AC and DC distribution sections if both AC and DC are used.

3.5.1.13 A free-standing (i.e. not the PLC rack mounted) 24V DC Power supply for all analogue I/O cards or I/O sub-bases (where required), 24V DC I/O distribution (if required), field instrumentation supplies (if required), etc.

3.5.1.14 Where stopper plugs are used to seal holes that are not used, no plastic stopper plugs will be acceptable. All stopper plugs must be threaded, non-corrodible, metal plugs with rubber washers on both sides of the panel to ensure at least an IP65 seal (see examples below).

3.6 Wiring, Relays and Terminals

3.6.1 All terminals shall be screw-type terminals and shall be mounted on raised DIN terminal rail, secured to the chassis plate at the back of the panel.

3.6.2 Proprietary type wire strippers shall be used and no stranded conductor shall be terminated if one or more strands have been damaged.

3.6.3 Not more than one wire shall be connected to any terminal unless the terminal can accept pin lugs on either side of a screw or unless proper connecting material is used (see examples below).

3.6.4 Every wire shall be marked at both ends with a numbering system approved by the Engineer, and all terminating wires shall also be suitably crimped to a terminal lug. Not more than one wire shall be crimped into a single lug.

3.6.5 All wiring shall be flexible, tinned, annealed, multi-strand copper wire not less than:-

3.6.5.1 1,5mm² for 230V AC or 110V AC power

3.6.5.2 1,0mm² for 24V DC or AC power

3.6.5.3 0,5mm² for all PLC I/O wiring between modules and marshalling terminals

3.6.5.4 4,0mm² for earth drain

3.6.6 Irrespective of the minimum wire sizes allowed in this specification, contractors must ensure that all cables and wiring are capable of carrying the full system currents, inclusive of de-rating factors as specified in the latest version of SANS 10142.

3.6.7 All wire terminations must be done by using suitable lugs. No more than one wire may be crimped into a single lug. Where pin lugs are crimped onto the ends of wires, correctly sized pin lugs must be used, which fit into the terminals properly and such that the tightening of the terminal does not result in the loosening of the pin lug.

3.6.8 All panel wiring shall run in suitably sized slotted trunking for as much of their course as possible, thereafter in spiral band or similar conduit to its destination if the exposed run would exceed 100mm.

3.6.9 The distance between the terminals and the trunking or between equipment (such as relays, surge protection, circuit breakers, etc.) and trunking shall not be less than 50mm.

3.6.10 Control wiring should not run with power wiring and all cross-overs shall be at ninety degrees.

3.6.11 A block of terminals shall be allocated to each I/O module. The terminal block shall be labelled with the PLC rack number and module slot allocation.

3.6.12 The terminals allocated for the various I/O modules must be as per the design drawings submitted by the Engineer. If it forms part of the contractor's scope of work to submit design drawings, the terminals allocated for the various I/O modules must be approved by the Engineer. All terminals shall be sequentially numbered from top to bottom for each I/O channel for every type of I/O card.

3.6.13 Each analogue and digital input and output channel shall have surge protection units as specified in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

3.6.14 Internal wiring shall be colour coded as follows:-

3.6.14.1 230V AC Power

Live	Brown
Neutral	Blue
Earth	Green and Yellow

3.6.14.2 24V DC Power

Positive	Red
Negative	Black

3.6.14.3 Digital Inputs

230V AC	Yellow
24V DC	Red

3.6.14.4 Digital Outputs

230V AC	Grey
24V DC	Red

3.6.14.5 Relay Outputs

230V AC	Grey
24V DC	Red

3.6.14.6 Analogue Signals

Positive	Orange
Negative	Purple

3.6.15 A terminal section for AC and DC power distribution shall be included in the PLC panel where both voltages are used for PLC I/O. The terminal groups shall be clearly identified to indicate the various voltages.

3.6.16 A separate power distribution section shall be used for the AC and DC supplies where both voltages are used. Miniature circuit breakers (MCB's) shall be used to feed the various items of equipment such as PLC I/O cards, fans, lights, field instruments, etc. Fused terminals may be used if it is indicated as such on the design drawings submitted by the Engineer.

3.6.17 Two types of mains supplies shall be made available to the PLC panels: Raw Mains and UPS Mains. The raw mains incomer shall feed the non-critical items such as fans, 24V DC power supplies, 230V AC terminal section, 230V AC I/O modules, relay output modules, etc. The UPS supply shall feed the critical items required for PLC communications in the event of a raw mains power supply interruption. Such items are plugs (for PC), lights (inside the PLC panel), fibre-optic interface modules, PLC Processor, etc. Unless otherwise specified, PLC I/O and field instruments need not be supplied by UPS power.

3.6.18 All wiring must be continuous from one termination (in a terminal strip or device such as a relay, contactor, surge arrester, etc.) to the next. No spliced wiring will be accepted.

3.6.19 Where relays (not relays that are part of the PLC hardware, such as in I/O sub-bases) are used, such relays must be pluggable, so that relays can be replaced

without the need to disconnect wiring and the relays must have visible indication when it is energised.

3.7 Existing PLC Panels

3.7.1 All modifications and wiring changes to existing panels must comply with the specifications as laid down for new panels.

3.8 Factory Acceptance

3.8.1 Before delivery of the PLC systems and/or the PLC panels, a comprehensive system factory acceptance test must take place. The Engineer must be notified one week in advance of the proposed test.

3.8.2 The test shall comprise of at least, but not be limited to:

3.8.2.1 Checking the panel manufacturing and assembly for compliance with this specification.

3.8.2.2 Layout, numbering and labelling of equipment.

3.8.2.3 Wiring – sizes, numbering, colours, termination, etc.

3.8.2.4 Wiring as per drawings, I/O schedules, etc. (i.e. loop checks).

3.9 Loop Isolators

3.9.1 Loop isolators are required where the instruments and the relevant PLC are fed from different power sources. Loop isolators must provide isolation between the instrument signals and the power supply. Separately powered isolators are preferred.

3.10 Uninterruptible Power Supply (UPS)

3.10.1 An Uninterruptible power supply must be installed to isolate the PLC from the "raw" mains supply.

3.10.2 The UPS must comply with the UPS requirements as specified in the Clean Power And Surge Protection specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Design Standards).

3.10.3 The raw mains incomer to the PLC panel shall feed the non-critical items such as fans, 24V DC power supplies, 230V AC terminal section, 230V AC I/O modules, relay output modules (if required), etc. The UPS supply shall feed the critical items that keep PLC communications established should the raw mains power supply be interrupted, such as plugs, lights, fibre-optic interface modules, PLC (CPU), etc.

3.10.4 Tenderers must satisfy themselves that the UPS rating is adequate to supply all the equipment which they are offering.

3.11 Over-Voltage/Lightning Protection

3.11.1 The function of the over-voltage/lightning protection units is to prevent damage

from occurring to the electrical and electronic devices due to destructive voltages, by resistive coupling, capacitive coupling or inductive coupling, arising from extraneous events such as lightning discharges, switching surges etc. All lightning and surge protection must be in accordance with the requirements in the Clean Power And Surge Protection specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Design Standards).

3.11.2 The protection units on the 230V AC mains incomers of the PLC panel (if not provided on the mains elsewhere) shall consist of at least IEC Class II protection. Preferably Class I and Class II, or a combined Class I + Class II protection must be used.

3.11.3 Each individual supply from the 24V DC distribution and from the 230V AC distribution to field instruments or other field supplies must be equipped with at least Class II medium surge protection.

3.12 Spares

3.12.1 The tenderer will be required to provide at least 10% spare fuses and other consumable items which may be required during commissioning. In addition to commissioning spares, a recommended spare list for three years maintenance, should be submitted. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

3.13 Painting (Powder Coating Method)

3.13.1 **General**

Switchboards and panels shall be epoxy powder coated in accordance with Type 1 coatings to SANS 1274-2005.
Unless specified otherwise, a high gloss finish in the following colour shall be provided:
Colour - Light Orange, Colour No. B26, Munsell Ref. 2,5 YR C/14 to SANS 1091 : 2004 and Colour No. 381C-557 to BS 381C : 1980.
Paintwork must be guaranteed against blistering, peeling, cracking and general deterioration which can lead to rusting, corrosion, etc. for a period of no less than three years. If the tenderer cannot comply with this requirement, it must be clearly stated as such in the tender.

3.13.2 **Specifications**

The following specifications in accordance with SANS 1274-2005 shall be provided:-

Property	Requirement	Test Method
Thickness, minimum	50 micron	6,7
Marking Resistance (400g)	No marking	6.20
Impact Resistance, J, minimum	6,78	6.10
Water Resistance, h, minimum	720	6.13
Humidity resistance, h, minimum	1000	6.14
Resistance to salt fog, h, minimum	1000	6.16

3.13.3 **Surface Preparation**

Surface preparation of sheet steel components shall be carried out by means of the multi-bath zinc phosphate/chromate passivation treatment.

All fabricated sheet steel components are to be degreased and de-rusted ready for treatment.
A steel surface is considered ready for treatment when all dirt, grease, rust, mill scale, moisture or other contaminants have been removed in an alkaline degreaser to give a dry, clean, bright, metallic surface.
Steel plate less than 4mm thick - black steel sheet shall be pickled to white metal condition while pre-pickled, bright, cold rolled sheet steel shall be solvent cleaned. These surfaces shall be treated within eight hours in all cases while still uncontaminated and rust-free.
The prepared steel surface shall be treated by means of immersion in a heated zinc phosphate solution bath, rinsing and thereafter chromate passivated by means of immersion in the final treatment bath.

3.13.4 **Powder Coating**

A thermosetting powder consisting of epoxy/polyester resin shall be applied by means of an electrostatic spray gun to give a uniform coating thickness of 50 to 60 micron. Less than 50 micron will not be acceptable.

The powder coating shall be baked at a metal temperature of 185ºC so as to melt the powders to form a continuous film over the metal substrate.

3.14 Drawings And Diagrams

3.14.1 The tenderer must submit layout drawings, showing the PLC panel size, cable entry, location of equipment, details of equipment (such as fans, lights, plugs, trunking size, circuit breakers, fuses, terminals, etc.), panel colour, material of construction (e.g. 2mm mild steel), etc. for approval by the Engineer before any manufacturing commences.

3.14.2 The drawings must be accompanied with data lists of the proposed equipment. These data sheets must show the type, supplier, make, model, size, etc. of equipment where applicable. For example:

Terminals - Phoenix SK12, 4mm, white.
MCB's - Merlin Gerin, 5A, 10kA, single-pole.
Etc.

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 11 : TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 13 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 11 : Temperature Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 11**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	T. Thabeng	09/09/2019	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	13	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-25	12	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification.
2014-04-17	10	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification.
2013-10-07	9	C. Du Toit	Updated footer.
2012-07-27	8	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	7	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC).
2011-07-11	6	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter position requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added

2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

11 TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENT 4

11.1 Scope 4

11.2 Abbreviations 4

11.3 Standards 4

11.4 General Requirements 4

11.5 Surge Protection 6

11.6 Temperature Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 6

11.7 Temperature Measurement – Transducer/Sensor 7

11.8 Labelling 7

11.9 Spares 7

11.10 Data Sheets 7

11 TEMPERATURE MEASUREMENT

11.1 Scope

11.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Temperature meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

11.2 Abbreviations

11.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
RTD	:	Resistance Temperature Detector
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

11.3 Standards

11.3.1 The supply and installation of all Temperature meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

11.4 General Requirements

11.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

11.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

11.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

11.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

11.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

11.4.7 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

11.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

11.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

11.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

11.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

11.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

11.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

11.5 Surge Protection

11.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.6 Temperature Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

11.6.1 All temperature measurements must be done by using resistance-type (Pt100 RTD) or thermocouple measurement, which is converted into a temperature value.

11.6.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

11.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-

programmable for temperature.

11.6.4 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

11.6.5 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 0.25% of full scale.

11.6.6 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 1% of full scale.

11.6.7 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display showing instantaneous temperature.

11.7 Temperature Measurement – Transducer/Sensor

11.7.1 The range of the sensor must be suitable for the application (see items 11.4.8 and 11.4.9 of this specification).

11.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating and measurement temperature range of 0ºC to +400ºC for Pt100 RTD's and 0ºC to +1200ºC for type 'K' thermocouple.

11.7.3 The sensor must be equipped with automatic temperature compensation.

11.7.4 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

11.7.5 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel.

11.8 Labelling

11.8.1 All labelling must comply with the requirements as specified in the Labelling Specification (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

11.9 Spares

11.9.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

11.10 Data Sheets

11.10.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – TEMPERATURE METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous temperature LCD)	
Transducer/Sensor temperature measuring range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor temperature compensation (Y/N)?	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Transducer/Sensor material	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details.	
Guarantee period	

JOHANNESBURG WATER (SOC) Ltd.

BULK WASTEWATER

PARTICULAR SPECIFICATION

VOLUME 14 : TURBIDITY/SUSPENDED SOLIDS MEASUREMENT

Johannesburg Water (SOC) Ltd.
PO Box 61542
Marshalltown
2107

Revision 14 August 2019

DOCUMENT CONTROL SHEET

Document Title: **Particular Specification – VOLUME 14 : Turbidity/Suspended Solids Measurement**

JW Reference: **BWW523C**

Document Ref. No: **VOLUME 14**

DOCUMENT APPROVAL

ACTION	FUNCTION	NAME	DATE	SIGNATURE
Prepared	HOD	C. Du Toit	2019-08-26	
Reviewed	Engineer	L. Gobinca	2019-08-26	
Approved	Manager	H. Makola	2019-10-07	

RECORD OF REVISIONS

Date	Revision	Author	Comments
2019-08-26	14	C. Du Toit	Cover page updated
2019-06-15	13	C. Du Toit	Revision approved by JW.
2018-11-30	12	C. Du Toit	Added reference to Labelling specification & included suspended solids measurement.
2014-04-17	11	C. Du Toit	Added reference to FJB specification and sensor flow
2013-10-07	10	C. Du Toit	Updated footer
2012-07-27	9	C. Du Toit	Updated headers & footers.
2012-03-08	8	C. Du Toit	Changed (Pty) to (SOC) and corrected range
2011-07-11	7	C. Du Toit	Removed 2010 logo.
2010-07-27	6	C. Du Toit	Transmitter relay rating altered.
2009-08-18	5	C. Du Toit	New logos and transmitter requirements added.
2009-03-25	4	C. Du Toit	JW Wastewater Partnership deleted & logos altered as per client's requirements.
2007-10-09	3	C. Du Toit	"Minimum" 500 ohm load changed to "Maximum"
2007-06-05	2	C. Du Toit	Revision block updated and "Joburg" logo added
2007-03-28	1	C. Du Toit	Final copy issued for approval and sign-off

INDEX

14 TURBIDITY /SUSPENDED SOLIDS MEASUREMENT 4

14.1 Scope 4

14.2 Abbreviations 4

14.3 Standards 4

14.4 General Requirements 5

14.5 Surge Protection 6

14.6 Turbidity/Suspended Solids Measurement – Controller/Transmitter 6

14.7 Turbidity/Suspended Solids Measurement – Transducer/Sensor 7

14.8 Spares 7

14.9 Data Sheets 7

14 TURBIDITY /SUSPENDED SOLIDS MEASUREMENT

14.1 Scope

14.1.1 This specification covers the supply and installation of Turbidity meters, complete with sensors, transmitters, indicators, panels, etc. used for process monitoring and control applications at Johannesburg Water wastewater sites.

14.2 Abbreviations

14.2.1 In this specification the following abbreviations will apply :-

BS	:	British Standards
PLC	:	Programmable Logic Controller
I/O	:	Input/Output
CPU	:	Central Processing Unit
UPS	:	Uninterruptible Power Supply
MCC	:	Motor Control Centre
MCB	:	Miniature Circuit Breaker
SPD	:	Surge Protection Device
FJB	:	Field Junction Box
SSO	:	Switched Socket Outlet
SPDT	:	Single Pole Double Throw (refers to relay or switch contact arrangements).
LCD	:	Liquid Crystal Display
LED	:	Light Emitting Diode
NTU	:	Nephelometric Turbidity Unit (A measure of the cloudiness of water)
mg/l	:	Milligram per litre
O&M	:	Operating And Maintenance

14.3 Standards

14.3.1 The supply and installation of all Turbidity/Suspended Solids (other than mixed liquor suspended solids measurement in a bioreactor) meters and associated cabling, panels and any other equipment shall be subject to the latest amendments and editions of the following standard specifications:-

SANS 10142-1	:	National Standards for the wiring of premises.
SANS 1091:2004	:	National Colour Standard.
SANS 1274-2005	:	Coatings applied by the powder-coating process.
BS 381C:1980	:	Paint colour chart.

14.4 General Requirements

14.4.1 This specification must be read in conjunction with the following specifications:-

14.4.1.1 PLC Panels Specification (Volume 3 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.4.1.2 Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.4.1.3 Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.4.1.4 Field Junction Boxes And Panels (Volume 19 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.4.1.5 Labelling (Volume 25 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.4.2 Where cables are exposed to physical damage (including damage from rodents) armoured cables must be used or un-armoured cables must be run in steel conduit.

14.4.3 All power supply cables to instruments must have a black outer sheath, while all control cables (such as digital and analogue signals to PLC's) must have an orange outer sheath as specified in the Cabling Specification (Volume 6 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.4.4 FJB's and as far as practically possible all instrument sensors and transmitters, must be mounted such that all equipment, wiring, numbers, terminations, etc. are readily accessible and can be viewed clearly. No equipment may be mounted such that it becomes a hazard or dangerous to view or gain access to such equipment.

14.4.5 Where sensors and/or transmitters cannot be mounted where they are readily accessible, the installation must be done in such a way that the sensor or transmitter can easily be moved to a safe and convenient position for testing, maintenance, replacement, etc. (e.g. by using hinged brackets, telescopic brackets, etc.).

14.4.6 Where transmitters can be exposed to the elements (wind, rain, ultra violet, etc.) such transmitters must be installed inside the FJB. Where transmitters are protected from the elements (i.e. inside buildings) but they are exposed to potentially harmful conditions like moisture from splashing or equipment being hosed down, or the sensor is in such a position that the transmitter display is not clearly visible from floor level, without the need to climb onto ladders or structures to access it, the transmitter must also be installed inside the FJB. Only where transmitters are not exposed to the elements or any other harsh or potentially harmful conditions and where the displays on such transmitters are clearly legible by an average person standing on the ground or the normal walking surface (e.g. grating above ground level), can the transmitter be mounted outside the FJB.

14.4.7 FJB's must be mounted against a wall or structure or on a sturdy pedestal such that the top of the FJB enclosure is no higher than 1.8 m from the floor and easily accessible from the front.

14.4.8 All instrument installations must be done in accordance with the manufacturer's requirements and recommendations for proper operation. It is the tenderer's responsibility to ensure that he/she is familiar with both the requirements of the

manufacturer as well as the installation requirements, in terms of location, site conditions, materials, equipment or substances to be measured (e.g. hot liquids, acids, abrasive material, etc.) and to ensure that if there are potential problems, they can be pointed out and rectified before orders for equipment are placed.

14.4.9 Costs incurred for alterations required to ensure proper operation of instruments, after orders have been placed, will be for the tenderer's account. For example, if instruments have been ordered and it is found there is insufficient space to install the instrument, or the instrument is not flooded with liquid all the time as it is required for proper operation, or the instrument transmitter is sometimes flooded in its installed position, or the sensing head is sometimes outside the medium it is supposed to measure, or the instrument linings are damaged by abrasive liquids, or the sensor is does not have a suitable range of measurement, etc. alterations or replacements required to rectify such problems will be for the tenderer's account if the Engineer finds that the tenderer was negligent in his/her assessment of the installation.

14.4.10 Each instrument must be equipped with a circuit breaker connected to the power supply of the instrument, to enable local isolation in case of repairs or replacement.

14.4.11 The supplier of the instrument must be present for the installation, testing and commissioning of the instrument on site. Due allowance must be made for this in the tender sum.

14.4.12 The tenderer must supply a complete and detailed set of documentation for the installation, connections, terminations, power supply, technical details, setting up, calibration (if applicable), testing, etc. of the instrument for inclusion in a final O&M manual.

14.4.13 Completed data sheets are required as part of the returnable documents of each tender. Failure to complete these data sheets, supplied at the end of this specification, will lead to disqualification of the tender.

14.5 Surge Protection

14.5.1 Each instrument and its associated equipment must be suitably protected against surges from induced voltages, switching of equipment, lightning strikes, etc. as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.5.2 The power supply to the instrument must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the source of the power supply (i.e. at the distribution board, MCC, PLC panel, etc.), as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.5.3 Both the digital and analogue signals between the instrument and other remote devices (such as the PLC), must be equipped with suitable surge protection, both at the instrument and at the remote device as detailed in the Clean Power And Surge Protection Specification (Volume 5 of the Automation And Control Standards).

14.6 Turbidity/Suspended Solids Measurement – Controller/Transmitter

14.6.1 All turbidity/suspended solids measurements must be done by using a light scatter

operating principle.

14.6.2 All instrument transmitter enclosures must have at least an IP 65 or higher rating.

14.6.3 The instrument must be equipped with an isolated, active, 4 – 20mA output which will be connected to a maximum 500 ohm load. This output must be user-programmable for turbidity or suspended solids.

14.6.4 The instrument must be equipped with at least one to three SPDT relays, rated for at least 230V AC, 2A. Two relays for preset turbidity or suspended solids outputs and one relay for alarm status (i.e. transmitter failure, out of range measurement, etc.). The preset outputs must be user-programmable for various turbidity or suspended solids values.

14.6.5 The transmitter must be suitable for use with a 230V AC, 50/60 Hz power supply.

14.6.6 The transmitter must have an accuracy of at least 5% or 0.02 NTU, whichever is greater for turbidity. For suspended solids the accuracy must also be at least 5% of full scale.

14.6.7 The transmitter must have a resolution of at least 1% of full scale.

14.6.8 The transmitter must have an LCD or LED display, which will show instantaneous turbidity and relay status.

14.7 Turbidity/Suspended Solids Measurement – Transducer/Sensor

14.7.1 The range of the sensor must be from 0.00 to 99.9 mg/l for suspended solids and from 0 to 400 NTU for turbidity and must be suitable for the application (see items 14.4.8 and 14.4.9 of this specification). The low ranges are because these instruments will usually be used for measurement in final effluent. If not, it will be specified as such in the tender documentation or another document which will supersede the requirements in this specification.

14.7.2 The sensor must be suitable for an operating temperature range of 0ºC to +50ºC.

14.7.3 The sensor must have a protection rating of at least IP 67 or higher.

14.7.4 Brackets used for the mounting of the sensor must be made of at least 3CR12 grade stainless steel if the sensor is not used within a flow cell.

14.7.5 The sensor must be supplied, complete with a cleaning unit (air or water), equipped with a user-programmable cleaning cycle if the sensor is not used within a flow cell.

14.8 Spares

14.8.1 The tenderer will be required to provide a recommended spares list for three years maintenance. This item must be completed so that spares may be ordered as part of the capital contract. Tenderers ignoring this condition may be disqualified.

14.9 Data Sheets

14.9.1 All data sheets in the attached Appendix 1 must be completed.

APPENDIX 1

DATA SHEET – TURBIDITY METER

DESCRIPTION	DATA
Make/Manufacturer	
Type/Model	
Operating principle	
Power Supply (Voltage)	
Analogue Output Type & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Digital Output Quantity, Type & Rating (E.g. 3 x SPDT, 230V AC, 5A) & Programmable (Y/N)?	
Controller/Transmitter Enclosure Rating	
Accuracy	
Resolution	
Display Data & Type (E.g. instantaneous Turbidity & relay status LCD).	
Transducer/Sensor Turbidity/Suspended Solids range (Show range applicable to this application)	
Transducer/Sensor temperature operating range	
Transducer/Sensor enclosure rating	
Transducer/Sensor cleaning system type & programmable (Y/N)?	
Local agent (Y/N)?	
Local agent contact details	
Guarantee period	